

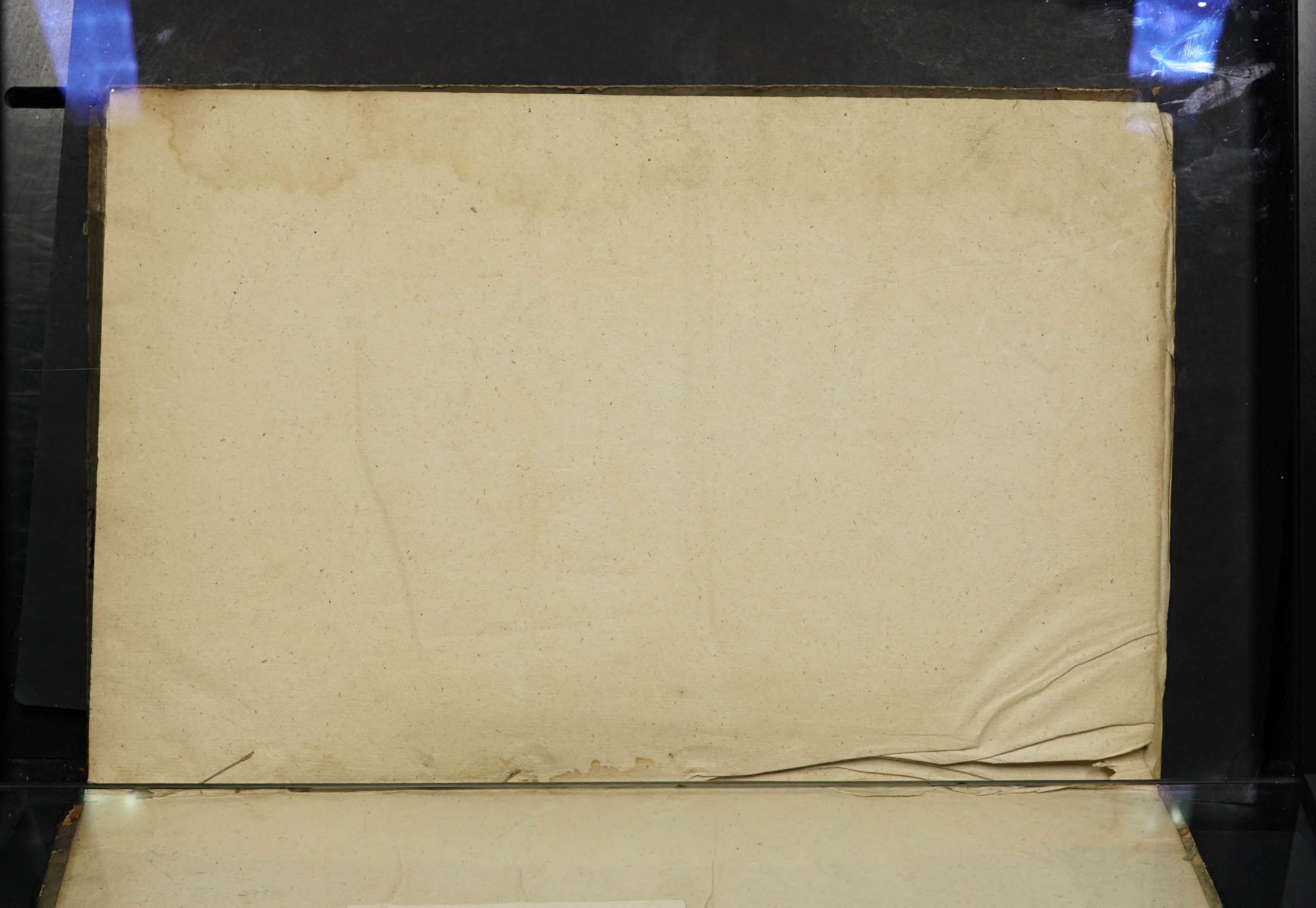


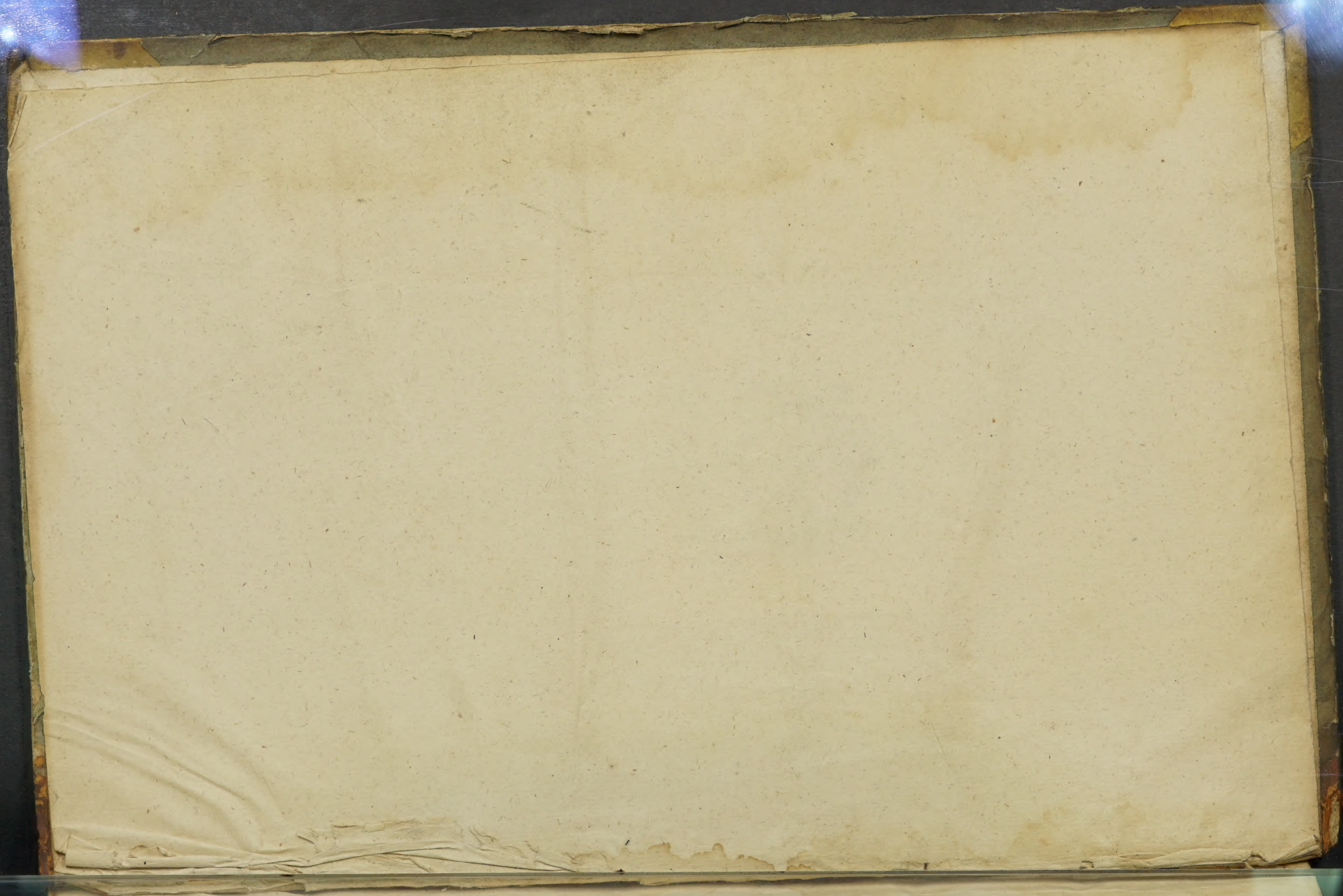


15822/1.D

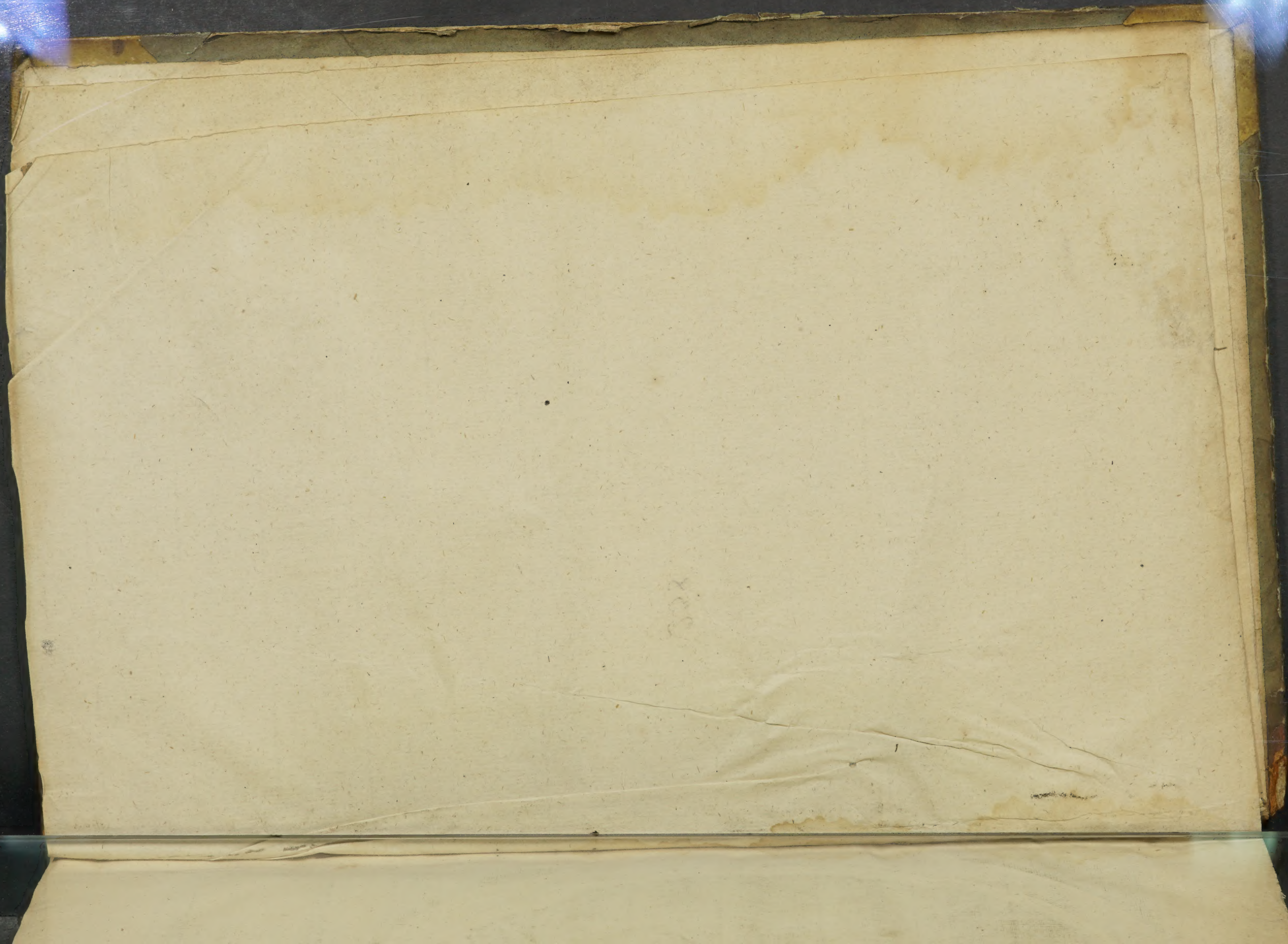


Printed & Published by
J. B. & Co. of Cambridge
Printers





238







*Orbis Plurimi claris, tepidique Tanopi

 Dixerat hic ille ut: quem quo sua facula noverit
 Sanguis melius pictus ab ipse suo est.
 Jan. Brookhous.*

Engr. by R. Kneller, 1700.

Printed by S. Smith.

TRA

232 The

M^r COR

TR

MOS

EA

An Accurat
 as are most
 Countries, a
 curious Re

Of their Antiquit
 Place of Pers

Bj

Adon

Flurifer
 Omnia

Printed for J.

A NEW and more CORRECT

TRANSLATION

232

Than has hitherto appeared in Public,

OF

MR. CORNELIUS LE BRUN'S

CORNELIUS DE BRUN

TRAVELS

INTO

MOSCOWY, PERSIA,

And divers PARTS of the

EAST-INDIES;

CONTAINING

An ACCURATE DESCRIPTION of all such Articles
as are most remarkable in each of those different
Countries, and most worthy the Attention of the
curious Reader.

AS ALSO

Of their Antiquities; but more particularly those relating to the famous
Palace of *Persepolis*, commonly called *Chelminar* by the PERSIANS:

By a Gentleman of OXFORD.

Adorn'd with a large Number of Copper-Plates.

*Floriferis ut Apes in Saltibus omnia libant,
Omnia Nos itidem.*

LUCRET.

L O N D O N:

Printed for J. WARCUS, at the BIBLE, the Corner of Rackett-
Court, in Fleet-Street, M.DCC.LIX.



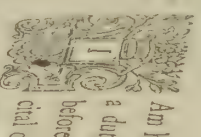
T R

Ca

Mus

EA

The Author's Reply



tion, faced thanks to v through his great procedure, has ma all the difficulties a time to time has





T H E

T R A V E L S

O F

Cornelius Le Brun,

T H R O U G H

M U S C O V Y and P E R S I A,

T O T H E

E A S T - I N D I E S, &c. &c.

C H A P. I.

The Author's Resolution. His Departure from the Hague. And his Arrival at Archangel.

Introduc-
tion.



Am highly sensible, that 'tis a duty incumbent on me, before I enter upon the recital of this my last expedition, to return my un-

feigned thanks to the Almighty, who, through his great goodness and divine protection, has enabled me to conquer all the difficulties and dangers, that from time to time have attended me, during

my former travels, as well as those I have so lately finished, in the prosecution whereof I have spent near twenty years with the utmost satisfaction.

Upon my return to the Hague, I found myself under an irresistible temptation to revisit several remote countries, in order that I might reflect on the respective inhabitants, and their particular customs and manners, with more mature deliberation than I had done

B

THE TRAVELS OF

1701

done before; and to take a second tour to the East Indies, through Muscovy and Persia.

Not only my friends and acquaintance, but my nearest relations were highly displeased, when they found I was resolutely bent on repeating my voyage. They were very warm in their remonstrances, and endeavoured to set before me all the numerous inconveniencies, that might in all probability attend such a rash, and, as they called it, ill-concerted project.

Flush'd, however, with the good success of my former adventures, no arguments could prevail on me to withstand the violence of my own inclinations.

Moreover, I considered with myself, that then I had more years over my head, and had acquired a greater degree of experience, and by consequence, was much better qualified to form a more adequate idea of things than I was in my youth; besides, since my return, I made it my business, in some measure, to converse with men of learning and taste, and such as were very curious in their enquiries, whereby I was fully convinced in my own mind, that by virtue of such valuable assistance, I should be rendered capable of making much more advantageous and important discoveries than hitherto I had done. Big with these hopes, I consulted, with the utmost care and attention, all the closets of the curious; by which means, I soon informed myself of the most approved methods for preserving in spirits all kinds of birds, beasts, and fishes; and to prepare them, in such an artificial manner, that I might bring them from foreign parts without their suffering the least diminution or decay. I had determined likewise to get some proper instructions from some able and experienced masters in the art of painting, for drawing, after the life, all such natural productions, both by sea and land, as I judged most worthy of my notice and attention. This qualification, however, I propos'd to acquire only as an amusement; for my principal aim and design was, to pry into the antiquities of such countries as I should chance to visit, and to add such

reflections thereto, as from time to time might occur by way of improvement; to examine, with all the accuracy and exactness imaginable, the several religions each nation profess'd, their manners, customs, politics, government, and modes of dress; as also, their more solemn rites and ceremonies in regard to births, marriages, and interments. In short, to pry into the nature of each soil, whether barren or fruitful; to take a survey of their cities, buildings, and other curiosities, with all the accuracy I was able, in order that I might give a full and true account of every particular of any moment or importance, that occurred to me in my travels, upon my return to my friends and relations.

I set out from the Hague, the place of my nativity, on the 28th of July 1701, for Amsterdam, where I arriv'd till the 30th, and the next day, about four in the afternoon, I arriv'd at the Texel in the common passage-boat.

No sooner was I got ashore, but I heard, that the Oudenard, a man of war, Capt. Roemer Vlack commander, who was appointed to convoy the Russia fleet, had weigh'd anchor about nine o'clock that very morning, and set sail from that harbour, together with five or six merchant-men, who were bound for the port of Archangel. As the vessel, in which I propos'd to make my voyage, was not at that time arriv'd, I went out to meet her, and on the 1st of August, I embarked about ten in the morning. She was a pretty smart sailer, had eight guns, and eighteen hands to work her. Her name was the St. John Baptist, and one Gerard Buis, of Sardam, was her commander. The wind being at west-south-west, we tript it, in order to get into the Texel; and there we moored between eleven and twelve.

On August the second, about nine in the morning, we weigh'd anchor, and got safe out at sea by one o'clock that afternoon; at which time, our pilot took his leave of us, and I deliver'd into his care a packet of letters, directed to some

1701

July 23.
His departure from the Hague.

August 1

August 2.

1701 of my most intimate friends, and by north, on us, at which time we met nine or ten ships, some westward, and some eastward, and at midnight, and to continue. At noon we were at west-south-west. August, about 10 a bell's gun, and by west. I present, and we of several vessels, quite different ports, the north and north upon which day ship, some westward, and some eastward, who intend to us their next day, we met of the same company the wind backed and as the weather display'd all the time time. The day, sailing about westward, we beat east, and before which we met a large, without any, as the day. On the 1st of August, the 1st of north had continuing rain, ing about this sea, with a sharp-pointed sailer commonly called Hollander; very large. A wind by the ship's side times bigger than withstanding they beat, yet they were less than they were when to be met in seas. After a good weather, the

On the 16th

0, as from time to time way of improvement; to the accuracy and exactness of the several religious their manners, customs, and modes of dress; more solemn rites and regard to birth, marriages, and other ceremonies. In short, to the nature of each soil, whether fruitful; to take a further cities, buildings, and others; with all the accuracy in order that I might give an account of every particular of importance, to me in my travels, up to a to my friends and rela-

from the Hague, the place of my birth, on the 28th of July 1701, when I carried out to sea, and the next day, about afternoon, I arrived at the common postage-bort. I was I got ashore, but I was the Oudenard, a man of the Roemer Vlact commander, pointed to convey the Russia weight anchor about nine a very morning, and set sail harbour, together with five merchant-men, who were bound out of Archangel. As the which I proposed to make my us not at that time arrived, to meet her, and on the I embarked about ten o'clock, I was a pretty smart ship. She was a pretty smart ship, and eighteen hands. Her name was the St. Ger. and one Gerard Buis, of was her commander. The wind was her commander. We trip it, west-south-west, we trip it, to get into the Texel; and moored between eleven and

moored the second, about nine o'clock, we weighed anchor, and at one o'clock the pilot took out at which time, our pilot took us, and I delivered into some of letters, directed to some

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1701

of my most intimate acquaintance. We made the best of our way, north-west and by north, till night came upon us, at which time we steered more to the northward, and varied our course for north-north-west. In our passage, we met nine or ten sail; some steering eastward, and others bound for Holland. At midnight we were becalmed, and so continued till the next morning. At noon we had a small breeze at west-south-west. On the fourth of August, about break of day, we had a brisk gale, and steered our course north and by west. The weather was very precarious, and we were within sight of several vessels, which were bound for quite different ports. The wind veered to the north and north-west on the fifth, upon which day we met with several ships, some whereof were fishermen from Greenland, who very frankly communicated to us their various success. The next day, we met with some others of the same occupation. On the eighth, the wind tacked about to the west; and as the weather was very fine, we displayed all the canvas we had for some time. The wind, however, soon after shifting about to the south and south-east, we bore away to the north, which lie at a very small distance from Norway, without being conscious where we were, as the weather was dark and hazy. On the 9th, we got into 61 degrees of north latitude, the weather still continuing rainy. Whilst we were roving about this sea, we espied a large fish, with a sharp-pointed head, which the sailors commonly call a Hullen. Soon after, several others appeared in view, called Potkoppem; the heads of these were very large. A whole shoal of them passed by the ship's side; some of them ten times bigger than a Porpoise; and notwithstanding they were as long as our boat, yet they were broader, in proportion than they were long. These are no where to be met with but in the northern seas. After a great variation of wind and weather, the sky proved clear and serene.

August 16.

On the 16th day, about seven in the

3

1701

morning, we made land, that is to say, we discovered the rocks or mountains that lie nearest the northern coast, distinguished, in our charts, by the name of the Loeffoert rocks, which are of a considerable height, and lie at some distance from one another, as the reader will plainly perceive by consulting plate I.

As soon as we had got within due compass, I drew a sketch of the other part of the island, with the points which project, where I observed several other rocks that were much smaller, which, at the distance of about two or three leagues, seemed to be joined to the island above-mentioned.

We proceeded after this, with all the tranquillity imaginable, in company with divers other vessels which we met with by mere accident; and every now and then we could plainly perceive fishes half as long as our ship, and proportionably broad, with heads of a monstrous size. There are some of them (as we were informed by persons that had seen them dead) that appear spiral, like a stair-case. Here likewise we saw a large flight of birds, not much unlike our ducks, or divers, but somewhat smaller. Their bills were very sharp; and, tho' black above, were white below. All this night and the next day, the weather was foggy, accompanied with small rain. About eight in the morning, we fell in with a vessel, that set sail from Hamburg on the 30th of July, and was bound for Archangel. As the fog still continued, tho' we were near land, we could not discern it; but we perceived it plain enough as soon as the sky cleared up.

As we pursued our Voyage, we came soon into the latitude of 72 degrees, 36 minutes north, not far from the land of Loppe, and a high, rocky mountain, which lay on the south-east of us. There we met with a French ship, the captain whereof came on board us; and as he could talk no other language than his own, and nobody, except my self, could understand what he said, I acted the part of his interpreter. He acquainted us, that he came from Bayonne, and had been out about five months; that he had taken a Greenland voyage, and was on his return home;

Plate I.
Mountains
on the coast
of Norway.

See plate II.

August 17.

THE TRAVELS OF

1701

home; that he had been very successful, had nine whales on board, and had taken the last, not above four or five leagues distance from the place where we then were; and that he was not without hopes of adding one or two more to his stock in hand, before he quitted that coast; and thereupon desired, to know whether we had seen any of them país by us.

A remarkable whale.

Our master having received him in the most courteous manner, he assured us, that the teeth of one of his whales in particular were no less than five inches long; that the blubber extracted from him filled thirty-two casks; and that the salt, which he had drained from behind his neck, had filled seven and an half more. And on our seeming surpris'd at his account, he added, that this was not the only time of his meeting with such good success; that the said salt would be refined on his arrival at Bayonne, in order to be exported to foreign parts; that amongst its several other good qualities, it was an exceeding fine lotion, or wash for the ladies; that it cleared their complexions, and gave them a youthful bloom; that it was a specific remedy besides in divers disorders, and, in short, was a very valuable commodity. — He attempted, in the prosecution of his discourse, to convince us, if he could, that the Balques were the first who ventured to take a voyage to Greenland. --- Here we met with several other large vessels, and pursued our voyage in the evening, notwithstanding there was no dependance on the weather.

August 20.

Ile of Loppe.

August 24.

August 25.

A falcon seen.

On the twentieth, about eight in the morning, we got within six or seven leagues of the island of Loppe, which lay south east of us; but as the weather still continu'd dark and hazy, we could not discern it. On the twenty-fourth the fog was so thick, that we could scarce distinguish one object from another the length of the ship. On the twenty-fifth, we were got in the latitude of seventy-two degrees, twenty-four minutes. In the evening we were becalmed, and it was a prodigious fog all night, during which, one of our ship's crew took a large falcon, that had settled on one of our top sails;

1701

but it proved so very sullen, that it would not be tempted to touch any thing, tho' offer'd divers kinds of provisions. As the fog and the rain still continued, we did not make land till the twenty eighth, when we had reached the northward of Lambaku, the sky cleared up, and we had then a very favourable wind at south south-west, which proved highly agreeable to us at this juncture; and the more so, because, had the fog continued, we could have made no use of it for fear of running aground.

The land, which at that time we had on our star-board side, was the Russian Lapland, commonly called the Terra Firma, or continent of Lapland (*a*). It consists of a chain of mountains that are but low, nay, very little higher than the sea-shore, but at a small distance from it, where the soil is of a dark-brown colour, and very barren. In divers parts of these hills, one might perceive several heaps of snow, which gather in caverns, where they never melt all the year round.

August 29.

On the 29th, we happened to be becalmed, and in order to prevent our diving, we threw out an anchor. Soon after, however, a breeze springing up, we weighed again, and steered our course south-east, and coming in with the land we had several sail of ships in view.

August 30.

On the 30th we made our entrance into the (*b*) white sea, the waters whereof are much clearer than those of the ocean, which upon an approach to the Russian coast are of a greenish hue, and a rustet colour, on account of the rivers that disembody themselves therein.

Having passed by the mountainous coast, we came to another about a league off, which was more upon the level, and covered, for the most part, with a profusion of copse-wood. On August the 30th, about eight o'clock, we arrived near the island of Croffes, which is very rocky, and lies but a small distance from the main land. This island abounds with croffes, which are more and more conspicuous, the nearer one approaches it. As soon as we had sailed clear of this coast, we could plainly discern the land of (*c*) Russia; whereupon we steered south

Coast of Lapland.

(*a*) See the end of this chapter.

The island of Croffes.

August 30.

Russia.

south

1701

fairly well and by sea on the eastward a great way into the we saw seventeen upon the coast, to added eleven; together England, and came fishon water, before angel, and about a town. On the 31st found our number one. There were eight English, including those 2 for us into that an As the weather waited only for people into the river; but at latory, one of the H great detriment; it on the shore, upon a river. We were not a disaster, having been the Muscovites had marks, being apprehensive vision; as they had a before this accident, river, and had struck parts adjacent, with mon ponds. Snow wife, growing in a cold day of the p towards the morning unapparently an aground, fled from the too The pilots, however, assistance that attended the river, accompanying of our country, which became and fine without the least a foot of meadow-gro small trees, which both sides towards the kind of croffes, or years by plate III.

On the second of us had pilots, one E cepted, and about eleven ing, we were well understood toward the east. W

very fallen, that it would to touch any thing, tho' ds of provisions. As the a hill continued, we did till the twenty eighth, reached the northward of sky cleared up, and we favourable wind at south which proved highly agree- is juncture; and the morn d the fog continued, we de no use of it for fear of nd.

which at that time we had d side, was the Russian only called the Terra Fir- t of Lapland (a). It con- of mountains that are but little higher than the sea- small distance from it, where black-brown colour, and ve- dvers parts of these hills, ive several heaps of snow, caverns, where they ne- near round.

we happened to be be- order to prevent our driv- at an anchor. Soon after, we freeze springing up, we and steered our course coming in with the land and hill of snow in view,

we made our entrance into sea, the waters whereof er than those of the o- pon an approach to the e of a greenish hue, and ; on account of the ri-ogue themselves therein. ed by the mountainous to another about a league more upon the level, and e most part, with a pro-

On August the

we arrived

the night

of Coles,

which is ve-

lies but a small distance

land. This island abounds

which are more and more

which one approaches

ne nearer one of this

we had sailed clear of this

ld plainly discern the land

; whereupon we steered

south

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1701

South-west and by south, leaving Cape Gris on the eastward of us, which projects a great way into the sea. Before sun-set, we saw seventeen vessels riding at anchor upon the coast, to which number we added eleven; together with two from England, and came to an anchor, in three fathom water, before the river of Archangel, and about ten leagues from the town. On the 31st, in the morning, we found our number encreased to twenty one. There were likewise eleven Dutch, eight English, and two Hamburghers, including those that left the Texel before us into that number.

August 31.

As the weather was perfectly fine, we waited only for proper pilots, to bring us into the river; but as they proved very dilatory, one of the Hamburghers being too resolute and presumptuous, was determined to rely on his own conduct; but to his great detriment; for he ran with violence on the shore, upon the larboard side of the river. We were not any ways surprized at his disaster, having been informed before, that the Muscovites had taken up all the sea-marks, being apprehensive of a Swedish invasion; as they had appeared, some weeks before this accident, at the mouth of the river, and had struck all who lived in the parts adjacent, with a more than common panick. Six of the English likewise, growing impatient at the unmerciful delay of the pilots, weighed anchor towards the morning; but as two of them unhappily ran aground, the other four desisted from the too dangerous attempt.

The pilots, however, coming to their assistance that afternoon, they failed up the river, accompanied by a small vessel of our country, who, by the favour of fortune and fine weather, cast anchor without the least damage, before a large spot of meadow-grounds, abounding with small trees, which extend themselves on both sides towards the river, forming a kind of crescent, or half moon, as appears by plate III.

Meadow grounds.

Plate III.

Septem. 2.

On the second of September, all of us had pilots, one English ship only excepted, and about eleven o'clock that morning, we were all under sail, steering our course toward the east. We went over several

I

5

1701

flats, where we had not above fifteen or sixteen foot water, and cast anchor about three o'clock near those meadow-grounds, being about six leagues distant from Archangel, the hay being at that time just cocked upon the ground. The English and the rest continued there some time, as well as we; for no vessel was permitted to lie nearer the town, at which place every captain was obliged to make his personal appearance.

I embarked, therefore, with the rest about five o'clock, proposing to take the shortest way between the islands; but we found, to our no small mortification, that we had lost our way. We began, in short, to despair of getting again within our knowledge; but meeting, very providentially, with a small vessel under the care of a Muscovite, we begged the favour of him to take us likewise under his guidance and direction, as the night was coming upon us apace, and as the weather was very dark and gloomy; for notwithstanding there were four captains in company, I am fully persuaded we had steered the compass three times round at least.

At last, however, we discovered the beacon of one of the islands, near which we perceived soon after, a Russian bark riding at anchor. It was now, not only midnight, but it rained extremely hard, and was very dark, for which reason, we determined to tarry here till we had light sufficient to direct us to the shore; besides, the water was too shallow for us to make the attempt, had we been so inclined; for we would have landed, had not that been the real case, and made a fire in the woods. Soon after day-break, we proceeded on our passage, and reached the New Dwinko (which lies at about three leagues distance from the city) by six or seven o'clock. Here we continued for some time; for we were not allowed to advance any farther, till we had a free permission from the commanding officer there. As there were but a very few houses in the place, the inhabitants were all very busy in erecting forts, in order to defend themselves, in case of any sudden insult from their enemies.

C

They

New Dwinko.

of their way in their long-
other galliot, which had
but was then, however,
this, they returned to their
that lay at the mouth of the
New Dwinko, in the dead
and at a time of the year
very seldom, if ever, to-
from above the horizon.
ment having exasperated
it degrees, they vented their
ment on the light-house,
t on fire, and by demolishing
villages, one called Kœp, and
lieu. The former, indeed,
even hours distance from the
same side; but the latter lies
it way, and on the other side
the Sea; where, after a short
some days, they steered their
swards. The Muscovites be-
ved at the departure of such
villages, fell to drinking what
eales had left them against
one; which, as there was
made too free with, and
is, in the height of their
their selves for their good

A misfor-
tune by
gunpowder.

set fire to a barrel of gun-
powder, which blew up the best part of
the vessel, by this unforeseen misfortune,
were killed on the spot, and
more, were wounded. The
ever, lost but one man, as
by this unhappy accident,
falling into the water, the
it up, and disposed of it

A misfor-
tune by
gunpowder.

orth, several of our vessels
before the town, but not till
been duly searched for con-

the vessel, that still lay at the
the river for want of a pilot,
now have come up, but upon
bold attempt, very unfor-
ground. The next day, to
misfortune, the wind blew so
high, and the waves ran so high,
is no possibility of getting on
e any of her cargo; and as
it encreased, instead of sal-
ed all on a sudden to that
degree,

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1701

degree, that in twenty minutes time she
had no less than seven foot water in her
hold. By the help of a few ropes, and
a small vessel, the hands on board made
shift, indeed, to save themselves and their
cloaths; but that was all they could do;
for the cargo, which principally consisted
of a large quantity of tobacco, was all
absolutely lost. It was great pity; for
she was one of the finest vessels that had
ever been seen in those parts. She car-
ried no less than three hundred lasts, and
tho' they mounted, indeed, but eighteen
guns, and had no more than thirty hands
on board, she was bored for forty guns.
In a short time, she sank so deep, that
the sea washed quite over her. She was

Septem. 6.

7

1701

called the Resolution, and one captain
Brains was her commander. The Ham-
burgher, of which we took notice some
time before, and hinted her running a-
ground on the last day of August, had
inevitably met with the like misfortune,
had not her crew happily embraced the
opportunity of the fair weather, to un-
lade her, and set her a-float again; for
the place where this last ran a-ground
was, in fact, a much more dangerous one,
than that where the English ship was
lost. To conclude, by the favour of the
tide, notwithstanding all the dangers to
which we had been exposed, we arrived
at last, in safety, at our wished for
Port.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Lapland, the most northerly part of
Europe, is surrounded by the frozen Ocean on
the north east and west, and lies between ten
and thirty-five degrees of east longitude, and
between sixty-five and seventy two degrees of
north latitude. The north east part thereof is
subject to Russia, and called Russian Lapland;
the north-west part of it is subject to Den-
mark, and called Norwegian Lapland; and
that part of Lapland which lies south of these
is called Swedish Lapland. But the exact li-
mits of these divisions is not known, the peo-
ple generally leading a wandering life, and
having very few towns, but live in huts, un-
der the snow, two thirds of the year. Here
are very few animals or vegetables. The
Rein-Deer is the most useful animal they have,
which draws their sledges over the snow with
surprising swiftness; his skin also serves them
for cloathing, and his flesh for food. They
hunt foxes, martens, ermins, and other ani-
mals, proper to their climate, whose furs they
sell to their southern neighbours. In Swedish
Lapland, about Torné and the Bothnic Gulph,
they have mines of copper and iron which the
Swedes work, and boast they have made
Christians of many of their Lapland subjects;
but 'tis certain they have not improved their
morals; for, when you have furnished them
with any heady, strong liquors, they are fel-
dom sober as long as they last.

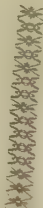
(b) White-Sea is a bay of the Frozen
Ocean, in the north of Muscovy, situate be-
tween Russian Lapland and Samoiëda, at the
bottom of which bay stands the city of Arch-

angel. This was the only sea the Russians
had any communication with, till their con-
quest of Livonia.

(c) Russia, or Muscovy, comprehends great
part of the continent of Europe and Asia, ex-
tending from twenty-four to one hundred and
thirty degrees of eastern longitude, and between
forty five and seventy-two degrees of northern
latitude, bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the
north; by the Pacific Ocean and China on
the east; by Chinese Tartary, the Mogul's,
Usbeck, and Circassian Tartars on the south;
and by Poland, the Baltic Sea, Swedish Fin-
land and Lapland, and Norwegian Lapland
on the west; extending three thousand miles
and upwards in length from east to west; and
one thousand five hundred miles in breadth
from north to south; but two thirds of it are
not cultivated, and scarce inhabited; and the
extreme north is not habitable, and produces
scarce any vegetables; but the middle and
southern provinces are, many of them, as
fruitful as any in Europe or Asia, producing
all manner of corn and fruits which do not re-
quire a very warm sun; silk and wine, and
the tropical fruits they are pretty much stran-
gers to. The Russians do not as yet trade
much on their own bottoms; their naval stores,
linnen, leather, furs, iron, and other produce
of their country are exported in foreign ship-
ping, and the same shipping carries them the
produce of the southern countries of Europe.
The government, however, have, of late
years, built a great many ships of war, and
they are equal, if not superior at sea, either to
the

men of figure are liable to an instrument that tears the bones, or cut-galled till they are to stand. The Russians are of them, of the Greek church, from papists and protestants in ; they are more rigorous in either, those being ennobled birds of the year.

est longitude 40. 12. lat. port town of the province of Sea, source on the river Dwina, in the White Sea, and four hundred east of Peterburgh, the only villa for many years, and, first the English in the year 1553. as a town of good trade, and as build some of their men of



Manners, Habitations,

chains, and other trifles of re, which they sell in the e way, and amongst the fa- have free permission to fur- es with what wood they or their occasions out of the the men and women are stature; and the latter are arkable for their little feet. complexion, 'tis of a very fallow most of them have long eyes ecks, they are no very a- is. They have a language, 'tis peculiar to themselves; maturing knowledge, mos- Russian tongue. As to their are all in general clad in Reindeer: To which they tion of an upper garment, down from their necks to the hair of these mantles (if them so) being always turned id those worn by the women colours. Some of that sex, who

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

9

who have a little better taste for dres than their neighbours, add slips of scarlet, or purple cloth, by way of improvement. The mens hair, which is as black as jet, hangs about their ears, in a loose, disorderly manner, like that of real savages; which, when it begins to grow too long and troublesome, they cut off by handfuls at once, without the least regard to art or contrivance. One part of the womens hair, indeed, is tied up, and embellished here and there with round pieces of copper, fastened on by fillets of scarlet cloth, in order to give them a better air and grace. On their heads, they generally wear fur-caps; the outside whereof are for the most part black; tho' all of them are white within. Such of the women as are incurious, and wear their hair loose and disheveled, are scarcely to be distinguished from the men, who are for the most part beardless, or at most have only some few hairs upon their upper lips, which proceeds, as it is highly probable, from their strange kind of diet. Some of them wear, moreover, waistcoats and breeches made of the same skins, with white boots; and the only difference in the last particular between the men and the women is this, that the latter add slips, or lifts of black upon theirs. The thread which they generally use is made of the sinews of the beasts they kill. When they are inclined to be a little more cleanly than ordinary, that is to say, when they happen to sweat, or are at their meals, they make use of very fine raspings, or birch saw-dust, with which they are all plentifully provided, instead of handkerchiefs or towels. Their tents are made of the bark of trees, which are sewn together in long slips, and hang down to the ground, in order to defend them from the inclemency of the weather; they have an opening, however, above, to prevent them from being smothered with smoke; the tops, therefore, must, by consequence, be perfectly black; tho', in all the other parts, they are of a yellow, or reddish hue; as they are supported by poles, the tops whereof appear some feet above the rest of the tent. The door-ways to these their little huts are for the most part about four feet in height,

and are covered with a large piece of the same bark, which is made to fall up and down at pleasure, and their fire-place stands in the center.

As to their diet, they feed for the generality on the carcasses of oxen, sheep, horses, or any other carrion they meet with in their way; or what is given them by strangers. Sometimes they make a hearty meal (as they are not over dainty) of the guts and garbage of the creatures above mentioned, which they boil, indeed, first; and when ready, fall to, without either bread or salt.

During the short time I was amongst them, I perceived a large kettle upon the fire, plentifully stocked with these delicious viands; which their cooks took no manner of pains with; tho' no pots in the world sure ever wanted skimming more. In one part of the tent there was heaped up a profusion of raw horse-flesh, which the reader may easily imagine was a most shocking sight. After taking a full survey of the tent within, I took a draught of it with my pencil, as appears by plate VI.

See Plate
VI

Sept. 1

Whilst I was about my little sketch, they hovered round about me, and looked upon me with more than common attention; from whence I perceived, that they were so far from being ignorant of my design, that they testified some very visible marks of their approbation. In this here represented, there lay an infant, about two months old, in a kind of cradle, or rather tray, made of a yellow coloured wood; in some measure resembling the top of a trunk. This cradle had at the head of it, a half hoop, and was hung up, hammock-like, with two ropes, upon a pole. It was covered over, in the form of a tent, with a grey cloth, but open both above and on one side, in order to take the child out or in, as occasion should require. The infant was in swaddling-cloths of the same colour, and bound about the breast, middle and feet with cords; its head, however, and part of its neck, was bare. Tho' the people themselves, it is true, make but a shocking figure, the poor, helpless babe

D

af-

1701

1701

appeared agreeable enough, and was tolerably white.

Not having time sufficient to make an end of my draught; as some of the women and children were absent and in the woods, I determined to leave it unfinished till my friend and I came back; so that we proceeded directly on our way, and was not long before our arrival at his rural habitation.

Extraordinary Tur-nips.

Whilst we were here, one of his servants brought us divers sorts of turnips, of various colours, and more beautiful than any I had ever seen before. Some were of a purple hue; like one of our plumbs; others grey and white; others again of a yellowish cast, streaked with a red, as fine as our finest lake, or vermilion, and more agreeable to the eye than the carnation itself. Some of these I drew upon papers in water-colours, and sent them away to Holland, in a box of dry sand, to a virtuoso of my acquaintance, who was a great admirer of all curiosities, in their kind. Those which I had painted on canvas, I brought with me to Archangel, where, when I produced them in company, scarce any one of the spectators could be prevailed on to believe that I had copied them from nature; till at last, for their conviction, I produced the originals themselves. This I think is a plain demonstration, that the inhabitants of that place, pay but very little regard to such beauties of nature. In number V. you have a perfect representation of them.

Septem. 13.

See Plate V.

On the thirteenth I returned to the Samoëds, and took a draught of the inside of one of their tents, which I laid open on both sides, in order to be the more exact.

Tents of the Samoëds.

Plate VI.

I had my friend with me, and three female Samoëds standing by, one of whom held the cradle before mentioned, in the manner I desired her, in her husband's preference, as the plate expresses it in number VI.

These tents, for the generality, are full of the skins of the rein-deer, which they make use of, not only to sit on, but to rest upon a-nights; so that this, together with the manner of their cookery, which

is seldom any thing better than carrion, creates such a stench as is intolerable to those who are not accustomed to it.

My friend, who sat on one side of me whilst I was taking a draught of the cradle, was so far influenced by the noisome smell, that he bled at the nose, and was forced to get into the air, notwithstanding we were plentifully provided both with brandy and tobacco. Nor is this incident in the least to be wondered at; since the people themselves, through their nastiness, smell very strong and offensive.

As soon as ever I could, with any convenience, I got out of my filthy situation, and prevailed on them to come to my lodgings at Archangel, and bring with them one of their handsomest women, dressed as fine as they could make her in their way, in order that I might draw her picture. They not only assured me that they would comply with my request, but fulfilled their promise. I drew her accordingly, as she appears in plate VII.

Plate VII.
A representation of a Samoëd woman.

Nearness of her dress.

They dress (as I observed before) in the skins of rein-deers, decorated with streaks of white, grey, and black. The woman they brought with them, was dressed up like a bride, and as fine as their fashion would admit of, and, indeed, she appeared perfectly neat, as the sailors say, from head to stern. She kept her eyes steadily fixed on mine, and seemed so highly delighted with what I was about, that one of her companions grew jealous of her, and seemed affronted because I refused to draw her picture likewise. The trouble that attended the taking a draught of the first was sufficient to determine me not to oblige the second; especially as my curiosity induced me to draw the picture of the man that accompanied them, and who was the husband of the former. For which reason, I desired him, the first time he came my way, to dress himself in his winter-habit, which he accordingly did in a day or two after. His upper garment was one entire skin, whereto the cap which he then had on his head was fastened. He put it on and off, as we do our shirts; so that nothing but his face appeared; the gloves likewise which

Picture of a Samoëd man.

His habit.

he

1701

he put on were made of his coat; and to observe that I had been for the which were well-fitted to his human creature. A were fastened below dress of his, however as I had a large fire the poor man was in the necessity of pulling it outing his legs with turning every now and recover his lost spirits.

I have represented

plate VIII, with a long as an indication of it he and his countryman on. On one side of the

oldest girls, and the he and the most that those decorations, which he gave him, that just expiring, which, by, he could to be words where he killed him; and that after head to me, that I original, he was both sent of it; for such a is looked upon by the as a cat's head is. Tho' this horse, at all, was little less age; yet he was precise; and the man talk with so much pleasure would of a fat ox. A painted one of his Reindeer, I delineated his the points out of the many with them while ing. This gives them their back, with a which comes over On one side of him, a bundle of white mision of the favorite Deer, of which I have come twice in another Deer's head, I must it somewhat larger than was with this ven

1701

Horses fly from the Rein-Deer.

I observed, whilst we were upon the river, that every horse startled, and flew with fear, both from the Rein-Deer and his driver, and from every other Rein-Deer that approached them, whether har-nessed in sledges or not. Nay, the horses in the city will avoid them, if possible; which is a plain indication, that those creatures, as well as those Samoëds, are the objects of their terror.

Their twilitude.

These Rein-Deer run with an incredible velocity; they regard not in the least whether their path be beaten or not; they run, as they are directed by their driver, with an equal pace, let the road be ever so bad, with their noses in the air, and their horns upon their back. They never sweat but when they are tired; and then they loll out their tongues on one side of their mouths; and when excessively hot, they pant as dogs do.

The manner of taking them.

The method observed by those that catch them is this. They have three different kinds of darts. The first, like common arrows, have one point only; the second two; and the third is somewhat like a wedge, and very sharp before; but the reader will have a more perfect idea of them by consulting the representation of the quiver in the plate.

Darts of the Samoëds.

These darts are called Streli by the Samoëds, but by the Russians Sterla. Their bow is distinguished by the name of Loack. When they go out a squirrel-hunting, they make use of another sort of dart; which is blunt at the end, in the manner of a pear, and is made either of wood, bone, or horn; which kills them, however, as surely as if they were sharp; but then they no ways damage their skins or furs, which, were they pierced thro', would not be so saleable, or fetch so good a price.

The hunting the Rein-Deer.

When they hunt the Rein-Deer in the winter season, the method observed is this. They furnish themselves, in the first place, with a sort of skates, made of wood, near eight feet in length, but not above half a foot in breadth, which they fasten to their feet with a sort of a strap both before and behind. When they are thus commodiously provided, they will skim over the ice and snow with a velocity almost incredible. These wooden

1701

skates are lined at the bottom with Rein-Deer skins, in order to prevent them from casually falling backwards, and to enable them to stop with the greater ease, whenever they are inclined to halt, or are fatigued, as they are ascending any hill. These sportsmen carry a long staff in their hands, not unlike our paring-shovels, with which they throw the snow at the Deer, in order to make them fly the faster towards the place where they have planted proper toils to secure them; but this is practised only, when they are at too great a distance for their darts to do any material execution. At the head of these staves there is a small ring, about four or five inches in circumference, with cords which cross each other, like chequer-work, by the assistance whereof, they stop themselves at pleasure; the point whereof, which runs not only through this ring, but considerably beyond it, penetrating the snow, and stopping at the ring. When they have hunted their prey into their toils, which are spread in the manner of nets for their reception, they pursue them as fast as possible; and such as cannot happily release themselves are instantly dispatched. When they have thus secured them, they flea them, and either carry their skins to market, or reserve them for their own private use, as has been before hinted, and cut the flesh in proper pieces for the provision of their families. Such likewise as they preserve, and bring up tame, are equally advantageous to them; for they dispose of one part of them at the best price they can procure, and reserve the rest for drawing their respective sledges in the winter season. If a wild male happens to couple with a tame female, the foal is immediately killed; for, in the compass of three or four days time at farthest, it would most assuredly take its flight to the deserts. Such, however, as are tame, feed up and down the woods, amongst the huts; will come, as it were, at call, and are caught with ease. These tame Deer seek round about for their subsistence; and a kind of white moss, which they find in plenty in the Moors, is their favourite food. Nature directs them to find this moss, let it lie buried ever so deep in the snow, which they

The principal food of the Rein-Deer.

gra-

d at the bottom with Rein-
order to prevent them from
backwards, and to enable
with the greater ease, when-
inclined to halt, or are fa-
they are ascending any hill.
en carry a long staff in their
make our pairing-shovels, with
trow the snow at the Deer,
ake them fly the faster to-
re where they have planted
secure them; but this is prac-
then they are at too great a di-
it darts to do any material ex-
the head of these staves there
about four or five inches
2, with cords which cross
like checker-work, by the
ereof, they stop themselves
the point whereof, which
through this ring, but con-
round it, penetrating the snow,
at the ring. When they
their prey into their toils,
read in the manner of nets
tion, they pursue them as
; and such as cannot hap-
nemies are instantly dis-
when they have thus secured
za them, and either carry
market, or reserve them for
private use, as has been before
out the flesh in proper pieces for
of their families. Such like

1701

for

1701

for

A descrip-
tion of the
Rein-Deer.

Their water
chase after
Seals.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

13

1701

for

gradually remove with their feet till they accomplish their ends. This (as we observed before) is their principal food, but when they cannot find it, which is sometimes the case, rather than starve, they will take up with grass and hay. As to their form, they very nearly resemble our stags, but they are infinitely stronger, and have much shorter legs, as the reader may clearly perceive by the print. Tho' these creatures for the generality are of a whitish colour, yet there are some few of them grey; and their hoofs are of black horn. They change their antlers annually in the spring; at which time they are covered with a sort of black, soft skin, which goes off, however, at the approach of winter. Very few of them live longer than eight or nine years.

Besides this land-chase of their Rein-Deer; they have another by water after the Seals; of which there are whole shoals in the (c) White Sea, during the two months of March and April, where 'tis imagined, they come from (d) Nova Zembla, in order to propagate their species. They copulate on the ice, where the Samoëds lie in wait for them, disguised in such an artful manner, as renders them unsuspected, and enables them, with greater ease than otherwise they could do, to surprize them. The method they observe is this. They get upon the ice, which sometimes extends itself near half a league into the sea. They carry a staff in their hands, with a harpoon fixed at the end of it, to which is fastened a line of about twelve fathom in length. On first sight of their prey, they crawl along on their bellies, and get as near them as possible, without being discerned, whilst they are busy in the act of copulation, but lie still, and seemingly lifeless, in case their approach disturbs them. By slow degrees, however, they glide forwards, till they get within their reach, at which time they dart their harpoons at them with all their strength, and very seldom fail of wounding them. The creature, sensible of the pain, immediately takes to the water. The Samoëd holds fast, and draws the line, which is either tied round his middle, or made fast to his belt, and plays with the seal 'till he is

quite spent, and then is secured in course. Sometimes it happens, that the poor creature, unable to bear his agonizing pains, which are aggravated by the saltiness of the water, jumps out again upon the ice, where he is killed directly. When thus taken, his flesh serves the sportsman for provision, his skin contributes towards his cloathing, and the oil that proceeds from him is disposed of at public sale. This water-chase, however, frequently proves fatal to the hunter; for it sometimes falls out, that the seal, which is very strong, after he feels himself deeply wounded, hurries into the water with the utmost precipitation, and before the Samoëd can get rid of the line, so fastened as before-mentioned, round his middle or to his belt, is all on a sudden dragged down at once into the water, and inevitably lost.

They practise much the same stratagem, when they go armed in pursuit of the Rein-Deer; for they disguise themselves in the skin of one of those animals, and creep gently along in the midst of such as are tame, till they are within the reach of their dart. They take care to get on the leeward side of them; for, as the sense of smelling in these creatures is peculiarly quick, they would otherwise be liable to meet with a disappointment. But by these stratagems, for the most part they gain their ends, which sometimes turn out to a very good account.

This method of their hunting was communicated to me, by the Samoëd's wife, who came to my apartment to have her picture drawn. There was not one of their women, that, in my opinion, had such good features, or was so affable in her conversation. I made it my business, therefore, to get into her good graces, in order to procure all the information I possibly could. I found, however, that nothing was so prevailing, or proved so infallible a charm as my brandy bottle, with which she was perfectly delighted, and with which I was ready to oblige her. In this country, the women drink as hard as the men, and indulge themselves with liquor, till they can scarce stand on their legs. And this was the true state of the case

E

with

The rein-
deer food
of the
Rein Deer.

1701

with my fair favourite; and her husband discerning it, fell a laughing till his sides ached. After she had rolled a little upon the floor, she got upon her legs again, and fell into a fit of tears, upon an imaginary notion, that she was childless, tho' she had no less than four at the same time living. This part of the story was communicated to me by my landlady. Such odd kind of fancies will sometimes possess the brains of those who are far gone in liquor. As I was discoursing with her one day on the subject of children, she acquainted me with the manner of their disposing of them after their decease, in which there is something peculiarly remarkable, and not unworthy I think of the attention of the reader. When a child at the breast, whom they always suckle for a year at least, happens to die, before it has tasted of any kind of meat, they wrap the babe up in a cloth, carry it to the wood, and there hang it on a tree.

The manner
and customs
of the Samo-
ëds.

As their customs and manners are widely different from those of all other nations, I made it my study to get all the information relating thereto that possibly I could. As soon as a child comes into the world, it is named either according to the creature that first enters their tent, be it man or beast; or else after the first they meet with, when they go abroad; nay, sometimes they name it after the first object they set their eyes on, be it animate or inanimate, beast, bird, river, or tree. Children that dye after they have done sucking, be they older or younger, are deposited in the earth between two boards.

Their mar-
riages.

When they are inclined to marry, they look out for one, as others do, who strikes their eye and fancy most, and enter into an agreement with her relations for the purchase, in the same manner as we do for an ox or a horse. Sometimes they give two, three, or four rein-deers for a spouse elect, each of which for the generality is worth about fifteen or twenty florins; sometimes they deposit a sum of money of equal value, according as the parties can agree. They are confined to no number of wives; but may have as many

as they can well maintain; some amongst them, however, that are more continent than their neighbours, sit down well satisfied, as we do, with one only. If a wife happens to give disgust, the husband has nothing more to do, but to return her to her relations, who are obliged to receive her; but then the purchase-money, or the effects given are all sunk. There are other Samoëds, as I have been informed, who are inhabitants of the sea-coasts, and some who reside in Siberia, who purchase their wives in the same manner as these do, but then, in case of dislike, they sell them for the best price they can procure.

When a father or mother dies, their bones are preserved and never interred; But in case they are very far advanced in years, and perfectly helpless, they are thrown into the next river, as I have been credibly informed by those who have been eye-witnesses of the inhuman action, tho' they do not look on it as such. In a word, after a man is once dead, they dress him in the same manner as he used to be clothed when living, and after having dug a pit, deep enough for the reception of him, they cover him over with the mould; with the additional ceremony of hanging up his bow, and quiver, ax, hatchet, and all his other accoutrements upon some adjacent tree. The women are interred in the same manner.

Having thus fully gratified my curiosity, in regard to their manners and customs, I was very desirous of being informed of the religion they professed, and the most essential articles of their belief. In order to answer this end, I paid a visit with my friends to a particular Samoëd, whom I entertained with a profusion of brandy; for, as I observed before, that was their favourite liquor; and without such friendly treatment, they receive you but coldly, and can seldom be prevailed on to communicate their thoughts with any manner of freedom. At that very juncture, I recollected, that it is said in the Sacred Scriptures, "the Gentiles, without the knowledge of the law, did nevertheless, by the light of nature, fulfil the law"; from whence I immediately inferred, that in all probability these poor

ill-

illiterate people might be just an imperfect people. Having it in my mind to discourse with you on this important topic. Their was by them a family believed, that wherever more persons in nature had their on him; that *Adon* of all the human sp work of God's hands him, but that none o went to Heaven or H actions were just and p after death, he plac bore Hell, and the of uninterrupted b from all manner of p these nations, they worship to their partic the moon, and all t the objects of their ac ting, according as t leads them, they co drive homage to for beads. Before the kind of iron plate affix a large piece thereof of a comm of the length of two hand-pointed at one inward to personate a holes made in it, at a mean to represent a month. These little formed are covered o a rein-deer; to which near the tooth of a other wild creature. They have one a whom they distinguish Samoa, or Koelelino, priest, or a magician a peculiar deference imaging that by h he is capable of foret occurrences of import ill; whether they

well maintain; some amongst
er, that are more continent
neighbours, sit down well satis-
ed, with one only. If a wife
ve disgust, the husband has
e to do, but to return her to
who are obliged to receive
the purchase-money, or the
are all sunk. There are
as I have been informed,
ants of the sea-coasts, and
ide in Siberia, who purchase
in the same manner as these
; in case of distaste, they sell
best price they can procure.
ther or mother dies, their
rieved and never interred;
they are very far advanced in
perfectly helpless, they are
the next river, as I have been
amed by those who have been
as of the inhuman action, tho'
t look on it as such. In a
a man is once dead, they
the same manner as he used
ad when living, and after
a pit, deep enough for the
him, they cover him over
ld; with the additional ce-
engaging up his bow, and qui-
et, and all his other accou-
on some adjacent tree. The
interred in the same manner.
thus fully gratified my co-
egard to their manners and
was very desirous of being
the religion they professed,
it essential articles of their
order to answer this end, I
with my friends to a particular
om I entertained with a pro-
dy; for, as I observed before,
it favourite liquor; and with-
tendly treatment, their native
dibly, and can seldom be pre-
communicate their thoughts
anner of freedom. At that
; I recollect, that it is said
the Gentiles,
Scriptures, "the Gentiles,
knowledge of the law, did
by the light of nature, fulfil
om whence I immediately in-
in all probability their poor

CORNELIUS

illiterate people might form some idea, tho' but an imperfect one, of the Supreme Being. Having, therefore, first drank pretty freely, I began to enter into a serious discourse with this Samoëd on that important topic. The result of his answers was this; that both he and most of his fellow-natives were fully persuaded there was a Heaven, and a God, that made it his favourite habitation; that such Deity was by them called Heyha; that they firmly believed, that there was no being whatever more powerful; and that all things in nature had their entire dependence upon him; that Adam, the common parent of all the human species, was either the work of God's hands, or proceeded from him, but that none of his posterity either went to Heaven or Hell; that all whose actions were just and praise-worthy, would, after death, be planted in some place above Hell, and there be forever in a state of uninterrupted bliss, and entirely free from all manner of pain. Notwithstanding these notions, they pay the tribute of worship to their particular idols; the sun, the moon, and all the other planets are the objects of their adoration; but sometimes, according as their fancy or interest leads them, they are so weak as to pay divine homage to some favourite birds or beasts. Before their idols, there is a kind of iron plate planted, to which they affix a large parcel of sticks, about the thickness of a common handle for a knife, of the length of two or three inches, and sharp-pointed at one end, by which they intend to perforate a man; and by little holes made in it, at a small distance, they mean to represent his eyes, nose, and mouth. These little parcels of sticks so formed are covered over with the skin of a rein-deer; to which they generally annex the tooth of a bear, a wolf, or some other wild creature.

The priest,
or magician
of the Sa-
moëds.

They have one amongst their clan, whom they distinguish by the name of Siaman, or Koedisnick, that is to say, a priest, or a magician; and they pay a peculiar deference to him, as vainly imagining, that by his superior wisdom, he is capable of foretelling them any future occurrences of importance, either good or ill; whether they shall prove successful

LEBRUN.

in their undertakings or employments; whether persons that are sick, or within the verge of the grave, shall recover or die. In short, they entertain abundance of other idle notions of the like nature. When they apply to him for his advice on any affair of consequence, they send a messenger for him, and at his first entrance, they throw a rope about his neck, and draw it so tight that he falls down, as one dead before them: after lying speechless for some small compass of time, he begins to stir, and by slow degrees comes to himself again. Upon his offering to foretel any future event, the very blood starts out of his cheeks, and when he has ended his predictions, that bleeding ceases: if he proceeds to make farther discoveries, his cheeks bleed afresh; as I have been very credibly informed by those who have been present at these solemnities. These priests or magicians wear iron plates and rings under their vestments, which make a hideous noise at their first approach; such, however, as reside in these parts have none of them; they wear only a net made of cat-gut, or some such mark of distinction, to which they fasten the teeth of a great variety of creatures. In case one of these Siamans or Koedisnicks, happens to dye, they erect a monument of timber work, closed all round, to prevent the wild beasts from devouring his remains. When the burial-place is thus safely fenced, they lay him, stretched out at length, on the top of it, dressed in his best habits, and plant his bow, quiver, and hatchet, in some commodious and adjacent place. To this monument they fasten a rein-deer or two, in case the deceased was ever in his life time possessed of any of those animals, and there barbarously leave them to starve, if by their struglings, they have not strength sufficient to break their cords, and make their escape. All this particular detail of their religious ceremonies, I had from persons of indubitable veracity, who reside in those parts; and all this was furthermore confirmed by one Michael Ostalioff, a Russian merchant, whom I invited to my quarters for that very purpose, as I was well assured he had several times crossed Siberia both winter and summer, in his way to China, and that he had travelled over all those parts

to testify their hospitality, and not only their daughters, is themselves, when they are agreeable companions; and a stranger entreated, as it favour that they are capable on him. What a surprise is there between the cour- nations, and that of the The Russian, from whom I intelligence of all these ex- cumstances, told me more- about a week's journey these people, he met with a them towards the sea-coast, ed *Lafatze Sagstia*, or *Cop-* from the manner of their g in their tents during the which are composed, as he of the Narwhale, and we ver with snow, for no less abas successively out of the vele furnish themselves with a tivity of the Whale, which, y dried, is their principal they never stir abroad till if spring.

The Samoëds of these parts, formed a project for their use, which was this; name- would artfully too secretly Muscovite cattle between their with a particular instrument made use of for that purpose, r fine iron into their ears, with whereof the poor crea- lie languishing for a short itably die at last, and then e to find them and convey tents. These mal-practices, are in process of time dif- great numbers of them into custody, and soon after, ceremony, hung up, bone and some about the middle, example to deter others from this instantaneous punishment no doubt, with a panic, yet they ventured, it seems, y last winter, to enter upon aggruous ichene; and some of it; but

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1701

but by some means or other, they all, fortunately for them, made an absolute escape, leaving only one little helpless infant behind them, who was taken particular care of by the governor of the province, and in a few days after, admitted, by baptism, into the pale of the Russian church.

A new island.

During my residence in this place, I was likewise informed, that they had discovered, about seven years since, an island to the left of China, which had been brought under subjection to the Czar, notwithstanding it was a whole year's journey from thence to Moscow. This island, they told me, abounded in fables and furs; and might possibly afford a profusion of other commodities of equal value and importance, but what in particular they could not tell, for the place was known but to a few strangers, and the natives lived much after the same savage manner as the nations we have just been talking of.

A violent storm, 18 Sept. 1701.

On the eighteenth day of September there arose such a hurricane as blew off the roofs of a great number of houses: at that very juncture, I was at dinner with the Sieur Houtman, and had no apprehension in the least of the danger to which we were exposed; but when I was taking my leave, and had got a step or two out of the doors, several large pieces of timber fell down to the ground within a few yards of me; which startled me, and

17

1701

made me hurry into the house again for safety. As none of the family were in the least apprized of this sudden storm, they wondered at my return; but when I acquainted them with the danger I was in, and my happy escape, one of the servants went up directly into one of the garrets, and found the roof of it totally demolished. Upon the report he made, we all returned our humble thanks to Almighty God for our preservation.

Arrival of 500 Russian dragoons.

On the twenty-fifth of the same month, five hundred dragoons arrived from Moscow in four barks; and as this happened on a Sunday, there was a vast concourse of people flocked down to the water-side; who being, most of them at least, dressed in their best cloaths, made an appearance agreeable enough.

Departure of the ships for Holland

Our last ships weighed anchor, on the fourteenth of October, and set sail for Holland. All of them got safe out to sea, except the White Eagle, which unhappily ran ashore by the meadows. One half of her loading at least was taken out, before the crew could get her afloat again; but even that would never have saved her, if the weather had not proved so remarkably fair in her favour. Upon the nineteenth, however, all damages being repaired, she got out likewise safe to sea, and made the best of her way to the same port.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Samoida, the most northerly province of Russia in Europe, situate on the Frozen Ocean and the river Oby.

(b) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, formerly denominated Great Tartary, is situate between sixty and one hundred and thirty degrees of east longitude, and between forty-seven and seventy-two degrees of north latitude; being bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north; by the Pacific Ocean, China, and Chinese Tartary, on the east; by the Mogul's and Usbec Tartars on the south; and by the rivers Oby and Irtis, which separate Asiatic from European Russia on the west; being upwards of two thousand miles in length from east to west, and one thousand five hundred miles in breadth from north to south; the north of it

a cold, barren, uninhabited country, covered with snow for eight or nine months in the year; the southern provinces, a more fruitful soil, but most of the natives lead a vagrant life, like the ancient Scythians and Tartars, depending chiefly on what they take by hunting and fishing, or the produce of their flocks and herds; there are very few towns, and very little of the land cultivated, except near Tobolski or Tobolska, the capital, to which part of it the Swedish prisoners were banished, and to which the Russians send most of their prisoners, and some large colonies; but as hands are still wanted to manure the ground, great part of Siberia remains a desert. They have scarce any trade or manufactures; the principal traffic of the Muscovites of Siberia is by sledges over the lakes and frozen

1701

frozen country to China in the winter; they have been endeavouring to find a way into the sea of Japan and China by their rivers, which fall into the Frozen Ocean, but have not succeeded hitherto, as I can learn; they relate, however, that they have met with some rich mines of silver and copper in the mountains of Siberia, which they have begun to work. I include the Kalmuc Tartars within the limits of Siberia, as they acknowledge themselves subject to the Empire of Russia.

(c) White Sea. See page 7. n. b.

(d) Nova Zembla, or Newland, which the Dutch call the island of Weygats, is situate in the North, or Frozen Ocean, between fifty and eighty degrees of east longitude, and between seventy degrees of north latitude, and the north pole separated from the province of Samoieda in Russia by a narrow strait, called the Straits of Weygats. Whether it be an island, or part of some great continent is uncertain; no ships having ever passed to the northward of it, tho' many attempts have been made to find out a north-east passage to China that way. The Dutch, indeed, passed the Straits of Weygats, south of Nova Zembla, and wintered on the east side of it in the year 1596, but did not find it practicable to sail farther, for the fields of ice they met with. There are no constant inhabitants here, but the Samoëds and Ostiaks climb over the mountains of ice in the Straits, when they are frozen over, and hunt Elks and Rein-Deer here at the proper season.

(e) Oby, a great river of Russia, which rises in the Lake Kilan in Kalmuc Tartary in Asia, and running north joins the river Irtis; and continuing its course north forms the boundary between Europe and Asia till it falls into the Frozen Ocean in seventy degrees of north latitude, having run a course of two thousand miles and upwards.

(f) Jenécia, or Jenisa, a great river of Russia, that runs from south to north, through the province of Siberia, parallel to the Oby, and falls into the Frozen Ocean east of that river in seventy-two degrees of east longitude, and seventy degrees of north latitude.

(g) Lena, a great river, which rises in Siberia, in Asiatic Russia, and running north from the latitude of 55 to 72, falls into the Frozen Ocean; by which river the Russians

seem to have some expectations of finding a way to Japan and China.

1701

(h) Amur, or Amour, a large river, the source whereof is in Siberia, in about one hundred and twenty degrees of east longitude, and fifty-four degrees of north latitude, runs east through Chinesian Tartary, and falls into the Bay of Corea, in the Pacific Ocean in about one hundred and fifty degrees of east longitude.

(i) Tartary, which is the same country as the ancient Scythia, comprehended all the north of Europe and Asia, of which the Russians possess much the greatest part at present, and have given it the name of Siberia, which extends from the rivers Oby and Irtis, that divide Asia from Europe, to the Pacific Ocean. Chinesian Tartary, which lies north of China, and is bounded by Siberia on the north and west, is now the largest country that goes by the name of Tartary, possessed by one Sovereign, and for that reason is sometimes called Great Tartary. The Tartars, who lie south of Siberia and Muscovy, are the Tartars of Astracan, Circassia and Dagistan, situate north-west of the Caspian Sea. The Kalmucs, who lie between Siberia and the Caspian Sea: the Ussbec Tartars and Moguls, who lie north of Persia and India, and those of Tibet, which lie north-west of China: of these the Tartars of Astracan are subject to Muscovy; those of Circassia and Dagistan sometimes put themselves under the protection of the Russians, and sometimes acknowledge the Turks and Persians to be their Sovereigns. The Kalmuc Tartars at present acknowledge themselves subjects of Russia. The Ussbec Tartars were lately independent, but are now tributary to Kouli Kan, Sovereign of Persia, who lately took possession of their capital city Bochara. The Moguls seem to be still independent, as well as those of Tibet, which occasions this country to be called Independent Tartary sometimes; and the Tartars of Tibet are so powerful, that they are frequently at war with the Chineses. The Northern Tartary is a cold, barren country, almost always covered with snow, wherein are very few houses or inhabitants. The Southern Tartars, for the most part, enjoy a temperate climate, and a fruitful soil; but as few of them have fixed habitations, or apply themselves to cultivate the soil, but are continually moving from place to place, to find pasture for their numerous flocks and herds, that fine country produces little.

There

1701
There are some other
which still bear the name
or separated from the



A Description of

HIS CELESTIAL
and pleasant

for the building of
and on half westward
shipping, both coming
by it. When I drew
project in Number X
real vessels rising at each
of some others, which
a fleet homeward bound

This dock-yard is of
place by the letter A
head in the river, if y
plate, you will find
deck unfinished.

The village, at a distance
is marked with the letter
called Shamhol.

The city of (a) Astracan
the north-western part
lies to the north-east
(b) Persia, which disposes
the sea, about six leagues
along the banks of the
coming to the help of
is more than two miles
about three quarters
breadth. Its principal
Place, which is comp
and is divided into t
The first is inhabited
reign merchants, wh
modious warehouses t
tion of their various
to the left as you c
Here likewise the m
which annually from
the several apartment
side, for the generally
return home. Stran
accommodated here

Some expectations of finding a
id China.

1701 ~~~~~
t Amour, a large river, the
is in Siberia, in about one hun-
degrees of east longitude, and
es of north latitude, runs east
an Tartary, and falls into the
n the Pacific Ocean in about
id fifty degrees of east lon.

which is the same country as
Asia, comprehended all the
ope and Asia, of which the
much the greater part at pre-
given it the name of Siberia,
on the rivers Obj and Irja,
from Europe, to the Pacific
n Tartary, which lies north
bounded by Siberia on the
is now the largest country
ne name of Tartary, possessed
gh, and for that reason is some-
at Tartary. The Tartars, who
ria and Muscovy, are the Tar-
, Circassia and Dagistan, li-
of the Caspian Sea. The
lie between Siberia and the
Ulbec Tartars and Moguls,
Persia and India, and those
lie north-west of China: of
s of Afracan are subject to
e of Circassia and Dagistan
remains under the protection
a, and sometimes acknowledge
Persians to be their sovereigns.
Tartars at present acknowledge
ests of Russia. The Ulbec
ly independent, but are now
ast Kan, Sovereign of Persia,
possession of their capital city
Moguls seem to be full inde-
as those of Tibet, which oc-
country to be called independent
nes; and the Tartars of Tibet
h, that they are frequently at
himself. The Northern Tartar
ren country, almost always co-
ow, wherein are very few houses
The Southern Tartars, for
s, enjoy a temperate climate,
s, but as few of them have
s, or apply themselves to cul-
s, but are continually moving
place, to find pasture for their
s and herds, that fine country

There

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

19

1701 ~~~~~
There are some other countries in Europe
which still bear the name of Tartary, but these
are separated from the rest by the Palus

1701 ~~~~~
Mæotis and the Black Sea, viz. Little Tar-
tary, Crim Tartary, and Budziac Tartary,
which are all subject to the Turk.

~~~~~

C H A P. III.

A Description of Archangel. Provisions in Plenty. Revenue of the  
Customs, &c.

HIS Czarian Majesty has a spacious  
and pleasant dock-yard, set a-part  
for the building of ships, about a mile  
and an half westward of Archangel. All  
shipping, both coming and going, pass  
by it. When I drew the draught of the  
prospect in Number X. there were feve-  
ral vessels riding at anchor, in expectation  
of some others, which were to constitute  
a fleet homeward bound.

The Czar's  
dock-yard.

Plate X.

This dock-yard is distinguished on the  
plate by the letter A. At the point of  
land in the river, if you will consult the  
plate, you will find a vessel with her  
deck unfinished.

October 19.

The village, at a small distance, which  
is marked with the letter B, is commonly  
called Strambol.

The city of (a) Archangel is situate in  
the north-western parts of Muscovy, and  
lies to the north-eastward of the river  
(b) Dwina, which discharges its waters into  
the sea, about six leagues lower. It lies  
along the banks of the river; and, ac-  
cording to the best of my remembrance,  
is more than two miles in length, and  
about three quarters of a mile only in  
breadth. Its principal edifice is the Royal  
Palace, which is composed of free-stone,  
and is divided into three distinct parts.  
The first is inhabited chiefly by the fo-  
reign merchants, who have several com-  
modious warehouses there for the recep-  
tion of their various effects. These lie  
to the left as you come up the river.  
Here likewise the merchants who come  
hither annually from (c) Moscow, have  
their several apartments, where they re-  
side, for the generality, till the last ships  
return home. Strangers likewise are  
accommodated here in much the same

Archangel,  
its situation

Its Royal  
Palace.

manner. These, however, soon after  
the ships are departed, which for the most  
part is in the month of October, they re-  
move from thence to other apartments  
till they return to Moscow in November  
and December following, when they can  
travel in sledges upon the snow and ice,  
at which times the rivers may be crossed  
without the least danger.

On your entrance into the palace, you  
go under a great gate, and from thence  
into a quadrangular court, where the ware-  
houses lie both on the right and the left.  
There is a long gallery above, to which  
there are two separate stair-cafes; both  
leading to the merchants apartments as  
before-mentioned.

The second division of this palace has  
a gate, as well as the first, where there  
is another range of buildings; at the end  
whereof stands the town-house, which  
has several commodious apartments be-  
longing to it. When you have gone up  
a short flight of steps, you come directly  
into a long gallery, from whence you go  
into their courts of judicature, above  
which there is a spacious door that leads  
into the street. In these courts, all pro-  
cesses are begun and ended, except in  
cafes where sentences of death are past on  
criminals, which are exhibited in that  
place in particular where the sentence is  
past, be it where it will. Such commo-  
dities as are the peculiar property of the  
Czar, are deposited in this palace, in dif-  
ferent magazines, some of wood, and  
others of stone, erected for that particular  
purpose; the merchants, however, have  
leave sometimes to secure their goods  
there likewise. When you have passed  
the third gate, there is another range of  
buildings,

Its courts of  
judicature.



1701

buildings, for such commodities as belong to the Russians, and where likewise many of the merchants of that country have their residence; the natives, however, are not, in all respects, so well accommodated as the foreign merchants. The square before this palace is spacious enough, and extends quite down to the river. When any ships arrive here in the summer season, they raise two great timber bridges, which project a considerable way into the river for the better convenience of lading and unlading. The bridges likewise which they raise for the transportation of corn are considerably large.

The citadel.

The citadel, in which the governor himself resides, abounds with shops, where the Russians, who come there at such times as their fairs are kept, expose their various merchandizes to public sale. There is a wooden wall which extends to the very river, and surrounds it.

Ice buildings.

All the houses in this city are built with wood; or more properly speaking are composed of large pieces of timber, artfully joined together; and make an odd figure enough on the outside. However, you may meet with very commodious apartments in some of the principal houses, and especially in those which are inhabited by foreign merchants. Within, the walls are very smooth and even, and are wainscotted with proper boards, large, unpolished; the pieces of timber being intended chiefly for the safety and support of the house, without any other view.

Its flocks.

For the generality, there is a fove to each room; but the fires in them are always on the out-side; the greatest part of them are very large, and ornamental too, when artfully contrived. The Christian merchants, or, as they are otherwise called, The strangers from beyond sea, who reside amongst them, are as neat as they are in Holland, and their apartments are as richly furnished.

Its streets.

The streets are covered with broken pieces of timber, and by crossing them, without a great deal of care and precaution, a man is liable to fall, and do himself a mischief. They are so full, moreover, of rubbish, that they resemble, in many places, the ruins of fire; the snow,

however, which falls thick in winter, covers such defects, and makes all appear smooth and even.

1701

Its churches

In this city there are two churches; one set apart for the service of the Calvinists, and the other for the Lutherans; but in both, Divine service is performed twice every Sunday. They are situate near the river-side, and stand but at a small distance one from the other. Each minister resides on one side of his church; and the church-yard, where they inter their dead with the same solemnities as the Europeans do, lies between both. In winter, however, as 'tis so excessively cold, they have no public worship, 'tis true, at church; but then they meet at the minister's habitation, which is properly heated for their reception.

A prospect of the city, Plate XI.

I took the draught of this city upon the river, as I was on board one of our ships then riding at anchor, the representation whereof you'll find in plate XI. where each particular of any importance is distinguished by a numerical figure, as for instance, (1) Oespinge Bogeroedifza, that is to say, the church of the repose of the blessed Virgin Mary. (2) The Lutheran Church. (3) The church belonging to the Calvinists. (4) The German Palace. (5) The court of judicature, and the Grand Duke's Arsenal, or military store-house. (6) The Russian Palace. (7) The Gooft-house, or the house belonging to the head commissioner of the customs, which stands upon the river. (8) The great church. (9) The citadel. The governor of this city had formerly, indeed, a despotic power of proceeding; the form of its government, however, was changed but last year, at which time four burgo-masters were appointed; the first resides in this city; the second at Kolmegra, and the two others in the parts adjacent. From whence the reader may perceive, that the authority of the governor extends no farther than over the militia; since the Burgo-masters preside over the police, and all civil affairs.

There comes a grand commissioner, or principal inspector of the customs, once a year, that is to say, when the merchants generally arrive there, in order, not only

1701

to pay into and take ca-  
ving to his Czarina  
arche such merchan-  
may have occasion for  
sister, or head-master,  
or deputies, who act  
equal power, and in  
the title of Golden-Sol-  
gates; from amongst  
elected. There are or  
their, who are selected  
people, and employ  
villages; but their  
lately settled. These  
obliged to serve for a  
to receive or reward,  
does that they receive  
master, or any other  
in regard to such mat-  
dishes and revenues of  
They are expected to  
from requiring, and in  
them in case of any  
to prevent all clandestine  
house smugglers, and a  
grade. When the ves-  
are changed, and old  
their dead.

This city is plentiful  
all the necessaries and co-  
— They have a prof-  
in a very moderate y-  
chase a parridge for  
are two species of the  
upon trees, and have  
appearance of our owls  
horns eating; the ob-  
perfectly white, which  
treachery; and, in th  
country, are called K  
have here likewise tw  
of Tatars, birds of  
our workers, and ador  
feathers: the cocks are  
black, with a minute  
blue; the hens are a  
size, and their feathers  
grey. Hares likewise  
but they are sold for  
green & pie. There  
winter, and their rabbi  
may produce woodcock  
two-pence, or three-  
to



which falls thick in winter, 1701  
fects, and makes all appear

There are two churches; 1701  
for the service of the Cal-  
the other for the Lutherans;  
Divine service is performed  
Sunday. They are situated  
side, and stand but at a  
one from the other. Each  
on one side of his church;  
which stand, where they inter-  
with the two communities as  
as do, lies between both. In  
ever, as 'tis so extremely  
there is no public worship, 'tis  
h; but then they meet at  
habitation, which is pro-  
or their recreation.

The draught of this city upon  
was on board one of our ships  
at anchor, the representation  
'till find in plate XL where  
of any importance is dis-  
a numerical figure, as for  
Desjardins Bogroediza, that  
church of the repose of the  
Mary. (2) The Lutheran

Plenty of  
provisions.

This city is plentifully furnished with

all the necessaries and conveniences of life.

— They have a profusion of fowl, and  
at a very moderate price: you may pur-  
chase a partridge for two-pence. There  
are two species of these birds. One alight  
upon trees, and have somewhat of the  
appearance of our owls; but they are de-  
licious eating; the others, in winter, are  
perfectly white, which is something ex-  
traordinary; and, in the language of the  
country, are called Koeroptic. — They  
have here likewise two different kinds  
of Tetters, birds of the bigness of  
our turkeys, and adorned with very fine  
feathers: the cocks are, for the generality,  
black, with a mixture of a very deep  
blue; the hens are of a much smaller  
size, and their feathers are speckled with  
grey. Hares likewise are here so plenty,  
that they are sold for no more than a  
groat a-piece. These are white in the  
winter, and their rabbits are black. You  
may purchase woodcocks too for about  
two-pence, or three-pence a-piece at

## CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1701 to pry into and take care of such duties as  
belong to his Czarian Majesty, but to  
purchase such merchandizes as the court  
may have occasion for. This grand of-  
ficer, or head-master, has four assistants,  
or deputies, who act in his absence with  
equal power, and are distinguished by  
the title of Gostieni-Sotni, or Sub-Dele-  
gates; from amongst whom he himself is  
elected. There are other officers besides  
these, who are selected from amongst the  
people, and employed in the towns and  
villages; but their number is not abso-  
lutely settled. These subaltern officers are  
obliged to serve for a whole year, without  
the least fee or reward; and to obey any or-  
ders that they receive from the head-  
master, or any other of their superiors,  
in regard to such matters as relate to the  
duties and revenues of the Grand Duke.  
They are dispersed every where as occa-  
sion requires, and have soldiers allowed  
them in case of any opposition, in order  
to prevent all clandestine practices, and to  
secure smugglers, and all their contraband  
goods. When the year is expired, they  
are discharged, and others substituted in  
their stead.

most: they have vast numbers likewise of  
ducks, and a particular sort of them cal-  
led Gagares, which not only fly with  
prodigious velocity, but mount surprizing-  
ly high. Whilst they are on the wing,  
they make a noise not unlike the human  
voice. These swim as fast as they fly,  
but as their feet come out from behind,  
they have not the faculty or power of  
running.

Their rivers abound with fish. A  
man may purchase here as many perch as  
would serve twenty reasonable stomachs  
for twenty-pence. The best sort are  
those called the Karoetse. They are the  
smallest, indeed; but then they have a  
much finer flavour, than any we have in  
our country; for which reason, I preserved  
a small quantity of them in spirits. As  
to their shape, they very much resemble  
our roach; they are of a dark brown  
colour; but their scales are bright and  
shining. They have pike too in plenty,  
and a kind of small eels, which are very  
delicious. In short, they have vast num-  
bers of smelts, gudgeons, roach, whittings,  
flounders, and a brown fish, by them cal-  
led Garius, which is extremely fine and  
luscious: they are much about the big-  
ness of a common cod. All this variety  
of fish are caught within twelve miles  
distance of the city, in a certain gulph or  
bay, formed by the river, and where the  
water is perfectly calm, and smooth. It  
were altogether needless to say any thing  
of their salmon; since 'tis universally  
known, that they are sent from hence to  
all parts, both salted and smoaked. Of  
these, there is likewise a white sort, which  
are called Meelma by the Muscovites,  
and are caught upon the coast of (d) Lap-  
land. These are all dried before they are  
sent abroad. I saw one of them which  
very much resembled a ray, and was about  
two foot broad. These they call Pa-  
ciskaet. Two mice were found in the  
belly of him, and its oil is an excellent  
ingredient in some particular medi-  
cines.

Their markets likewise are full of all  
sorts of meat. The best beef in the world  
may be purchased there for a penny a  
pound. A lamb, of about six weeks old,  
will

Its market  
abounds  
with meat.



THE TRAVELS OF

1701

will cost you no more than fifteen-pence; and a calf of the same age may be purchased, according to the season, for half a crown or three shillings at most.

Its plenty  
of poultry.

All the inhabitants in general breed turkies. One may buy four or five common fowls, or a good goose for about eight-pence.

Its beer

Their beer is extraordinary good ; they are not permitted, however, either to brew or vend it without a licence from the Grand Duke, which is, without any great difficulty, to be procured for a reasonable consideration ; but an inhabitant may brew what quantity he thinks proper for the use of his family, provided he pays only after the rate of four shillings and two-pence for a certain number of quarters of malt that he proposes to make use of for that purpose. There are some particular tenants who are entirely exempted from that duty.

Their wine  
and spiritu-  
ous liquors.

As to their wine and spirituous liquors, they are brought hither by sea from France; the last, however, is held up at an exorbitant price, by reason of the heavy duty that is laid upon it. Notwithstanding this high excise, there is a kind of malt spirit, which is wholesome enough, whereof strangers drink in plenty, and very seldom taste of any other, which is sold at as reasonable a rate as can well be desired.

His Czarian Majesty has a very considerable annual revenue levied upon this city. It was formerly reported, that the duties arising therefrom arose to no less than 300,000 rubles ; in my time, however, I found, by the best calculation that could be made, that they amounted to very little more than 180, or 190,000 of the same rubles, each ruble being reckoned after the rate of five florins of Dutch money.

There used to arrive annually, about thirty, or five and thirty ships in this harbour ; but in the year 1700, there came fifty at least, besides thirty three from England ; to which, in case we add such ships as arrived from Hamburg, Denmark, and Bremen, the total will amount to one hundred and three sail ; this, however, was occasioned by the war with

COH  
-fation of

1701. to the conversation of  
and I, who were  
passant, and made it  
me, Their usual  
ing, dancing, eating  
in all of them they

Occur

(v) Archangel. See P

(b) Dwina, a river, the province of Dwina, it from south to north the White Sea a little

(17) Moscow City, eastward 35, 45, the capital of Moscow, situate on the Volga, 100 miles south east of Petersburg; 1000 north of Stockholm; 1000 north of Copenhagen; 1000 north of London.

(d) Lapland. See p.

(7) Riga, east longitudes  
a city, and port-town of  
rision of Liveland, situated  
the river Dvina, and a half  
one of the best harbours  
the Baltic, from whence  
corn, raxal fibres, &c. &  
other various articles are  
with great advantage  
changed their bearings to  
Ruffia, to which coast  
Livonia, is at present the

(1) *Nerva*, or *Nerva*, a  
Mithras 59, figure on  
Nerva, which strikes Li-  
tiation and miles south way  
larger and port town  
by the Romans in the year  
by *Charles XII*, King of  
a great victory over the  
men, tho' the *Romans*  
But the *Caes*, Peter the  
Nerva by storm, and the  
tants to African, and the  
7 position of Nerva  
has making it one of  
first.

(8) Kereh, east longi  
a Port-town of Livonia



means whereof a ship was  
trade which was carried on  
alcoovies with (e) Riga,  
and (g) Revel, nay, with  
burg, and (i) Dantzic; in-  
at this time the whole trade  
re of Russia is centred in  
According to the most exact  
is computed, that the Czar  
his year (1701) upon the  
from the arrival of the first  
harbour to the last, no less  
to rubles, which are equal to  
tallars. The agreement was,  
every of these duties should  
es, and the other in golden  
as payment to be offered  
they would not be taken,  
are never refused. This,  
to be understood in regard to  
commodities only, the principal  
in gold and silver stuffs,  
ruges, gold and silver laces,  
; besides indigo, and other  
white for dying.

in to such customs as are le-  
n commodities; here 'tis to  
hat from the year 1667 to  
, the merchants paid the  
twenty rixdollars on every  
whereas for the three years  
they paid no more than five,  
ing this, they pay six and  
rs on every barrel of brandy,  
a barrel of Spanish wine,  
is the quantity of two bur-

wed-ashes for iron, leather,  
elks, otter skins, and furs;  
al produce of the country;  
from Muscovy into other  
re credibly informed likewise,  
articles which are taken in the  
Wainia, Wainia and  
a very good sort of pearl.  
they will fetch five and twen-  
tice; and in the parts ad-  
jacent, they will bear twice

are given my readers an im-  
nt of all the information I  
to during my residence in this  
dedicated all my leisure hours

## CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

1701 to the conversation of the Sieurs Brants and Lup, who were exceedingly com-  
plaisant, and made it their study to ob-  
lige me. Their usual recreations are gam-  
ing, dancing, eating and drinking, and  
in all of them they indulge themselves

1701 'till midnight. My friend Mr. Brants  
contributed no small share to these evening  
entertainments, as he was not only a great  
admirer of all sorts of music; but a di-  
stinguished performer on the harpsichord  
and organ.

### *Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Archangel. See p. 8. n. d.

(b) Dwina, a river, which gives name to  
the province of Dwina, and running through  
it from south to north, discharges itself into  
the White Sea a little below Archangel.

(c) Moscow City, east longitude 38. lati-  
tude 55. 45. the capital of the province of  
Moscow, situate on the river Moscowa, 360  
miles south east of Petersburg, 800 east of  
Stockholm; 1000 north east of Constanti-  
nople; 900 north east of Vienna, and 1400  
north east of London.

(d) Lapland. See p. 7. n. a.

(e) Riga, east longitude 24. latitude 57.  
a city, and port-town of Livonia, in the di-  
vision of Lettenland, situate near the mouth of  
the river Dwina, and a bay of the Baltic Sea,  
one of the best harbours and trading towns in  
the Baltic, from whence the Dutch import  
corn, naval stores, &c. and the English and  
other nations traffick with this city, but not  
with such advantage as the Dutch, who ex-  
change their herrings for the merchandize of  
Russia, to which crown Riga, and the rest of  
Livonia, is at present subject.

(f) Nerva, or Narva, east longitude 27, 35.  
latitude 59. situate on the river Nerva, or  
Narva, which divides Livonia from Russia, a  
thousand miles south west of Petersburg, a  
large city and port town of Livonia, besieged  
by the Russians in the year 1700. but relieved  
by Charles XII. King of Sweden, who gained  
a signal victory over the Russians with 20,000  
men, tho' the Russians were 100,000 strong.  
But the Czar, Peter the Great, afterwards took  
Narva by storm, and transplanted the inhabi-  
tants to Astracan; and the Russians have been  
in possession of Narva and all Livonia ever  
since, making it one of the stations of their  
fleet.

(g) Revel, east longitude 24. latitude 59.  
a port-town of Livonia, in the division of

Estonia, or East-Land, situate at the south  
entrance of the gulph of Finland, 140. miles  
north of Riga, and 110 miles west of Narva.  
It is a large city, and has a commodious har-  
bour, where part of the Royal Navy of Russia  
is usually laid up. When the Czar invaded  
this country, multitudes of people fled hither  
to avoid the barbarous Coffacs in his Army;  
but the plague happening there, at the same  
time, upwards of 50,000 people were swept  
away by that distemper in this city.

(h) Konigsburg, east longitude 21. latitude  
54. 40. a city of Poland, capital of Ducal  
Prussia, and of the King of Prussia's Polish  
dominions, situate on the river Pregel, near  
a bay of the Baltic Sea, seventy miles north  
east of Dantzick, being one of the most con-  
siderable port-towns in the Baltic.

(i) Dantzick, east longitude 19. latitude 54.  
the capital of Regal Prussia, in the Kingdom of  
Poland, situate on the western shore of the  
river Wesel, or Vistula, which a little below  
falls into the Baltic Sea. It is an excellent  
harbour, and has the best foreign trade of any  
port within the Baltic. It stands 140 miles  
north of Warsaw, and 70 miles south west of  
Konigsburg. The town is large, and encom-  
passed with a wall, and fortifications of a great  
extent. The houses are well built of stone,  
or brick, six or seven stories high, and the  
granaries, containing vast magazines of corn,  
and naval stores, are still higher, to which the  
shipping lie close, and take in their lading;  
for the Dutch annually import from hence a  
great many thousand tuns of corn, timber,  
and naval stores, and other nations some, but  
the Dutch have the greatest share of this  
trade, paying for their merchandize with  
pickled herrings, the spices of India, furs,  
brandy, and other produce of the more southern  
countries; whereas the English, and other  
nations, are forced to purchase these things  
chiefly with treasure. The inhabitants are  
computed to amount to 200,000 souls, who  
are subject to a mixed kind of government.  
Their magistracy consists of thirty senators,  
who



1701

who continue for life; four of them burgo-masters. Besides these, there are thirteen consuls, who elect the said burgo-masters out of their own body, and chuse likewise the judges, and all other officers of the city, from whom there lies an appeal to the thirteen consuls and four burgo-masters, and from them to the republic of Poland. The King annually nominates a burgo-master out of the consuls to represent his person in the senate, and all sentences of death must be signed by him in the King's name. One hundred burgeses are elected to represent the people's grievances, and defend their privileges, and inspect the administration of the government; and the hundred, with the concurrence of the senate, present the clergy to vacant benefices. The established religion is the Lutheran, but Papists, Calvinists, and Anabaptists are tolerated. The jurisdiction of the town extends forty miles round the city, and they maintain a garrison at their own expence, and coin money, with the effigies of the King on one side, and the city-arms on

the reverse. They are said to be under the protection of Poland, but if they had not been supported by other powers against their enemies, their state had been subverted long since. In the year 1703 the English, the Dutch, and the King of Prussia entered into an alliance for their protection against the Swedes, who would have extorted a sum of money from them, as they did again in the year 1706, when the King of Sweden threatened them with a visit, on his success against King Augustus, if they refused to acknowledge Stanislaus for their King. But in the year 1734, when they took the part of Stanislaus against the present King of Poland, and actually harboured and protected him in their city, having been purchased with French money, they were besieged by the Muscovites and Saxons, obliged to surrender, and forced to purchase their peace with several hundred thousand pounds for suffering Stanislaus to make his escape out of the city during the siege.

## C H A P. IV.

*The Author's Departure from Archangel. The Russians Manner of travelling in the Winter Season. A Description of Wologda, and of the Monastery at Trooyts. His Arrival at Moscow.*

2<sup>nd</sup> Dec.  
Departure  
from Arch-  
angel.

ON the twenty-first of December, about three in the afternoon, I set out from (a) Archangel for (b) Moscow, accompanied by one Mr. Kinus, who had procured two soldiers to attend him, and (what here is called) a Podwoden, that is to say, an order for horses upon the road gratis; though the persons from whose hands we receive them, indeed, expect some small gratuity as a perquisite, which is seldom refused. He had six sledges, and I one only, as I had disposed of my baggage amongst the effects of Mr. Brants.

When any one is determined to travel from Archangel to Moscow, he must furnish himself with what number of sledges he shall have occasion for, before he sets out; for there are no horses to be hired upon the road. These sledges are

1701

their sledges, that the Dutch call the sledges for rest, &c. Having passed the twenty-second on the twenty-third of the afternoon three in the afternoon Archangel.

This Kolmogor is situated on the south-west which is one of the principal parts of the legda, and after a large estate by water in its way, it falls by the (2) White Sea, at its mouth from Archangel. Mr. painting, having some Vassila, that is to be of the city, we went

to contrived, that a man may lie down stretched out at his full length, and not be incommoded: he must take his own bed along with him; and other proper furniture to secure him from the cold, which, in this country, in the winter season, is excessively keen and piercing; the back-part of the sledge is covered with matting, but all the rest is lined, either with strong cloth, or leather. The top is covered with a skin, and lined in the same manner, to keep the passenger from all the inclemencies of the weather, wind, rain, or snow. The driver travels day and night, and each sledge has two horses, which are always changed at the end of every fifteen wersts, which is about three German leagues. At the end of every werst, the Russians cry Wersta, which space contains about a hundred fathom, and each fathom

I

three



## CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

25

1701

they are said to be under the island, but if they had not been other powers against their ene- had been thwarted long since. 1703 the English, the Dutch, of Prussia entered into an alli- protection against the Swedes, we extorted a sum of money they did again in the year 1706, of Sweden threatened them his forces against King Au- refused to acknowledge Sta- King. But in the year 1734. at the part of Stanislaus against ing of Poland, and actually har- rected him in their city, har- led with French money, they of the Muscovites and Saxons, nder, and forced to purchase a several hundred thousand Stanislaus to make his the city during the siege.

The court-  
teous treat-  
ment of the  
Archbp. of  
Kolmogora

three Arsiennes, that is to say, about three Dutch ells. The passenger gets out of his sledge for refreshment but once a day. Having passed by several villages, on the twenty-second of December, about three in the afternoon, we reached Kolmogora, which is about fifty wersts from Archangel.

Kolmogora

Decem. 22.

This Kolmogora is a pretty large city, situate on the south-west of the (e) Dwina, which is one of the principal rivers in all Russia. Its fountain-head is in the southern parts of the province of (d) Wologda, and after a long course, and a large increase by waters from other rivers in its way, it falls by two mouths into the (e) White Sea, at some small distance from Archangel. Mr. Kinzing, my companion, having some knowledge of the Vladika, that is to say, the Archbishop of the city, we went to pay him a visit, by whom we were very courteously received. Our first refreshment was a dram of cinnamon-water, a bottle of good wine, and as much beer as we thought proper to drink, which, tho' what we call table beer, was exceeding good. He treated us likewise with some Egyptian Dates, and other little trifles of the like nature. He was upwards of fifty, and his name was Affonass. His palace is his place of residence, which is spacious enough, and lies contiguous to the monastery there. After we had spent about two or three hours with this Right Reverend Prelate, whose conversation was very agreeable, as he was a man of good natural parts, and was a great admirer of every branch of polite literature, he conducted us to an armory of his, which stood at some distance from the palace; where were, amongst other warlike stores, two small brass guns of his own casting, and two iron-pieces, which were taken out of the Swedish vessels, of which mention has been made before. When we took our leave, he ordered five of his clergy to attend us to our inn; who were all furnished with provisions. One with bread, another with fish, &c. for our farther refreshment. About ten that night, we proceeded on our journey with fresh horses; but it was with no small difficulty that we procured them; for it happened, that a

1701

considerable number of passengers had been there before us, who were furnished with Podwodens, as well as we, and had secured almost all the horses that were in the town.

Decem. 23.

On the twenty-third, the weather was exceeding fine, and we passed thro' divers woods abounding with two sorts of firs: the branches of the one shoot out of the head only, whereas those of the other proceed from the sides of the trunk. We saw likewise a great number of alders and birch-trees. From these woods we pursued our way to several villages, till at length we arrived at Sasse, which is the last that stands within the jurisdiction of Archangel.

Decem. 24

Briefnick.

On the twenty-fourth we reached Briefnick, which lies in the province of Waeg, where we took fresh horses, and were obliged to cross the river of that name several times. On the twenty-fifth we got to Schenkerfke, which is the capital of the last mentioned province, and is situate on the same river. On the twenty-sixth we passed through a large village, called Virghowaesje, where they have a considerable market once a week. On the twenty-seventh we reached Soloti. On the twenty-eighth having passed thro' divers little villages, we crossed the great forest of Komenaf, which is twenty wersts in breadth at least, and came to a place called Dwienitse, situate on the river of the same name; where we were informed, that three Russian merchants, in their passage from Archangel, had met with a gang of banditti, or highwaymen, about twenty-six in number, who had robbed them of a considerable sum: that one of them in particular took away from the richest of the three, and a gentleman with whom I was well acquainted, a silver cross, which he wore on his breast, and is held here in great veneration, notwithstanding his associates used their utmost endeavours to prevent so gross an insult: that this particular villain, it seems, wore a cross himself, which he took off his neck, and put upon the merchant's with this sarcastical proverb, *Exchange, Sir, you know, is no Robbery.*

Decem. 25.

Schenkerfke.

Decem. 26.

Virghowaesje.

Decem. 27.

Soloti.

Decem. 28.

Forest of Komenaf

Dwienitse.

This intimation put us into a kind of panic; but upon mature deliberation, we

H

we

Russians Manner of  
Wologda, and of  
Moscow.

that a man may lie down at his full length, and not be disturbed: he must take his own horse, and other proper security him from the cold, is country, in the winter is actively keen and piercing; of the sledge is covered but all the rest is lined, strong cloth, or leather. The

with a skin, and lined in the to keep the passenger from necessities of the weather, wind, The driver travels day and

The sledge has two horses, which are changed at the end of every five- which is about three German the end of every worst, the Wologda, which space contains red lathum, and each of them three



1701

we determined, at all adventures, to pursue our journey, without waiting till other company might casually arrive to join us; and therefore got all our firearms in readiness, in case of distress. On the twenty-ninth we reached Rabanga, which lies on the river Soegue, and from thence got to Wologda about three in the afternoon. This city makes an handsome appearance enough on one side. Here we got out, and went directly to the house of the Sieur Woater Ewouts de Jough, a Dutch merchant, with whom I am intimately acquainted, and from whom we met with a very courteous reception.

Decem. 30.

The church

The day following I took a tour round the town, and an accurate survey of the church, called Saboor, which is a very fine building, and was erected by the same celebrated Italian architect as worked at Moscow-Castle. There are five domes to this church, which the Russians call Glaffa, that is to say, heads of churches. Each of them is covered with plate-tin, and adorned with large gilt crosses. Besides this church, there are twenty others in this city, built with stone, most of which have domes, covered and decorated in the same manner. These gilt crosses strike the eye very agreeably, when the sun shines upon them. To these stone-churches we must add forty-three more, that are built principally with timber. Here are likewise three convents, inhabited by monks, and one cloyster, by nuns; the principal ornament whereof is a little stone-church, erected in the center, which is surrounded with little commodious cells for the nuns, in a retired place, into which you enter by a small door.

The market-place.

After I had gratified my curiosity thus far, I took a survey of the market-place, which is very full of shops; and I observed, that there is a separate place for each particular commodity; as for instance, flesh in one place, and fish in another.

From these markets, I passed thro' the gate of a very spacious building which had never been perfectly finished, tho' begun by the Czar Ivan Vassiliewitz,

1701

who proposed to make a citadel, or fortress, of it; but the apprehensions they were at that time under of the Tartars, who had obliged this Prince to withdraw from Moscow, occasioned him to drop his design, and leave the place unfinished. From thence I took a walk on one side of the river Wologda, which runs thro' the city. The other side, which is called Dofrefene, is not near so pleasant; and notwithstanding one side as well as the other is part of the same city, yet each has a distinct governor, or head. It is a full league in length, and in some places about a quarter of a league in breadth, little more or less. All the goods that come from Archangel pass through this city; and there are, at this present juncture, three or four very commodious warehouses for such commodities as belong to our Dutch merchants. This city is situate in fifty-nine degrees fifteen minutes of northern latitude on the east of the river, which is pretty broad.

Decem. 30.

Greelnewits.

We set out from hence on the thirtieth of December, about ten at night; and by six the next morning, we got to Greelnewits, which is forty wersts from Wologda. At this Greelnewits we baited our horses, and 'twas highly reasonable that we should; for we had still twenty wersts farther to travel. We met with fifty sledges at least that day; some of which set out from Archangel before us, and some after. We did not, however, all take the same road; there were but twenty of them that were going to Moscow, or the parts adjacent. About noon we arrived at a place called Obfnorkojain, to which place we had dispatched one of our soldiers before us, in order to secure fresh horses. From thence we proceeded to Danilofskoy, which is threescore and seven wersts from Obfnorkojain last mentioned. This Danilofskoy is a very fine, large town, remarkable for the trade that is carried on there; and for a fine stud of horses, above two thousand whereof belong to his Czarian Majesty.

Danilofskoy.

Obfnorkojain.

On the first day of the year 1702, we reached Jerslaw, one of the principal cities of Russia: The river (*f*) Wolga runs hard by it, and is very broad there.

Jan. 1.  
Jerslaw.  
Wolga.

We



sed to make a citadel, or it; but the apprehensions at that time under of the so had obliged this Prince to from Moscow, occasioned him is design, and leave the place From thence I took a walk of the river Wolga, which the city. The other side, called Dofesene, is not near so id notwithstanding one side or other is part of the same and has a distinct governor, or is a full league in length, and is about a quarter of a league little more or less. All the come from Archangel pass city; and there are, at this time, three or four very considerable for such coming to our Dutch merchants; is situate in fifty-nine degrees of northern latitude on the river, which is pretty broad.

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

1701

## CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1702

Kotris.

We crossed both that, and the Kotris, not far from whence, to the southward, the last discharges its waters into the first. In this city there are a great number of stone-churches, of which, as I took

views of them all on my return, I shall speak more at large in another place. Having crossed the Kotris, we went to a suburb hard by, called Troepenoe, where we took fresh horses. We set out from thence about ten at night, and on the second we got to (g) Rostoff, which we only crossed. There is an archbishop, resident in this city, which abounds with fine stone-churches. It is situate on the right of the lake of the same name. Soon after we had traversed this lake, we saw, at a small distance, several little villages, where the inhabitants, or the greater part of them at least, live upon garlic and onions. About half a league from thence stands the monastery of Peter Zarowitz, which is surrounded with several houses. We arrived at a place, called Wafke, about one in the afternoon, having travelled thirty-eight wersts. There we dined, and set out soon afterwards for Pereflaw Solskoy, which was about twenty wersts onwards of our journey. Notwithstanding this city is the capital of the province, from whence it derives its name; yet 'tis but a poor place, and is situate on a lake. We got there by nine that night, and left it again about twelve. On the third we went through Tieriberewa about six in the morning, and from thence, for near the compass of thirty wersts successively, we were constantly going up and down one hill after another, till we came to Trooyts, where we arrived about one in the afternoon. There we staid some time, and took a survey of the fine monastery which bears the name of the little village, which we pass'd by, just before we came into the town. This monastery is composed all of stone, and is surrounded likewise by a fine and lofty stone-wall, which is quadrangular, and at each corner thereof is a noble, spacious, round tower; between which there are square ones; and two of these which are the most ornamental, face the road. It has three gates, like-

Troepenoe.

Rostoff.

The monastery of Peter Zarowitz.

Wafke.

Pereflaw Solskoy.

Jan. 3. Tieriberewa.

Trooyts.

A fine monastery.

27

1702

wife, in front, and stands about a quarter of a league from the village, which lies to the right-hand of it, as we went to Moscow. The middlemost, through which we chose to enter it, has two Arcades, under which there was a little Corps de garde, where we found several soldiers on duty, as well as at the outward one. As soon as we had passed this inner gate we saw the principal church standing in the center, and separate from the rest of the buildings. His Czarian Majesty's apartment, which stands on the right-hand side, makes a very grand and magnificent appearance on the outside; and, as the front is very extensive, we went up to it by two flights of stone-steps. It is several stories high; but when we came to examine the furniture within, it was mean, and by no means correspondent with its outward grandeur. The refectory, which is another stately edifice, stands over against it, and is built in much the same form. Each window is adorned with a small pillar, and the stones are painted in various colours. The church, just before-mentioned, stands between these two buildings. Besides these, there are nine others; four whereof are pretty large, but the other five are much smaller. On the outside, this monastery has the appearance of a citadel, or fortress; and the Abbot, or Archimandrite, has the principal command of it. For the generality, there are two or three hundred monks resident here, and some of them waited on us from one place to another, and shewed us abundance of respect. This monastery is very rich, in respect to its revenues; for there are about 60,000 peasants dependent thereon, and pay a certain annual duty towards its maintenance and support. Besides, as there are abundance of illustrious persons interred in the great church, and divers masses solemnized therein, the profits arising therefrom make a very large addition. The village itself is of a considerable length, and on the right-hand side, there are abundance of farrier's shops, with posts to them for the better convenience of shoeing their horses. When we had travelled thirty wersts from this place,



1702

Brato Fiena

Arrival at  
Moscow,  
Jan. 4.

place, we reached the village of Brato Fiena, where we were obliged to tarry till midnight, in order to have our baggage searched; which is sealed immediately afterwards, and not opened again till in the custom-house at Moscow, where we arrived safe about eight in the morning on the fourth instant.

We alighted at the Slabode, which is the privileged quarter for the Germans, and the place where the greater part of other foreigners reside, tho' there are some, indeed, that live in the city.

As soon as I had refreshed my self, I

### *Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Archangel, see page 8. n. d.

(b) Moscow, see p. 23, no. (c)

(c) Dwina, see p. 23, no. (b)

(d) Wologda, east longitude 42. 20. latitude 59. Capital of the province of Wologda in Russia, situate on the river Dwina, 235 miles north of Moscow.

(e) White Sea, see p. 7. n. (b).

(f) Wolga, a river of Russia, which, rising in the north of that Empire, runs south-east, passing by the cities of Jerslaf, Kasan, and Bulgar, and then entering Asiatic Russia, continues its course due south to Kamisnea, from whence it runs south-east, and passing by

1702

went directly to Mr Jurtien's, to whom I had been recommended by Mr. Brants, who at that time lived in the same place, and had been but lately arrived there from Archangel. The Czar honoured him with a visit the very next day, accompanied by several Peers in their respective sledges; amongst which, that belonging to his Majesty made the least appearance. This visit continued for about two hours, and this was the first time I ever had the honour of being in company with this august Monarch.

Astracan, falls into the Caspian Sea, fifty miles below that city, having run a course of between two and three thousand miles, being deep enough, great part of the way, to carry large ships; but the mouth of it is so choaked up with sand, that loaded ships cannot enter it; for which reason, the Russian ships lie at an island without the mouth of the Wolga. It is by this river, that the Russian merchants of England are endeavouring to establish a trade with Persia.

(g) Rostof, or Rostova, east longitude 40. latitude 57. 20. a town of Russia, in the province of Moscow, capital of the territory of Rostof, situate one hundred and twenty miles north-east of Moscow.

### C H A P. V.

*The Author has the Honour to be admitted into the Presence of the Czar. The Solemn Manner in which the Russians consecrate their Water; with a particular Description of a fine Fire-work at Moscow.*

Jan. 5.

Visits of the  
Czars.

I T has been a constant custom for the Czars of Muscovy, ever since the year 1649, to visit their own principal courtiers, and some foreigners of distinction, either in the city of Moscow itself, or in the Slabode of the Germans, some short time before Twelfth-Day. The person thus honoured, always makes a suitable entertainment, which, in the Russian language, is termed, their Sla-

weisen. They are accompanied with the Princes, Lords, and other illustrious personages belonging to the court. In the year 1702. this ceremony was solemnized on the third of January old stile. The first visit which his Czarian Majesty at that time made, was to Mr. Brandts, to whose house the Czar came about nine in the morning, attended by about three hundred persons; some in sledges, and some

on horseback. The table was carefully covered, and set out with a great variety of dishes. The company sat, and free, and the table was in abundance. The first two in the dish withdrew; and from thence went directly to retire. They were entertained in a most elegant manner, and I made divers other visits to formal visits thus proper time to the several prepared before hand to the next day. The next day, Mr. Hall, our resident minister with his company, after having made mention of his Majesty, then the Czar, Mr. Willen, burgomaster, the principal counsellor, was pleased to honour me with a particular reception, and gave me a place in a particular room. His Czarian Majesty was then seated at the table, by mere accident into where I was in waiting. Knowledge of me, but he a stranger, spoke with the most composure. I understood that long him, in the affirmative respect. Whereupon, pleading, he entered with regard to Italy in some other countries that both travelled. He then gave his Majesty an account of the interview, who, truly, came attended train to the place where was no ways apprehensive. Majesty so soon, I was at first; but upon collection, I made my address to the Czar, and he a little startled at it, the Dutch language, know he was the Czar means? — I made an



ally to Mr. Jurien's, to whom recommended by Mr. Brandts, who time lived in the same place, then but lately arrived there as an angel. The Czar honoured a visit the very next day, accompanied by several Pers in their regiments; amongst which, that to his Majesty made the least impression. This visit continued for several hours, and this was the first time he had the honour of being in the august Monarch.

### Chapter.

into the Caspian Sea, fifty miles at city, having run a course of about three thousand miles, being a great part of the way, to carry but the mouth of it is so choked up, that loaded ships cannot enter the sea. The Russian ships lie at anchor in the mouth of the Volga, and the Russian merchants endeavouring to establish a

at Rostoff, east longitude 40. a town of Russia, in the province of Rostoff, capital of the territory of Rostoff, one hundred and twenty miles from Moscow.

THE AN-  
THOR'S AD-  
DRESS TO THE  
CAZAR;  
WITH THE  
CONVERSATION  
THAT PASSED  
BETWEEN  
THEM.

the Presence of the Czar.  
consecrate their Water;  
work at Moscow.

they are accompanied with the Czar, and other illustrious persons, to the court. In the ceremony was solemnized of January old style. The Czar, with his Majesty at that time, to whole as to Mr. Brandts, to whole came about nine in the morning, and about three hundred, some in sledges, and some on

## CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1702

on horseback. The tables were all decently covered, and served immediately, first with a great variety of cold meats, and afterwards with a great number of hot dishes. The company were very jovial, and free, and there were liquors of all sorts in abundance. His Majesty tarried till two in the afternoon, and then withdrew; and from thence, he and his retinue went directly to visit Mr. Lups; where they were entertained in the same elegant manner, and from thence again made divers other visits en passant. These formal visits thus paid, they resorted in proper time to the several houses that were prepared before-hand for their respective receptions. The next day, he honoured Mr. Hulst, our resident, and several others with his company. This minister, after having made mention of me to his Majesty, thro' the recommendation of Mr. Witsen, burgo-master, and one of the principal counsellors at Amsterdam, was pleased to honour me with a kind invitation, and gave orders for my being planted in a particular room, thro' which his Czarian Majesty was to pass. The Knez, or Prince, of Troebetskooy came by mere accident into the same room where I was in waiting; and having no knowledge of me, but perceiving me to be a foreigner, asked me, in Italian, with the utmost complaisance, whether I understood that language; I answered him, in the affirmative, with all due respect: whereupon, with a seeming pleasure, he entered into conversation with regard to Italy in particular, and some other countries thro' which we had both travelled. He then withdrew to give his Majesty an account of this our casual interview, who, to gratify his curiosity, came attended by a numerous train to the place where I stood. As I was no ways apprehensive of seeing his Majesty so soon, I was in a kind of flutter at first; but upon an immediate recollection, I made my address to him with all due deference and respect. — He seemed a little startled at it, and asked me in the Dutch language, how I came to know he was the Czar, and by what means? — I made answer directly, that I

29

1702

had seen his Majesty's picture at Sir Godfrey Kneller's, in London, which had made so deep an impression on my mind, that I was morally assured I could not be mistaken. As this answer, I found, did not give him perfect satisfaction, I added, that I had the honour, moreover, to see him come from court, when he was pleased to visit Mr. Brandts. With this answer he seemed better pleased than the former. He then asked me what townsmen I was; who my parents were; what brothers and sisters I had, and whether they were living or dead. Having made proper answers immediately to these familiar interrogatories, he asked me some questions in regard to my former travels; in what year I commenced them; how long I continued abroad; in what manner I pursued my travels; and what way I returned home. After that, he conversed with me about (a) Egypt, the river (b) Nile, and the famous city of (c) Grand Cairo; its extent and particular buildings; then he asked me about what state and condition Old Cairo and (d) Alexandria were in when I was there last, and divers other adjacent places; adding withal, that he was very sensible there was another place called (e) Alexandretta, or lesser Alexandria. I thereupon informed him, that the place last mentioned was the sea-port town for Aleppo, and acquainted him with the exact distance that they were from each other. This conversation passed all in Dutch, and his Majesty was pleased to desire me to continue speaking in my own native language, as he understood me perfectly well. And it was self-evident afterwards that he did so; for he explained the whole purport of our conference to the Russian Lords that attended him, with that accuracy and freedom, that perfectly surprised both our resident, and all the natives of Holland who had the honour to hear him. — He then directed me to address my discourse to the Knez before-mentioned, in the Italian language, as he understood that better than Dutch, and so left me. After he had spent three full hours at least with our resident, he made several other shorter visits in the Slabode, it



## THE TRAVELS OF

1701

it being then the last day; for the grand festival appointed for the consecration of the water, was to be solemnized the next, and Monday was the sixth of January old stile. That very day the son of General Bories Petrowitz Czeremetof arrived at court; and during the time that his Czarian Majesty was at church, he communicated to him the agreeable news that the Swedes had been defeated by the Muscovites in (*f*) Livonia, which is about five or six leagues from the town of Derpt. He assured him that, in this battle, the enemy lost near 4000 men; that several hundreds had been taken prisoners; and that several superior officers were amongst them. This nobleman, who was in the heat of the action himself, and had been dispatched by his father with these credentials, deputed himself in such a handsome manner, that he diffused a general joy throughout the whole court. The grand festival last-mentioned is annually solemnized in commemoration of our Blessed Saviour's Nativity, of which I was an eye-witness.

Festival of  
the consecration of  
their wa-  
ters.

On one side of the castle, erected on the river Jousa, a square hole, of about thirteen feet from corner to corner, that is to say, fifty-two feet in circumference, was made in the ice. This hole was inclosed by an elegant piece of wood-work, having a column, or pillar, at each angle, which supported a sort of cornish, whereon four several pannels were painted in the form of arches; and at each angle, a statue representing one of the four Evangelists; and over all two sort of semi-domes, on the middle whereof was a large cross. These pannels, which were painted within as well as without, were embellished with the pictures of the Apostles, and other Patriarchs of the New Testament. The most beautiful picture of them all, however, facing the east of the river, was the representation of our Blessed Lord's baptism by St. John in the river (*g*) Jordan, with four angels on the right. On the outside of each of these pannels were the figures of five angels heads with wings on their shoulders. On the west side of this square hole, there were four steps, to

which a large weight of lead was affixed, in order to make them sink into the water. The patriarch, or priest, who was appointed to perform the intended ceremony, stood on the highest step, which was level with the water, and the water in this place was at least eight feet deep, several large, scarlet carpets, surrounded with a square inclosure, forty-five paces from angle to angle, or one hundred and eighty paces in circumference, were spread upon the ground. This inclosure had two others, in the nature of balustrades, each four paces distant from the other, and four feet in height, and covered in the same manner with proper carpets. On the western side, and near the brink of the hole, two altars were erected. There were four several entrances to them, the largest whereof was to the southward of the castle-gate. These doors likewise were painted, indeed, but after an elegant manner, and embellished with one hieroglyphic or another. After I had taken a full survey of what I have been hitherto talking of, I went to a commodious eminence, not far distant from the castle, between the two gates, on one side of that which the Russians call Tainniski, or the private gate, in order to have a full view of the procession as it passed through. About eleven in the forenoon it began to move, from the church of Saboor, that is to say, from the place of the assembly of the saints, situate in the castle, and the principal church, moreover, in all Moscow. This grand procession was wholly composed of the Russian clergy, some few laymen only excepted, dressed in their common habiliments, who led the van, with standards in their hands, made fast to slaves. The priests were all dressed in their canonical robes, and made a very fine appearance. The inferior clergy, and the monks, in all about two hundred, advanced first, preceded, however, by a great number of choiristers and singing-boys, dressed in their usual cloaths, and each with a book in his hand. They were guarded on each side by a detachment of soldiers, all under arms; whilst others went with slaves in their hands to

1701

clear the way. After the hundred of their episcopal habit, in their episcopal vestments, went foremost were cardinals in a dress commonly call a Sacke went four archbishops and a great number of inspectors of convents or inspectors of these two hundred of these every thing was disposed in possession of the pannels, with a hundred poles, with a hundred of each of them, entering the ice. Leaving the ice to either to go forward to sing, or else to give it grandeur and importance two churchmen, gages, Lepides, at the in the same manner as followed two candles presented of our half-length, and above then a large folio book twenty gold and silver with real jewels, or otherwise each was carried appointed for that ceremony was over, those that were present. That of the twelve, being made with pain and precision part of the procession, which they we witness. This marked the patriarch, book directly, holding cross of gold, emblem which every now and then. He had a of them for his support arrived, in this order and their other carried at least half an hour were all over, the on of the water, and these several times, patriarch's words in the prayer which his people, and high to this benediction, the



A large weight of lead was affixed to make them sink into the wax-patriarch, or priest, who was to perform the intended ceremony on the highest step, which with the water, and the water-rose, scarlet carpets, surrounded are inclosure, forty-five paces to angle, or one hundred and in circumference, were spread around. This inclosure had two the nature of ballustrades, each distant from the other, and height, and covered in the part with proper carpets. On side, and near the brink of the altar were erected. There several entrances to them, the chief was to the southward of gate. These doors likewise, indeed, but after an inclosure, and embellished with one or another. After I had taken view of what I have been describing of, I went to a commo-nance, not far distant from the green the two gates, on one which the Russians call Tap-tap the private gate, in order to view of the procession as it through. About eleven in the it began to move, from the Saboor, that is to say, from of the assembly of the limits, the castle, and the principal recovery, in all Moscow. This procession was wholly composed of clergy, some few laymen dressed, dress in their common robes, who led the van, with in their hands, made fast to the priests were all drest in their robes, and made a very fine appearance in clergy, and the inferior clergy, and the in all about two hundred, adorned by a preceded, however, by a number of choiristers and singing-men in their usual cloaths, and a book in his hand. They followed on each side by a detachment of soldiers, all under arms; whilst with slaves in their hands to clear

clear the way. After them walked about three hundred of their prelates, all drest in their episcopal habits. The twelve that went foremost were metropolitans, or cardinals, in a drest which the Russians commonly call a Sackoste. After these, went four archbishops, three bishops, and a great number of Archimandrites, or superiors of convents. After about two hundred of these last were gone by, every thing was displayed, that these priests carried in possession. Some had poles, with a lanthorn affixed to the end of each of them, emblematically representing the true Light of the Gospel; either to do honour to the pictures of the saints, or else to give themselves an air of grandeur and importance. Others again bore two cherubims, called in their language, Lepieds, at the end of two poles, in the same manner as the former. Then followed two crosses; after them the representation of our Blessed Saviour at half-length, and almost as big as the life; then a large folio book; and after that, twenty gold and silver caps, decorated with real jewels, or other precious stones, but each was carried singly by an officer appointed for that purpose. When the ceremony was over, the principals of those that were present appeared in those caps. That of the Metropolitan, in particular, being made of gold, and decked with pearls and precious stones. The superior part of the prelates likewise wear these caps, which they call Mietris, and we mitres. This metropolitan, who personated the patriarch, followed the large book directly, holding in his hand a large cross of gold, embellished with jewels, which every now and then touched his forehead. He had a priest on each side of him for his supporters. When they were arrived, in this order, at the river-side, and their other ceremonies, which were at least half an hour in their performance, were all over, the metropolitan approached the water, and dipt his cross into it three several times, making use of the patriarch's words in their own language, the purport whereof is, *May God preserve his people, and bless his inheritance!* After this benediction, they all returned towards

the castle; the two hundred priests who preceded the solemnity only excepted; for they dispersed. All such as had either the sacerdotal, or episcopal drefs on, went back in form, and in good order. I observed two men, very meanly drest, amongst several others, with a tub, or something like it; but as it was covered up with a cloth, I could not well tell what to make of it. There was another vessel followed this, which was carried in the same manner as the former; after that, another ordinary person went with a pewter flagon full of the river-water, which, having been blefled in form, was conveyed to the castle, in order to sprinkle and purify the apartments as well as the paintings. No sooner was the procession returned, but they hurried away all the materials that served as an ornament to the water: and I remember, particularly, that a Muscovite plunged a large broom into the hole, with which he very plentifully besprinkled the populace round about; but I did not perceive that it had any material influence over them. In this part of the solemnity, indeed, there seemed to be something very low, and extremely absurd. This procession, which lasted till two in the afternoon, had drawn together a vast concourse of spectators; and it was a shew, indeed, that would have been worth any one's seeing, had there been nothing besides, nothing to give disgust. It had a very good effect, it must be allowed, upon the river; for, as the castle stood on a rising ground, we could from thence see all the whole croud, even those that had got upon the wall, without the least interruption. As we were on our return home, however, and had got to the Castle gate, there was such a throng, or mob, that it was with no small difficulty that we made our way through it. Our curiosity, in short, had like to have cost us too dear, besides the risque we ran by standing so many hours successively in the snow.

In former times, this grand festival was solemnized with much more pomp and magnificence than it has been for some years last past; for then their Czarian Majesties, and all the grantees of the court



## THE TRAVELS OF

1702

court made a part of the procession; the present Czar, however, has lately made a great many very essential alterations in this public ceremony, and indeed in divers others; of which we shall give our readers a more particular and distinct account in another place.

Jan. 9.

On the ninth of this instant January, it not only began to thaw, but to rain likewise; the weather being at that time more warm and open than it had been before for several years.

Jan. 11.

A grand  
fire-work.

On the eleventh, there were great de-

A grand  
entertain-  
ment.The fire-  
work  
played off,  
and de-  
scribed.

monstrations of public joy on account of their signal victory before-mentioned over the Swedes. In the Bizat, or market-place, which lies on one side of the castle, a grand fire-work was erected, which extended from one end of the square to the other; which lies in a bottom, and is very spacious. The workmen had run up a large, but slight wooden edifice, full of windows, that faced the castle, wherein his Czarian Majesty entertained the principal grandees of his court. The foreign ministers were likewise invited to partake of this amusement; and the Danish minister in particular, and the resident of Holland were then present, besides a great number of officers, and substantial merchants from beyond-sea. In order to cast an agreeable shade over this building, as well as to embellish it, there were three rows of large branches, like young trees, planted before it. At two in the afternoon, there was a grand entertainment, and about six in the evening the fire-work began to be played off, which lasted till nine. It was raised upon three large tables, or wooden theatres, which were very spacious as well as lofty, whereon several figures were fastened to planks, and painted of a brown colour. The plan, or design of this fire-work was perfectly new, and widely different from any thing of the kind I had ever seen before. In the center, on the right-hand, there stood the figure of Time, as big again as the life, with an hour-glass in one hand, and a palm-branch in the other, which was supported by the figure of Fortune, of the same size, standing on the left, with the following inscription in

1702

the Russian language, *Let God therefore be praised!* On the left, towards the building, where his Majesty and his counsellors sat, there was the trunk of a tree planted, with a beaver busily employed in gnawing it, with this inscription, in the same language, *By perseverance, thou shalt be torn up by the roots.*

Upon the third theatre, or table, on the other side, there was another trunk of a tree placed, with a young branch shooting from it, and at a small distance from that, the representation of the sea in a perfect calm, whereon appeared a demifun, which, when set fire to, looked very red, with this inscription, *There are now some hopes again.* Between each theatre, there were several little square pieces of fire-works, which continued to burn; and each of them had its particular device. The second of these last-mentioned little pieces, near which I happened to stand, and which was first set on fire by his Czarian Majesty himself, represented a cross, with four several arms; the third a vine-branch; the fourth a bird-cage, each with different inscriptions. As all of them were illuminated after the Dutch manner, there was no great difficulty in the explication of their various designs. In the middle of the square likewise was erected a large Neptune, sitting astride on a dolphin, and on each side of him, a great variety of little fire-works planted on the ground, surrounded with piles, to which cales, or fuses, were fixed, and had a very fine effect; some of them forming a golden shower, whilst others threw out a vast number of little glittering stars. Just before these fire-works were played off, several of the Russian clergy, and other persons of distinction, who sat in the building with his Czarian Majesty, removed from their seats, and withdrew to a covered place, in the midst of all this machinery, in order to perform some particular rites and ceremonies. There was a guard of soldiers over the gate-way of this lodge, which was adorned with a great number of standards. In short, the vast concourse of people which flocked to the market-place on this public occasion

from was inexpressible. The  
the, who accompanied her  
this public spectacle,  
over at one angle of the  
was another tower, one  
this part of the town,  
illuminated from top to  
of the large theatres  
burned for near a quarter  
without intermission. A  
we heard the report  
which had been distant  
testament. As I occa-  
were all over, the noise  
again. As for my part,  
the Sibole, and at about  
the report of at least in  
and indeed several after  
seemed very remarkably  
I thought, very extraor-  
that, notwithstanding

Oceano

(4) Egypt, situate in the  
Africa, between thirty and  
of east longitude, and between  
thing one degree of non-  
by the Levant, or Mediter-  
north by the Red Sea,  
Suez, which divides it  
east by Abyssinia, or  
the south, and by it the  
Nubia on the west, be-  
begin from north to so  
banded to two hundred  
to well; the river Nile,  
falls, joining the whole  
down to south, and over-  
beginning to rise in the  
Lake, and is at the height  
ber, from which time it  
May or June again. The  
water in the country, (it  
springs) they were undre-  
ing their towns on the  
some eminences, natural  
to the overflowing of the  
to many floods, which  
more than by boats  
is crowded in a string  
the Lakes, and the in-  
the Nile, which divides  
Cairo, one bank takes  
west, and falls into the



languages, Let God therefore  
On the left, towards the

where his Majesty and his  
, there was the trunk of a  
with a beaver busby em-  
drawing it, with this inscrip-  
same language. By per-  
half be torn up by the roots,  
d theatre, or table, on the  
there was another trunk of a  
with a young branch shoot-  
and at a small distance from  
representation of the sea in a  
, wherein appeared a demi-  
when set fire to, looked  
this inscription, *There are*  
*et* again. Between each  
were several little square  
works, which continued to  
each of them had its parti-  
The second of these lat-

little pieces, near which I  
stand, and which was first  
by his Czarian Majesty him-  
of a cross, with four several  
of a vine-branch; the fourth  
each with different inscrip-  
of them were illuminated  
in manner, there was no  
in the explication of their  
s. In the middle of the  
s. It was erected a large Nep-  
ascribe on a dolphin, and on  
them, a great variety of little  
inscriptions on the ground, fir-  
piles, to which cales, or  
fixed, and had a very fine  
of them forming a golden  
it others threw out a vast  
little glittering stars. Just  
fire-works were played off,  
Russian clergy, and other  
distinction, who sat in the  
th his Czarian Majesty, re-  
their seats, and withdrew to  
place, in the midst of all this  
in order to perform some  
s and ceremonies. There  
of soldiers over the gate-way  
which was adorned with a  
of standards. In short,  
of people which flanked  
place on this public occa-

1702

## CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

sion was inexpressible. The Czar's sister likewise, and a great number of fine ladies, who accompanied her, were present at this public spectacle, and seated in a tower at one angle of the square. There was another tower, one of the highest in this part of the town, which was finely illuminated from top to bottom. Each of the large theatres before-mentioned burned for near a quarter of an hour without intermission. At the same time we heard the report of the artillery, which had been discharged before the entertainment. As soon as the fire-works were all over, the tables were all covered again. As for my part, I withdrew to the Slabode, and at about ten, I heard the report of at least ninety guns more; and indeed several after them. What seemed very remarkable, and something, I thought, very extraordinary, was this, that, notwithstanding such a night of

1702

public rejoicing, and such a prodigious throng of all sorts of people, there was not the least disorder or confusion: but this, indeed, must be ascribed to the particular care that was taken to have a sufficient number of guards and soldiers so properly planted as to prevent all manner of tumult. Notwithstanding all this precaution, there was, however, a kind of skirmish between a parcel of noisy French officers, and some swords were drawn near his Majesty's lodge; but to prevent any farther ill consequences, there was a post put up near the Dutch church, in the German Slabode, to which were affixed a sword and an ax, with proper labels thereto, in the Russian, Latin, and German languages, whereby all persons whomsoever were strictly enjoined not to draw a sword, or fight a duel upon pain of death.

### *Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Egypt, situate in the north east part of Africa, between thirty and thirty-six degrees of east longitude, and between twenty-one and thirty-one degrees of north latitude, bounded by the Levant, or Mediterranean Sea, on the north by the Red Sea, and the Isthmus of Sues, which divides it from Arabia, on the east by Abyssinia, or Ethiopia Superior, on the south, and by the deserts of Barea and Nubia on the west, being six hundred miles in length from north to south, and from one hundred to two hundred in breadth from east to west; the river Nile, which rises in Abyssinia, running the whole length of it from south to north, and overflowing it annually, beginning to rise in the months of May or June, and is at the height usually in September, from which time the waters decrease till May or June again. There being no other water in the country, (or not more than two springs) they were under a necessity of building their towns on the banks of the Nile, on some eminences, natural or artificial; so that on the overflowing of the river, they look like so many islands, which have no other communication than by boats. The lower Egypt is contained in a triangular island, made by the Levant, and the two chief branches of the Nile, which dividing five miles below Cairo, one branch takes its course to the north-west, and falls into the Levant at Rossetto,

and the other north-east, falling into the sea at Damietta, the ancient Pelusium; these mouths being about an hundred miles asunder. This part of the country called the Delta, or Lower Egypt, having the greatest advantage by the overflowing of the Nile, is much the most fruitful, but not the most healthful, the mud which covers it, after the flood is gone, sending up an unwholesome vapour. The mountains and sands which inclose Egypt on the east and west would render the valley between excessive hot, if it were not for this annual flood; nor would the soil produce much without it; for the country is naturally barren, where the waters do not reach, and they have seldom any rain, unless in the Lower Egypt; tho' travellers relate, that they have sometimes seen heavy showers even in Upper Egypt. They have canals cut quite through Upper Egypt to distribute the water to their fields and gardens, and preserve it in the dry season; and these they fill with great ceremony annually, when the river rises to a certain height; and by these means, Egypt is rendered the most fruitful country in all Africa, supplying Constantinople, and other towns in European Turkey with corn, as it did Rome and Italy of old. They only harrow their grain into the mud, on the retiring of the waters, and, in March following, usually have a plentiful harvest. As to their rice-

K







1702.

however, they suffer the Grand to be a revenue in their several no means equal to what the to pay; and if more be de- in innovations attempted; it en- ble. They come to Cairo with troops as protect them against minimization of the Batta, and he has to manage them, is by into parties, and siding with in is most devoted to the Grand Egyptian Princes are not na- country, neither are they ever their children in their respective but by some laws, whom they favour; and these are usually in Georgia, or Circassia. constitution, as was that of the makes; no man could be a So- and not been a slave, and pur- foreign country; but one of except some Cheicks, or Arab are proprietors of villages, or is in the country; these are in- children, on paying a line, or the government. The religion as of the country is Mahomedan; is, the purity of the ancient Greeks and Latins are Chri- different sects; and there are number of Jews at Cairo, and sons, where any thing is to be

their future harvest depending on it. The just height of the inundation, according to Pliny, is sixteen cubits; when it arises but to twelve or thirteen, a famine is expected, and when it exceeds sixteen, there is danger apprehended; the moderns do not exactly agree with the antients about the height of the inundation; but there is no great difference in their accounts. The river begins usually to arise in May or June; and there stands a pillar on an island opposite to Old Cairo, divided into Pickets, a measure of about two feet, to observe how much it rises; and when it is high enough, the Khalis, or great canal is cut, from whence it is conveyed into other reservoirs and cisterns, to be distributed to their fields and gardens as they want it. As to the Delta, or Lower Egypt, that is all overflowed; there needs no Art to carry it into their fields. This part of the country is always sowed with rice therefore, which grows in water. Their towns, standing on little em- nencies, during the flood appear like so many little islands. This overflowing of the Nile is occasioned by the periodical rains, which an- nually fall within the tropics, where the source of the Nile is; and that which makes the flood the greater is, that Ethiopia, or Abyssinia, where it rises, is full of high mountains, from whence the waters shoot in torrents, and swell the river beyond its usual bounds.

(c) Grand Cairo, east longitude 32. lati- tude 30. the capital of Egypt, in Africa, is situate in a plain, at the foot of a mountain, two miles east of the bank of the river Nile, and an hundred miles south of the mouth of that river. The town is ten miles in circum- ference, and may contain a million of inhabi- tants, and some have computed them at five millions, which must be a mistake, tho' 'tis certain they are very numerous, thirty or forty people frequently lodging in one house. Their private buildings make a mean appearance on the outside, but are often very richly furnished and adorned within; and their chief mosques, or temples, are very magnificent. The castle stands on the top of a hill on the south-side of the city, and is three miles round, of great antiquity, but hardly so ancient as the natives give out, who imagine it was built by the Patriarch Joseph, and shew a well, near the top of it, that is little less than three hundred feet deep, and is the only well almost in all the country. There is a grand Bazar, or market-place, in the middle of the city; but the streets are generally narrow, except the Khali, or grand canal, which runs thro' the middle of it from one end to the other, into

1702.

which they let the water of the river Nile, when it rises to a certain height; and from this canal the water is let into others, and di- stributed to the adjacent fields and gardens. The Khalis remains dry one half of the year, and appears a spacious street. The plague usually visits Cairo once in three or four years, and is observed to decrease as the waters of the Nile rise. Either on the site of this city, or near it, it is supposed, that the ancient Egyp- tian Babylon stood. The English and other Europeans have their consuls and factors here at this day, for the protection and manage- ment of the Turkey trade on that side.

(d) Alexandria, east longitude 31. 15. lati- tude 30. 40. a great city and port-town of the Lower Egypt, in Africa, situate fourteen miles west of the most westerly branch of the river Nile, and one hundred and twenty miles north-west of the city of Grand Cairo. The old town was about seven miles in circum- ference, built by Alexander the Great, and still called Scandria by the Turks; but, ex- cept one long street, which faces the harbour, it is only a heap of ruins at this day; there is little left standing but part of the walls, which have great square towers, at the distance of two hundred paces, and a little tower between them; every one of the great towers could contain two hundred soldiers, and had a cistern in it, to which the water of the Nile was conveyed; and the cisterns still serve to receive the rain- water, and what is brought them from the Nile; for Alexandria stands in a barren, de- sert country, where there are neither springs nor rivers, tho' it was once the capital of Egypt, and had the greatest trade of any town in the world, when the spices and trea- sures of the East-Indies were brought hither; and from hence distributed all over Europe; which was, in a great measure, lost, when the Portuguese found the way to the East-Indies, round Africa, about the year 1400; however, it has still a good foreign trade. The land, on which the town stands is so low, that the seamen can hardly discern it till they are very near, which was the occasion of erecting the celebrated Pharos, or high watch-tower here, so often mentioned in history. The gates of the town are still composed of Thebaic and Granite marble; but the finest piece of anti- quity left, is Pompey's Pillar, being one en- tire piece of Granite marble, seventy feet high, and twenty-five in circumference. Alexandria, and the rest of Egypt is subject to the Grand Signior, who seems, however, to have a li- mited authority, being often obliged to sub- mit the administration of the government to

the great river of Egypt in Africa, as we see in Abyssinia, or the Upper twelve degrees of north latitude. rally from south to north, thro' to Egypt, and then continues its in one stream, till it comes below to Delta, where it divides; one branch itself into the Mediterranean at of it at Rosetta. In the upper stream, we have been told, that several cataracts, where the water from high precipices; but later credit of our own nation alone we are no such cataracts, only some in indeed hinder navigation; but does not fall in sheets from high precipices, as was currently reported ant and moderns till very lately. observed, thro' the hilly country Egypt, with greater rapidity than it the Delta, or Lower Egypt, where level; which is the case of every There are great rejoicings every the Nile rises to a certain height, their



1702

to the humours of the petty Princes of Egypt.

(*c*) Alexandretta, otherwise called Scanderoon, east longitude 37. latitude 36. 15. a port-town of Asiatic Turkey, situate on the coast of the lesser Asia, fifty miles north-east of the Island of Cyprus. It is the port-town to Aleppo, with which the English, and other European merchants have a considerable trade.

(*f*) Livonia, anciently a province of Poland, but since of Sweden, and now of Russia, is bounded by the gulph of Finland on the north, by Ingria and Great Novogorod on the east, by Lithuania and Courland on the south, and by the Baltic, or Livonian Sea, on the west, being about one hundred and sixty miles long, from north to south, and an hundred and twenty broad, and is usually subdivided into two parts; that on the north called Esthonia, or Eastland, and that on the south Lettenland, or Letticia; the chief towns whereof are Narva, Revel and Riga, all of them good harbours. It is a country, fruitful in corn, with which it supplies Sweden, Germany, and many other countries. And as it is extremely well situated for a foreign trade, and abounds with commodious harbours, it has been contended for many hundred years, by the neighbouring nations, and sometimes possessed by one, and sometimes by others; so that the inhabitants are a mixture of Germans, Danes, Poles, Swedes, and Russians. Terrible were the calamities which this country suffered in the beginning of this century; for whilst the Russians and Swedes were contending for the dominion of it, the Czar Peter the Great,

doubting whether he should be able to maintain the possession of that part of the country which he had taken from the Swedes, permitted the Calmucs, and other Tartars of his army, to commit unheard of barbarities. And at length, when the Czar had made an entire conquest of the country, observing the natives to be more inclined to their old masters the Swedes than to Russia, he compelled the natives to abandon their country, and drove multitudes of them in chains as far as the confines of the Caspian Sea; though the Czarina Catharine prevailed on the Czar afterwards to recall them, she being a native of this country; but most of them perished before that edict was published. The Livonians also were afflicted by plague and famine, and their country miserably harried and laid waste before they were driven from it, and other Russian nations being introduced here, the Czarina now remains in the quiet possession of all Livonia.

(g) Jordan, a river of Asiatic Turkey, in the province of Judea, or Palestine, rising in Mount Libanus, in the north, runs south quite through the country a course of about one hundred and fifty miles, forming two lakes; the first, which is almost dry in summer, called the Sea of Galilee, and the Lake of Tiberias, and sometimes the Lake of Genesareth, being about twelve miles long, and eight broad; the other called the Dead, or Salt Sea, where Sodom and Gomorrah stood; is about seventy miles long, and sixteen broad; but the ordinary channel of the river Jordan is not above twenty yards broad at present, and discharges itself into the lake, called the Dead Sea.

C H A P. VI.

*A very rigorous Execution at Moscow; an Account of the magnificent Nuptials of one of his Czarian Majesty's particular Favourites. The Author has the Honour to be admitted into the Presence of the Empress, his Majesty's Brother's Widow.*

Jan. 19.  
A flocking  
execution  
at Moscow.

ON the nineteenth of this month there was a most severe and shocking execution at (*a*) Moscow: A woman who had murdered her husband had sentence passed upon her to be buried alive.

in the ground up to the shoulders. I had the curiosity to take a view of her under those deplorable circumstances, and to all outward appearance, her countenance was not changed. A white linnen cloth had

had been at first tied round  
head and neck; but she  
was taken off, because it  
was of no use.

The populace, however, relieved from throwing imprecations at the number of Kopytskies, or money they thought proper her; for which she returned her thanks not with her head, as *this* was collected in little papers, extended in little papers, and put in commemorative columns as the delinquents and let in a column. It is that the guards, appointing these unhappy wretches, of these heretics, variety towards their for many of them live condition for some of the women, however, after I left her: one day there was a man alive; but for what I cannot determine. I of this account of mine more largely on the minishing justice her fall days that to that I may proceed in respect to order of time.

On the twenty-sixth was celebrated, with magnificence, the nuptials of the Czarevitch, the favourite of the Czarevna, Felia Pletieritz Souk-Nobkum, with the princess Mary Swijewna Scherz-Kruz Eelder Swijew who was as great a dear as the bridegroom. Celebration of these nuptials, the principal Lady, several of the and three wives as well the guests in general



whether he should be able to maintain his position of that part of the country taken from the Swedes, Persians, and other Tartars of his empire, and to take a view of her under-  
 1701

1701

the Livonians also were distressed and famines, and their country was in a state of confusion. The Livonians also were distressed and famines, and their country was in a state of confusion. The Livonians also were distressed and famines, and their country was in a state of confusion.

The Livonians also were distressed and famines, and their country was in a state of confusion. The Livonians also were distressed and famines, and their country was in a state of confusion. The Livonians also were distressed and famines, and their country was in a state of confusion.

the river of Abniz Turkey, in the country of Judea, or Palestine, rising in the north, runs south the country a course of about fifty miles, forming two which is almost dry in summer. The river is almost dry in summer. The river is almost dry in summer.

the river is almost dry in summer. The river is almost dry in summer. The river is almost dry in summer.

the river is almost dry in summer. The river is almost dry in summer. The river is almost dry in summer.

the river is almost dry in summer. The river is almost dry in summer. The river is almost dry in summer.

## CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

37

1702

had been at first tied round about her head and neck; but she procured it to be taken off, because it was bound so tight that it almost choked her. There were three or four soldiers ordered to attend her, and permit no manner of sustenance to be given her, in order to prolong her life.

The populace, however, were not prevented from throwing into her grave what number of Kopukkes, or little pieces of money they thought proper to bestow upon her; for which acts of indulgence she returned her thanks by a submissive nod with her head. The small money that is thus collected is for the most part expended in little tapers, which are lighted up in commemoration of such particular saints as the delinquent then invokes, and set in a coffin. It is very probable, that the guards, appointed to attend on these unhappy wretches, secure some part of these benefactions, and apply it privately towards their own refreshment, for many of them live in this shocking condition for some considerable time. This woman, however, died in two days after I first saw her. On the very same day there was a man likewise buried alive; but for what crime in particular I cannot determine. In the prosecution of this account of mine, I shall expatiate more largely on the manner of their administering justice in this country; but shall drop that topic for the present, that I may proceed in my narrative with respect to order of time.

On the twenty-sixth of this instant was solemnized, with great pomp and magnificence, the nuptials of a peculiar favourite of the Czar, one, by name, Fielaet Prienewitz Soufkie, a Moscovite Nobleman, with the Knezna, or Princess Mary Swirjovena Schorkofskaja, sister of the Knez Eedder Swerwitz Schorkofskaja, who was as great a favourite with the Czar as the bridegroom. To the celebration of these nuptials, this Prince invited the principal Lords and Ladies of the court, several of the foreign ministers, and a great number of such merchants and their wives as were not natives. All the guests in general had particular orders

Jan. 26.

A magnificent wedding.

for being dressed in the antient mode observed in that country, and more or less richly, according to a certain regulation for that purpose prescribed. This wedding was kept in the Slabode of the Germans, at the Hotel of General Le Force, who was then lately deceased. It is a spacious edifice, and erected in the Italian taste. You go up to it by a flight of steps both to the right and left, on account of its extent; and when you are in, the apartments are all very grand and magnificent. There is a very fine Salon likewise, which was hung with rich tapestry, and in which the ceremony was performed. In one part, were two large leopards to be seen, with collars round their necks; and with their fore-paws extended on an escutcheon all of solid silver. In another, the representation of Atlas, with a large silver globe upon his shoulders; besides several large fine wrought vases, and other pieces of silver and gold plate; a considerable part whereof was brought from the Royal Treasury on this joyful occasion. The place appointed for the intended cavalcade to meet at was in the city, at but a small distance from the castle, in two grand buildings, which stood one directly against the other. The Grand Duke himself, as well as the guests that had received invitations, resorted early in the morning to these two commodious places for their reception; that is to say, the gentlemen repaired to the one, and the ladies to the other. From thence they began to move about ten o'clock; in order to proceed in form to the castle, in the center whereof I had planted myself, that I might be a spectator of this grand cavalcade, which, as the weather was exceeding fine, made a much better appearance than otherwise it would have done. In the first place, the Czar in person appeared, mounted on a pampere, black courser, dressed in a most magnificent cloth of gold; his mantle, or robe, which was thrown over it, was embellished with divers figures of variegated colours, and on his head, he wore a large scarlet fur-cap, not unlike a Turkish turbet. His horse was richly caparisoned with a fine gold housings, having

on

L







silver bits; and others had about two fingers in breadth, considerable thickness, which the horse's head to the being fastened to the pommel, made a very agree-

1702

Some of their bits, indeed, were y flat, and made only of silver. After these proceeded five or three first of which were

German doctors, and in the car, or chariot, covered over cloth, and intended for the use of the Czar's ladies, or

This is the title, or which is given by the Russians to the Czar's pleads to no-

public ceremony of the like in this, the first of these ladies, who

consort of the Knez Fudler Romanowski, who acts as Moscow in the Czar's absence, be indisposed, and could not

possibly be present; so that the who was the consort of Ivana-

liken, was obliged to appear had on her head a small, crowned felt-hat, with a

, with two maids of honour,

seated over-against her, in this

chariot, which was drawn by

the horses, and surrounded by

artillery. This car was fol-

lowed by twenty-five others, but all of

much smaller, and each drawn

by two only, tho' their covering,

of the same cloth, in one

is the bride, and the Russian

rest. Amongst these vehi-

cles was a little deplorable sledge,

the tail of as contemptible an

in it was seated a little fellow

human aspect, who made as bad

ance to the full as his carriage,

like a Jew. I imagined he was

a public spectacle of for some

had committed; and so upon

found that it was intended to

punish him, he being a Jew

on, but a profelyte it seemed

Christian faith. After these came

## CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

39

1702

seven other sledges, filled with Dutch ladies, and these were followed by a few empty chariots, which closed the procession. In this order, they all went through the castle, and from thence through one part of the city, as far as the church of Bogojastenska, that is, of the Annunciation, where the nuptials were solemnized in the presence of his Czarian Majesty, and a numerous concourse of other illustrious personages belonging to the court. Having gratified my curiosity thus far, I returned to my lodgings; and after that, I pitched upon as commodious a seat as I could get in the Slabode, in order to see the company take their tour to the place where the grand entertainment was to be when church was over. They did not come till three in the afternoon; being then about five hundred in number, both sexes included. However, the gentlemen went into one apartment, and the ladies into another, where there could be no interview. The Empress Dowager, the Czar's sister, and her three daughters sat at one table, accompanied with some of the court ladies; and the bride at another, with some of her particular female friends; and she who personated the Empress sat alone, and was raised above the rest. The other ladies, whether Russian, or foreigners wives, were in another apartment; but the music was so commodiously placed, as to be heard in all places alike. When the entertainment was over, which was very grand and magnificent, and lasted several hours, the bride and bridegroom were conducted to the place, where the nuptials were proposed to be consummated; which was at a small edifice, erected near the river Yuska, for that particular purpose; where the bed that was prepared for their reception, made but a very mean appearance. Tho' most of the company dispersed before twelve o'clock; yet a great part of them tarried in the Slabode, in houses prepared for their reception, by the Czar's express command, in order that the Russians might with greater ease meet again the day following at the same place; and from thence proceed to the Hotel of

Major General Menefius, whose widow was then living. The lady, who personated the Empress, went thither in the night time; but the bride did not go till after break of day. The Czar himself set out about ten that morning, without the attendance of any foreigners; and after he had been there about an hour, he proceeded in good order to visit Mr. Lups, who waited for him at the door, accompanied by several Dutch merchants. He tarried there some little time, with his retinue, but would not dismount, notwithstanding he was plentifully regaled with the best of liquors.

There was one occurrence, which I cannot forbear mentioning, as it created the company abundance of diversion. The bridegroom was mounted upon a very fine stone-horse; and one of his companions on as fine a mare; both of them snuffed the wind, and both were prepared for action. Tho' the bridegroom's horse did not fail to cover his friend's mare; yet the Lord, by his dexterity and address, got clear, without any misfortune; whilst the bridegroom kept the saddle during the whole amorous operation; which created laughter enough, and several witty remarks amongst the spectators. They both longed to be at the sport before they came out of the stable; but their wishes there were disappointed. Then the Czarian Prince appeared on horse-back, accompanied by several young noblemen about the same age as himself, but a groom went before, and led his horse by the bridle. He was followed by the bride's chariot, and her's by the grand car, with twelve white horses, in which was the lady who personated the Empress, and that by a great number of others full of Russian ladies. When they came to the Palace, where the nuptials were solemnized, and where I took care to be in time by going another way, his Majesty went in first; and after him the bride; who went into another set of apartments on the left-hand, which formerly was the residence of General Le Fort. The grand car stopt to make room; it being very troublesome to proceed as the cover was so lofty; and

im-



THE TRAVELS OF

1702

impossible to turn as the passage was so narrow. During this stop, the Czar and Princess dismounted, and stood on one side of the chariot, and there continued till it was actually got in, which was attended with some difficulty; for it stuck hard at the top. After that, the young Prince crossed the Palace-yard; and the Empress alighting from her car, went up some steps on the right-hand. The foreigners and their wives resorted thither likewise, and tarried there much in the same manner as they had done the night before. On the third day, being the last, they determined to appear in the German dress, with which every body complied, except only a few Russian ladies. And they waited once more on the new-married pair; but separately. The gentlemen and the ladies sat at table together, as we do in Holland; and after the entertainment was over, there were several comic dances, which gave entire satisfaction both to his Majesty, and all the guests. And thus concluded this grand solemnity, a particular detail whereof I imagined, would be acceptable to my readers, as it was so singular, and so perfectly Royal.

Feb. 2.

On the second of February, one part of the Swedish prisoners before-mentioned were brought hither in sledges.

Feb. 4.

On the fourth, a messenger came to me, with orders for my waiting on the Czar, who was at that time in the palace of his grand favourite Prince Menzikoff. This palace is called Semennofskies, the name of a petty village, at the distance of about a mile and an half from the Slabode; where I found his Majesty very busy in trying some fire-engines, which were lately arrived from Holland: that Prince perceiving that I was there, called me to him, and went again directly into the palace. *Well!* says he, *Sir, you have seen, undoubtedly, in your travels, abundance of strange things; and yet I dare venture to assert, that you never saw a greater curiosity, than that which we intend to shew you.* He then ordered a poor Russian, who had instructions to attend for that purpose, to open his cloaths. I shuddered at the very sight. He had

The author makes his appearance before the Czar.

The conversation that passed between them.

An extra-ordinary  
cafe.

an excrescence about a hand's length below his navel, which was about four inches in substance, through which unnatural passage he voided his daily food; and in this deplorable condition (it seems) he had lived for nine years successively. This

1702

The occasion of it.

The author  
is desired to  
draw the  
portraits  
of the three  
Princesses.

Accepts of  
the honour  
done him,

Appears  
before the  
Empress.



re about a hand's length he-  
which was about four inches

through which unnatural  
tended his daily food; and in  
ble condition (it seems) he  
nine years successively. This

atic proceeded but from a cut  
which had irritated the part

re about the natural passages,  
it could possibly be procured.

generously, that I had never  
an extraordinary case before; but

well knew a certain person,

it up his daily food, and dis-

at his mouth: at which re-

ned almost equally *spirited*.

course, he ordered the poor

science to be squeezed, that

tain a more adequate idea of

whatever came out appeared

elated. This miserable object

five and thirty years of age.

it had the honour to converse

Czarian Majesty for about

and had been plentifully re-

he best of liquors, he left me,

Alexander immediately came

He informed me, that his

ving heard I had predicted

the art of painting, was

that I should draw the por-

re three young Princesses, the

of the late Czar Jon Alexo-

rather, who had reigned joint-

to the day of his death,

anged on the twenty-ninth of

6, and intimated, at the time

was principally for that pur-

I had been invited to their

I may imagine, I very readily

the honour done me; and I

is young nobleman according-

conducted me directly to the

the mother of those young

who was then at one of the

*visite-houses*, called *Imedhoff*,

initially situated, about a league's

in order that I

an uninterrupted view of

an uninterrupted view of

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

On my first approach to

# CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

to which the young Prince immediately answered for me, that I was not: whereupon, they had a short discourse between themselves: After that, the Empress filled out a small cup of brandy, which she presented to the Prince, who, when he had emptied it, delivered it to one of the maids of honour then in waiting; and the lady delivering it again to that Princess, she filled it a second time, and presented it to me with her own hand; she gave the Prince and my self likewise a glass of wine; and the same compliment was made us by the three young ladies. After this refreshment, a large glass of beer was filled out, which the Empress again presented to Prince Alexander, who, after having taken only a sip, delivered it to the same maid of honour as before; the like ceremony was observed in relation to my self; and I just tasted it only in the same manner; for in this court, it would be looked upon as the grossest act of ill manners, to empty the last glass of beer that is offered. I then conversed with Prince Alexander for some time, in my own native language (as he talks Dutch pretty fluently) on the art of painting. And when we took our leave, the Empress herself, as well as the young Princesses, offered us their right-hands to kifs, which is one of the highest honours that can be conferred on a stranger in this country. Some days after this interview, there was a grand nuptial festival going forwards at Prince Menzikoff's Palace, at which the Czar himself, and the Prince, his uncle, were personally present, with a numerous train of others belonging to the court of both sexes. Several English and Dutch merchants likewise, with their respective ladies, attended these nuptials, to which they had been properly invited. The table, which was made in the form of a horse-shoe, was spread in the Grand Salon; and the Czar and the Russian noblemen sat on one side, and the ladies on the other. The young Czarian Prince, Prince Alexander, and the English and Dutch merchants sat at a round table, in the center of the hall, to which I had the honour of being admitted. When the entertainment, which was a very

Converses  
with Prince  
Alexander  
on the art  
of painting.

Another  
grand nup-  
tial enter-  
tainment.

elegant and magnificent one, was over, there were several dancers, who performed after the Polish manner. On the left-hand, were seated all the musicians, who, to do them justice, performed exceedingly well.

Prince Alexander went away before it was dark, in order to spend some few days in the country, where he had some private avocations. On the eleventh instant, Mr. Panwel Heins, the Danish Envoy, set out directly for his own court, with an intention, however, to return in the spring, but left his lady behind him at Moscow. On the fifth of March, then next following, I had the honour of dining with his Majesty at Probrofensko, the usual residence of that Monarch. After dinner he took me with him to the Empresses Palace, in order to see the three young Princesses pictures, which had been begun for some time, and he entertained her a-while on the topic of my travels. On the eleventh, his Majesty went, accompanied by several noblemen belonging to the court, to pay Mr. Brants a visit, where he saw several pictures which I had drawn at (b) Archangel, and with which he seemed highly pleased. After a variety of conversation on different topics, his Majesty made mention of some particular pieces of cannon, which were generally thought to have the arms of Genoa wrought upon them; which, like those of Venice, are a Lion with one of his paws upon a book. And as he was not perfectly satisfied, whether this general conjecture was really matter of fact, he was determined to take a view of them, in order to gratify his curiosity in that particular, and appointed the Prince's palace for the place of inspection. His Majesty accordingly was very punctual to his time; and Prince Alexander, in the name of his Majesty, made a present of a gold medal to each of the inspectors, who, for the most part, were foreign merchants, to whose judgment he paid a great regard. On this medal his Majesty was represented with a crown of laurel on his head, with this following inscription round it, but in the Russian language, *Peter Alexowitz, Great*

Czar

M



THE TRAVELS OF

1702 *Czar of all Russia.* On the reverse were two eagles, with the day and year, viz. the first of February 1702.

After a very magnificent entertainment at this place, the company returned to Probrofensko, which was looked upon as no better than the residence of a captain, his Majesty at that time having never assumed a higher title. This palace is not above one league from Moscow, and but at a small distance from that belonging to Prince Menzikoff. It is the

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Moscow, see P. 23. n. c.

(b) Archangel, see P. 8. n. d.

CHAP. VII.

*Sumptuous Entertainments made by his Czarian Majesty in the Country. Several Particulars relating to the Embassy. His Majesty takes his Diversion on the River (a) Moskva. The Manner of solemnizing the Festival of Easter amongst the Russians. His Majesty's Departure for (b) Archangel.*

WHILST we were taking our survey of the guns last-mentioned, all things were duly prepared for our going to a village, which appertained to Prince Alexander, called Alexcejeskie, at but a small distance from Lemueneskie, which is about twelve wersts from Moscow, where that nobleman has a very magnificent country seat, situate on the river Youla. 'Tis a most delightful place, where there are a great variety of canals profusely stocked with all sorts of the choicest fish. Nothing, however, struck my fancy more agreeably than the stables there, which are all very spacious, built with timber, as well as the seat itself, and above fifty of the finest horses I ever saw contained in them. On our arrival, we found, that there were several German ladies sent thither before-hand by his Majesty's express orders, with intent to make the proper provisions for a future elegant entertainment. There were ten of us in all; our resident, three

arsenal likewise of the regiment of his Majesty's life-guards. It was here that we took our survey of the three cannon just before-mentioned, on each of which there was a lion visible enough, tho' worn down, indeed, pretty much. They were remarkably short, and not much unlike our mortar-pieces: but how they should have fallen into the hands of the Russians, is such a mystery to me, that I am perfectly at a loss, I confess, how to account for it.

English, and the rest Dutch, exclusive of about thirteen or fourteen Russian noblemen, and ladies, amongst whom was Prince Alexander's sister. We were received there in the most courteous manner, and very elegantly entertained at supper with a profusion of all sorts of flesh and fish.

There were two tables spread in a spacious salon, or hall; one of which was a very long one, at which sat the Czar, and several of his noblemen on one side, and the ladies facing them. The other was a round table, placed in the middle of the hall, whereat were seated, the English guests, and the greater part of the German, or rather Dutch merchants. As soon as supper was over, the Russians withdrew to their respective apartments: the noblemen on one side, and the ladies on the other: the foreigners, however, tarried some considerable time longer in the hall. The day following there was a much more magnificent

Another  
An agree-  
able enter-  
tainment

when entertainment, and a great variety of instruments, as violins, flutes, &c. were several dances in it. And as his Czarian majesty was intended to be in a particular manner encouraged the company and fire as well as the liquor. When every one withdrew, I then perceived that the young P. had pointed in full his eyes at me, in our recess, as they were, and I had been told me to disparted, he having taken to another place. My own command, however, and my going to the German part in public, but which were left entire, I thought proper after the manner of it. I shall now proceed to a short description of the great Parkdown, which was not the of age, she was too is true, but as she the gracefulness of the least diminished there, we may after that she was a very healthy person, and her equipment was excellent, and the Czar had a great The young Czarian, too, was very frequent







1702  
waiting, accompanied by several English and Dutch merchants for his arrival, whom, after his landing, he again entertained with a profusion of flesh as well as fish, notwithstanding it was Lent, and in the Passion-Week. Every one was left to his own option; but as for himself and his retinue, they never tasted the fish.

A great  
Flood.

The month of April commenced with such an extraordinary thaw, that in a short compass of time, there was not a block of ice to be seen; and upon this sudden and unexpected alteration, the river swelled to such a prodigious height, that the like accident had never happened before in the memory of the oldest person then living. The mills that stood on the banks of the river Youfa were greatly damaged; and the Low-lands behind the houses were laid under water from the adjacent ponds. The high-roads and lanes were likewise all overflowed; that, however, is no uncommon occurrence in the spring, when the snow begins to melt. The Slabode belonging to the Germans was in such a wet, and nasty condition, that the horses went up to their very bellies in mud and dirt; but the Czar, having soon information of it, gave orders directly for the cleansing it, and turning off the current of such filth another way.

On the fifth day of this month, about fix in the morning, a fire broke out in the apartments of a Dutch merchant, who resided in the Slabode; to which the Czar immediately resorted, in order to be as assiduous as possible, and give the proper directions, as 'tis his constant practice on such urgent occasions. There is a watch set, every hour in the night, who never fail, on any such emergency, to give the alarm.

On the same day, the Russians solemnized the festival of Easter, with all the demonstrations of public joy imaginable ; because, not only the wished for time of our Saviour's Resurrection was come, but because their Lent was then over. The bells never ceased from ringing all the night before, and the two subsequent days. At that time they begin to di-

五

attribute their Easter-eggs amongst their friends, which holds for about a fortnight; and this custom is observed by the grandees and other substantial families, as well as by those of the lower class; by the old as well as the young; who make formal presents of them one to another: and, in short, there is not a shop in the city without numbers of them coloured and boiled. Tho' the major part of them, indeed, are painted with a plumb-blue; yet there are several done neatly enough in green and white; there are some painted more accurately than ordinary, and for which they demand two or three rixdollars. Some of them, in a word, are embellished with the following inscription in capitals, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST? That is to say, IS CHRIST RISEN? Some persons of distinction will have a considerable number of these ready in their houses, in order to make presents of them to their visitors; and when they deliver them, they kiss them with their lips, saying as above, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST? To which the person who receives them replies; WOISTINE WOS CHREST, that is, YEA VERILY HE IS RISEN. Gentlemen carry them in their pockets, and give them to such friends as they happen to meet with in the streets, as we have before-mentioned; and nobody, of what sex or station soever, will refuse to accept the offer. It is customary likewise for servants to present them to their masters; who, in return, for the generality, give them what they call a Praefnik. I had about thirteen or fourteen of them made me a present of, very neatly coloured by some of their women. In times past, these presents were deemed matters of a serious concern; but these, as well as many other things, have of late years been greatly altered. The Russian quality, and foreign merchants, in times past, were wont to present their congratulatory eggs to his Czarian Majesty himself, and have received others in return; but that custom is at present laid aside.

On the ninth of April 1702, the Czar diverted himself once more on the river Molka. His Czarian Majesty's watermen, who

Who

April 9,  
Diverdon  
on the river  
Mekong.

[illegible]



1702

their Easter-eggs amongst their ch-bolds for about a fortnight; whom is delivered by the grandees of the lower class; by the old the young; who make formal them one to another; and, in is not a shop in the city bbers of them coloured and of the minor part of them, painted with a plain-blue; are several done neatly enough and white; there are some accurately than ordinary; to they demand two or three some of them, in a way, d with the following in-aptak, CHRISTOS WOG That is to say, IS CHRIST some persons of distinction can be a number of these in order to make them to their visitors; and give them to such we have before-mentioned; of what sex or station so- to accept the offer. It likewise for servants to pre-ent masters; who, in re- generally, give them what I had about this of them made me a very neatly coloured by some man. In times past, these deemed matters of a serious at these, as well as any as, have at the years been The Russian quality, merchants, in times past, present their congratulatory Czarian Majesty himself, and others in return; but that others laid aside.

the Car April 1702, the river D once more on the river Czarian Majesty's war-men, who

who had the management of his barge, and those belonging to the barge of the Princess, his sister, were drest in white shirts (after the Dutch fashion) all laced down before; each of the foreign merchants had orders the night before to provide themselves with two watermen. These barges, or boats, had each of them two masts, that in case the wind should favour them they might sail without rowing. The company fell down the river from the country seat of the General Velt Marshall Bories Petrowitz Czeremetoff, which is situate on this river, at some small distance from Moscow, and directly over-against his Czarian Majesty's fine house, called Worobjowegoro. That General had the very day before the honour of entertaining his Majesty and all his train at that very house; which train consisted of the Czarian Prince, the Princess, his Majesty's sister, who was accompanied by three or four Russian ladies, a considerable number of Lords and officers of his Majesty's household, our resident, several foreign merchants, and about fifteen or sixteen German ladies. All the barges, or boats, which amounted to about forty in all, appeared before this nobleman's seat, each of them furnished with ten or twelve oars. When his Czarian Majesty, with all his train, were embarked, they failed down the river, with great rapidity, beyond the bridge, and made the best of their way to Kolommenko, a country palace belonging to his Majesty, about twenty wersts from Moscow by water, though very little more than seven by land. There they went on shore by seven in the evenings, and were entertained in a very royal manner. The next day they were entertained as magnificently as before, but with the additional amusement of a grand concert. About three in the afternoon, they returned to the city; some in coaches, some in chariots, and others on horseback. The next day, Mr. Brandts entertained the Czar, who was attended by the resident of Holland, and several English and Dutch merchants. They spent their time there in such a jovial manner, that

his Majesty himself tarried there till eleven at night; but the rest of the company did not break up till two the next morning.

On the nineteenth I received orders to carry the portraits of the three young Princesses to the Empress, in order that she might see them, as they were then completely finished. I went accordingly with Prince Alexander's brother-in-law; but the Princess at that time unfortunately happened to be so far indisposed as to keep her bed. However, I placed the pictures in the most advantageous light I could, that she might have a view of them even there. She seemed to approve of them very well; returned me many thanks, and made me a present of a purse of gold, with her own hand, which I had the honour to salute. After which, she asked me whether I should tarry in the country long enough to paint her three daughters over again; to which having made her a satisfactory answer, one of the young Princesses gave us some brandy in a small gilt cup, and after we had drank one glass of wine, we immediately withdrew. I gave orders directly for all the pictures to be conveyed to the palace of Prince Alexander, where I packed them up as safe as possible, in order to be sent away on an hour's notice. The same night his Czarian Majesty set out for Archangel, attended by Prince Alexander, the Patriarch Mekile Moysewitz Solof, Lord Keeper of the Great Seal, the first minister of State, Count Fedder Alexowitz Gollowin, the Sieur Gabriel Gollofkiem, the Knez Gregory Grogiewitz Rosiodanofskie Bojar, the Knez Tuerje Tuerjewitz Froetbetkoy, and the Stolnick, who attends his Majesty, as his cup-bearer, wherever he goes.

On the twenty-sixth of April, the scavengers, as we call them, began to clean the streets in the Slabode, which was carried into execution in the following manner. In the first place, the dirt was thrown up all along the sides of the houses, in order to its being the more easily removed; there being two Germans appointed to inspect their work, and give the proper di-

N

They clean  
the ways.

1702

April 19,



## T H E T R A V E L S O F

1702

directions. And this absolutely necessary undertaking was carried on with such unwearied industry and application, that at the week's end, the inhabitants of the Slabode could walk about their business without any material molestation.

May 3.  
A flood.

About the third of May then next ensuing, we received the disagreeable intelligence from Archangel, that the thaw had swelled the river there to that degree, that it had done incredible mischief; that much the greater part of the houses which stood near the fort of New Dwinko, had been laid under water; that the timber, and the works in his Majesty's dock-yard there, were carried away by the rapidity of the torrent; that a ship which was before upon the stocks, was turned with its keel upwards; that several ships before riding at anchor, in sight of the town, had been driven with violence against the bridge, near the palace belonging to the merchants; and, in short, that the waters were risen so high as to cover even the gardens in the heart of the city.

May 4.

The next day, the inhabitants began to remove the dirt in the Slabode, that had been so thrown up as before-mentioned; each house-keeper having permission so to do, at his own expence; and to carry it into his own garden, if he had one, in order to raise it, or dispose of it in such other manner as he saw most convenient. And that so important a work might be finished with the greater expedition, the German merchants assembled themselves together at the hall belonging to the grandees there. The house is very stately, spacious, and magnificent; and commodiously situated in the midst of a very fine garden. At this their meeting, they pitched upon two other proper inspectors to aid and assist those other two who had been appointed before for that very purpose. This election was made by a majority of votes, each writing down on a slip of paper the name of the person he particularly favoured. To these four, they added eight others, as assistants, and invested them with a sufficient authority to see the work completed with the utmost expedition.

May 9.

On the ninth of May, being the festival

1

1702

of St. Nicholas, several letters arrived from Holland, bearing date the twenty-eighth of April then last past, with the melancholy news of the decease of his Britannic Majesty King William the third, of immortal memory, after a short indisposition but of four days only. This created a great consternation amongst the foreign merchants, but principally amongst my own country-men the Dutch, who were more conscious to themselves than the rest of the inestimable worth of that departed Prince, and as an incontestible proof of their sincere regard for him, and of their due sense of so great a loss, they went into deep mourning for him for six weeks successively.

On the nineteenth, we had information of a great flood, that had happened at Holland, and had not only laid several villages under water, but had proved the deaths of a great number of persons. We were farther advised likewise, that the allies had made themselves masters of Keyserwaert.

The allies  
take Key-  
serwaert.

May 21.

On the twenty-first was solemnized the grand festival of Walla Diemerka Bogrodieffa, a certain town, wherein, the inhabitants tell you, that the Blessed Virgin Mary had formerly made her appearance, and that in order to commemorate that condescending goodness of her's, they observed the Thursday before Pentecost, which they call Seemie, as a festival, in one of the churches belonging to that city. Early in the morning of that day, several of their clergy resort in form to a pit or ditch, and cast into it the dead bodies of all such persons as have either been unfortunately murdered, or of such others as have been justly executed according to their demerits. These ditches, or pits, of which there are three or four in the parts adjacent to Moscow, are annually filled up, and fresh ones are dug on the preceding night. On that day likewise the Empress's mother was interred with great pomp and solemnity, tho' she departed this life but the very day before. The reason, however, was, that it is contrary to the custom of the country, to keep their dead any considerable time above ground; but of this particular re-

The Em-  
press's mo-  
ther inter-  
red.

religious custom we shall  
have in another place.  
The same day a fire broke  
out, which could not  
be quenched till ten o'clock. On the

King Wil-  
liam's  
death.

(i.e. Mosby, or Moscow) is  
west of the province of Moscow  
and through that province, I

A Description of the  
five fish-ponds, a  
peculiar Delicacy  
of the  
Prussians.

I WENT frequently,  
in company at (a) Moscow  
country in, by way of a  
house of my most intimate  
and as I was in the way  
the month of July, I  
Colombia, as they call  
kind of gooseberry,  
agreeable acid. They  
them with honey, c  
much the same manne  
heres. They frequent  
with them (if we may b  
perfect) a kind of lemon  
very refreshing liquor, &  
fished to sick persons.  
The woods all round  
abound with this partic  
grows in profusion un  
the trees, not only the  
the whole country. Th  
signifies, in the Russi  
berry; and this gooseb  
heres. Each large fish  
or two of a smaller fish  
beries grow in large cl  
seen in Pskov, a conside  
them are great head w  
and in July they are in



hols, several letters arrived  
d, bearing date the twenty-  
will then last past, with the  
news of the decease of his  
majesty King William the third,  
memory, after a short in-  
ut of four days only. This  
it consensation amongst the  
ans, but principally amongst  
entry-men the Dutch, who  
conscious to themselves than  
the insupportable worth of that  
ance, and as an inconvertible  
r sincere regard for him, and  
tinue of *so great a loss*, they  
p mourning for him for six  
rely.

teenth, we had information  
ood, that had happened at  
A had not only laid several  
er water, but had proved the  
great number of persons. We  
advised likewise, that the  
made themselves masters of

twenty-first was solemnized the  
A of Walla Diemetka Bo-  
certain town, wherein, the  
ell you, that the Blessed  
had formerly made her ap-  
A that in order to commu-  
at consecrating goodness of  
observed the Thursday before  
which they call *Semee*, as a  
e of the churches belonging  
Early in the morning of  
eral of their clergy resort in  
or ditch, and cast into it the  
of all such persons as have  
unfortunately murdered, or  
as have been justly executed  
their demerits. These ditches,  
which there are three or four  
is adjacent to Moscow, are in-  
d up, and fresh ones are dug  
On that day  
ceeding night.

Empress's mother was interred  
pomp and solemnity, tho'  
this life but the very day be-  
was, that  
reason, however, of the coun-  
ty to the custom of the coun-  
p their dead any considerable  
ground; but of this particular

## CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1702

A fire at  
Moscow.  
Another on  
June 3.

religious custom we shall speak more at  
large in another place. In the morning  
of the same day a fire broke out at Mos-  
cow, which could not be extinguished  
till ten o'clock. On the third of June

there was another, at a village not far  
from thence; and on the fourteenth a  
third at Moscow. About the same time  
several merchants set out from that city  
for Archangel.

### *Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.*

(a) Moskva, or Moscovia River, rises in the  
west of the province of Moscow, and running  
east through that province, passes by the city

of Moscow, and falls into the river Occa, at  
Kolomna.  
(b) Archangel, see p. 8. n. d.

~~~~~

C H A P. VIII.

A Description of the Products of the Earth; of the Fruits; rural Seats, fine fish-ponds, and other Articles, wherein the Russian Gentry take a peculiar Delight; as also, of the Russian Hermits who were Prisoners.

I WENT frequently, during my re-
sidence at (a) Moscow, to take the
country air, by way of amusement, with
some of my most intimate acquaintance;
and as I was in the woods, one day, in
the month of July, I met with some
Costenitza, as they call them, that is, a
kind of gooseberry, which had a very
agreeable acid. The gentry here eat
them with honey, or fine sugar, after
much the same manner as we do straw-
berries. They frequently likewise make
with them (if we may be allowed the ex-
pression) a kind of lemonade, which is a
very refreshing liquor, and is often pre-
scribed to sick persons as a diet-drink.
The woods all round about Moscow
abound with this particular fruit, which
grows in profusion under the shadow of
the trees, not only there, but throughout
the whole country. The term Costenitza,
signifies, in the Russian language, a stony
berry; and this gooseberry accordingly
has one. Each large stalk produces three
or four of a smaller size, on which the
berries grow in large clusters, as may be
seen in Plate A annexed. The leaves of
them are green both winter and summer,
and in July they are in their utmost per-

Delicious
gooseber-
ries.

Plate A.

fection. There is another species of this
berry, which the Russians call Brusnitsa,
which are considerably larger than the
former, and grow single, like those in
Holland, and bear twenty or thirty in a
bunch. These grow very low; some are
not above a single span from the ground,
and the highest not exceeding a span and
an half. These are carried to Moscow
annually in large quantities, at which
time, not only the natives, but the fo-
reigners, who reside there, lay in large
stocks. The former throw them into
tubs or casks of water, and there let
them lie during the whole summer sea-
son; after that, they draw it off, and
drink it; and very pleasant and refreshing
this liquor is; especially, when it is pro-
perly sweetened with either honey or
sugar: these gooseberries are likewise
preserved, and frequently eaten by way
of desert. The Germans squeeze the
juice out of them, and then boil them
up with sugar, or honey, till they come
to a proper consistence, and make use of
it with their roast-meat, and, in my
opinion, the relish of it is perfectly agree-
able. They cask it up likewise, and
mix it with the juice of other gooseberries.
With

THE TRAVELS OF

1702

Plate B.

Their roots
and greens.Their cab-
bages.Their cu-
cumbers.Their gar-
lick.Their green
or horse-ra-
dish.Their tur-
nips, red
cabbages,
and colly-
flowers.Their aspa-
ragus and
artichokes.Their car-
rots, par-
snips, and
beet-roots.Their cal-
lecting and
cellery.Their
strawber-
ries.Their raf-
berries.Their me-
lons.Their fruit-
trees.
Their nuts
and wall-
nuts.
Their ap-
ples.

2

With this liquor they entertain their vi-
sitors; and it has a fine flavour. The
leaves of these berries resemble those of
the rose, as may be seen in the Plate B
annexed, and are always green. The
Russians have a profusion of roots and
greens throughout their country. They
have what they call their Kopoffe, that
is to say, cabbages, which they lay by in
heaps; and the poorer sort of the people
regale themselves with them sometimes
twice a day; they have likewise what
they call their Ougertse, that is, cu-
cumbers, which they eat, as others do
apples and pears; and these are laid by
in their garners, by even people of fashion.
Their country abounds likewise with
garlick, of which the common people
eat so profusely, that you may smell
them at a great distance. This in their
language is called, Siainock. They have
plenty likewise of what they call Green,
and we horse-radish, with which they
make very good sauces both for fish and
flesh. They have divers kinds of tur-
nips; as also of red cabbages, and colly-
flowers; for which, indeed, they are ob-
liged to foreigners, who have brought
them there in plenty for some considera-
ble time. Asparagus and artichokes are
also common enough there; but then
they are eaten by foreigners only. They
are obliged to the Dutch likewise for se-
veral roots that grow under-ground;
such as carrots, parsnips, and beet-root;
of all which they have plenty at present;
as also of all manner of salleting and
cellery, to the culture whereof they were
perfect strangers formerly, tho' at present
they are great admirers of them all.
There are strawberries, moreover, in
plenty, especially of the smaller sort, in all
the parts adjacent to Moscow. The
larger sort they gather, and eat them by
handfuls. Raspberries likewise grow there
in plenty, as also a large sort of melon,
but these are two watery, much like
our cucumbers, and produce very little
seed.

four, are pleasant to the taste, and strike
the eye in a very agreeable manner. I
have had a present of some of them,
that are so transparent, that the kernels
may be discerned in the heart of them,
by holding them up to the light. Their
pears, however, are just the reverse;
they are not near so common; neither
are they so palatable; besides they are
extremely small. Their plumbs and
cherries likewise are but very indifferent;
excepting such as have been cultivated
there in some of the orchards belonging
to the foreign-merchants. The gardens
of the Germans in particular abound with
good gooseberries, and a great variety of
the finest flowers. Those of the Russians,
on the other hand, are wild, artless, and
inelegant: notwithstanding the natives
have plenty of water, and notwithstanding
fountains and jetdeaux are very ornamen-
tal in a garden, and might be procured
at a very trivial expence; yet they are
perfect strangers to such rural amuse-
ments. The Russians begin, however,
to have a better taste than they had
formerly, both in regard to the manage-
ment of their gardens, and the decoration
of their public structures; but they had
little or none till the Czar himself was
pleased to take a tour through the Ne-
therlands. The Knez Daniel Gregoritz
Seraskie has a garden cultivated entirely
after the Dutch taste; near one of his
villages, called in their language, the
Sietjove, which is at the distance of
about thirteen wersts from Moscow; it
is very spacious, and neat enough; and,
in short, the finest garden throughout the
country; but then the reader is to ob-
serve, that the whole is submitted to the
care and inspection of a Dutch gardener,
retained for that purpose. Take Russia
all together, they have not a great many
curiosities to boast of. The principal
beauty of their rural seats consists in their
canals, or fish-ponds, which are exceed-
ingly fine. There are sometimes two
or three of them properly disposed,
which are not only very large, but full
of fish, which is one of their favourite
dishes; and upon a visit of any friends
for whom they have any regard, the
first

1702

Their pears

Their
plumbs and
cherries.Their gar-
dens.Their cas-
nals, or
fish-ponds.

first they take it to
the pond's side, and di-
rectly themselves with
fish at one angle have
fish kinds than would
dishes, or more, when
I shall never forget a
I was once contented
Dutch ladies in whose
to put one. Mr. Stre-
was a very substantial
just at a village called
fishen words were. A
we were very contented
This gentleman's lady
cedingly handsome, but
natural, and did her ut-
to make us joyful and
was built elegantly or
dance of commodious
what was somewhat
kitchen was very neat,
the Dutch taste, where
part of the fish, dress
beetroot, cornwheat
dishes in plenty of all so
besides sweet dishes of
in the Russian manner,
fences. After dinner
into a room, where had
furnished to the beam
alternately sing, a
passion in the country
the house herself, over
by being strong by a
attendants, who were p
During the time of th
took a child in her l
sing a merry, rural s
by her maid, which
singing and performe
fishing manner. She
however, for her ing
dishes us, at the same
had any previous notic
what she would have e
inconvenient as well
After we had returned
for the part of our
dishes we seem to one
and ordered her to send
quantity of the best fi

leasant to the taste, and taste a very agreeable manner, I

1702

a present of some of them, so transparent, that the kernels discerned in the heart of them, them up to the light. Their

Their

seeds, are just the reverse; of near so common; neither

palatable; besides they are

small. Their plants and

seeds are but very indifferent;

such as have been cultivated

some of the orchards belonging

foreign-merchants. The gardens

are in particular about with

series, and a great variety of

flowers. Those of the Russian;

it hand, are wild, artless, and

notwithstanding the natives

of water, and notwithstanding

and jets d'eau are very ornamented

gardens, and might be procured

trivial expense; yet they are

angers to such rural amuse-

the Russians begin, however,

better taste than they had

both in regard to the manage-

in gardens, and the decoration

public structures; but they had

one till the Czar himself was

take a tour through the No-

The Aker Daniel Gregoritz

has a garden cultivated entirely

Dutch taste; near one of his

lived in their language, the

which is at the distance of

green wicks from Moscow; it

icious, and neat enough; and,

the finest garden throughout the

but then the reader is to ob-

it the whole is submitted to the

inspection of a Dutch gardener,

for that purpose. Take Russia

ner, they have not a great many

to boast of. The principal

their rural seats consists in their

fish-ponds, which are exceed-

There are sometimes two

of them properly disposed,

re not only very large, but full

which is one of their favourite

and upon a visit of any friends

they have any regard, first

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

49

1702

to our carrying them home with us perfectly fresh. We took our leave of our kind entertainers, and took them with us into our coach, highly delighted with our agreeable present.

On one side of this village I discovered a tree of an extraordinary size; with wide-extended branches; all in due proportion. The trunk of it was at least three fathom and an half in circumference. It was a white poplar, which the Russians in their language call an Afina.

The white
poplar, an
extraordi-
nary tree.

There are very few of the foreign merchants but what have gardens behind their apartments, or else at some small distance from the city; where they cultivate, with all the care imaginable, a great variety of fruits and flowers, which they send for from their respective homes. The beds of their gardens, indeed, are all bordered with boards instead of box-trees; and as the country-gardens have no flowers to boast of, those that grow in their woods being very indifferent; a foreigner cannot oblige a native better, than by presenting him with a nosegay out of his garden. There are some Russians, however, of the more substantial sort, that are curious enough; and cultivate as fine flowers with equal care and equal judgment.

Their manners are singular enough: when they pay a visit, and enter any room, they look about them, without saying one single word, for some faint or another; there being no visiting-room at least without such sort of decorations; and when they have fixed their eye on such picture, they make three profound formal bows to it; and signing themselves with the cross, they cry Gospodi Pomilus! that is to say, Lord have mercy upon me! or else they say, Mier Etdom Zjeiewoefonon; that is, Peace be unto this house; and to all who reside therein! with the usual ceremony of their crosses. After that, they salute the people of the house, and speak to them. This custom they strictly observe, tho' they are paying their visits to strangers; and address themselves to the first picture they cast their eye on, lest they should pay their respects to man before his Maker. Their principal

Manners of
the Russians

O

1702

Abound
with fish.

first step they take is to conduct them to their pond's side, and divert them with their casting-nets, which are so capacious, that at one single haul or drag, they will furnish themselves with more fish of various kinds than would serve for twenty dishes, or more, when artfully dressed.

I shall never forget a party of pleasure I was once concerned in with some Dutch ladies, in whose company I went to pay one Mr. Strefenof a visit. He was a very substantial merchant, and resided at a village called Fackeloof, about fifteen wersts from Moscow, by whom we were very courteously entertained. This gentleman's lady was not only exceedingly handsome, but perfectly good-natured, and used her utmost endeavours to make us jovial and gay. The house was built elegantly enough, with abundance of commodious apartments; and what was somewhat remarkable, the kitchen was very neat, and furnished in the Dutch taste, where our ladies had part of the fish, dressed Alamode Hollandoise; notwithstanding there were dishes in plenty of all sorts of cold meats, besides twenty dishes of fish at least, dressed in the Russian manner, with very elegant sauces. After dinner we were conducted into a room, that had several ropes well fastened to the beams: in these the ladies alternately swung, which is a favourite pastime in the country; and the lady of the house herself opened the diversion, by being swung by two of her female attendants, who were pretty girls enough. During the time of her swinging, she took a child in her lap; and began to sing a merry, rural song, accompanied by her maid, which was highly entertaining, and performed in the most obliging manner. She made an apology, however, for her inelegant concert, and assured us, at the same time, that had she had any previous notice of our friendly visit, she would have entertained us with instrumental as well as vocal music. After we had returned our compliments for this part of our diversion, she conducted us down to one of her fish-ponds, and ordered her servants to catch a sufficient quantity of the best fish she had, in order

Their rural
amuse-
ments.

THE TRAVELS OF

1702

Hawking
and Cour-
sing their
favourite
Diverfions.

Their in-
strumental
Mufic.

Are pecu-
liarly fond
of Madmen,
perſons re-
markably
deformed,
or very
drunk.
Their uſual
Dinner-
time.

Their man-
ner of writ-
ing.

Their man-
ner of
itching.

Ruffian
hermits.

diverfions are hawking, and courſing with greyhounds; and as to both thoſe articles, they are under very proper reſtrictions; for the number of dogs is fixt; and no one is indulg'd to keep more than what is due to his rank; and as to private diverfions, they have but very few. As to their inſtrumental muſic, it principally conſiſts in the harp, the kettle-drum, the hunting-horn, and the bag-pipe. They are highly delighted when they caſually fall into a madman's company; or one that is remarkably deform'd, or in ſhort, who is perfectly intoxicated with ſtrong liquors. Upon an enterainment of their friends, they ſet down to table about ten in the morning, and depart about one. Then they adjourn to their reſpective homes, in order to lie down to reſt. This is their conſtant practice both winter and ſummer. Their manner of writing is very peculiar; for they take their paper in their left-hand, and ſet it on their knees, and in that poſture go to work. There are ſome of them, however, who copy after the Dutch, eſpecially ſuch as are clerks, either public or private. As their manner of writing, ſo is their manner of ſitching widely different from ours. They put their thumbnails on the fiſt finger, and therewith and the thumb, they draw the needle two and fro, which with us is directly the reverſe. They make uſe of their feet likewiſe, which are for the generality naked on this occaſion; and ſome of them will hold their work between their toes, with the ſame eale as we do between our knees, or by pinning it faſt: I have ſeen ſome of them, indeed, take other meaſures.

About the beginning of July I accompanied a friend to Probroſenſko, in order to have ſome diſcourſe with three hermits, who had been priſoners there for near a week. They had reſided in ſome part near (b) Aſoph, upon the banks of a ſmall river which diſcharges its waters into the Danube. I was ſtartled at the ſight of them. The eldeſt was about ſeventy years of age, and the other two ſeemed to me, not to be advanced beyond fifty. The fiſt had reſided there for near forty years ſucceſſively in the hollow of a rock, where he had been once taken by the Tartars, and fold

1702

Their
crudities.

Their habit

(as a ſlave) to the Turks; but finding ways and means to make his eſcape ſoon afterwards, he returned to his cell, where he had paſſed the remainder of his days. They were accuſed, as they informed me, of being apoſtates from the Ruſſian Faith; but all of them abſolutely denied the charge, and were ready to undergo the ſtricteſt examination; and as for his part, he ſolemnly declared, that, notwithstanding he could neither write nor read, he was ready and willing to ſuffer the ſevereſt torments that could be inflicted on him for the ſake of his Lord and Maſter Jeſus Chriſt. They had no other apparel than a dark coarſe gown: their hair hung half way down their back, which they never combed; and they covered their faces likewiſe to that degree, that it was impoſſible to ſee them, unleſs they purpoſely put their hair aſide: in ſhort, I took them to be downright ſavages. On their breaſts they wore a large iron croſs, that could not weigh leſs than four pounds a-piece. This hung by two iron bands which went acroſs their ſhoulders, fell down their backs, and were faſſened to another iron band, which ſerved each of them for a girdle, and was joined before upon the breaſt underneath the croſs. The two youngeſt ex-preſt ſuch a high regard and veneration for their old brother Recluſe, that they ſupported him under each arm, whenever he roſe from his ſeat, as he did immediately on our approach. They were ordered to continue thus under confinement till his Czarian Maſteſty's return. Theſe three were always kept, however, together, without any fetters on, and ſat on mats in a corner where they had the benefit of ſome freſh air, and at ſome ſmall diſtance from the other priſoners, who for the moſt part, were chained by their feet, and thereby rendered almoſt incapable of ſtirring, their fetters being very cloſe. Beſides, for fear of their making any attempt towards an eſcape, there was a ſuperviſor over each of them within-doors, as well as a proper guard without. The priſon itſelf was compoſed of ſubſtantial pieces of timber; though it was not very ſpacious, it was ſquare, however, and open at top for the

The priſon
deſcribed.

C O H

1702

the mid part; there was in it, indeed, which was covered. I had a ſay that three hermits was informed they an adjacent houſe, which and retired, where they ſtill ſeeked orders. About the latter end month of May arrived th of a ſecond engagement ed of their total deſtruction. My heart for me ſaw that, in order to my. Perhaps, ſome more at in the diſtance deſires as to ſtill lay in my power to in long and tedious a tal the unavoidable neceſſity the immediate priſon: perceiving the Emper degraded at what the exactly, and little better ſtill, I determined for it reſides, not to diſſolve he the work thence with and the uſual expediti On the fiſt of June who were then reſiden out from thence direct

We returned home

On

History, in p. 23

(c) Aſoph, call ſon
It is a city of Gob
ſtance on the bank from
near the river, a little we
Marians. This town is
of Ruffia againſt Turkey

to the Turks; but finding 1702
 means to make his escape soon
 he returned to his cell, where
 and the remainder of his days,
 accused, as they informed
 ing apollates from the Russian
 all of them absolutely denied
 and were ready to undergo
 examination; and as for
 solemnly declared, that, not-
 he could neither write nor
 as ready and willing to suffer
 torments that could be inflicted
 the sake of his Lord and Ma-

R 1517. They had no other ap-

black coarse gown: their hair
 down their back, which they
 ; and they covered their faces
 was degree, that it was im-
 re them, unless they purposely
 a side; in short, I took them
 night furies. On their breasts

large iron cross, that could
 is than four pounds a-piece,
 two iron bands which went
 shoulders, fell down their backs,
 naced to another iron band,
 I each of them for a grille,
 d before upon the breast un-
 cross. The two youngest ex-
 high regard and veneration
 old brother Recluse, that they
 him under each arm, whenever
 his seat, as he did immediately
 crouch. They were ordered
 hus under confinement till his
 elly's return. These three
 kept, however, together,
 y fetters on, and sit on
 corner where they had the
 some fresh air, and at some
 nces from the other prisoners,
 the most part, were chained
 eet, and thereby received al-
 pable of sharing their terrors
 dose. Besides, for fear of
 ing any attempt towards an
 re was a superior over each
 within-doors, as well as a proper
 out. The prison itself was com-
 substantial pieces of timber;
 was not very spacious, it was
 never, and open at top the

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1702 ~ the most part; there were some apart-
 ments in it, indeed, which were dark and
 close covered. I had a great inclination
 to pay these three hermits a second visit,
 but was informed they were removed to
 an adjacent house, which was more private
 and retired, where they were to continue
 till farther orders.

A victory
 over the
 Swedes.
 About the latter end of the present
 month of May arrived the agreeable news
 of a second engagement with the Swedes,
 and of their total defeat. Her Imperial
 Majesty sent for me some short time after
 that, in order to my painting the young
 Princesses, once more at full length, and
 in the same dresses as before. I did all
 that lay in my power to be excused from
 so long and tedious a task, by pretending
 the unavoidable necessity I was under for
 the immediate pursuit of my travels; but
 perceiving the Empress was not a little
 disgusted at what she imagined a formal
 excuse, and little better than a genteel de-
 nial, I determined for several very cogent
 reasons, not to disoblige her, and went upon
 the work therefore with seeming alacrity,
 and the utmost expedition.

On the fifth of June all the merchants,
 who were then resident at Moscow, set
 out from thence directly for (c) Arch-
 angel.

We attended them, according to custom,

51 1702 ~ about ten werfts from Moscow, to a vil-
 lage, situate on the river Youfa; where
 there were tents properly spread with
 carpets, for the reception of several ladies
 who were expected there; and in short,
 after drinking several healths and success
 to them in their intended journey, we re-
 turned to the city from whence we came.

Some few days after our return, as I was
 taking a solitary walk round the garden,
 which lies behind our house, with a gun in
 my hand, (as shooting is one of my favourite
 amusements) in order to kill some snipes
 and ducks, which frequent the pond, or
 rather the river Youfa, I discerned a crane
 flying in the air over my head: where-
 upon, I loaded my piece with a ball, as
 common shot was not sufficient to bring
 down a bird of her size, and by good for-
 tune, and a little skill, down she dropt
 directly into the pond. This occurrence,
 it seems, was somewhat remarkable; be-
 cause there are but few birds of that species
 to be met with throughout the whole
 country. There are several of them, 'tis
 true, which are kept here for pleasure;
 but then they are for the generality presents
 from foreign parts. Out of curiosity, I
 ordered him to be roasted; but I cannot
 boast, indeed, of the entertainment; for
 she had fed in the fens, and tasted more
 like fish than flesh.

The author
 kills a Crane
 and eats it.

The author
 paints the
 Princesses a
 second time

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(b) Afoph, east longitude 44. latitude
 47. 15. a city of Coban Tartary in Asia,
 situate on the south shore of the river Don,
 near its mouth, a little to the east of the Palus
 Meotis. This town standing on the frontiers
 of Russia against Turkey has been several times

taken and retaken of late years, but on the
 last peace concluded in the year 1739, between
 those two powers, it was agreed that the forti-
 fications should be demolished, and the town
 remain subject to Russia.

(c) Archangel, see p. 8. n. d.

CHAP.

THE TRAVELS OF

C H A P. IX.

A particular Description of Moscow; together with a succinct Account of all the Churches and Convents, or Monasteries, therein contained; as also several other Articles equally curious and entertaining.

HAVING proceeded thus far, I think it incumbent on me now to expatiate a little on the states of his Czarian Majesty, who, by word of mouth, honoured me with full permission to say whatever I thought proper on that topic; provided I took care to advance nothing but what was matter of fact.

I shall commence with an accurate, though compendious description of the city of (a) Moscow, of which I took a survey from the top of one of the Czar's palaces, called Morobjowa, which is a wooden structure of a very large extent, though but two stories high only. On the ground-floor, there are no less than 124 several apartments, and I presume there are the same number over them. The whole fabrick is surrounded by a wooden wall. It stands upon an eminence, and directly over-against the convent, called the Dewits, on the other side of the river (b) Moskva, about three wersts westward from the city. Some few days before I had been very elegantly entertained there, together with some of my acquaintance, and a select company of ladies, by the brother-in-law of Prince Alexander. His Czarian Majesty himself had pitched upon this particular spot, as most commodious for my purpose; and so in effect it was; but as his Majesty's sister, had taken it for the summer season, I begged the favour of that Prince's brother-in-law to introduce me to the Princess, and give me an opportunity of communicating to her the order I had received. I had no sooner told her my errand, but she very courteously informed me, that I was welcome to come there when, and as often as I pleased, with this restriction only, that I brought but one attendant with me. Ac-

See Plate
Numb. XII.

cordingly I went thither day after day for some time, till I had accomplished my design upon paper in water-colours, from one of the windows belonging to the palace, as the reader may observe in the plate annexed. From thence I had a full prospect, not only of every thing remarkable in the city itself, but of many things worthy of notice likewise in the parts adjacent. Every article is carefully distinguished by some numeral figure; as for instance;

(1) The new convent, or monastery, of Dewits, that is to say, of the Nuns.

(2) The quarters belonging to a regiment of foot.

(3) The porters lodge, called the Worstruki.

(4) A place distinguished by the name of Sulchowa.

(5) The cloister, called the Newinskoy monastery.

(6) The Sawinskoy monastery, or convent of St. Sawin.

(7) The church of Nicola-narhipach, so called from its being consecrated to the memory of St. Nicolas.

(8) The church of Blagowischena, that is to say, the annunciation of the blessed virgin Mary.

(9) The Dewits Monastir Strathnoi, or the convent of the maid in distress.

(10) The Ulitrenskoia Bachna, that is to say, the tower of the gate, called Ulitrens.

(11) The Potroffchey Monastir, or convent of St. Peter.

(12) The castle, or palace, from whence this survey was taken.

(13) The Troitka Bafchna, or the tower of the church, without the palace, which is distinguished by that name.

(14) The grand church of Saboor, which is by far the most magnificent, and can boast of more valuable reliques than any other church throughout the city.

(15) Iwan Welick, or the lofty tower belonging to the castle.

(16) The Izerkot Philatowa, or the fine church, that was erected by one Philatowa.

(17) The church called the Wasso aseywa Borofchal

Borofchal (18) The Koskoda came side of the church is residence of his Majesty.

(19) The church of Elizaveta.

(20) The church of Elizaveta.

(21) The Tug-Brook.

(22) The church of St. Daniel.

(23) The church of St. Daniel.

(24) The church of St. Daniel.

(25) The church of St. Daniel.

(26) The church of St. Daniel.

(27) The church of St. Daniel.

(28) The church of St. Daniel.

(29) The church of St. Daniel.

(30) The church of St. Daniel.

(31) The church of St. Daniel.

(32) The church of St. Daniel.

(33) The church of St. Daniel.

(34) The church of St. Daniel.

(35) The church of St. Daniel.

(36) The church of St. Daniel.

(37) The church of St. Daniel.

(38) The church of St. Daniel.

(39) The church of St. Daniel.

(40) The church of St. Daniel.

(41) The church of St. Daniel.

(42) The church of St. Daniel.

(43) The church of St. Daniel.

(44) The church of St. Daniel.

(45) The church of St. Daniel.

(46) The church of St. Daniel.

(47) The church of St. Daniel.

(48) The church of St. Daniel.

(49) The church of St. Daniel.

(50) The church of St. Daniel.

(51) The church of St. Daniel.

(52) The church of St. Daniel.

(53) The church of St. Daniel.

(54) The church of St. Daniel.

(55) The church of St. Daniel.

(56) The church of St. Daniel.

(57) The church of St. Daniel.

(58) The church of St. Daniel.

(59) The church of St. Daniel.

(60) The church of St. Daniel.

(61) The church of St. Daniel.

(62) The church of St. Daniel.

(63) The church of St. Daniel.

(64) The church of St. Daniel.

(65) The church of St. Daniel.

(66) The church of St. Daniel.

(67) The church of St. Daniel.

(68) The church of St. Daniel.

(69) The church of St. Daniel.

(70) The church of St. Daniel.

(71) The church of St. Daniel.

(72) The church of St. Daniel.

(73) The church of St. Daniel.

(74) The church of St. Daniel.

(75) The church of St. Daniel.

(76) The church of St. Daniel.

(77) The church of St. Daniel.

(78) The church of St. Daniel.

(79) The church of St. Daniel.

(80) The church of St. Daniel.

(81) The church of St. Daniel.

(82) The church of St. Daniel.

(83) The church of St. Daniel.

(84) The church of St. Daniel.

(85) The church of St. Daniel.

(86) The church of St. Daniel.

(87) The church of St. Daniel.

(88) The church of St. Daniel.

(89) The church of St. Daniel.

(90) The church of St. Daniel.

(91) The church of St. Daniel.

(92) The church of St. Daniel.

(93) The church of St. Daniel.

(94) The church of St. Daniel.

(95) The church of St. Daniel.

(96) The church of St. Daniel.

(97) The church of St. Daniel.

(98) The church of St. Daniel.

(99) The church of St. Daniel.

(100) The church of St. Daniel.



with a succent Account
ries, therein contained,
and entertaining.

went timber day after day for
will I had accomplished my de-
sire in water-colours, from one
to the other, belonging to the palace,
may observe in the plate an-
ticipation I had a full prospect,
every thing remarkable in the
at of any things worthy of
in the parts adjacent. E-
is carefully distinguished by
al figure; as for instance;
w convent, or monastery,
that is to say, of the Nuns.
ers belonging to a regiment
The porters lodge, called
A. A. (4) A place distinguished
of Suichowa. (5) The dis-
Newinkoy monastery. (6)
w monastery, or convent of
The church of Nicolaus.

is there
N. 1702.

Authors
misinform-
ed in re-
gard to this
city.

Some historians peremptorily assert, that

Moscow was as big again formerly as it is

at present; but, upon the strictest enquiry

that I could make, I found that it is much

larger now than ever it was before; and

that it never could boast of so many spacious

stone-buildings as at this Day, and which

are still daily encreasing. This city is in 55

degrees 30 minutes of northern latitude,

and is sometimes called Moscow or Mosco,

and sometimes again Muscov, or Moscua.

It is situate in the southern parts, and much

about the center of Russia or Moscovy,

upon the little river Moskva, from whence

it derives its name. It is three leagues at

least in circumference, without the earth

or clay-wall, and has twelve several gates

belonging to it; that, for instance, (1)

called Potroffe Warate, or the gate of

Potroffe. There is a whole street that

goes under that denomination, which ex-

tends itself as far as the Red-wall, called the

Kitai. (2) The Meinite gate, which has

a street likewise of the same denomination.

These two gates, which are both stone-

structures, belong to the stone-wall. The

(3) is, properly speaking, nothing more

than a high-way leading to a gate of the

city, called the Ustretense Bralon; for

there is no gate, but an opening only

on that side in the clay-wall. The (4)

is called the Petroffe, where there is a

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

street that leads to the city. The (5) is called the Twerkske, where there is a street of that name. The (6) is called the Mekitske, with a street likewise under the same denomination. The (7) is called the Arbatse. The (8) The Pres-zikhwetfsche, which has a street likewise, and was formerly known by the name of 't Zertelse. The (9) Drefwetfsche, of the same situation. The (10) Kak-netske, situate on the river Negliene. The (11) of the same situation. The (12) Tagantse, or Tantse, situate in the same manner.

Having taken this tour, I went the very next day all round the city-wall, called Beloy Gorod, and found, that it was no more than an hour and an half's moderate journey in circumference. Between most of the city-gates just before mentioned, there are two towers at least upon the walls; but three between some of them. Though they are quadrangular, they are by no means fit for cannon, and stand four hundred paces at least distant one from another. There are two gates only, between which no towers are erected; and on that spot, indeed, his Czarian Majesty has made a garden; inasmuch that there is no passage perfectly round by the wall-side.

The walls.

Moscow is divided into four parts.

The palace.

The first whereof is the castle, or palace, called Viremgozod, situate on the river Moskva which flows to the westward, and empties its water into the ocean near the city of (c) Columnia, or Kolomna, which is about thirty six leagues from Moscow, and the (d) Occa falls into the (e) Wolga, not far from (f) Nis-Novogorod, which is about one hundred leagues from Moscow. This castle is surrounded with a high stone-wall, which is flanked with divers towers; and the plate above referred to is the fine prospect of it from the river-side near the great bridge. It has four gates; the first called the Spakae, where the dial stands; the second called the Nikolske Demkamennon-Morlu; the third called the Trifwalske; and the last Taynufski. It is surrounded likewise by a dry ditch that leads down to the river. As there are no cannon in this castle, or

P
palace,

1702

boast of, according to the commodities they respectively deal in, whether by wholesale or retail. There are, moreover, divers covered places for such as vend all sorts of cloths, either linnen or wool-len, stuff, gold-smith's works, filks, furs, and other wares of the like nature. There are likewise some whole streets in this division, peculiarly appropriated to the inferior artificers, such as pedlars, and other petty chapmen.

Its streets for medi-
cines, and
pedlars.

The third
division of
the city, or
the white
wall.

The third division of the city is called Beloy Gorod, that is to say, the White Wall. This and the Kietay Gorod be-fore-mentioned, absolutely surround the castle to the river of Moskva: this division likewise has a wall peculiar to itself. The small river of Neglina runs through it, and has the arsenal on the one side of it, and the Grand Kabac, or public brandy-shop, on the other.

The little
river Neg-
lina.

The fourth
division of
the city,
within the
earth, or
clay-wall.

The fourth and last division, com-prized within the clay-wall, or wall of earth, bears the name of the Skerodum, that is to say, thrown up in a hurry; this wall having been erected in a very short compass of time; and more particularly those parts of it towards the rivers Moskva and Neglina, in order to prevent any sudden incursions of the Tartars, which happened in the Reign of the Czar Fedor Iwanowicz, and in the year of our Lord 1584. That Prince was the son of the Czar Joan Wessielewitz, the first that ever assumed the title of Czar, after he had added by conquest to his Empire, the four kingdoms of Kasernof (*b*), Casan (*i*), Astracan, and (*k*) Siberia. The appellation of Czar, which is a Slavonic term, does not signify an Em-peror, but a King only; according to some historians; for the Slavonians, say they, write the word Keiser, Zesar, or Kesar, to denote an Emperor; whereas they use the word Koning, or Karotie, to signify a King. The Germans like-wise are grossly mistaken, who imagine, that the term Czarietse means Keiserin, or Empress; since it denotes nothing more than a Queen.

The first
Czar of
Moscovy.

In this division, at present, stand most of the Slabodes, that is, places of residence for the Strelfes, or military gentry; notwith-

standing in former times their habitations were, for the most part, within the cir-cuit of the red and white walls. His Czarian Majesty, however, thought it most adviseable to remove them, as they were very insolent, and greatly addicted to mutiny and desertion.

I must own, in regard to their build-ings, nothing surpris'd me more than their custom of buying and selling their particular tenements, or apartments, daily in open markets, as they would any other commodity whatsoever, to which they had a legal title. These habitations, or apartments, are compos'd of pieces of timber, or trees, so contriv'd, as to take to pieces, and be carried away with you where you please, and to be erected again on what particular spot you judge most proper. A house of this kind of building will stand the purchaser perhaps in one hundred or two hundred rubles, each ruble to be valued at five Dutch florins, and so any room or apartment, in pro-portion.

Houses and
lodgings
sold at
market as
other com-
modities.

There are certain suburbs, villages, and monasteries or convents, situate beyond the clay-wall, or wall of earth, which lie scattered all round about the city; some of them, indeed, stand conti-guous to each other, and some are even adjoining to the wall. The Slabode, or district of the Germans, is not above a mile and a half distant from the city; and there are divers other villages to be met with which with lie more remote.

The churches and convents belonging to the city of Moscov, the castle, and other grand structures in the other divi-sions, and adjacent to the clay-wall be-fore-mentioned, on the outside, are so numerous, that they are computed at no less than six hundred and seventy-nine, the chapels inclusive. The structure of these churches are, for the generality, as round as an apple, or an orange; not as some vainly imagine, to imitate the grand dome of the Heavens; but to aid and assist the priests in their sacred chauntings: there are some again, who imagine, that the Russians have a peculiar veneration for bells, as deeming the sound of them ac-

Great num-
bers of
churches
and con-
vents.

The struc-
ture of
their
churches
round, and
why.

mid and dirt. The shop-
city are so very numerous,
obliged to contract them-
very narrow compass, for the
their respective occupations,
shut up a-nights at proper
standing some of their
etably large. There are
prikaes in the city, that
e offices, or courts of ju-
principal of which is that
able, for the transaction of
s; the Robet, where the
Russian nobility governors,
nisters is kept, in order to
on all proper occasions;
where the account of the
old affairs are kept; the
regiter-office, for all the
the dominions of Russia;
d, the regiter of the Strolks,
gentry, whose number has
ed since the last insurrection.
e offices, or prikaes, in
stone-buildings, and are
blackney-writers and clerks,
apartments have more the
gloomy prisons, than places
public business; and it is no
ing to meet with persons
or close confinement there;
e of the apartments thereto-
even criminals are locked up,
; nay, creditors likewise,
red, indeed, to walk about,
retting at their heels; the

There are
prikaes in the city, that
e offices, or courts of ju-
principal of which is that
able, for the transaction of
s; the Robet, where the
Russian nobility governors,
nisters is kept, in order to
on all proper occasions;
where the account of the
old affairs are kept; the
regiter-office, for all the
the dominions of Russia;
d, the regiter of the Strolks,
gentry, whose number has
ed since the last insurrection.
e offices, or prikaes, in
stone-buildings, and are
blackney-writers and clerks,
apartments have more the
gloomy prisons, than places
public business; and it is no
ing to meet with persons
or close confinement there;
e of the apartments thereto-
even criminals are locked up,
; nay, creditors likewise,
red, indeed, to walk about,
retting at their heels; the

There are
prikaes in the city, that
e offices, or courts of ju-
principal of which is that
able, for the transaction of
s; the Robet, where the
Russian nobility governors,
nisters is kept, in order to
on all proper occasions;
where the account of the
old affairs are kept; the
regiter-office, for all the
the dominions of Russia;
d, the regiter of the Strolks,
gentry, whose number has
ed since the last insurrection.
e offices, or prikaes, in
stone-buildings, and are
blackney-writers and clerks,
apartments have more the
gloomy prisons, than places
public business; and it is no
ing to meet with persons
or close confinement there;
e of the apartments thereto-
even criminals are locked up,
; nay, creditors likewise,
red, indeed, to walk about,
retting at their heels; the

There are
prikaes in the city, that
e offices, or courts of ju-
principal of which is that
able, for the transaction of
s; the Robet, where the
Russian nobility governors,
nisters is kept, in order to
on all proper occasions;
where the account of the
old affairs are kept; the
regiter-office, for all the
the dominions of Russia;
d, the regiter of the Strolks,
gentry, whose number has
ed since the last insurrection.
e offices, or prikaes, in
stone-buildings, and are
blackney-writers and clerks,
apartments have more the
gloomy prisons, than places
public business; and it is no
ing to meet with persons
or close confinement there;
e of the apartments thereto-
even criminals are locked up,
; nay, creditors likewise,
red, indeed, to walk about,
retting at their heels; the

There are
prikaes in the city, that
e offices, or courts of ju-
principal of which is that
able, for the transaction of
s; the Robet, where the
Russian nobility governors,
nisters is kept, in order to
on all proper occasions;
where the account of the
old affairs are kept; the
regiter-office, for all the
the dominions of Russia;
d, the regiter of the Strolks,
gentry, whose number has
ed since the last insurrection.
e offices, or prikaes, in
stone-buildings, and are
blackney-writers and clerks,
apartments have more the
gloomy prisons, than places
public business; and it is no
ing to meet with persons
or close confinement there;
e of the apartments thereto-
even criminals are locked up,
; nay, creditors likewise,
red, indeed, to walk about,
retting at their heels; the

There are
prikaes in the city, that
e offices, or courts of ju-
principal of which is that
able, for the transaction of
s; the Robet, where the
Russian nobility governors,
nisters is kept, in order to
on all proper occasions;
where the account of the
old affairs are kept; the
regiter-office, for all the
the dominions of Russia;
d, the regiter of the Strolks,
gentry, whose number has
ed since the last insurrection.
e offices, or prikaes, in
stone-buildings, and are
blackney-writers and clerks,
apartments have more the
gloomy prisons, than places
public business; and it is no
ing to meet with persons
or close confinement there;
e of the apartments thereto-
even criminals are locked up,
; nay, creditors likewise,
red, indeed, to walk about,
retting at their heels; the

There are
prikaes in the city, that
e offices, or courts of ju-
principal of which is that
able, for the transaction of
s; the Robet, where the
Russian nobility governors,
nisters is kept, in order to
on all proper occasions;
where the account of the
old affairs are kept; the
regiter-office, for all the
the dominions of Russia;
d, the regiter of the Strolks,
gentry, whose number has
ed since the last insurrection.
e offices, or prikaes, in
stone-buildings, and are
blackney-writers and clerks,
apartments have more the
gloomy prisons, than places
public business; and it is no
ing to meet with persons
or close confinement there;
e of the apartments thereto-
even criminals are locked up,
; nay, creditors likewise,
red, indeed, to walk about,
retting at their heels; the

There are
prikaes in the city, that
e offices, or courts of ju-
principal of which is that
able, for the transaction of
s; the Robet, where the
Russian nobility governors,
nisters is kept, in order to
on all proper occasions;
where the account of the
old affairs are kept; the
regiter-office, for all the
the dominions of Russia;
d, the regiter of the Strolks,
gentry, whose number has
ed since the last insurrection.
e offices, or prikaes, in
stone-buildings, and are
blackney-writers and clerks,
apartments have more the
gloomy prisons, than places
public business; and it is no
ing to meet with persons
or close confinement there;
e of the apartments thereto-
even criminals are locked up,
; nay, creditors likewise,
red, indeed, to walk about,
retting at their heels; the

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

57

1702

tained in his Majesty's service, and are paid in that office. The registers of the greater part of the revenues of the state, are kept in the Bolchaia Kaefna. The nobility, and the commissioners, or head-clerks, have their trials in those offices, distinguished by the names of Soednoi Wolodinerkoi, and Sudnoi Moskofskoi. The duties belonging to the seals, are paid into the office called the Petfutnoi, and are registred therein. Every religious house is subject to the prikaes of the convents; and all ecclesiastical causes are heard and determined in that belonging to the patriarch; such for instance, as relate to marriages, estates of inheritance, arbitrations, family-diffentions, adulteries, fornications, and cases of the like nature. That called the Jamskoi is the office peculiarly set apart for registring of all such carmen, or drivers, as are annually employed in his Majesty's service.

During my residence at Moscow, all these eighteen several prikaes, or public offices, were kept in the castle; but there were several, indeed, without; such, for instance, as that called the Puschkarisch, for the registring of their cannon; the Sibiersch, for the administration of the affairs of Siberia; the Rosboina, where murderers, and other capital criminals, are tried, condemned, or acquitted. The principal, or head-officer of these prikaes, is, for the most part, a favourite at court, and one of the prime ministers of State, whom his Czarian Majesty invests with this important post, either through favour and affection, or as a grateful acknowledgment of some signal services. It is one step, likewise, towards the very highest posts in the whole kingdom, that is to say, it is an introduction to the being constituted a Boyard, or Counsellor of State, which is an office of that dignity, as, with great propriety, may be compared to that of a grandee of Spain, or a peer of France; or else to be one of those called the Okolnitsches; that is, one of those who personally accompany his Czarian Majesty, when he goes abroad; or of the Doemne Divorens, that is, one of the noble counsellors, or of the Doemne Diack, that is, one of the se-

Officers of
State.

1702

cretaries of the council; or of the Stólniks, that is, one of the officers that attend on his Majesty at table; or of the Worenes, that is, one of the officers of the court; or, to conclude, of the Schilfi, that is to say, an officer but one degree inferior to those last-mentioned. The first of the nobility, and all such as have the honour to be in any degree of consanguinity with the Czarina, are frequently promoted to the post of a Spalnick, that is to say, is constituted one of the gentlemen of his Majesty's bed-chamber; after these follow the stewards of the household, the carvers, the cup-bearers, and so gradually descending. The Czar, soon after his return from the (m) Netherlands, created an order of knighthood, under the patronage and protection of the Apostle St. Andrew, and has already dignified five of his favourite courtiers with that honourable title, whose names are as follow, viz. the Count Fëdor Alexowitz Gollowin, a Boyard, Prime Minister of State, and High Admiral of the seas; Hetman, the Grand General of the Cossacs; Mr. Printz, Ambassador Extraordinary from the King of Prussia; the General Velt-Marshal Boris; and Petrowitz Czeremetof; to each of these he made a present of St. Andrew's Cross; together with the image or picture of that Saint in miniature, set with diamonds.

To the grandeur and dignity of this court we may farther add, that his Czarian Majesty is a despotic Prince, and invested with an unlimited power over all his subjects; that his will alone, however partial, is his law; that he can, if he thinks fit, dispose not only of the fortunes, but the lives likewise of any of his people, from the courtier to the peasant, on the least disgust; in a word, that his power extends itself over all affairs, spiritual as well as temporal; for he can new-model, just as his fancy directs him, the whole form of divine service; which is an attempt too dangerous for any other crowned head, and such a ticklish point, that no other would venture to interpose so far, for fear of raising the clergy's resentment to too high a pitch.

Having thus expatiated pretty largely on

Q

The order
of St. An-
drew.

Their various punishments; and first, their burning delinquents alive.

on the rewards conferred on merit, and on all such as testify their zeal and attachment to his Majesty's interest, and deport themselves so as to be entitled to his favour, either in peace or war, and to be entrusted with the administration of all public affairs ; we shall now drop that topic, and proceed to give a cursory account of the various kinds of punishments as are inflicted on criminals, or such other delinquents as unhappily fall into disgrace, and become the objects of his Majesty's resentment, and high displeasure. The most shocking and severe is that of their burning persons alive. For this purpose, they erect a small wooden house, in a quadrangular form, which is loaded with a profusion of straw both within and without ; in this, the poor unhappy criminal, after sentence pronounced, is shut up, and then fire is immediately applied ; which, in a few moments, suffocates the party, and, in a short compass of time, reduces the whole structure, to dust and ashes.

Their be-
heading and
hanging.

bury-
ing alive,

Their
 whipping.

across his breast; after that, the executioner ties his feet; and one of his assistants, taking fast hold of the hair of his head, he administers the number of strokes appointed, be they more or less, which never fail of flinging off the skin, unless peculiarly and partially favoured: for crimes of a less heinous nature, they make use of drubbing only: in this case, the delinquent is laid flat on his belly; one of the executioner's assistants flits upon his head, and another on his heels, while the punishment to which he is doomed is duly inflicted. When any delinquents are tortured, in order to extort from them an open confession of the crimes and misdemeanours laid to their charge; they hang the party up, and, after having whipt him severely with the Knout, draw a red hot iron over the wounds he has received; but the most severe, and most afflictive torture that some, who are more obstinate and stubborn than ordinary, undergo, is, when the crowns of their head are close shaved, and cold water is gradually dropt down upon them.

Their drubbing.

Their tor-
ture.

The pu-
nishment
inflicted on
debtors.

fucl

such *kind*, they are all
rubb annually for a man
for a woman. there
however, to be given for
aidion; becau the c
reies them is obliged, n
tain them, but furnish th
appear. And in this r
ferwards, with the poor
dea remain, be the
fluctu, till the last per
nity subsided.

Moscow is said to
 center and best part
 leagues from the *front*
to some table of 101 by
 from the Empire of *(1)*
 town of *(2)* Tarky, with
 Moscow, on this side of
 hour. From Moscow
 left frontier place below
 Master in *(17)* Siberia,
 Aizer, or *(1)* Aizer,
 diamons of that Prince
 the Ocean of *(1)* China,
 or 1420 leagues, and
(10) Peter, the capital
 weeks, as I have been
 by the Saint Elizabeth H
 vessel this journey in th
 from *(14)* Russia. A
 general, that part w
 Russia. *Myra*, or *Ru*
 Black or Red Russia, *is*
 let latter Russia, is sou
 part of *(14)* Poland, be
(5) Volhynia, *(10)* Pod
 flint, and *(10)* Hungary
 in is to the northward
 the largest country in
 between the *Ar*-Sea,
 the Caspian Sea, one
 the *(17)* China, or
 the *(17)* Niger of Bon
 Duchy of *(18)* Lithuania
(19) Lithuania, *(15)* In
 and the *(10)* Sweden
 the principal cities a
 Moscow, *(10)* Novor
 Lenka, *(10)* Novor
(17) Wologda, *(10)*
(10) Archangel, and

THE TRAVELS OF

1702

Their coun-
tells of
State.

In the year 1689, there were no less than forty-four Boyars, that is to say, Counsellors of State, who were illustrious personages of the several families herein-after particularly mentioned, viz. Two of the family of the Zirkaffes; three of that of the Galithens; one of the Od-elkoy; three of the Prokofskoy; five of the Sollickowes; three of the Wruforey; three of the Czeremetof; one of the Dolgoruki; one of the Bonodanofski; one of the Trokurof; one of the Repum; one of the Wolenskoy; one of the Koflofskoy; one of the Berantenkoy; one of the Tzerbutof; two of the Golowins; one of the Scheyn; two of the Bakurlino; one of the Puskin; one of the Chilkoff; one of the Stuefchnoff; one of the Sabakim; two of the Miloflaskoy; two of the Nariulkuns; one of the Sokoffinus; one of the Tufchhoff; and one of the Matunkin. These are the attendants on the Czar in his Privy-Councils; and these favourite courtiers have the administration of all his public affairs.

The Czar,
ian forces,

The troops which his Czarian Majesty, for the most part, keeps on foot, amount to no less than 46, or 50,000; besides several regiments both of horse and lances, who are paid out of the Royal treasury, and receive part of their annual stipend in cash, and part in corn, and other necessaries of life. In time of war, the whole body of the Russian nobility are summoned to attend, who are, doubtless, a very potent body, and amount (according to the nearest computation) to little less than 2,000,000, their several servants, and other attendants included: some of them, indeed, have no less than ten or twenty in their retinue; but the majority make their appearance with two or three only at most.

The revenues of Russia, of which some notice has already been taken, principally arise from the skins and furs, corn, leather, ashes, hemp, mats, tar, tallow, and other commodities of the like nature. A considerable sum likewise arises from the Kababs, which are houses belonging to his Czarian Majesty, where are publickly vended beer, brandy, and mead.

1702

The customs inward amount likewise to a large sum. Caviar is transported from Archangel into foreign countries; as is fising-glass also, which is the bladder of the sturgeon, and taken in great quantities at Astracan, and other places on the Wolga. This latter commodity is principally used for the refining of wines; and besides, it makes an excellent glue. A great part of it, moreover, is consumed by those who practise the art of dying.

Length of
the days
and nights
in Russia.

I shall close this chapter with a succinct account of the length of the days and nights in Russia, which I flatter my self, will be an acceptable amusement to the curious. The autumnal equinox falls out on the eighth of September, which makes the day and night equal. On the twenty-fourth, the day is eleven hours, and the night thirteen. On the tenth of October, the day is ten hours only, and the night fourteen. On the twenty-sixth, the day is but nine, and the night fifteen. On the eleventh of November, the day is eight only, and the night sixteen. On the twenty-seventh, the day is but seven hours, and the night seventeen. On the twelfth of December, the days begin to lengthen. On the first of January, the day is eight hours, and the night sixteen. On the seventeenth, the day is nine hours, and the night fifteen. On the second of February, the day is ten hours, and the night fourteen. On the eighteenth, the day is eleven hours, and the night thirteen. On the sixth of March, the vernal equinox makes the day and night equal. On the twenty-second, the day is thirteen hours, and the night but eleven. On the seventh of April, the day is fourteen hours, and the night only ten. On the twenty-third, the day is fifteen hours, and the night only nine. On the ninth of May, the day is sixteen hours, and the night but eight. On the twenty-fifth, the day is seventeen hours, and the night only seven. On the twelfth of June, the days begin to shorten. On the sixth of July, the day is sixteen hours, and the night eight. On the twenty-second, the day is fifteen hours, and the night nine. On the first of August, the day is fourteen hours,

hours, and the night ten
twelfth the day is thirteen
night eleven. Then com-

Occafion

(a) Moscow, see p. 23.

(b) Mosca, a river, see

(c) Kolomna, or Colum-
na, latitude 50 a city of
vice of Moscow, situated
the river Mosca, see
east of Moscow.

(d) Oca, or Oka, a g-
con, which rises in the p-
and running north, passes b-
nly, and then turning ea-
Mosca at Kolomna, where
to run east by Relafkoi
falls into the river Wo-
Novgorod.

(e) Woiga, or Voiga, is
(f) Novogorod, east
itude 50, a city of Mos-
of the province of Novogorod
ver Woiga, and one like e-
west of Peterfburg. V
Archbifhop, and was in
monasteries; the count
com, has hunga way, i-
manufactory the set Russ-

(g) Danitzk, east long-
54, the capital of Regai Pri-
con of Poland, situated on
of the river Welfe, or the
little below falls into the B-
excellent harbour, and has
ture of any port within the
one hundred and forty mil-
and seventy miles south-w-
The town is large, and
wall, and fortifications of a
houses are well built of flo-
feet, towers high; and the
ing all magazines of corn
are full of it, to which the
and thus in their habit;
nearly impregnable from
field guns of iron, and
indub-

inward amount likewise to 1702
Caviar is transported from
to foreign countries; as is
, which is the bladder of
and taken in great quan-
can, and other places on the
is latter commodity is prin-
for the refining of wines;
makes an excellent glue,
if it is, moreover, is consumed
practice the art of dying.

At this chapter with a succin-
the length of the days and
winter, which I have my self
acceptable amusement to the
autumnal equinox falls out
of September, which makes

night equal. On the twen-
day is eleven hours, and the

On the tenth of October,
near hours only, and the night

On the twenty-first, the day

and the night fifteen. On

or November, the day is

and the night sixteen. On

venth, the day is but seven

the night seventeen. On the

December, the days begin to

in the first of January, the day

s, and the night fifteen. On

ninth, the day is nine hours,

the night sixteen. On the second of

the day is ten hours, and the

On the eighteenth, the

hours, and the night thir-

teenth of March, the vernal

the day and night equal.

On the day is thirteen

the night but eleven. On

of April, the day is fourteen

the night only ten. On the

the day is fifteen hours, and

the night only nine. On the ninth of

the day is sixteen hours, and the

the night only eight. On the twenty-fifth,

the day is sixteen hours, and the night

the sixth of June, the

the night is sixteen hours, and the

the day is sixteen hours, and the

the night nine.

On the twenty-second, the

the night sixteen

the day is fourteen

the night sixteen

the day is fourteen

the night sixteen

the day is fourteen

the night sixteen

the day is fourteen

the night sixteen

the day is fourteen

the night sixteen

the day is fourteen

the night sixteen

the day is fourteen

the night sixteen

the day is fourteen

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

61

hours, and the night ten. On the twen-
ty-third the day is thirteen hours, and the
night eleven. Then comes the autumnal

equinox, and makes the day and night
equal again.

1702

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(b) Moskva, a river, see p. 47. n. a.

(c) Kolomna, or Columnia, east longitude
40. latitude 56. a city of Russia, in the pro-
vince of Moscow, situate at the confluence of
the rivers Moskva and Occa, forty miles south
east of Moscow.

(d) Occa, or Ocka, a great river in Mos-
covy, which rises in the province of Szeelsk,
and running north, passes by Orel, and Pere-
mil, and then turning east, joins the river
Moska at Kolomna; after which, it continues
to run east by Refanskoi and Nisi-Novogorod,
falling into the river Wolga, a little below
Novogorod.

(e) Wolga, or Volga, see p. 28. n. f.

(f) Nisi-Novogorod, east longitude 34. la-
titude 58. a city of Moscow, and the capital
of the province of Novogorod, situate on the ri-
ver Wolcoss, near the lake of Ilmen, 130 miles
south-east of Petersburg. It is the see of an
Archbishop, and has in it 180 churches and
monasteries; the country about it abounds in
corn, flax, hemp, wax, and honey; and they
manufacture the best Russia leather there.

(g) Dantzick, east longitude 19. latitude
54. the capital of Regal Prussia, in the King-
dom of Poland, situate on the Western shore
of the river Wesel, or the Vistula, which a
little below falls into the Baltic Sea. It is an
excellent harbour, and has the best foreign
trade of any port within the Baltic. It stands
one hundred and forty miles north of Warsaw,
and seventy miles south-west of Koningsburgh.
The town is large, and encompassed with a
wall, and fortifications of a great extent. The
houses are well built of stone, or brick, six or
seven stories high; and the granaries, contain-
ing vast magazines of corn, and naval stores
are still higher, to which the shipping lie close,
and take in their lading; for the Dutch an-
nually import from hence a great many thou-
sand tuns of corn, timber, and naval stores;

and other nations some; but the Dutch have
the greatest share of this trade, paying for
their merchandize with pickled herrings, the
spices of India, sugars, brandy, and other pro-
duce of the more southern countries; whereas
the English, and other nations, are forced to
purchase these things chiefly with ready money.
The inhabitants are computed to amount to
200,000 souls, who are subject to a mixed
kind of government. Their magistracy con-
sists of thirty senators, who continue for life;
four of them burgo-masters; besides these,
there are thirteen consuls, who elect the said
burgo-masters out of their own body, and
elect the judges, and all other officers of the
city, from whom there lies an appeal to the
thirteen consuls and four burgo-masters, and
from them to the republic of Poland. The
King annually nominates a burgo-master out
of the consuls, to represent his person in the
senate, and all sentences of death must be
signed by him in the King's name. One hun-
dred burgesses are elected to represent the
people's grievances, defend their privileges,
and inspect the administration of the govern-
ment; and the hundred, with the concurrence
of the senate, present the clergy to vacant be-
nefices. The established religion is the Lu-
theran; but Papists, Calvinists, and Anabap-
tists, are tolerated. The jurisdiction of the
town extends forty miles round the city, and the
inhabitants maintain a garrison at their own ex-
pence, and coin money, with the effigies of the
King on the one side, and the city-arms on the
reverse. They are said to be under the pro-
tection of Poland; but, if they had not been
protected by other powers against their ene-
mies, their State had been long since subverted.
In the year 1703, the English, the Dutch,
and the King of Prussia, entered into an alli-
ance for their protection against the Swedes,
who would have extorted a sum of money
from them, as they did again in the year 1706,
when the King of Sweden threatened them with
a visit, on his success against King Augustus,
if they refused to acknowledge Stanislaus for
their King. But in the year 1734, when they
took the part of Stanislaus against the present
King of Poland, and actually harboured and

R
pro-

THE TRAVELS OF

62

1702
protected him in their city, having been purchased with French money, they were beleagued by the Moscovites and Saxons, obliged to surrender, and forced to purchase their peace with several hundred thousand pounds, for suffering Stanislaus to make his escape out of the city during the siege.

(b) Casan, or Kasan, a province of Russia, bounded by the province of Permian on the north, by Siberia on the east, by the river Wolga, which separates it from little Novogorod, on the south, and by the province of Moscow proper on the west.

(i) Astracan, east longitude 52. latitude 47. the capital of the Kingdom of Astracan, in Asiatic Russia, situate on the eastern shore of the river Wolga, eighty miles north of the Caspian sea, eight hundred miles south-west of Moscow, and four hundred and fifty miles north of Astrabat. It is a large, populous city, and a good sea-port, where the Russians, the English, and other Europeans, embark for Persia.

(k) Siberia, see p. 17. n. b.

(l) Don, or Tanais River, rises in the province of Relian, in Russia, and running south-east, passes by Voronets, and continuing its course still south-east, approaches near the river Wolga, where the Czar Peter the Great was cutting a canal for a communication between the two rivers. The river Don turns to the south-west, and, dividing Asia from Europe, falls into the Palus Meotis, a little below the city of Asoph. But tho' Czar Peter did not live to finish the last canal, he had made another between the river Voronets, and another river which falls into the Wolga, whereby the Don had a communication with it, and both those rivers are deep enough to carry ships of a good burthen down to the Euxine and Caspian seas; but the losing of Asoph has made the navigation of the Russians to the Euxine sea impracticable.

(m) Netherlands, situate between two and seven degrees of east longitude and between 50. and 53 degrees 30 minutes of north latitude, bounded by the German sea on the north, by Germany on the east, by Lorraine and France on the south, and by another part of France, and the British seas on the west, extending near three hundred miles in length from north to south, and two hundred miles in breadth from east to west. The ancient name of this country was Belgia, but since de-

1702
nominated the Netherlands, or Low Countries, from their low situation, near the mouths of several great rivers; the maritime parts whereof were a morass, till drained by the industry of the numerous people that retired thither from the persecutions and oppressions of the Spaniards, and other bigotted powers. These provinces are in number seventeen, and formerly enjoyed great privileges, being governed by as many Princes, under the various titles of Dukes, Counts, or Lords, but became at length united by marriages, compact, or conquest, in the house of Burgundy, anno 1430; and came under the dominion of Spain about the year 1506, by a marriage between the heiress of the house of Burgundy and Spain, and were by Charles V. Emperor of Germany, and King of Spain, constituted part of the circle of Burgundy. Philip II. King of Spain, succeeding his father the Emperor Charles V. and persecuting and oppressing his subjects in the low countries, either upon account of their opposing his encroachments on their liberties, or embracing the doctrines of the reformation, occasioned a civil war in these countries; and at length, seven of the seventeen provinces threw off the Spanish yoke, and formed an alliance at Utrecht, anno 1579, which obtained the name of the Union of Utrecht; and these provinces have ever since been called the United Provinces. The other ten provinces were reduced to the obedience of Spain, and were subject to that crown, till conquered by the allies, and resigned to the house of Austria by the treaty of Utrecht, anno 1713, under whose dominion most of the ten still remain, and are called the Austrian Netherlands. But Artois, part of Flanders, Hainault, and the Cambrisis, are in the possession of the French, and called the French Netherlands. The Dutch also possess the north part of Brabant, and Flanders, which are therefore called Dutch Brabant, and Dutch Flanders. The French have reduced almost all the Austrian Netherlands in the late war, the Limburg and Luxembourg only excepted. The Netherlands, Austrian, and French, consist of ten provinces, viz. (1) Flanders, (2) Brabant, (3) Antwerp, (4) Mechlin, or Malines, (5) Limburg, (6) Luxembourg, (7) Hainault, (8) the Cambrisis, (9) Namur, and (10) Artois.

The soil is generally fruitful, producing good corn and pasture, and their gravelly, light lands are now as valuable as the rich, heavy ground, by the improvements they have made with sown grafs, turnips, &c. but chiefly by their plantations of flax and hemp; their manufactures of linen and lace are brought

1702

to great perfection; viz. their lawns, carpets, Mechlin and Brussels lace; their tapestry is very rich, and they have still a good woollen manufacture, particularly camblers and light stuffs.

Flanders is a flat country; scarce a hill or a stone to be met with in it. The richest land lies between Dunkirk and Bruges, extending forty miles in length, abounding in wheat, barley, and as good meadow and pasture as is to be met with in Europe: but between Bruges and Ghent, and Ghent and Antwerp, is a gravelly or sandy soil, and that part of Brabant which lies between Antwerp and Holland is equally unfit for corn, but enriched with plantations of flax, hemp, and hops.

The rest of the Austrian Netherlands consists of little hills and valleys, woods, inclosed grounds, and champaign fields, not unlike England; and their numerous rivers, and navigable canals give them a great advantage over us, their carriage of the produce of the country from one part to another, costing them, comparatively speaking, but a trifle. They had the greatest woollen manufacture in the world, while Bruges was the market for English wool, and the foreign trade of Antwerp exceeded that of any port in Europe, until the Dutch built forts at the mouth of the Scheld, and turned the current of trade to Holland. No country has larger towns, or finer fortifications. It has been the seat of war for near these two hundred years past, the French and Spaniards, and their allies, contending perpetually for this rich country.

The legislative authority of the respective provinces is, or ought to be, vested in the Sovereign, and the States of each province, which consists (1) of the bishops, abbots, and dignified clergy. (2) of the nobility and gentry, and (3) of the burgeses of their great towns, who meet at Brussels, but assemble in separate houses, and make laws for the respective provinces. The civil and canon law are in force here, where they do not interfere with the municipal laws of the country.

By the antient laws of the country, no foreign forces ought to be introduced; but this is not regarded now, either by the Austrians, or the French, any more than some of the rest of their privileges. By the treaty of Utrecht, their barrier towns were to be garrisoned by 25,000 Dutch. Their religion is moderate popery; the inquisition does not reign here.

(n) Poland Kingdom is situate between six-

1702

teen and thirty-four degrees of east longitude, and between forty-six and fifty-seven degrees of north latitude, being bounded by the Baltic Sea, Livonia, and Russia, on the north by Russia, and Bodziac Tartary, on the east by Bessarabia, Moldavia, Transilvania, and Hungary, on the south (separated from Transilvania and Hungary by the Carpathian mountains) and bounded by Pomerania, Brandenburg, and Silesia on the west, being almost square, and seven hundred miles over either way. It is a flat, level country, well-watered by lakes and rivers, and an exceeding fruitful soil, abounding in wheat and rye, with which the Dutch load some hundreds of ships every year, to distribute to such countries as happen to have a scarcity of corn. They have also rich meadows and pastures, which feed vast flocks and herds of cattle, with which they supply Germany; and they have an excellent breed of horses. There are mines of silver, lead, iron, and copper also, in several parts of Poland; but they make more advantage of their salt-mines than any of the rest; the country also produces flax, hemp, and furs, and they have manufactures of linnen and leather, which they export, as well as masts and yards, and naval stores, taking in return cloth, silks, tapestry, wrought-plate, wines, spices, herrings, and other salted fish, tin, and fruits; but the balance of trade is very much against them, and they have very few ships, or port-towns, besides Dantzic. Their constitution is a mixed monarchy, in which the people seem to have the greatest share of the government, which makes it frequently called a republic. The King is elected by the whole body of the gentry, who put what conditions on their Prince they see fit, before they crown him, which he takes an oath to observe, and this is called the pacta conventa; nor can the King raise forces without the concurrence of the gentry, who are in reality petty Sovereigns in their own estates; and the Crown-General, as he is called, will obey no commands but that of the Diet, or Assembly of the States; and every Palatine, or officer, will take the liberty to return home out of the field, whenever he sees fit, let the consequence be what it will. The King is at no expence in keeping armies on foot, or providing for the officers of State; these are all maintained by the republic, and accountable to it, tho' nominated by the King, with this limitation, however, that he can prefer none but gentlemen, and those, natives of the province where they are to act, and not related to his Majesty; nor can any one be deprived of his office, but by the unanimous consent of the Diet. The King's revenues are

140,000

and dromedaries are the most useful animals in this sandy country, for carrying of burthens over the deserts; as some of them will carry near a thousand weight, and travel several days without water. They have also mules, oxen, buffaloes; and asses for their husbandry; and large flocks of sheep and goats; some of their sheep having six or seven horns a-piece: they are sometimes visited with locusts, which destroy all the fruits of the earth, wherever they happen to light. There are a multitude of eagles, hawks, and other birds of prey, which they teach to fly at the game, and even at deer and wild beasts; and these, with the assistance of dogs, will take the fiercest beasts; nothing except the wild boar can escape their clutches. The manufactures of Persia are embroidery, especially that of gold and silver, either in cloth, silk, or leather; and that which we call Turkey-leather comes chiefly from hence through Turkey; but silk is the chief manufacture of the country; such as taffaties, tabbies, satins, and silk mixed with cotton, or camel and goats-hair; brocades, and gold tissue; and their gold velvet is admirable; and those called Turkey carpets, are really Persian. They make also camel-hair stuffs, camblets, silk and worsted druggets, and goats-hair stuffs.

Their greatest ministers do not think the business of a merchant beneath them; the King himself has his factors and agents in the neighbouring countries, who export silks, brocades, carpets, and other rich goods; but the Armenians and Banaians of India, who reside here, carry on the most distant foreign traffic; and may be looked upon as the greatest merchants in the world. They export raw as well as wrought silk, in great quantities to India, Turkey, Moscow, England, &c. But the English are endeavouring now to establish a trade with Persia, through Russia, directly by the Wolga, and the Caspian Sea, and deprive the Armenians and Banaians of that branch of business; and the English have been of late countenanced in the attempt by the present Sophi, Sha Nadir, who offers to take English cloth, and other woollen manufactures, in return for their silk, &c. The English East-India company have long traded with Persia, by the way of Gombroon, and the Persian Gulph; and the Turkey company have purchased the Persian merchandizes in Turkey; but this traffic through Persia by the Caspian Sea is but just beginning by the Russian company, in which they have met with some losses and misfortunes, which may possibly discourage their proceeding. Persia is an absolute monarchy, and the crown hereditary;

but the reigning Prince takes the liberty sometimes to appoint his younger son to succeed: and whenever the King mounts the throne, he orders the eyes of all his relations to be put out, who may possibly prove his rivals. The present King, Sha Nadir, is the first of his family, that ever wielded a sceptre. After a civil war, of near thirty years continuance, and three or four successive usurpations, Sha Thomas, the almost only surviving heir of the last Royal family, was so fortunate as to defeat all his enemies, and was looked upon to be well established in his father's throne; for which he was, in a great measure, indebted to the conduct and bravery of his General Kouli-Kan, and in gratitude for his services, vested him with an unlimited power, both in the army and the civil administration; which the general making ill use of, the King, 'tis said, had determined to lay him aside; and some suggest, that he only waited for an opportunity to cut off his head. At least the General pretended that the King had a design against his life, and thereupon caused the Sophi to be seized, and imprisoned, if not murdered; and soon after usurped his throne. After which he assembled a more numerous army than Persia had seen of late years, invaded India, and plundered that country of immense treasures; compelled the Great Mogul to yield him all the provinces west of the river Attoc; since which, he has made a conquest of the Barcha's and Usbec Tartary, and enlarged the Persian frontiers on the side of Turkey; but has not yet been able to make a conquest of Bagdat, or Babylon, tho' he has besieged it several times.

As to the religion of the Persians, they were generally Mahometans of the sect of Haly; but the present Sophi, being a native of Chorasian, in the north of Persia, where the sect of Omar prevails (being the same sect that the Turks and the subjects of the Moguls are of) he has compelled all the Persians to declare themselves of the sect of Omar, which many of the Persians, and especially their priests opposing, Sha Nadir, the present Sophi, ordered the Mufsy, and several more of the priests, to be hanged; since which, none of the Persians have dared to murmur at the alteration. As to the forces of the Persians, they were not very numerous till the present reign; but Sha Nadir having such large conquests in view, encreased them to upwards of 100,000 men, whom he has maintained hitherto out of the plunder of his new conquests, and eated his Persian subjects of a great part of their usual taxes; by which means he has gained their hearts: only those who oppose his usurpation are oppressed; and the estates of these have been confiscated, which still adds to his

treasury,

THE TRAVELS OF

1702

treasury, and enables him to be favourable and generous to his friends.

(*p*) Tarku, east longitude 51. latitude 42. a port town of Persia, in the province of Chirvan, and territory of Dagistan, situate on the west-side of the Caspian Sea, three hundred miles north-east of Tauris, and as much south of Astracan.

(*q*) Caspian Sea, situate in Asia, bounded by the province of Astracan, and the country of the Calmuc Tartars on the north, by the Bochara's, and part of Persia on the east, by another part of Persia on the south, and by another part of Persia and Circassia on the west, being upwards of four hundred miles in length from north to south, and three hundred miles in breadth from east to west, in which the great river Wolga, and many others, discharge themselves, and yet the waters are generally about the same depth, no tides observed, but once in fifteen or sixteen years it rises a great many fathoms, and drowns the adjacent country, and by these floods Astracan has sometimes suffered pretty much. It is properly a lake, having no communication with any other sea.

(*r*) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see P. 17. n. *b*.

(*s*) Argun, east longitude 104. latitude 51. 30. a city of Asiatic Tartary, situate on the river Argun.

(*t*) China, including Chinese Tartary, is situate between 95 and 135 degrees of east longitude, and between 21 and 55 degrees of north latitude, being bounded by Russian Tartary on the north, by the Pacific Ocean on the east and south, and by Tonquin, Tibet, and the territories of Russia on the west, from which it is separated by the river Argun, being about 2000 miles in length from north to south, and 1500 in breadth from east to west. It is usually divided into sixteen provinces. In these provinces it is computed that there are 155 capital cities, 1312 of the second rank, 2357 fortified towns, and upwards of ten millions of families; which may amount to fifty millions of people, and some have computed them at fifty-eight millions. There are several very large rivers, and where these are wanting, the whole country is cut through with navigable canals, and a brisk trade driven on them from one end of the kingdom to the other. There is a long wall of stone one thousand five hundred miles in length, which

1702

the Chinese built to defend themselves against the incursions of the Tartars; but the Tartars, notwithstanding, made a conquest of their country, about one hundred years since, and they are now governed by Tartar Princes, who permit them, however, to retain their own laws, obliging them only to cut off their hair; and as to their religion, they were all Pagans, and so no great change made in it. The Popish missionaries had once made a considerable number of proselytes amongst them, but have lately been expelled the kingdom.

The chief produce of this country is silk, tea, china, japan ware, and gold dust, of which every maritime people of Europe, almost, import a great deal, sending them silver in return.

The Europeans complain of them as very tricking, unfair dealers; and that their custom-house officers take all opportunities of extorting money from foreigners.

Their writing and printing is a sort of shorthand, every character expressing a word, and sometimes a sentence. They have not the use of letters.

The Emperor is an absolute Prince; but all his laws and acts must be passed by a certain great council of his nobility, before they are of any force. However, he does not want means to oblige them to yield their assent to what he purposes, any more than the Sovereigns in this part of the world.

The government requires a profound submission of children to their parents; they even make statues and images to represent their ancestors, and worship them in their houses; and mutual civility among all men is enjoined by law, which seems to have made a nation of hypocrites, having very little regard to the solemn professions they make of their friendship.

The revenues of the crown are computed at twenty-one millions sterling, which is not difficult to know; because an account of every man's family, estate, and subsistence, is taken every year, and enrolled.

Their forces are said to consist of five millions of men in time of peace; a militia, that are very seldom raised, having few enemies since the union of Tartary with China.

(*u*) Pekin, east longitude 111. latitude 40. the metropolis of the Empire of China, and of the province of Pekin, situate about sixty miles south of the wall, which separates China from Tartary, and two hundred miles west of the Cang Sea, a bay of the Pacific Ocean. The city is about twenty miles in circumference,

1702

which is more than double the size of London. The chief street is twenty feet broad, and in the shops before their doors the floors are elevated and China-ware are exposed to the view, and in appearance. The walls of the city are so high, and so thick, that they cover the town for several people to ride over them. The gates are strengthened by square towers at great distances. The gates have a large fortress built by the Emperor's spouse, with the middle of the city, by the river, and on the east of the town to another. They are in their houses; but coal is sold weekly; and they are in the market.

(*v*) Peking, a province or Tartary, bounded by Persia, the lower Volga, or Ural, the south, and by the province of Red River.

(*w*) Peking, a province or Tartary, bounded by Persia, the lower Volga, or Ural, the south, and by the province of Red River.

(*x*) Transbaikalia is a province of the Empire of China, situate about sixty miles south of the wall, which separates China from Tartary, and two hundred miles west of the Cang Sea, a bay of the Pacific Ocean. The city is about twenty miles in circumference,

country, and has a very fruitful soil, producing great plenty of corn, wine, large cattle, and rich pasture and meadow grounds. In their mountains there are good mines of copper and iron, which they manufacture, and export, and have cloth sufficient for their own use. But this having been long a frontier-country against Turkey, the produce of it is frequently destroyed, and the husbandman discouraged from making the best of his lands. It is at present subject to the house of Austria.

complain of them as very dealers; and that their custom-
like all opportunities of extorting
governors.

ing and printing is a sort of short-
ly character expelling a word, and
ience. They have not the use

error is an *absolute Prince*; but all acts must be passed by a certain number of his nobility, before they are valid. However, he does not want to oblige them to yield their assent to his measures, any more than the Sovereigns of the world.

ment requires a profound dis-
cussion to their parents; they even
images and images to represent their an-
ces and *to worship them in their houses*;
and *among all men is enjoined*
it seems to have made a nation of
having very little regard to the
sons they make of their friends.

... of the crown are computed at
... millions sterling, which is not dif-
... because an account of every
... estate, and substance, is taken
... and enrolled.

and enrolled.
forces are said to consist of five mil-
lions in time of peace; a militia, total
 seldom raised, having few enemies
 of Tatarry with China.

n, east longitude 111, latitude 40.
olls of the Empire of China, and
vince of Pekin, situate about sixty
of the wall, which separates China
ing Sea, a bay of the Pacific Ocean.
rence,

(*aa*) Transilvania is a principality, bounded by the Carpathian mountains, which divide it from Poland on the north, by Moldavia on the east, by Walachia, and part of Hungary on the south, and by another part of Hungary on the west, being about one hundred and twenty miles long, and almost as many broad. It lies between 22 and 25 degrees of east longitude, and between 45 and 48 degrees of north latitude. And as it is surrounded almost by woods and mountains, is a very warm

There are no hills but the Carpathian mountains, which divide it from Poland, and in these are abundance of rich mines of gold, silver, copper, iron, vitriol, sulphur, and salt; the rest of the country is exceeding fruitful, abounding in corn, wine, and rich pastures, replenished with herds of cattle; and their numerous lakes and rivers afford them plenty of fish and fowl; but the country is very unhealthy, occasioned by a boggy, sulphurous soil, and the sudden changes of the weather: a kind of pestilence visits this country once in three or four years, and it is called the grave of the Germans; on another account, many thousands of them have perished here by the sword, as well as sickness, whilst they contended for the dominion of it with the Turks, the last two hundred years.

The established religion is Popery; but half the people are Protestants, who have suffered a very long and severe persecution from the house of Austria, and have been thereby frequently provoked to join the Turks, the French, and other enemies of that house; but in the present war, they have been the principal support of the Emperors.

Their

THE TRAVELS OF

1702

Their troopers are called Hussars, and their foot Heydukes: and the Insurgents are a militia that are raised on the last necessity.

No country is better furnished with baths and mineral waters, and the buildings of those at Buda were esteemed the most magnificent of any baths in Europe, while that city was under the dominion of the Turk.

Game is so plentiful here, that it is the common food of the peasants; but with all these advantages, the common people are in a state of vassalage to their respective Lords, and the gentry have lost their ancient privileges.

(cc) Wolga, fee p. 28. n. f.

(*dd*) Crim Tartary, the antient Taurica Cheroneſus, is a peninſula, ſituate in the Black Sea, between 33 and 37 degrees of eaſt longitude, and between 44 and 46 degrees of north latitude; having the Palus Meotis on the north-eaſt, and the Black Sea ſurrounding the reſt, except a narrow Iſthmus, which joins it to Little Tartary, the chief towns whereof are Bachifſai and Kaſſa; the town of Crim, from whence it received its name, being reduced to a village. The Tartars who inhabit this peninſula are ſubject to the Turks, who were not able to defend them from the invaſions and ravages of the Ruſſians in the years 1738 and 1739, tho' the Ruſſians conquered the country again, as not tenable, being too far from their frontiers. The Cham, or Han of Crim Tartary, is obliged to furniſh the Turks with a body of 30,000 men, when they take the field; they ſubſiſt on their plunder, having no other pay. Every man takes two or three horſes with him on their incuſions, to carry off their ſlaves and booty; and whenever they loſe a horſe, they immediately ſeaſt upon him, inviting their comrades to the entertainment. When they are not at war, their chief traffic is in buying up children in Circaſſia, and other countries, and ſelling them to the Turks, who give them rice, coffee, raiſins, dates, and cloathing in return. The country is naturally fruitful, and produces excellent wine, where there are Chriſtians, or Jewiſh inhabitants; but this being a liquor prohibited the Mahometans, they do not cultivate the vine, or indeed any other produce of the earth, any farther than neceſſity com- pels them.

(*see*) Nieper, or Bonifhenes, a river which rises in the middle of Moscow, runs west by Smolensko, then running south through Poland, passes by Mogilof, or Mohilow, then

enters the Russian Ukraïn, passing by Kiof and Circassia, and continuing its course south separates Little Tartary from Budziac Tartary, falling into the Black Sea near Ozakow. On that river the old Cossacs inhabit, who frequently cross the Black Sea, and plunder the maritime places on the coast of Turkey.

(*ff*) Lithuania, a province of Poland, is bounded by Samogitia, Livonia, and part of Russia on the north, by another part of Russia on the east, by Volhinia and Polesia on the south, and by Prussia and Poland on the west, being of a circular form, pretty near two hundred and fifty miles over either way, and contains eight palatinates, or counties. It is called the Great Duchy of Lithuania, and may, in some respect, be looked upon as an independent State, in alliance with Poland, being governed by its own peculiar laws and magistrates, tho' united under one Sovereign, who is the titular head of both nations; for they are, in reality, both of them Republics, and each of them send their representatives to the Diet, or general Assembly of the States; and each of them has its distinct provincial Diet, or Assembly of the States, which enact laws for their respective subjects.

(gg) Livonia, see p. 36. n. f.

(*bb*) *Elftonia*, a province on the north of Livonia; the chief town Narva, fubject to Ruffia.

(ii) *Ingria*, a province of *Ruffia*, bounded by the lake *Ladoga*, the river *Nieva*, and the gulph of *Finland* on the north, by Great *Novogorod* on the east and south, and by *Livonia* on the west; the capital city *Peterburg*.

(*kk*) Sweden, a kingdom of Europe, part of the ancient Scandinavia, is bounded by Norwegian Lapland on the north, by Ruffia, and Ruffia Lapland on the east, by the Baltic Sea, which separates it from Germany and Livonia on the south, and by the seas called the Sound and the Scaggerach, and the Dofine mountains, which separate it from Denmark and Norway, on the west, lying between 10 and 30 degrees of east longitude, and between 56 and 69 degrees of north latitude; so that it must be eight hundred miles in length, and upwards from north to south, and five hundred miles in breadth from east to west. The provinces of Kexholm, Carelia, Ingria, and Livonia, which formerly were

ussian Ukran, passing by Kiof and continuing its course south-
Little Tattary from Budziac
is into the Black Sea near Or-
that river the old Colchis in-
sequently cross the Black Sea, and
maritime pieces on the coast of

1702

nia, a province of Poland, is
mogolia, Livonia, and part of
born, by another part of Russia
by Volhina and Polesia on the
by Prussia and Polesia on the
of a creek from, pretty near
and fifty miles over either way,
great palatines, or counties. It
Great Duchy of Lithuania, and
respect, be looked upon as an
state, in alliance with Poland,
by its own peculiar laws and
of united under one Sovereign,
near head of both nations; for
reality, both of them Republics,
them had their representatives to
general Assembly of the States;
them has its distinct provincial
mity of the States, which en-
relative subjects.

nia, see p. 36. n. f.

ia, a province on the north of
chief town Narva, subject to

ia, a province of Russia, bounded
adoga, the river Nierva, and the
and on the north, by Great No-
the east and south, and by
the west; the capital city Pe-

en, a Kingdom of Europe, part
Scandinavia, is bounded by
apland on the north, by Russia,
apland on the east, by the Baltic
separates it from Germany and
the south, and by the sea coast
and the Saggard, and are Do-
which separate it from Den-
Norway, on the west, lying be-
and 30 degrees of east longitude,
50 and 60 degrees of north lati-
at it must be eight hundred miles
and upwards from north to south,
and upwards in breadth from east
hundred miles in breadth from east
the provinces of Kexholm, Carelia,
Livonia, which formerly were pol-

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

69

1702

possessed by Sweden, are now ceded to Russia; part of their German territories also have been ceded to other powers, particularly Bremen, Verden, and the Eastern Pomerania; Sweden retains nothing in Germany at present, but that part of Pomerania which lies north-west of the river Pene, the island of Rugen, and the town of Wismar. It is for the most part a wretched, cold country, encumbered with barren rocks and mountains, and great part of the year covered with snow; few navigable rivers, but torrents in abundance, running precipitately from the rocks and mountains, and after a short course falling into the Baltic Sea, which is frozen up four or five months in the year. The country is also full of great lakes and marshes: Lapland, and the northern parts, produce scarce any vegetables. The riches of Sweden are chiefly in the bowels of the earth, having mines of silver, copper, and iron, which exceed any in Europe; and they have some fruitful valleys between their mountains; but these do not produce corn enough for the subsistence of the inhabitants; their being driven out of that plentiful coun-try of Livonia, therefore, was an irreparable loss to Sweden. They stipulated, indeed, with the Russians, that they should be at liberty to import corn from Livonia; but the Russians frequently excuse themselves for not complying with this article, under pretence of a scarcity. The manufactures of Sweden are chiefly those of copper and iron, and they have been endeavouring to establish linen and woollen manufactures of late years. The ex-ports from Sweden, besides their hard-ware, are pitch, tar, masts, deals, and wooden-ware; they import silks, stuffs, wine, brandy, sugar, spices, tobacco, paper, linnen, and haberdashery-ware, which balance their exportations, and sometimes exceed them. Their trade to England is the most gainful, the English taking off the produce and manu-factures of Sweden, and giving them near two thirds of silver in return. By the laws of Sweden, foreigners are prohibited to import any goods but what are the produce of their respective countries. The forces of Sweden consist of a well-disciplined militia; every considerable farmer is obliged to maintain one soldier, in time of peace, and the officers of horse and foot have lands assigned them for their maintenance; the soldiers are subject to the civil magistrate, while they remain in their quarters; but when they are in actual service, they are subject to military discipline. The militia of Sweden, before the loss of Livonia, and their German territories, amounted to 60,000 men. Charles XII. during his wars,

1702

augmented them to 120,000, but he beggared his country by it. The naval forces of Swe-den have always been reckoned inferior to those of the Danes; but the Swedes usually were an over-match for the Danes by land. The pub-lic revenues, which arise by the crown lands, customs, the silver and copper mines, tithes, poll money, and other duties, are computed to amount to 1,000,000*l.* sterling per annum. Charles XII. and some of his predecessors were absolute Monarchs, and claimed the crown as their hereditary right; but upon his death, the States of Sweden elected his youngest sister, and put such limitations on the crown, that their Sovereign enjoys little more than the name of a King. The States obliged that Princefs to declare, that she held the crown of the States, and renounced for herself and her posterity all arbitrary power; that she should profess the Lutheran religion, and no other should be tolerated; that the States should not submit to any taxes or laws that were not made by their own consent; and that she should not make peace or war but by the like consent; and the administration of the go-vernment was lodged in twenty-four senators, of whom the Sovereign was no more than president. She was disabled from meddling with the public treasury without their con-sent, or disposing of any office, civil or mi-litary. And this they insisted was the original constitution of their government, which the present King also was obliged to declare, and renounce Calvinism, in which he was educated, when the late Queen procured him to be elected King; and the same article the Duke of Holstein-Entin was obliged to subscribe, when they declared him successor to the crown.

(11) Swedish Lapland, see p. 7. n. d.

(12) Wolodomet, or Wolodimir, east longitude 30. 5. latitude 57. 40. a city of Russia, capital of the province of Wolodimir, situate one hundred and sixty miles south of Petersburg.

(13) Novogorod City, east longitude 34. latitude 58. a city of Moscow, capital of the province of Novogorod, situate on the river Wolcuff, near the lake of Ilmen, one hundred and thirty miles south-east of Petersburg. It is the see of an Archbishop, and has in it one hundred and eighty churches and monasteries; the country about it abounds in corn, flax, hemp, wax, and honey; and they manu-facture the best Russia leather here.

T

(see) Smo-

1702

(*oo*) Smolensko, east longitude 33. latitude 56. capital of the province of Smolensko in Moscow, situate on the confines of Poland, two hundred miles west of Moscow.

(*pp*) Bulgar, east longitude 51. latitude 54. capital of the province of Bulgar in Russia, situate on the river Wolga, 120 miles south east of Kasan, and 450 miles east of Moscow.

(*qq*) Wologda, see p. 28. n. *d*.

(*rr*) Plekow, or Pleiskow, east longitude 28. 30. latitude 57. 20. a city of Russia, capital of the province of Pleiskow, situate at the south end of the lake Wortero, 130 miles east of Riga.

(*ss*) Relsan, Rezan, or Rezanlkoï, east longitude 41. latitude 55. a city of Russia, capital of the province of Rezan, situate on the river Ocka, eighty-five miles south-east of Moscow.

(*tt*) Archangel, see p. 8. n. *d*.

(*uu*) Nicholas (St.) east longitude 41. latitude 64. a port-town in Russia, in the province of Dwina, situate on the White Sea, at the mouth of the river Dwina, six miles below the city of Archangel, the White Sea being sometimes called the bay of St. Nicholas.

(*vvv*) As Peterburgh (St.) is at present the metropolis of all Russia, tho' the foundation of it was not laid at the time our author published his travels, we think it incumbent on us, in this place, to give a succinct account of its first establishment, and the difficulties which the Czar Peter the Great at first laboured under, in the accomplishment of so important a design.

Peterburgh, east longitude 31. latitude 60. is now the capital city of Russia, situate on both sides the river Nieva, in the provinces of Carelia and Ingria, between the gulph of Finland and the lake Ladoga. There are several small islands also in the mouth of the river Nieva built upon, which make part of the city; so that it is of a very large extent, and appears like several distinct towns rather than a single city. There were no less than 60,000 houses built within three or four years after the foundation was laid, which was in the year 1703. It stands very low, and is exposed to inundations; by which means, part of the fortifications were washed away before they were well fi-

1702

nished. The breadth of the river at Peterburgh is about half a mile; and as it is very deep and rapid, the building a bridge over it was held impracticable; whereupon it was proposed to the late Czar, Peter the Great, to make a bridge of pontoons, or boats; but he would not consent to it, he said, because his intention was to breed up as many watermen as he could, and these he prohibited the use of oars, that they might learn to manage sails; but these boatmen being ignorant peasants, many people were over-set and drowned, in passing from one part of the town to the other at first. The nobility and people of distinction were obliged to build grand houses here, but the generally were timber-houses, till they began to burn bricks at Peterburgh; and now the town appears with a much better face than it did at first. The sands at the mouth of the river prevent ships from coming up to it, and therefore they are obliged to take in their loading four or five miles lower. It may seem strange, that Peter the Great should fix upon this place to build his capital city, it lying in a barren country, and so far to the north, that they scarce enjoy the light of the Sun in winter; but it was in order to have a communication with the Baltic Sea, and that his subjects might traffic with the rest of the nations of Europe; for as yet there was no sea that touched upon the territories of Russia, but that of Archangel, to which ships were obliged to pass thro' the Frozen Ocean. It was with the greatest difficulty, that the Czar compassed this grand design, his people shewing the utmost aversion to removing to this cold, barren country, as he commanded them, from all parts of his dominions, and such rubs were laid in his way by his nobility and officers, that it was thought impossible he should ever accomplish his design. There were neither sufficient tools, or necessary provisions for the workmen, to encourage them in the prosecution of so laborious an undertaking; by which means they underwent such incredible hardships, that, according to a moderate computation, no less than 100,000 people perished in laying the foundation, and raising the superstructure of this metropolis. All difficulties, however, were at last happily overcome; and it is at this present juncture, one of the largest, and most populous cities in the world. The Czar established here an academy marine, to which he obliged every considerable family in his Empire to send one of their sons, or relations, to be instructed in navigation; here also they learnt the dead languages, were taught to ride and fence, and divers other

manly

1702
trains exercises. He set up
measures, had paper-m
instruments for geometry and
for preparing landscape ar
actual yards for making of
for his navy, and a found
popularly calling great fi
small arms; the country is
with quantities of iron ore,
was also set up to encoura

Alteration of Fables
created at (a) Mo
jesty, an Account

GREAT altera
wrought in this
but more particularly fir
tion from his travels
ed, he altered the mode
respect to the ladies, as
themselves; but more espec
all such as had any dep
or was possessed of any
not so much as others
which reason, the Ro
others, now these in
that there appears no
them not foreigners.

There was an edit
whereby all Russians we
appear in public, unless
after the Polish, or Dur
rites of foreigners we
were obliged to compl
order; for they were m
into court by pope
hind their master's bu
hoped to pay a fine be
needed, for their con
jection. This order, h
called either their pe
this dress at a distan
As the extraordinary
dies may possibly obli
because, in pieces of
then habits, I have de

breath of the river at Peter-
out half a mile; and as it is
d rapid, the building a bridge
old impracticable; whereupon it
to the late Czar, Peter the
make a bridge of pontoons, or
ie would not consent to it, he
his intention was to breed up
man as he could, and that he
ule of oars, that they might
ge sails; but these boatsmen de-
adants, many people were over-
ed, in passing from one part of
the other at night. The roadway
of education were obliged to
hous here, but the gentry
oices, till they began to burn
burg; and now the town ap-
much better face than it did at
as at the mouth of the river
from coming up to it, and
are obliged to take in their
at five miles lower. It may seem
Peter the Great should fix upon
build his capital city, it lying in
ary, and so far to the north, that
way the light of the Sun in win-
was in order to have a communi-
the Baltic Sea, and that his sub-
afflict with the rest of the nations
or as yet there was no sea that
the territories of Russia, but that
to which ships were obliged to
Frozen Ocean. It was with the
sacred, was the Czar occupied
designer, his people showing no u-
in removing to this cold, barren
he commanded them, from all
dominions, and such rules were
away by his nobility and officers,
ought impossible he should ever
is design. There were neither
is, or necessary provisions for the
encourage them in the pe-
encourage an undertaking; by which
such incredible hard-
underwent such intricate com-
according to a moderate com-
less than 100,000 people provided
the foundation, and raising the la-
of this metropolis. All difficulties,
are at last happily overcome; and
recent juncture, one of the largest,
ous cities in the world. The
ed here an academy marine, to
blished every considerable family in
to send one of their sons, or re-
be instructed in navigation. There
aut the dead languages, were
ride and fence, and divers other

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1702

manly exercises. He set up linnen and woollen manufactures, had paper-mills, powder-mills, laboratories for gunnery and fire-works, places for preparing salt-petre and brimstone; he erected yards for making of cables and tackling for his navy, and a foundery, where they are perpetually casting great guns, mortars, and small arms; the country furnishing him with vast quantities of iron ore. A printing-house was also set up, to encourage his subjects to

71

1702

enquire into the state of the world; and he sent numbers of them into foreign countries, to learn mechanic arts, giving great encouragement to foreigners to reside and settle at Peterburgh, and instruct his people in every science; plays, operas, and music-meetings were also introduced in a country, where none of these arts or diversions were seen till the reign of Peter the Great.



CHAP. X.

Alteration of Fashions and Customs in Russia. Triumphant Arches erected at (a) Moscow. The triumphant Entry of his Czarian Majesty, on Account of the Surrender of (b) Notteburg.

Alterations brought in to the Empire.

GREAT alterations have been wrought in this Empire by time; but more particularly since the Czar's return from his travels. On his first arrival, he altered the modes of dress, with respect to the ladies, as well as the gentlemen; but more especially, in regard to all such as had any dependance at court, or was possessed of any post there: none, not so much as children excepted. For which reason, the Russian merchants and others, now dress in such a manner, as that there appears no distinction between them and foreigners.

Alterations in dress at court, &c.

An edict in 1701, for the manner of their appearance in public.

There was an edict passed last year, whereby all Russians were enjoined not to appear in public, unless they were dressed after the Polish, or Dutch fashion. The valets of foreigners were the first that were obliged to comply with this new order; for they were most assuredly taken into custody by proper officers from behind their master's sledges, and were obliged to pay a fine before they could be released, for their contempt of that injunction. This order, however, no ways affected either their peasants, or people that resided at a distance in the country. As this extraordinary change in their dress may possibly obliterate the remembrance, in process of time, of their ancient habits, I have delineated one of their

Their ancient habits.

ladies on canvass, in profile, that the reader may have a more adequate idea of their head-cloaths, and the manner of their falling down behind, with their graceful decorations, as appears in the Plates XIII. and XIV. hereto annexed.

Plates XIII. and XIV.

It is proper to observe, in this place, that the maidens only appear perfectly uncovered; and on the other hand, that should a married lady appear without a proper head-dress, she would be looked upon with an eye of contempt. These last-mentioned ladies, for the most part, wear a fur-cap, which is flat at top, and at bottom, pointed round in the shape of a crown; the whole being embellished with as great a variety of precious stones, as their respective circumstances will well admit of. This head-dress has two points, and that which is the longest hangs down behind. 'Tis called in their language the Tryoegh.

Maidens, how dressed.

Married ladies, how dressed.

The ornament on the head of their young ladies, which is here represented in Plate XIV, is likewise in the shape of a crown, or rather diadem, embellished with rich trinkets of various sorts, and is called by them their Perewaske. Some of them add a ribband thereto, called their Swirtske. What they wear round their necks is called their Ofarelje, and their ear-rings Sergé. Their mantle, or upper

The head-dress, and other ornaments, of their young ladies.

Their neck-dress, and ear-rings, how called.

1702
 Their man-
 rle, and
 velt under-
 neath it,
 how called.

Their
bracelets.

Their
stockings.

Their slip-
 pers.

Their
beards to
be cut off.

An edict
passed for
the more
strict ob-
servance of
it.

upper vestment, which is lined with furs, is called their Soebe, the vest underneath it, their Tellagree, or Serrataen, their shift, Roebachi; the sleeves whereof are so wide, and so full of plaits, that some of them take up between sixteen and seventeen ells of cloth. Their bracelets, or decorations for their arms, which fall down upon their hands, are called their Sarokavie. Their stockings, which they never tye up, are called Zoelki; and their flippers, which, for the most part, are either red or yellow, with high, sharp pointed heels, are called their Bafmakie.

perfectly, it was absolutely necessary, to send for hats, shoes, &c. from beyond-sea; but as this proved not only very inconvenient, but expensive likewise, the Russians began to copy after other nations, awkwardly enough, one may imagine, for some considerable time; but they improved by degrees, when they had once procured workmen from foreign parts to aid and instruct them; for (as we have hinted before) they are pretty good imitators, and ambitious enough of being improved.

Good regu-
lations con-
cerning
beggary.

Besides this variation in their dress, the Russians were under an indispensable obligation to have their beards cut off, the hair on the upper lip only excepted; and some at court have that taken off likewise. That this edict, or order, might be executed with the utmost rigour, there were proper persons employed for that particular purpose, and they were to act impartially without favour or affection. No one, in short, could be excused. This injunction appeared to be so rigid and severe, that some would tempt these commissioners at large by private bribes, but all in vain; for they instantly met with others, who would hearken to no terms of accommodation. Nay, this order was carried into execution, even at the Czar's table, and, in short, every where else.

At the same time, there were very wholesome regulations made in regard to vagrants or beggars, who before would appear in the streets in swarms, as it were, both men and women, and hover round any person that went but into a tradesman's shop, throughout the whole city of Moscow. What was still, however, of much worse consequence, was this; thieves would join these vagrants, in hopes of a favourable opportunity of either cutting a purse, or picking a pocket, which are looked upon as very venial crimes, and never ruffle the conscience of a Russian. His Czarian Majesty, being determined to put a stop to such irregular proceedings, issued out an order, that no beggar should presume to ask any alms in the streets; and, on the other hand, no person, how charitably soever inclined, should offer to relieve any mendicant, on the penalty of five rubles, that is to say, twenty-five florins.

An edict
gainst them

The edict
gives great
difficult.

No person, of what quality or degree or distinction soever, was excused; and 'tis hardly to be conceived what universal disgust it created; some were almost uncomfortable on the occasion, as they had worn them for such a length of time, and always looked upon them as badges of honour and distinction. There were numbers, in a word, who would have given almost any consideration whatsoever to have been exempted from the force of this general injunction.

Variations in point of dress, however, have not been so very extraordinary, with respect to the fair sex, except it be amongst those of the first rank, who dress entirely in the taste of our Dutch ladies.

OT

In order, however, that the poor might have some proper subsistence, hospitals were erected for them, at some small distance from each church, not only within Moscow, but in the parts adjacent, all which the Czar himself endowed with an annual pension. By this means, the people of fashion were delivered at once from a shocking inconvenience; for before, there was no such thing as stirring out of a church, without being perfectly persecuted by those insolent wretches from the end of one street to another. This good regulation produced likewise another very happy effect; for the poor, by this means, were, in some measure, indifferently obliged to be industrious, for fear of being confined again.

Hospitals
for mendicants.

The happy effects of that edit.

[illegible]

was absolutely necessary, to shoes, &c. from beyond. This proved not only very in- but expensive likewise, the began to copy after other na- arily enough, one may ima- some considerable time; but ed by degrees, when they had ed workmen from foreign and instruct them; for (as ned before) they are pretty on, and ambitious enough of ed.

same time, there were very regulations made in regard to beggars, who before used streets in swarms, as it were, id women, and lower round at went but into a tradesman's about the whole city of Moscow.

will, however, of much worse as, was this; thieves would join ents, in hopes of a favourable op- either cutting a purse, or pick- which are looked upon as very and never rattle the con- Russian. His Czarian Ma- determined to put a stop to ar proceedings, issued out an no beggar should presume to is in the streets; and, on the is, no person, how charitably lined, should offer to relieve any on the penalty of five rubles, y, twenty-five shillings.

, however, that the poor some proper subsistence, vol- erected for them, at some ce from each church, not on- soicow, but in the parts ad- which the Czar himself en- h an annual pension. By this ne people of fashion were at once from a shocking man- , for before, there was no such thing out of a church, with- perfectly persecuted by those reaches from the end of one another. This good regulation likewise another very happy de- the poor, by this means, new, measure, indispensably obliged to ous, for fear of being confined

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

1702 against their inclinations; for tho' men- dicants mortally abhor work of all sorts; yet they cannot bear the thoughts of being looked upon with an eye of con- tempt for such an indolent course of life. And this brings to my remembrance a story, which I cannot forbear telling.

One day, there came to my landlord's, a young fellow to beg charity of a mer- chant, who lodged in the same house. The gentleman asked him why he did not seek out for some work, or get into some service, rather than go a begging. The young fellow replied, that he did not know how to work; for he had not been used to any all his life; and as to a service, he knew of no one who would take him in. Upon this, the gentleman, observing that he had a good honest face, asked him whether he should be willing to become his servant, and whether he would be industrious; and added, if he was so inclined, whether he could procure any person, who would be answerable for his honesty; for it is absolutely necessary, and a common practice amongst the Russians, to require a security for servants; since without, they have no remedy, no recourse to take, in case they should be robbed. The poor boy made answer, that he knew of nobody but God Almighty that would be bound for him; and he called God to witness, that if he would please to trust him, he would be very honest. The gentleman was satisfied with the boy's promise, and took him into his service accordingly; and found no occasion for distrust; it happened, however, in process of time, that the young fellow grew too familiar with a servant maid, whom he got with child. As soon as she found out how matters stood with her, she gave him notice of it; and since he had brought her to shame, it was but reasonable, as she and her friends said, that he should make her his wife. He had no great inclination to comply with that proposal, because she was much older than he; but being pressed hard to perform his promise, and being asked, whether he could justify his conduct before his security (meaning God Almighty) he ingenuously confessed, that he should find it

A story of a young beggar.

a difficult task to do it, and therefore promised to marry her, and kept his word. As soon as the wedding was over, he set up with what little he had saved in his master's service; and met with such great success, that at this instant, he is one of the most substantial woollen-drapers in all Moscow, and is reckoned to be worth little less than 30,000 livres. His wife lives still with him, and he is very indulgent towards her; but as she is now turned of threescore, and all the children he has had by her are dead and gone, he would fain prevail with her to reside at a convent, at his own expence; by which means, he might marry again, and have a new issue, without any breach of the Russian laws; but all his arguments have hitherto proved ineffectual.

Alterations in the public offices.

These alterations have had a great in-

fluence on all the public offices, where all

writings are at present executed according

to the method observed in (c) Holland.

His Czarian Majesty has this regularity

much at heart; (as he has every thing

else, indeed, that may any ways contri-

bute towards the public good, and the

security of his subjects) and there is no-

thing transacted there without his know-

ledge, privacy, and consent. He has al-

ready, with unwearied diligence and

application, fortified (d) Novogorod,

(e) Pleskow, (f) Asoph, (g) Smolensko,

Kiof, and (h) Archangel: and notwith-

standing this could not possibly be effected

without an immense charge; yet he has

been so frugal an economist, that he has

still no less than 300,000 rubles in his

coffers. This piece of good husbandry he

communicated to me with his own mouth;

and I had the truth of it afterwards con-

firmed by others; and this was the re-

mainder likewise after all the expences of

the war he had been engaged in, after his

building of all his ships, and after he had

defrayed, and answered all the exigencies

of the State.

As to the building of ships, indeed, it

must be allowed, the public bears the ex-

pence; for every thousand of the peasants

are obliged to bring in all that is any ways

requisite for the building of ships, and

any thing relative thereto. These peasants

are either vassals of the Czar himself, or

of

Places fortified.

Treasury of the State.

The expence of the ship-building raised upon the peasants.

1702

of some Lords, or other gentlemen of the court, or of some monasteries, where there are great numbers of them, and more particularly (as has already been hinted) at that of Trooytz.

The fine accomplishments of the young hereditary Prince.

Thus the subjects of this Monarch have very just grounds to pray to the Almighty for his health and preservation, and long reigning over them, in order that they may gradually come to the knowledge of such things, as may contribute to their future benefit and advantage. And great reason have they to hope for success; for the young heir to this Empire, tho' now but about fourteen years of age, treads already in the footsteps of his father, and gives great indications of a rising genius. He takes notice of every thing that passes, and is not only very curious and inquisitive, but very good-natured. The Czar himself takes a great deal of pains to form his mind; and bring him up in the politest manner; and, amongst a great number of other qualifications, he recommends to him the study of the Latin and German languages.

Sept. 14. Swedish prisoners brought in, and sold.

On the fourteenth of September 1702, no less than eight hundred Swedish prisoners, men, women, and children, were brought into this city. Many of them, indeed, were sold for three or four florins only per head at first; but afterwards the price was advanced to twenty or thirty. This encouraged foreigners to purchase them, to the great good fortune of those poor unhappy people; for they proposed only to detain them during the war, and then to restore them to their pristine liberty. The Russians, likewise, purchased several of them; but hard was the lot of those, who fell into the hands of the Tartars; for by that means they were doomed to a perpetual state of bondage; a deplorable state indeed!

Sept. 20. Nottenburg taken.

Sept. 23. Te Deum sung on that occasion.

On the twentieth, news arrived that Nottenburg had been taken by his Majesty's forces, and that the city had surrendered on certain terms and conditions, after it had sustained three vigorous attacks, and on the twenty-third Te Deum was sung upon the occasion. Towards the latter end of this month

it began to snow, and in the beginning of October, to freeze hard; but it soon thawed again, and then rained, as it had done, to our great inconvenience, for some considerable time.

In this year a great number of merchant-men arrived at Archangel. In all there were no less than one hundred and fifty-four; that is to say, there were sixty-six English-men, under the convoy of four men of war, sixty-six Dutchmen, under the convoy of three men of war, sixteen Hamburgers, four Danes, and one only from (*i*) Bremen.

Several of the English ships, 'tis true, were small ones, and their cargoes of no great value or importance.

About the middle of November, the river Yula was frozen over behind our Slabode, and several of the Dutch, as well as some Russians, skated over it, as there had no snow fallen thereon. I had procured a hand-sledge, made in the Dutch taste, and embraced this opportunity of amusing a young lady on the ice with it, which was a vehicle to which she was a perfect stranger. Tho' this was but the second time for thirty-two years past, that I had put on any skates; yet I found a man seldom or ever totally forgets a diversion, that he had once thoroughly learnt. This amusement was soon over, however; for the snow fell very heavy the day following.

A hand-sledge, an uncommon vehicle.

On the twenty-fourth, the Priskaes, or office of Poloske, within the castle, was burnt down to the ground, and created a great conflagration.

An office burnt down.

News came, in the beginning of December, that the Czar was arrived at a place called Petchick, which is about fourscore and ten wersts from Moscow; from thence he came to Sahnikof, a country seat belonging to Prince Loffelis, his uncle, thirty wersts only from this capital; from thence to Nikoolkie, at the mansion-house of the Knez Mighalo Sakolietz Serkafke, Governor of Siberia, which is but seven wersts from Moscow.

At that time every thing was in readiness for his Czarian Majesty's triumphal entry; and most of the foreign merchants

1

Preparation for his Czarian Majesty's public entry.

now, and in the beginning of
freeze hard; but it soon
thawed, and then rained, as it had
great inconvenience, for some
time.

year a great number of mer-
chandise arrived at Archangel. In all
no less than one hundred and
that is to say, there were
English-men, under the convoy
of war, sixty-six Dutchmen,
a convoy of three men of war,
Amsterdams, four Danes, and
from Bremen.

of the English ships, 'tis true,
ones, and their cargoes of no
importance.

e middle of November, the
was frozen over behind our
d several of the Dutch, as
the Russians, skated over it, as
no snow fallen thereon. I had

a hand-sledge, made in the
s, and embraced this opportu-
nity, and embracing this opportu-
nity, and embracing this opportu-
nity, and embracing this opportu-

which was a vehicle to which
I had put on any skates;
I had a man seldom or ever totally
in the ground, and created a

As the
Priskas, of
lent dem.
within the castle, was
created a

ernation.
ame, in the beginning of De-
that the Czar was arrived at a
led Pélchick, which is about
and ten wretts from Moscow;
once he came to Salchikof, a coun-
belonging to Prince Lofelley, his
thirty wretts only from this ca-
from thence to Nikolai, at the
house of the Knez Mikhailo Sa-
Governor of Siberia,
but seven wretts from Mos-

at time every thing was in re-
his Czarian Majesty's triumphal
most of the foreign merchants
had

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1702

had received orders to furnish themselves
with a greater number of horses than
usual; with an attendant, drest in the
German fashion, to conduct the artillery,
that had been taken from the Swedes.
The foreign ministers, our resident, and
the English Consul, accompanied by fe-
veral merchants, set out the next day, in
order to pay their compliments to the
Czar at Nikoolskie, and returned the
next morning, which was the fourth of
December, and the day appointed for
this Monarch to make his entry. For
this purpose several triumphal arches had
been prepared before-hand made of wood,
and erected in the street of Meefniets;
the first in the Red-Wall, over-against
the Greek monastery, which is situate
near the printing-house, and the house of
the Velt-Marshal Czeremetof; the se-
cond in the White-Wall, near the Ad-
miralty-Office, about four hundred paces
from the former. The streets and the
fields were crowded with spectators to see
this pompous procession; and for my
own part, I crossed the streets, and went
out of town to see the first of it. When
I came, I perceived there was a halt,
that things might be put in order, and
that the Czar himself was personally em-
ployed in the regulation; and as I was on
foot, I approached him in order to pay
him my congratulations on the occasion;
and his happy return. He thanked me,
and favoured me with his friendly em-
braces, and seemed to be pleased that I
was still resident in his dominions. He
then took me by the hand, and told me,
that he had some ships colours to shew
me, and that I should have free liberty
to draw whatever I pleased. Whilst I
was taking a draught, a certain Russian
nobleman, with several servants in his re-
tinue, came, and took the paper from
me, and called to a German officer to know
what I was doing; but when he was in-
formed that I was at work by the Czar's
own order, he returned it me again, and
I finished my design, which I could never
have done, had not I been favoured with
his Majesty's special licence.

This public entry was made in the
following order. In the first place came

Triumphal
arches
erected for
that pur-
pose.

The author
congratu-
lates the
Czar on his
happy re-
turn, and
is caressed
by him in a
friendly
manner.

Draws fe-
veral of the
colours that
belonged to
the Swedish
ships.

The man-
ner of the
procession.

75

1702

the regiment of guards, which consisted
of eight hundred men, under the com-
mand of Colonel de Ridder, by birth
a German. One half of this body were
drest in scarlet, after the German man-
ner; and the other in Russian habits;
because there had not been time sufficient
to finish their new cloaths. The Swedish
prisoners, as well such as were soldiers,
as others who were peasants, walked be-
tween two, three a-breast; and were di-
vided into seven several bands, each con-
sisting of about fourscore, or fourscore
and four persons, making in the whole,
about five hundred and eighty men, be-
tween three companies of soldiers. After
these came two fine sumpter-horses, and
a company of grenadiers, drest in green,
lined with scarlet, after the German
mode, with this exception only, that
they had bear-skin caps on, instead of
hats; these were the first grenadier-guards;
and after them came six halberdiers, five
hautboys, and six officers. Then came
the Royal regiment of Probrofensko, con-
sisting of four hundred men, all new-
cloathed after the German fashion; in
green, lined with scarlet, and white laced
hats; with the Czar himself, and Prince
Alexander at the head of them, who
were preceded by nine German flutes,
and some fine led horses. This regiment
was followed by a party of that belong-
ing to Semenofskie, his Majesty's guards
also, all cloathed in blue, lined with
scarlet; and after them came the colours
which had been taken from the Swedes.
First, two standards, followed by a large
flag, which had been displayed upon the
castle of Notteburg, carried by four sol-
diers; next came six ships-colours, and
twenty-five ensigns, blue, green, yellow,
and red. Each carried by two soldiers.
Most of these ensigns had two golden
lions and a crown painted over their heads.
After these came forty pieces of cannon;
some drawn by four, some by six horses,
all of a colour; four great mortars, and
fifteen brass field-pieces; some larger
than the other; then came another mor-
tar-piece; and after that came several
very long and heavy brass cannon; some
drawn by six, and others by eight horses.

After

organ, made a very polite
the streets were strewn with
and other things of the
which were planted a great
the nobility. The Princess,
Majesty's sister, the Czarina,
cesses her daughters, attended
member of Russian and foreign
planted at some small di-
house of the Sieur Jakof
blatoff, in order to see the

czarina had saluted the Princesses,
on towards the second arch,
corated in as elegant a man-
it; and having marched
tivity, in the same order, he
the gate of Meolietie, and
towards the Slabode, which is
habited by the Germans;
he was arrived, the Dutch
him an offer of some of the
had; but his Majesty stole
er, which I had the honour
his own hand. As the
what large, he drank only
it, and moved forwards to
; as night, however, came
before his departure from the
mounted his horse; and then
is over. Nowwithstanding
of spectators on this joyful
did not hear that any fatal
attended it; every thing
d with the utmost decency
and every one seemed
there was no mischief done
before) in any of the streets,
ing there were numberless
d all along for the reception
ors.

g Chapter.

organ, made a very polite
the streets were strewn with
and other things of the
which were planted a great
the nobility. The Princess,
Majesty's sister, the Czarina,
cesses her daughters, attended
member of Russian and foreign
planted at some small di-
house of the Sieur Jakof
blatoff, in order to see the

thirty miles broad; but enjoys the greatest
foreign trade of any one province in the
world; and in point of strength and riches
is equal to the other six of the united pro-
vinces, tho' it has scarce any native, or staple
commodities or produce of its own, except
some rich pasture-grounds, which furnish
them with plenty of butter and cheese; and
their seas and rivers, which supply them with
a profusion of fish. They import every thing
else from abroad; and yet have as great a
variety of manufactures and merchandize as
any nation whatsoever. It is a magazine, or
store-house, where the produce of every coun-
try is lodged, bought in very cheap, and of-
ten sold out very dear, to the same countries,
sometimes, from whence they purchased them.
Their fleet, if not their army, is a match for
almost any power in Europe.

(d) Novogorod, city, east longitude 34.
latitude 58. a city of Moscovy, capital of the
province of Novogorod, situate on the river
Wolcoff, near the lake of Ilmen, one hundred
and thirty miles south-east of Petersburg. It
is the see of an Archbishop, and has in it one

hundred and eighty churches and monasteries; the country about it abounds in corn, flax, hemp, wax, and honey; and here they manufacture the best Russia leather.

(e) Pleskow, see Chap. IX. n. 11.

(f) Asoph, see Chap. VIII. n. 2.

(g) Smolensko, see Chap. IX. n. 66.

(h) Archangel, see Chap. I. n. d.

(i) Bremen, or Breme, east longitude 8. 20. latitude 53. 25. the capital of the Dutchy of Bremen, situate on the river Weser, seventy miles north-west of Zell, and as many south-west of Hamburg, one of the most considerable port-towns of Lower Saxony, in Germany; but large vessels are obliged to unload six miles below it, on account of the sands in the river. It was one of the Hanse-towns, and is still an imperial city, or Sovereign state, governed with the adjacent territory by its own magistrates.

C H A P. XI.

The Dedication of the Palace of Ismeelhoff. A great Variety of rich Presents carried thereto. A French Surgeon unbappily killed there. The Religious Rites and Ceremonies observed throughout Russia, with Respect to Births, Marriages, and Burials, even amongst those who are not Natives.

ON the twelfth of December, His Czarian Majesty came, without any previous notice, at ten in the morning, in order to dine with the Sieur Lups, who was but just arrived from (a) Archangel. I went directly to pay my compliments to him on his return, not in the least suspecting that his Majesty was there before me. The Czar came incognito, as it were; for he had only two Russian nobles to attend him; and as soon as he perceived I was there, he gave orders for my being introduced to him. Upon that honour done me, I embraced the opportunity of presenting

him with a short copy of verses which I had composed on the agreeable subject of the surrender of (b) Notteburg to his Majesty's forces, with a short apology for their imperfections, as they were the dictates of my zeal for his Majesty's interest, and joy for his success, rather than the result of a poetic genius: the Czar received them in a very complaisant manner, made me sit down by him, and give the Sieur Lups a particular detail of his triumphant entry on that joyful occasion; which accordingly I related in the best manner I could, and which gave general satisfaction. After that, we drank

The author congratulates his Czarian Majesty on his conquests, in a copy of verses,

which are graciously received.

1702

drank a few bumpers to the future good success of his Majesty's arms; and at two in the afternoon his Majesty returned home.

Decem. 19.

On the nineteenth of December I received orders from the Empress to carry the portraits of the young Princesses, which I had drawn the second time, to the palace of Imseelhoff. They set out from (c) Moscow at the same time that I did, and were there but some few minutes before me. The Empress's brother, accompanied by several priests, were in waiting, in order to introduce them (by way of formal procession) into the palace, which having lain for some time before in a ruinous condition, was but lately rebuilt, and perfectly finished; and this was the day appointed for the dedication of it before the court came to reside there. My instructions were to wait in the first apartments, where I found several ladies of the court to whom I was no stranger. The floor was strewn with hay; and on the right-hand was placed a large table, whereon were several leaves, some smaller than others, over some of which a small quantity of salt only was sprinkled; but over others, there were salt-sellers well filled. It is a custom amongst the Russians in general, that when any relation, or intimate acquaintance, is going to reside in a new habitation, to pay them a visit, and to dedicate, in a religious manner, the house to the Lord, with salt, and that for several days successively; which is done as a testimony of their peculiar regard for the party, and their sincere wishes for his future health and prosperity; or at least, that he may never want the conveniences of life. And 'tis customary, moreover, when any one quits his habitation for another more commodious, to leave hay and bread upon the floor of the former; by which he intimates his good-wishes to his successor, tho' unknown. The rooms of the apartment, where I was in waiting, were decorated, particularly over the doors and windows, with a great variety of pictures, drawn after the manner of the Greeks, which represented several of their favourite fables, whom they plant for the

1702

generality in the first room; the others, however, are not entirely without.

The Empress's brother was at the farther end of this room, accompanied, as I hinted before, by several priests, who were all standing with books in their hands, and singing of hymns suitable to the occasion. During the performance of this part of the ceremony, which took up near two hours, her Imperial Majesty was in the next apartment but one to it. As soon as this devotional exercise was over, I was conducted into another room, into which the Empress soon after came, and having a proper interpreter with me, I paid my compliments, and wished her all the pleasures that palace could afford her. She took me very familiarly by the hand, and said she would shew me some of her other apartments, which was a surprising act of indulgence from a Princess of her high rank and character. She then gave orders to one of her maids in waiting to fill me a little gold cup of brandy, which she presented me with her own hand, and when I had drank it off, she did me the honour to permit me to kiss her hand; and all the young Princesses were pleased to do the same. After this, I was dismissed with orders to attend again in about three days time.

As the Christmas holy-days were near at hand, I made bold to make her Imperial Majesty a present of a picture, representing the Nativity of our Blessed Saviour, drawn by my self, together with a small string of curious beads, which I bought, and brought from (d) Jerusalem, and begged her acceptance instead of those other ceremonial ones of bread and salt. She seemed to be extremely pleased with her unexpected trinkets, for which she returned me many thanks, and made me a present in her turn of a far greater value: I then shewed her another string of beads, which I had devoted to the young Princess's service; which, after she had turned them over, and admired them a little, she ordered me to deliver them my self into the hands of those for whom they were intended: I made my present accordingly, as they were sitting

The author congratulates her Imperial Majesty, on her coming to her new Palace.

The author's present to her Imperial Majesty.

at a table in another room.

My room was I returned directly, and presented me with a small cup of brandy, in and after that, with a bump wine. Whereupon, I returned the Empress, and with all me of the predominant respect, returned her, as respects family, my best wishes, and a good conceit at her commanding &c.

On the twenty-third of December, according to their own desire, the Empress began the celebration of the same manner as the coming year.

The weather continued till about New-Year's were almost impossible to get out of doors, and others, who were from abroad, had to pass before their entrance, such a wet feeling, known before for several years, however, yet commenced, but there was no snow, the first clearing came came on a very low level.

Yes-Day was a very great preparation were made for the feast of the coming The feast was erected the next (9) Moska, being magnificent of ground, of the girls or boys of the year was but a very little, it is from the corner on the floor, some few figures were seen.

The next day his Excellency Mr. Brans with a party of no less than two hundred, who were all dressed in a special and handsome manner, and a variety of other circumstances.

in the first room; the others, are not entirely without.

Empress's brother was at the fir-

of this room, accompanied, as I

standing by several priests, who

d singing of hymns suitable to

on. During the performance of

of the ceremony, which took

to hours, her Imperial Ma-

the next apartment but one

soon as this devotional ex-

over, I was conducted into

on, into which the Empress

came, and having a proper

with me, I paid my compli-

ment, and she then gave orders

could afford her. She took

immediately by the hand, and said

show me some of her other

which was a surprising act

from a Princess of her high

character. She then gave orders

her maids in waiting to fill me

it cup of brandy; which she

with her own hand, and

drank it off, she did me the

permit me to kiss her hand;

young Princesses were pleased

me. After this, I was di-

orders to attend again in about

me.

The

made bold to make her Im-

by a present of a picture, re-

the Nativity of our Blessed

by my self, together with

g of curious beads, which I

wrought from (d) Jerusalem,

it acceptance instead of

a ceremonial ones of bread and

seemed to be extremely pleased

unexpected trinkets, for which

ed me many thanks, and made

not in her turn of a far greater

then showed her another thing

which I had devoted to the

let's service; which, after she

it them over, and admired

she, she ordered me to deliver

into the hands of those for

were intended: I made my

judgingly, as they were sitting

at

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

at a table in another room, and then withdrew.

No sooner was I returned to her Imperial Majesty, but one of them followed me directly, and presented me with a small cup of brandy, in the first place, and after that, with a bumper of delicious wine. Whereupon, I took my leave of the Empress, and with all the testimonies of the profoundest veneration and respect, returned her, and all her illustrious family, my hearty thanks for all their condescending goodness towards me.

On the twenty-fifth instant the Russians solemnized their grand festival of Christmas, according to their own form; and his Czarian Majesty began his circle of visits, after the same manner as he did the preceding year.

The weather continued so very wet till about New-Years-Day, that the Roads were almost impassable, and the merchants and others, who were on their journey from Archangel hither, were obliged to postpone their intentions for some days: such a wet season had not been known before for several years.

No sooner, however, was the new year commenced, but there was a sudden alteration; the sky cleared up, and at once came on a very severe frost. New-Years-Day was a very busy one; for then great preparations were making for a fire-work that was to be played off, on account of the conquest at Notteburg. The structure was erected on the side of the river (e) Moskva, behind the castle, in a spacious spot of ground, called the Royal Meadow, the grass or hay whereof is conveyed on a stated day into their churches. There was but a very little variation in this from the former on the same occasion; some few figures and devices only excepted.

The next day his Czarian Majesty honoured Mr. Brants with a visit, accompanied by no less than two hundred persons of distinction, who were all agreeably entertained in a spacious hall below stairs, with a grand concert of trumpets and kettle-drums. Here, amongst a great variety of other curiosities, was produced

79

a sword of a monstrous size, which was five foot and an half in length at least, and three inches and an half in breadth within the sheath; it was well proportioned, and weighed about thirty pounds. I begged the favour of the person whose property it was, to draw it, and perceived it was waved on each side; the blade, however, was tolerably light in proportion to the hilt, and of some service. When it was sheathed again, and the point of it fixed on the ground, it was as much as a man of common strength could do to poise it with one hand. Three of us, however, one after the other, shewed the proprietor, that we were as capable of doing it as himself. That gentleman, it seems, was the son of the late governor of (f) Astracan, by name Petrofski, who was put to death by the Strelitzes, that is to say, the soldiers, who threw him down to the ground from the summit of a high tower. Tho' this son of his was but an infant, when this act of barbarity was put in execution; yet they carried their inhumanity so far, as to hang him up by the heels, and leave him in that deplorable condition for forty-eight hours successively; which had such an effect on his feet, that he was a cripple forever after: and at this very juncture he is obliged to have shoes of a peculiar form made for him, and cannot stir abroad without crutches.

Some short time before night came on, a certain person made his appearance, who represented their Patriarch, dressed in his pontifical mantle, and chanting to the sound of a bell. This was a signal for all persons to withdraw; and the Czar himself went away directly, with all his retinue, in order to pay the remainder of his visits. On the sixth of January, 1703, the Russians solemnized the Twelfth-Day in the same manner as in the year preceding; but 'tis observable, by the way, that there were not an equal number of church-men, that attended on the occasion, as there were before; nor so many fine caps, or mitres, as there were in our last account. From whence it is very natural to conclude, that, in process

1703

An extraordinary sword.

Barbarous treatment, and a miraculous deliverance.

Arrival of the person who presented the Patriarch.

January 6,

Twelfth-Day.

THE TRAVELS OF

1703

Jan. 20.

Presents to
the Czarina

process of time, there will be some remarkable variations in the solemnization of that anniversary festival. On the twentieth instant his Czarian Majesty sent particular orders to no less than three hundred Russian noblemen and ladies to meet him at Ismeelhoff by nine the next morning. The same orders had been communicated to the foreign ministers, merchants, and their respective ladies; inasmuch that there was an appearance of near five hundred persons; and each of them had previous notice, that it was expected they should bring with them such present as they thought proper for the Czarina, which was to be delivered to her use at the time of their congratulation. These free-gifts, for the generality, consist in gold and silver toys, medals, with ingenious devices, and such other little trinkets of the like nature, which are of more or less value, according to the abilities, or the peculiar affection and attachment of the respective donors. Before they are presented, however, they are registered, and the name of the person thereto annexed; and after that delivered into the hands of one of the young Princesses, who, in return for the favour, offers her hands to kisses. Most of the Russian Lords and ladies withdrew in a very short time; but the rest were invited to dinner; after which there was a ball and other amusements till Midnight.

That very night there happened a very unhappy accident at the nuptials of Capt. Staets, where two furgeons, dancing with their wives, two officers, who were but just entered the room, would fain take out those two particular ladies to dance with them. Whereupon high words arole, and one of his Czarian Majesty's officers, called Bodon, drew his sword, and ran one of the furgeons, whose name was Gurée, directly through the body. He was a French gentleman ; and being unarmed, and incapable of defending himself, fell down dead on the spot. The other, whose name was Havy, was, at the same time, wounded by one Capt. Saks, another officer in his Czarian Majesty's service ; but perceiving himself to be wounded, he stopped the blood

from gushing out with one of his fingers, as well as he could, and withdrew from the house; but his adversary pursuing him, he was obliged to return to his dead companion, and fell down in a fainting fit, on one side of him; but a gentleman then present, who had a peculiar regard for him, sucked his wound with so much success, that he soon revived. These Russian officers, it seems, had attacked them once before; but one of the surgeons, snatching up a sword, and the other a chair, very manfully drove them out of the room: enraged at this disgraceful repulse, they returned to their charge, and in the height of their resentment, committed the cowardly action here related. It is difficult for words to express the confusion that this presumptuous and blood-thirsty fact created; by the means whereof the two assassins then made their escape, tho' in two days afterwards they were happily taken and secured. Their colonel, who was an eye-witness of this barbarous and unmanly transaction, prevailed on one of his servants to take the crime upon himself, and boldly to declare, that he was the perpetrator, upon his specious promises, not only of procuring an immediate pardon for him, but of advancing him likewise to an ensign's post. The innocent vassal, willing to oblige his master on those conditions, gave it out peremptorily, that he was the only person who committed the murder: Upon this open confession, he was instantly put to the torture, in order to find out, if possible, the real fact. In his agonies, however, he absolutely disowned the whole affair, and publicly pronounced the name of the assassin; but this discovery happened to be too late, as shall be taken farther notice of in a more proper place.

At this juncture, his Czarian Majesty was determined on taking a tour to (g) Veronis, accompanied by several of the Russian nobility, and some particular Germans, whom he honoured with his orders to get ready for that intended journey. On the twenty-fifth I received an order likewise of the same import from the Sieur Heinflus, who informed me that his Majesty was desirous

1703

that I should see that I
 them, and whatever effec-
 tively the attention of the
 It is now, however, his
 can render a detail of the
 of the Boyer, Ivan Fe-
 dassin, or John Thacker-
 count Goloring, Prince
 with the Lady, Daria, in
 the daughter of Boris
 Marshall of Cretschoff,
 employed by the Czar in
 and particularly in con-
 in Vienna, where
 them repaid in his
 now and again, if
 was continued a King
 of the Malin.

As there was some
actual identification of the
as this intermarriage
each illustrious person
single my readers will
trouble of it. The
formed on the intricate
the palace of the Boyar
Gerson, which was
that joyful occasion.
franchise of timber-ware
according to the thievish
trading, abounding with
means both above and
on an eminence, not
Shabode of the Gerson
file of the river. The
liver, or great hall,
ranged in very good
radio music, and in
was placed a large
Maurice's sister, the
young Princess, and
the court, the Lords
and in the adjacent
his at one end, and
themselves. On this
last evening, you may
number of spectators
clock, the bridgegates
peared alone in the
on the left-hand, w
contradictions of the
entertainment with a
difficult liquor.

A furaj accident,

Prepara-
tions to go
to Veron.s,

John. 25

1703

personate her fathers; the one a Russian, but the other Count Conigzeegg, the Polish Envoy, who, taking her by the hand, conducted her into the chapel, and placed her on one side of the bridegroom. She was followed by the Czar's sister, the young Princesses, and other ladies of the court, who halted at the entrance into the chapel; and several Russian and foreign ladies ranged themselves on each side without; for the chapel was so remarkably small, that ten or a dozen persons would perfectly crowd it: so that those who actually went in, were only the Czar, the Czarian Prince, the bridegroom and bride, the two fathers, and two or three other Russian noblemen; but as I was very ambitious of seeing the solemnity, I planted myself behind the bridegroom, who was very richly dressed, according to the German mode, as was the bride likewise, who appeared in a white satin, wrought with gold, with her head-cloaths, decked with a great variety of diamonds; behind her, hung down, under her fontange, a large tress of plaited hair; a fashion that has been long in vogue amongst the Germans, and on her head, she wore a small crown, embellished with precious stones. As soon as the ceremony commenced, the priest came and stood before the persons whose hands he was to join, and began to read in a book for some small compass of time. After that, the bridegroom pulled off a ring, and put it on his bride's finger. Then the priest took two crowns of silver-gilt, which were placed by each other, and made both parties kiss them. When they had so done, he placed them in form upon their heads. This done the priest began to read again, and the wedded pair gave their hands to each other, and in that manner, moved gradually three times round the chapel. Then the priest took a glass of red wine, and made each of them drink off some part of it, which when they had done, they returned the glass, and he delivered it to a proper person who was in waiting to receive it. His Czarian Majesty, who was walking about, during the whole ceremony, with his marshal's staff in his hand, observing that

1702

the priest was going to his book again, gave him orders to conclude as soon as possible; whereupon, in about a minute's time he pronounced the benediction. His Majesty then directed the bridegroom to salute his bride; which she at first declined, but on his Majesty's repeated command, she thought proper to comply. When the nuptial rites were over, they repaired to the bridal-hall. During the time of the solemnity, the Czarina and the ladies of the court were at the several windows which fronted the chapel. In a short time, they sat down to table; the bridegroom among the men, and the bride among the ladies, at the common table in the large salon. This festival continued for three days successively, which were spent in dancing, and a great variety of other innocent amusements. On the third day they regaled those gentlemen in particular, who officiated as stewards of the household. The solemnization of these nuptials were widely different, from the mode, or fashion formerly practised, which would be needless, if not impertinent here to repeat, as others have so frequently taken notice of it before me.

Having thus expatriated as far as I think any ways requisite, in regard to their marriage-ceremonies, I shall now proceed to treat of their customs both at births and burials.

As soon as ever an infant is brought into the world, a priest is sent for immediately, if not in waiting, in order to its purification. This act is extended to every person then present, whose names are called over for that purpose, and who jointly receive the benediction. Nobody is admitted till the priest is at hand; and on his entering the room, the child is named either after the saint, whose festival was commemorated eight days before the child's nativity, or that which is to be kept eight days then to come. The sacrament, according to their ritual, is administered to the infant, before he is baptized; but more particularly amongst persons of distinction; and they seldom, if ever, baptize them till after the expiration of five or six weeks, when the infant is become somewhat strong and hearty.

1

If

Russian
customs at
births.

1703

If the child proves to be male, it is purified, or christened, as it is called, at the expiration of five weeks; and for if it be a girl, the ceremony is not performed till at the six weeks; the choice of its godfather and godmother, and never alienated from any consideration. On such godfathers and godmothers, there is a solemn ceremony with each other, the third degree from the priest, who are the nearest and bloodiest inmates; ever is a circumstance of particular notice of in the priest's charge. The ceremony is not the like to that of public service in the west.

The customs amongst the Russians are very different from those with respect to marriages; and amongst the Germans. In the west, indeed, they observe decency. They seem to think they think of their husband, who in the winter, in a three two beds, dressed up two waxes behind the latter of persons invited to amount sometimes to fifty persons, or an hundred as things are counted. At these festivals the civil man, and goes to church in his habit; and he, and were all healthy; I feared, there are gentlemen who, all necessities are duly in regard to the virtuous themselves, they are in waiting or

was going to his book again, 1702
orders to conclude as soon as
thereupon, in about a minute's

pronounced the benediction. His
in directed the bridegroom to
bride; which she at first de-

on his Majesty's repeated
she thought proper to com-

the nuptial rites were over,
to the bridal-hall. During

the solemnity, the *Ozima*

ies of the court were at the
dances which formed the chap-

short time, they sat down to
bridegroom among the men,

le among the ladies, at the
is in the large salon. This

cessed for three days suc-

ch were spent in dancing,
variety of other innocent

On the third day they re-

gentlemen in particular, who
stewards of the household,

ization of these nuptials
different, from the most,

formerly practised, which
dels, if not inelegant here

others have so frequently
of it before me.

is expatiated as far as I think

mate, in regard to their mari-

ness. I shall now proceed to re-

oms both at births and burials.

as ever an infant is brought
-Li, a priest is sent for im-

not in waiting, in order to
n. This act is extended to

then present, whose names
ever for that purpose, and who

ve the benediction. Nobody
till the priest is at hand; and

entering the room, the child is
er after the saint, whose feli-

annumerated eight days before
nativity, or that which is to be

days then to come. The sa-

ceding to their ritual, is ad-

the infant, before he is bap-

more particularly amongst
distinction; and they seldom

are them till after the exira-

it six weeks, when the infant
somewhat strong and hearty.

If

If the child proves to be a boy, then the mother is purified, or churched, at the expiration of five weeks after her lying-in; but if it be a girl, she is not churched till at the six weeks end. Then they make choice of its godfather and god-mother, and never alter them afterwards on any consideration whatsoever. Nor can such godfathers and godmothers in-termarry with each other; nor those in the third degree from them.

When any person of substance or figure is buried, all the friends of both sexes at-tend the funeral without any formal in-vitation. The corpse is placed upon a bier, supported either by six, or four men at least, the coffin being covered with a fine pall, and those of the fair sex, who are the nearest relations, make most hideous lamentations. This, how-ever, is a circumstance, that I took par-ticular notice of in my former travels. The priests chant the funeral dirge; but there is not the like formality and shew of public sorrow in the interment of the vulgar.

Russian
customs at
their fune-
rals.

The customs amongst the foreigners residing in Russia are widely different from these with respect to their births and weddings; and much the same with the Germans. In their marriage-rites, indeed, they observe a much greater so-lemnity. They send a formal invitation to those they think proper by two stewards of their household, which is done, if it be in the winter, in a fine sledge, drawn by two horses, dressed up in ribbons, with two valets behind the sledge. The num-ber of persons invited on such an occasion amounts sometimes to one hundred and fifty persons, or an hundred at least, ac-cording as things are circumstanced.

At these festivals the marshal is the prin-cipal man, and goes to and fro with a truncheon in his hand, adorned with ribbons; and he, and the steward, com-mence all healths; besides the head-steward, there are generally four, six, or eight under-stewards, who take care that all necessaries are duly prepared, not only in regard to the furniture, but the pro-visions themselves. These assist the steward in waiting on the guests, and are

Customs a-
mong fo-
reigners in
Russia.

1702 distinguished by a fine scarf on their right arm, which they wear in common with the head-steward, but then his is the richest; and these are tied on for them by the bride-maids. These bride-maids are introduced into the hall, where the entertainment is made, with great pomp and solemnity, and a great variety of in-strumental music. And still the more to honour the bride and bridegroom they make choice of two fathers, two mo-thers, two brothers and two sisters on each side; who are all introduced in the same pompous manner. After that, they sit down to table in such order as is settled and determined before-hand.

The person appointed to carve is planted between the two bride-maids, who sit fronting the bride, and they tie a scarf upon his arm. The bridegroom seats himself between the fathers and brothers, and the bride between the mothers and sisters. When this entertainment is over, there is another in a side-room, for the marshal, the stewards, and the carver. After that, they proceed to dancing, and the marshal opens the ball with the bride, and then the other ladies are re-quested to dance with the stewards. After these, dance the fathers and mo-thers, then the brothers and sisters, and at last the new-marr'd couple, and two or three pair perhaps besides. When these dances are over, the marshal cries out, with an audible voice, Liberty; and then every one is free to dance that pleases. These nuptial merriments, for the generality, are continued for three days successively; and on the last, the bride-maids entertain the marshal, the steward, his deputies, and the carver.

As to their funeral-rites, they are per-formed after the following manner. The body of the deceased is kept for some days; and the chiefs of the nation to which he particularly belongs are invited; and afterwards most of the foreign mer-chants and other friends, as well those in the city, as those in the Slabode. Which invitation is performed in form by two of the deceased's nation, appointed for that purpose, or pitched upon by his nearest

Their fune-
rals.

1703

nearest relations; and these are dressed in long black cloaks, and crape hat-bands. Notwithstanding the company, on these occasions, meet for the most part about two in the afternoon, it is dark before the corpse is interred in the winter season, and pretty late, in case it be summer. They have about fifteen or sixteen mourners, and twelve bearers, all married persons, and dressed in black, with long black cloaks, which are kept for that purpose in their churches. The mourners sit in the best room on the right-hand, with the male-relations of the deceased; and every one that enters the room pay their proper respects to them. The bearers have a crape hat-band, and a crape-scarf over their shoulders, and sometimes white gloves. They have a cold collation placed on two several tables with a great variety of provisions; and wine, flip, sweet-meats, toasted bread and lemons, in case they are to be procured, are handed about in plenty. Before the corpse is carried out of the house, 'tis customary to present each of the bearers with a silver spoon, with the name of the deceased neatly engraved upon it. The minister likewise, the school-master, and the mourners are favoured with the same present. If, however, the party deceased be a maid, then gold rings are given instead of spoons, with the name engraved. The coffin, before it is carried out, is nailed up by the bearers; and as soon as the procession commences, the school-master and his young pupils begin to sing with books in their hands; but the Calvinists never begin to sing till the corpse is arrived at the church-yard. The singing-boys move first, and are followed by their master, the minister, and the principal persons belonging to the funeral. Then comes the body of the deceased, and after it the nearest relations, the mourners, the met-

1703

chants, and officers, who don't go regularly two and two, as they do in Holland, but four or five together, or in what other number they think proper. As soon as they have reached the church-yard, and deposited the corpse into the grave, they renew their chanting some psalms suitable to the occasion; then the minister makes a funeral harangue, and thanks all the persons then present for the honour they have done him; then the bearers, who have each of them a shovel in their hands, throw in the earth upon the coffin, till the grave is nearly filled up. Then all the persons who were invited, are desired to return to the house of the deceased; but very few accept of the offer, except the bearers, who are always entertained there with drink and tobacco. Sometimes there is a funeral sermon preached in the church, and the women are invited to attend. When that is the case, the widow of the deceased comes with her nearest female relations, all covered over with crape; and these very frequently vent their sorrow in tears even in the streets. Sometimes she gives her friends an entertainment afterwards. They go either in coaches, or on horseback in the summer, it being then impracticable to go on foot. Formerly, indeed, their coffins were made of oak; but that practice is now prohibited, as the Czar proposes to reserve that wood for other uses.

The number of Calvinists in these parts may possibly amount to two hundred or thereabouts. The Lutherans are much more numerous; and have two churches, indeed, whilst the former have but one in the Slabode. There have been two Jesuits settled here for some considerable time, who instruct several children, who are profest Roman Catholics, in the Latin language.

1703

(a) Archangel, see p. 32.

(b) Nuremberg, see p. 32.

(c) Moscow, see p. 32.

(d) Jerusalem, call it 32. the capital city of the Asiatic Turkey, situate in Levant, or Mediterranean south of Damascus, it is of Aleppo, and two hours north-east of Great C high roads, with steep a except on the north, it valley, which is again a The city is at present fertile, and has a little for Mount Calvary, & cution of criminals, walls but has now *dead* is and stands in the ruins, and Mount S walls which flood near and fortifications, however The private buildings are thinly inhabited. The their only readers it at and the accommodation and provisions is the pe inhabitants. Yet the gins against the h of the tribute exacted *ways* *cities* *here* *my* The church of the B the pilgrims chiefly con Mount Calvary, and is where every Christian is chapel, over the mole is a couple, open in receives the light, and flash the glowing leg in this church twelve created on account c done in them, relat function of Christ, was nailed to the cross when flood, who pe where the angels appe the redemption, &c. an ally our Saviour's pass church, and all the pe nailing him to the c thorns, and rising

1703

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Archangel, see p. 8. n. d.

(b) Notteburg, see p. 76, n. b.

(c) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(d) Jerusalem, east longitude 36. latitude 32. the capital city of Judæa, or Palestine, in Asiatic Turkey, situate thirty miles east of the Levant, or Mediterranean Sea, ninety miles south of Damascus, three hundred miles south of Aleppo, and two hundred and thirty miles north-east of Grand Cairo. It stands on a high rock, with steep ascents on every side, except on the north, surrounded with a deep valley, which is again encompassed with hills. The city is at present three miles in circumference, and has a little altered its situation; for Mount Calvary, appropriated to the execution of criminals, was formerly without the walls, but has now drawn the city round about it, and stands in the middle of Modern Jerusalem, and Mount Sion is left without the walls, which stood near the center; the walls and fortifications, however, seem very antique. The private buildings are very mean, and but thinly inhabited. The resort of pilgrims hither only renders it considerable at present; and the accommodating them with lodgings and provisions is the principal business of the inhabitants. For the protection of the pilgrims against the Arabs, and for the reception of the tribute exacted on them, a Bascha always resides here with a guard of janizaries. The church of the Holy Sepulchre, which the pilgrims chiefly come to visit, stands upon Mount Calvary, and is a magnificent fabric, in which every Christian nation almost has a peculiar chapel, over the middle of the temple there is a cupola, open in the middle, at which it receives the light, and under this open cupola stands the glorified sepulchre. There are also in this church twelve or thirteen places consecrated on account of some particular actions done in them, relating to the death and resurrection of Christ; as the place where he was nailed to the cross; the place where the soldier stood, who pierced his side; the place where the angels appeared to the women after the resurrection, &c. and on Good-Friday annually our Saviour's passion is solemnized in this church, and all the parts of it acted; such as the nailing him to the cross, crowning him with thorns, and taking the body down from the

cross; and here is seen the cleft of the rock which was made by the earthquake, when our Saviour expired.

(e) Moskva River, see p. 47. n. a.

(f) Astracan, see. 62, n. i.

(g) Veronis, see the description of this city at the beginning of Chap. XIV.

(h) Vienna, east longitude 16. 20. latitude 48. 20. the capital city of the circle of Austria, and of the German Empire, is situate on the river Danube, one hundred and thirty miles south-east of Prague, two hundred miles east of Munich, six hundred south-east of London, five hundred and fifty east of Paris, three hundred miles north-west of Belgrade, and seven hundred miles north-west of Constantinople. The city, within the walls, is not more than three miles in circumference, but the suburbs are much larger than the city. It is so well fortified, that it has sustained several sieges; the last by the Turks, in 1683, continued two months, and was a very terrible one; but it was relieved in a critical hour by John Sobieski, King of Poland, and the Duke of Lorrain.

Vienna is built of stone, the houses five or six stories high, with flat roofs. The Imperial family have two large palaces here, in which there are several grand apartments; but the buildings are neither uniform or elegant; nor the furniture so rich as might be expected in the palaces of the first Prince in Europe; but the houses of the nobility and great officers of State are magnificent structures; the palace of the late Prince Eugene particularly is the admiration of all that view it, as well for the grandeur of the building and convenience of the apartments, as for the richness of the furniture.

The Prat in Vienna is frequented by people of quality, as the Mall is at London. It is a wood in an island, formed by the branches of the Danube, which renders it exceedingly pleasant.

Vienna is an Archbishoprick, and the cathedral of St. Stephen a magnificent old building, but very dark: the university is equal to any in Europe, in point of antiquity, the number of students, or their privileges and accommodations. The Austrian library is

Z

officers, who don't go regularly, as they do in Hol. or five together, or in under they think proper. y have reached the church-politied the corpse into the renew their chanting some e to the occasion; then makes a funeral harangue, the persons then present it they have done him; es, who have each of them their hands, throw in the he coffin, till the grave is in. Then all the persons ed, are desired to return of the deceased; but very e offer, except the bearers, is entertained there with ecc. Sometimes there is a in presented in the church, men are invited to attend. is the case, the widow of comes with her nearest fe, all covered over with eed very frequently vent a tears even in the streets. gives her friends an enter- rards. They go either in horseback in the summer, inapplicable to go on foot. Indeed, their coffins were of Calvinists in their amount to two hun- outs. The Lutherans are numerous; and have two indeed, whilst the former i in the Sabode. There Jesus testified here for some time, who instruct several who are profess Roman Ca- the Latin language.

1703

in great esteem, containing fourscore thousand volumes.

There is no place where people eat and drink more plentifully, and are better served with wine, as well as eatables, than they are at Vienna. People of distinction will have eighteen or twenty different sorts of wine at their tables, and a note is laid on every plate, enumerating the several sorts of wine that may be called for; and it is a very difficult thing for a stranger to get off without being made sensible of the strength of them.

This city, tho' it be so far within land, has in some parts of it the air of a sea-port; for here are magazines of naval stores, and ships of war built, and fitted out, which serve upon the Danube, against the Turks; and there have been many smart engagements between the fleets of the Turks and Germans upon that river, especially about Belgrade.

(i) Malta, east longitude 15. latitude 35. 15. an island in the Mediterranean, situate sixty miles south of Cape Passaro, in Sicily, and two hundred miles east of Tunis, in Africa. It is of an oval figure, twenty miles long, and twelve broad. It is a white, soft rock, covered a foot deep with earth; producing indigo, cotton, grapes, olives, figs, lemons, oranges, and other fruits; but they have not corn enough for their use, nor make any wine, but import both from Sicily; it produces, however, plenty of pease, beans, and other pulse, melons, and garden-stuff; and they have very good springs, but no

1703

wood, except their fruit-trees. This island was successively subject to the Phoenicians, Carthaginians, and the Romans: and the Emperor Charles V. gave it to the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem, after they had lost the island of Rhodes, which they defended two hundred years against all the power of Turkey.

They were attacked in the island of Malta by Solymán, the Turkish Emperor, anno 1566, but he was forced to abandon the island, after he had lost above 20,000 men in the attempt. The Knights formerly consisted of eight several nations, but now only of seven, the English having withdrawn themselves on account of their superstitious rites. All the Knights are to be of ancient, noble, families, and legitimate. The grand crosses, or heads of each nation, are titled grand priors, having each of them their convents of Knights, and estates in every popish nation appropriated to their maintenance, which are titled commanderies. The priors chuse a grand master, and are all subject to the Pope in spirituals, and depend also pretty much on those Princes where their lands, or commanderies lie. They are obliged to suppress all pirates, and are engaged in a perpetual war with the Turks, Algerines, and other Mahomedans. The Knights take vows of celibacy, chastity, &c. And as to matrimony, they generally keep their vow, but introduce, however, great numbers of Grecian girls, who serve them in quality of concubines:

(k) Holland, see p. 76. n. 6.



1703

The Emperor's Deposition
shows other Generals
on the Road to Vienna

THE time appointed
Majesty's deposition
ing come, he was
by John Alexander
prime minister, and
the Russian court, V
venor of (a) Afrazer
venor of (b) Aloph
governor of (c) Ko
Waldewitz Kissen, b
household, and gentle
to his German Majest
rises, his Majesty's u
other persons of high
likewise came after a
German Majesty like
honour the followi
invite them to acc
journey; namely, I
emperor extraordinary fr
Sieur Kitching, envoy
(e) Prussia, the Sieur
from the Sieur Ogier
principal generals, an
of Poland's sincerest
liears of his household
famous general Le-
moreover, the three
viz. Mr. Steel, a fi
great favourite of
and Mr. Hill, both
land, and the Sieur
(f) Holland, who w
attached to his Majest
the same time, that
them some short tim
accordingly, we did

*The Czar's Departure for Veronis, to which Place the Author, and
divers other Gentlemen attend him. Several remarkable Occurrences
on the Road thither. His Arrival at Veronis.*

THE time appointed for his Czarian Majesty's departure for Veronis being come, he was accompanied thither by John Alexewitz Moefin Poefkin, prime inspector, and principal visitor of the Russian convents, who had been governor of (a) Astracan, an office which he had discharged with the utmost credit and reputation; Alexis Petrowitz Imeelhoff, the Knez Gregory Gregoriwitz Gagarin, John Andrewitz Toltsoy, governor of (b) Afoph, Joan Davidewitz governor of (c) Kolomna, Alexander Wasselewitz Kifken, head-steward of the household, and gentleman of the chamber to his Czarian Majesty; and one Narsiskie, his Majesty's uncle's son. Divers other persons of high rank and distinction likewise came after us to Veronis. His Czarian Majesty likewise was pleased to honour the following persons so far as to invite them to accompany him in that journey; namely, the Sieur Konigsegg, envoy extraordinary from (d) Poland, the Sieur Kiserling, envoy from the King of (e) Prussia, the Sieur Belloseur, agent from the Sieur Ogienkie; one of the principal generals, and one of the King of Poland's sincerest friends; several officers of his household, and sons of the famous general Le-Fort. He invited, moreover, the three following merchants, viz. Mr. Steel, a fine gentleman, and a great favourite of his Czarian Majesty, and Mr. Hill, both natives of (f) England, and the Sieur Kinfius, a native of (g) Holland, who were all perfectly well affected to his Majesty. He desired, at the same time, that I should set out with them some short time before him; which accordingly we did upon the thirty-first

of January, and his Czarian Majesty, with all his retinue, set out the very next day. We had taken particular care that the bottoms of our sledges should be well strengthened and secured by proper plates of iron, in order that they might hold out the journey without any farther repairs; since the ground was hardly covered with snow, and the road at that time, by consequence, extremely bad. His Majesty had ordered several post-wodens for us, besides six sledges for the use of our selves and our servants. We set out from the Slabode of the Germans about three in the afternoon, and we were ordered likewise to have relays of fresh horses at every twenty wersts. At the end of every werst, between Moscow and Veronis, there are proper posts, or land-marks, whereon is inscribed the date of the year 1701, in which they were first erected, not only in the Russian, but the German characters likewise. Between each of these land-marks, or pillars, which are pretty stately, and painted red, there are eighteen or twenty small trees on each side of the road; and sometimes three or four all in a cluster, interwoven with branches, as your gabions are, the better to support, and keep them fast in the ground. Of these pillars there are about five hundred and fifty-two. So that from Moscow to Veronis, and the parts adjacent, it is computed at about an hundred and ten leagues, allowing five wersts to a league. As to the number of small trees, that are planted on each side of the road as before-mentioned, I am apt to believe, on a moderate computation of them, they may amount to about 200,000. And this

con-

1703

contrivance is so much the more commodious; because, without such pillars and trees, it would be morally impossible to keep the road; since, during the winter-season, they are all covered with snow; besides 'tis customary to travel as well by night as in the day. In about two hours time we reached Sgelina; where we changed horses, in order to proceed to Oeljamina, at which place we arrived about eight o'clock: and there we alighted at a Kabak, belonging to his Majesty, which was a very handsome structure for a timber-house, and had divers very commodious apartments in it. At our entrance, we went up a fine Savare of five steps, with five angles, and were entertained with good beer, and very comfortable fires, as his Majesty himself was expected there, who has ordered Kabaks to be erected every twenty wersts for the accommodation of strangers. After we had refreshed our selves here for about two hours, we proceeded on our journey, tho' the night was very damp. There were horses always ready for us at the stated places, and there were fires in all the villages; where the country people stood at their respective doors with trusses of straw, all in flames, to testify their joy for his Majesty's arrival, which in the night-time had a very good effect. Tho' from this place to Kolonna we had thirty wersts to travel; yet we reached it before break of day: and there we waited till his Majesty came, which was about nine in the morning; at which time I was gone out in order to take a survey of the place both within and without. On Friday, or the fifth day of the week, I went out at the gate, called by the inhabitants Pjaethietke; and from thence went to that of Cossi, which are the only gates they have. This town is surrounded with a very substantial stone-wall, about six fathom high, and about two thick, which is flanked with several towers, some circular, and others square; at about two hundred paces distance one from the other; but not calculated for the reception of cannon: it is about a mile and an half in circumference, and the little river called Kolommenke, from

Situation of
Kolonna.

whence it derives its name, glides along by it. Here, indeed, I should have taken notice of the river of Moscow; but as we crossed it afterwards by water, I shall postpone the account of it to another time, that I may not be interrupted in my description of this city. The wall is almost all broken down on one side, and in order to get at the hinder-gate, where the land lies low beyond the river, one must go over a pretty high hill. At the other gate, there are suburbs, where they expose their wares to sale; and I saw a great number of country-people pass through this gate with their respective commodities for the supply of the town. The form of it is almost round, and on the highest side there is a dry ditch, and a very high wall. The church of Uspenja, that is, of the Separation of the Mother of God, is the most ornamental structure in the whole place; 'tis pretty large, and built with stone: the archiepiscopal palace likewise is no contemptible building; but there is nothing besides in the whole city that has the appearance of any grandeur. Having thus gratified my curiosity, I went to the governor's house, whose name was Ivan Davidewitz, where I found his Czarian Majesty, and the rest of his retinue at table. When I had got up to that Prince, and paid my duty to him, he honoured me so far as to salute me; and after I had given him a short detail of my survey, he ordered me to sit down. At two in the afternoon we proceeded on our journey, and went directly to the country seat of Mr. Alexander Wasselewitz Koecken, which was about five wersts distance from Kolonna, where we were very elegantly entertained. It is a wooden structure, indeed, and but two stories high; but the apartments in it were very large and commodious. We refreshed ourselves there till about five o'clock, and arrived by about nine, at the little lake, called Ivan, not far distant from the village of Ivanofa, which was near one hundred and thirty wersts from the seat of Mr. Koecken. The river (*i*) Don, or the Tanais, has its source in this lake, and from thence flows in a long canal, the water whereof is exceedingly

The little
Lake Ivan.

1703

high clear, and perfect
out in the opinion of
most of all who were witness-
ing that lake, I
standing that pool,
peaking, that pool,
There is one circumstance
that is peculiarly remarkable
one half of its water
and the other half ar-
rives at this place that the C
1703, began to dig a
open a communication
and the (A) Baltic
funnelled the whole g
dia at this present time
with them. This canal
of are very deep, recti-
Don, or Tanais, and is
the lake Ivan, and so
river Sobaka, which is
into the Uga; this in-
this led into the /
whereof, the end pro-
tained of making a c
even this river and
contrivance whereof is
by a great variety of st
stone paces in length,
fourteen, under the c
of Prince Gogorin, w
like mechanical opera-
travellers endowmen
yond the power of
Czarian Majesty can
on the canal in st
covered the boats to be
and showed us the w
then completed, whic
large, wide sluices, con-
It was there likewise, t
for discharging of muc
the manner of those
which, when the
Czarian Majesty gon
make turf with, whic
just as it is in the (A) J
were several houses
experience we found
good.
His Czarian Majest
ed us at noon, abou
preceded on our j
that belonging to y

derives its name, glides along
indeed, I should have taken
the river of Moscow; but as
afterwards by water, I shall
account of it to another time,
it is not to be interrupted in my de-
this city. The wall is almost all
on one side, and in order to
under-gate, where the land
and the river, one must go
high hill. At the other
the suburbs, where they en-
tures to sail; and I saw a
er of country-people pass
s gone with their respective
for the supply of the town.
it is almost round, and on
e there is a dry ditch, and
L. The church of Uspenski,
Separation of the Mother
most ornamental structure
place; 'tis pretty large, and
one: the archiepiscopal pa-
is no contemptible building;
thing besides in the whole
e appearance of any gran-
thus gratified my cu-
to the governor's house,
as Ivan Davidewitz, where
Czarian Majesty, and the
ie at table. When I had
Prince, and paid my duty
accounted me so far as to li-
nd after I had given him a
my survey, he ordered me
At two in the afternoon
on our journey, and went
country seat of Mr. Alex-
itz Koecken, which was
is distance from Kolomna,
very elegantly entertained.
structure, indeed, and but
n; but the apartments in
arge and commodious. We
elves there till about five
arrived by about nine, at
called Ivan, not far distant
e of Ivanofa, which was
ed and thirty wersts from
Koecken. The river
Tanais, has its source in
thence flows in a
water whereof is extend-
ingly

1703

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

89

ingly clear, and perfectly well tasted; not only in the opinion of the Czar himself, but of all who were with him; notwithstanding that lake, or more properly speaking, that pool, is very marshy. There is one circumstance relating thereto that is peculiarly remarkable; and that is, one half of its water runs one way, and the other half another. It was at this place that the Czar, in the year 1702, began to dig a canal, in order to open a communication between the Don and the (*k*) Baltic. His Majesty then surveyed the whole ground in person, as he did at this present juncture while we were with him. This canal, the waters whereof are very deep, receives them from the Don, or Tanais, and is proposed to cross the lake Ivan, and so flow into the little river Sohata, which discharges its waters into the Upa; this into the (*l*) Occa, and this last into the (*m*) Wolga; by virtue whereof, the end proposed might be attained of making a communication between this river and the Baltic sea; the contrivance whereof is to be accomplished by a great variety of sluices, at about four score paces in length, and in breadth only fourteen, under the care and inspection of Prince Gogarin, whose skill in such like mechanical operations, and other extraordinary endowments of mind, are beyond the power of words to express. His Czarian Majesty caused us to be carried on this canal in sledges, having first ordered the horses to be shod accordingly, and shewed us the whole work as it was then completed, which consisted of seven large, close sluices, composed of grey stone. It was there likewise, that I saw an engine for discharging of mud, made much after the manner of those in Holland; with which, when the ice was broke, his Czarian Majesty got up earth, proper to make turf with, which is managed there, just as it is in the (*n*) Netherlands. There were several houses full of it, and, by experience we found that it was very good.

His Czarian Majesty having entertained us at noon, about three o'clock we proceeded on our journey to a country seat belonging to Mr. Le Fort's, situate

1703

A great canal dug by order of the Czar.

The Don, or Tanais.

Large, close sluices.

Turf made in those parts, and how.

in a village about thirty wersts farther. As this rural habitation, however, stands somewhat out of the high-road, three of our guides turned to the right, instead of following the company, and went to one of his Majesty's houses, at about five wersts distance only; and as night was come upon us, I went in there, accompanied by two French officers, where we tarried till ten o'clock, in expectation of our companions; but perceiving nobody came near us, we pursued our journey thro' a desert, where we met with a little coppice here and there, but nothing else. On the third instant, about nine in the morning, we arrived at the country seat of Prince Alexander Danilewitz de Mensikof, which was about an hundred and ten wersts from Mr. Le Fort's. It is a very spacious and magnificent structure, like a pleasure-house, with a lanthorn, or turret upon it, which was covered with a loose roof, to be taken off, or kept on, as occasion required, and was very neatly painted both within and without, with a great variety of colours. This pleasure-house of his was lofty enough in reason, and contained in it several very superb apartments. There is no other way to it than by the gate of the fort; for both of them are within one common enclosure, and that not of any considerable extent. Here were several fine works well mounted with cannon, which on one side were well covered with a hill, and on the other, by a fort of fen, or lake. No sooner was I admitted into the Czar's presence, but he asked me where I had been? I made answer, where Providence and my guides had pleased to direct me; for I was a stranger to the road, and the language they talked there. Upon this he laughed very heartily, and acquainted the Russian Lords who attended him with my ramble. He then gave me a bumper, by way of punishment. After that, he regaled us in a very elegant manner, and ordered the cannon to be fired at every health. When the entertainment was over, he carried us upon the ramparts, and treated us there with a variety of liquors on each work. After that, he ordered several sledges to be

A a

be

THE TRAVELS OF

90

1703

Oranien-
burg.

be got ready to divert us on the lake, which was then frozen over, that we might from thence take a perfect view of the whole at our leisure: he did me the honour to take me into his own sledge; still careful of his liquors, which accompanied us wherever we went in great profusion. From thence we returned to the castle, where bumpers again began to be handed round in order to warm us; and at last, as that place had never been distinguished by any particular name, his Majesty was pleased to call it Oranienburg. Prince Alexander's village, which is situate on one side of it, is called Sla-boolke. From this agreeable place we set out about nine at night. On the fourth instant, we travelled hard, indeed, but afterwards at a more moderate rate, as there was but little snow upon the ground. His Czarian Majesty, however, did not put up, till we were arrived at Stepena, where were ten ships but newly built. We proceeded on our journey in the night-time; and on the fifth instant, about one in the morning, we reached (o) Veronis, which is an hundred and ninety wersts from Oranienburg. As the company were divided whilst 'twas dark, one part dropt in after another. The two first that made their appearance at Mr. Le Fort's, was his son and my self; and as there had been no regulation settled in regard to our respective lodgings, we went directly to vice-admiral Rees; where we were informed, that he had kept his bed for three weeks then last past, through the misfortune he met with by a casual fall; and as soon as it was broad day, we waited on him, and consoled with him on that unhappy occasion: he received us in a very courteous manner, and begged of us to make free with his house, and whatever provisions we could meet with. His Czarian Majesty arrived himself about one in the afternoon, not only under the discharge of all the cannon in the castle, but under the fire of the

guns from the ships which lay there frozen up: and on his first arrival, he went directly to pay the vice-admiral a visit. From thence he went to Mr. Fewdor Mashevitz Apraxins, one of the Lords of the Admiralty, and commandant in that place. We received orders to follow him, and were very agreeably entertained, in the midst of the noise of the artillery; for fifty cannon at least were fired off at different times; and so the public acclamations concluded with the day. In the mean time, orders were given, that proper apartments should be prepared for the reception of strangers in the castle; that they should be regaled in the most elegant manner, and want for no provisions that the place could possibly afford: neither was there the least deficiency in point of liquors; for Mr. Konigsegg, the Envoy before-named, who had the direction of the table, discharged the trust reposed in him, in the politest manner. The Sieurs Steel, Knissus and Hill, lodged with a particular acquaintance of theirs, and Mr. Le Fort and I at the vice-admiral's; but we went every now and then to the castle to partake of the entertainments there. His Majesty, with his Russian nobility, lay at a private house upon the quay. On the sixth instant, we went to take a view of the ships there; where we drank very freely, and were innocently gay. Fewdor Mashevitz entertained us at noon, and all the next day: and so ended our festivity; for on the eighth the Russians grand fast commenced. On the ninth I solicited his Czarian Majesty for his free permission to take draughts of whatever I saw worthy of my attention; which request was immediately complied with; and he closed it with the following remark: "Come, Sir, said he, we have lived well, and been innocently merry; and as we have had some little rest after our fatigue, 'tis now high time to set to work, and dispose of our future hours to better advantage."

Occasional

1703

Occasional

- (a) Astrak, see p. 60.
- (b) Alaph, see p. 51.
- (c) Kalouza, see p. 61.
- (d) Poland, see p. 63.
- (e) Prussia, a province between 17 and 22 degrees and between 53 and 56 north; by *Langens* as north; by *Great Poland* and east; by *Brandenburg* south; and by *Brandenburg* south; being about two hundred broad, and lies on the west, being crown of Poland; and is the eastern part of it, Prussia, whose archbishop has been since recognized King powers in Europe. The crown in the year 1 however, that upon his quiet and Elector of Prussia should never to and he desired a list of Prussia is one of the cold countries in Poland, but foreign trade, having few man dominions, consist Pomerania, Mecklenburg, laia, if he can keep the considerable; but they Polish dominions by duchess Margarete is a and Mecklenburg on the west; by the Elector's fact; and by *Brandenburg* the west, extending in length, and between 51

ships which lay there frozen
his first arrival, he went di-
the vice-admiral a visit.
he went to Mr. Fewdor
apexian, one of the Lords of
y, and commandant in that
received orders to follow him,
y agreeably entertained, in
the noise of the artillery;
on at least were fired off at
; and to the public accla-
mated with the day. In the
orders were given, but pro-
ts should be prepared for the
dangers in the castle; that
regaled in the most elegant
want for no provisions that
d possibly afford: neither
least deficiency in point of
Mr. Königegg, the Envoy
i, who had the direction of
discharged the trust reposed in
politicst manner. The Siens
and Hill, lodged with a
assistance of theirs, and Mr.
at the vice-admiral's; but
now and then to the castle
the entertainments there.
with his Russian nobility;
house upon the quay. On
ent, we went to take a view
where; where we drank very
were innocently gay. Fewdor
entertained us at noon, and
day; and so ended our festi-
n the eighth the Russians
commenced. On the ninth I
Czarian Majesty for his free
take draughts of whatever I
of my attention; which re-
immediately complied with;
ed it with the following re-
sponse, Sir, said he, we here
A, and been innocently merry;
have had some little rest after
us, 'tis now high time to let
and dispoise of our future
better advantage."

Occasional

1703

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- (a) Afracan, see p. 62, n. i.
(b) Afoph, see p. 51, n. b.
(c) Kolomna, see p. 61, n. c.
(d) Poland, see p. 63, n. n.
(e) Prussia, a province of Poland, is situate between 17 and 22 degrees of east-longitude, and between 53 and 56 degrees of north-latitude, being bounded by the Baltic Sea on the north; by Lamogitia and Lithuania on the east; by Great Poland and Warovia on the south; and by Brandenburg and Pomerania on the west; being about two hundred miles long, and hundred broad, and divided into Regal and Ducal Prussia; the Regal Prussia, which lies on the west, being still subject to the crown of Poland; and Ducal Prussia, which is the eastern part of it, subject to the King of Prussia, whose ancestors began to stile themselves Kings about the year 1700, and have been since recognized Kings by most of the powers in Europe. The chief town of Ducal Prussia is Konningsburg, situate on the Frischhoff, a bay of the Baltic Sea. This country has been subject to the Marquisses of Brandenburg upwards of two hundred years, and here they are absolute Sovereigns, the Poles having acknowledged their independency on the crown in the year 1663, upon condition, however, that upon failure of issue of the Marquis and Elector of Brandenburg, Ducal Prussia should revert to the crown of Poland, and be deemed a fief of that crown. Ducal Prussia is one of the coldest, and most barren countries in Poland, but is well situated for a foreign trade, having several good ports upon the Baltic Sea. The King of Prussia's German dominions, consisting of Brandenburg, Pomerania, Magdeburg, Halberstat, and Silesia, if he can keep the last, are much more considerable; but they are separated from his Polish dominions by Regal Prussia. Brandenburg Marquissate is bounded by Pomerania and Mecklinburg on the north; by Poland on the east; by the Electorate of Saxony on the south; and by Brunswick and Lunenburg on the west; extending two hundred miles in length, and between fifty and an hundred in

91

1703

breadth; the capital city Berlin, subject to Prussia.

(f) England is of a triangular figure, bounded by Scotland on the north; by the German Sea on the east; by the English channel, which divides it from France on the south; and by St. George's, or the Irish Chanel on the west. In South Britain, which comprehends both England and Wales, there are 52 counties, 26 cities, 207 borough towns, 803 market-towns, 2 archbishopsricks, and 9284 parishes. It is about 380 miles in length, and 300 in breadth, containing about eight millions of inhabitants. And how remarkable this island is for trade and commerce is almost needless to inform our English readers: in case, however, any of them may casually want farther information, for brevity's sake, we shall refer them to Mr. Postlethwait's general dictionary on that particular and important subject; wherein every article is occasionally inserted, with so much accuracy and judgment, that it cannot fail of gratifying the curiosity of the most inquisitive reader.

(g) Holland, see p. 76, n. c.

(h) Moskva River, see p. 4. n. a.

(i) Don, or Tanais, see p. 62, n. d.

(k) Baltic Sea has Sweden on the north, and Germany and Livonia on the south. It is observable, that a current always sets out of this sea through the found into the ocean; for which reason, and the numerous freshwater rivers which fall into it, its waters are not so salt as other seas; and there are no tides in it; and it is frequently frozen three or four months in the winter.

(l) Occa, see p. 51, n. d.

(m) Wolga, or Volga, see p. 28. n. f.

(n) Netherlands, see p. 62, n. m.

(o) Veronis. See the Author's particular account of it, in the beginning of Chapter XIII.

CHAP.



C H A P. XIII.

A Description of the City of Veronis; as also of the Don, or Tanais. A short Account of our Return to Moscow, and of His Majesty's Departure from thence to Sleutelenburg.

Situation of Veronis.

THE city of Veronis is situate on a high hill in fifty-two degrees and an half of northern latitude, and is surrounded with a wooden wall, which was then all perfectly rotten, and divided into three parts; in one whereof, commonly called Jakatof, the most substantial Russian merchants principally reside. Within the city there is a remarkably long rope-walk; and without the wall there are several magazines, or store-houses for their powder. On the side of the hill, and all along the banks of the river, there are a great number of houses within the extent of four hundred paces; the most magnificent of these structures belong to the Admiral Golowin, Mr. Apraxin, one of the commissioners of the admiralty, the Boyard Lofkrielowitz, Prince Danielowitz, and other Russians of high rank and distinction. The much greater part of these houses front the citadel, and those of the vice-admiral, and other officers are on one side of them; and behind these buildings there are streets, wherein the inhabitants are principally employed as ship-carpenters, or in other professions of a similar nature. This city is situate on the west side of the river Veronis, from whence it derives its name; and the citadel stands on the other side, to which there is a large bridge for a more commodious communication. The ditches that surround it are all full of water proceeding from the old river. This citadel is a quadrangular structure, with towers at each corner, has several very spacious apartments, and makes a grand figure from without. The new river is choaked up to that degree with sands that it is not navigable; and the ships for that reason

The citadel

Their docks for shipping

are obliged to sail through the old one. The citadel is, as they themselves look upon it to be, the principal magazine, and has above one hundred and fifty pieces of cannon in it; the greatest part of them, however, have no carriages, in order that, on any emergency, they may be transported to any other place with greater ease. This citadel, moreover, is defended by palliades in various parts of it, and is filled with a good garrison, as well as the country round about, in order to withstand the Tartars, in case they should oppose them. The conveniences for the building of ships now lie on one side of the citadel; whereas formerly they were scattered all round about it. The store-house, which is a large capacious structure, is situate on the other side, and is raised three stories high; the two first of which are all stone-work; but the upper, or higher story, is built with wood. In this place, there are several apartments full of naval stores; in some there are cloaths for sailors of all sorts, and in others, all such other conveniences as they imagine they should principally stand in need of. The sail-house, or loft, stands on one side of this store-house; and at a moderate computation, the number of inhabitants amount to near ten thousand. There are two or three small villages that may be seen, tho' at a considerable distance, in the plain.

On the tenth instant, I went in pursuit of a commodious stand, or situation, from whence I might take a draught, or sketch of the city; and I pitched accordingly upon the highest part of an adjacent hill, which is but two wersts at most to the south-westward part of it: there I began

my

1703

my operation; but, could make no considerable progress through the excessive coldness of the season, and the keenness of the wind. The next day I took a walk thither, in order to get my self into a moderate degree of heat by the way, attended by nobody but my own servant, and three men belonging to the vice-admiral, who might keep off any such Russians as might probably attempt to interrupt me in the prosecution of my design. I gave orders for a mat to be got ready, some few poles, an ax, and a spade, in order to dig a pit for me, where I might with convenience take my stand. When this was done, I secured my back from the wind with the mat; and being thus planted, there was no great difficulty in seeing what I was about both from the town and the river-side. And, indeed, I was not long here before I was found out; for two English ship-wrights discerning me from the river, sent two or three of their people to know what business I had there. Perceiving they were advancing towards me, I gave orders to my sea-men, who were armed with half-pikes, to keep them at a distance; to tell no one what I was about; and to say, they knew nothing of the matter, in case any impertinent or curious enquiries should be made. In the meantime, above fifty Russians in a body got together upon the hill, drawn thither through the novelty of such a sight, and their incapacity of conceiving what my intention in reality was; my people, however, taking due care to drive them back, they were not so presumptuous as to advance near enough to give me any interruption. When I returned to the town, the vice-admiral informed me, that it was the current report, that one of the Czar's domestics had been buried alive upon the hill; as nobody could tell who it was, nor what crime had been committed; and that the poor, unfortunate fellow, who was buried up to the middle, had a large prayer-book before him, which was the paper I was drawing on; and that no one was permitted to come near him, as there were three proper centinels appointed to guard him, and

1703

prevent any attempt to assist him; nay the officers themselves were so much in the dark as to the real matter, that they enquired of one another who the poor domestic was, that was thus under sentence of condemnation. On the twelfth instant, however, as they perceived the criminal had shifted his quarters, and consequently, that they were mistaken in regard to his interment, they unanimously ran into another suggestion, as whimsical as the former. At some small distance, there was an old burying-ground, where they had seen me some few days before, and where I went that day to take a draught of it. The Russians, thus fluttered and confounded, now imagined, that I might be some prophet arrived from beyond-sea, to visit the old burying-grounds, say masses for the dead, and perform some other religious ceremonies there; especially, as I always appeared with a book before me. They observed, as all agreed, that I had an Hungarianian vest on; that I had a servant who attended me, and carried on his arm a blue cloak, or something like one; and in short, that I had three of the vice-admiral's people set over me as a guard. This notion, as idle and extravagant as it was, might possibly have been attended with bad consequences, had not the Czar himself been personally in those parts, and been a check on the multitudes which would otherwise have assembled together.

Representation of the town. Plate XV.

In the Plate, Number XV. hereto annexed, the Reader has a perfect view of the whole town. The capital letter A denotes the place where his Majesty resided. B the docks, where the ships are built. C the d'Woritz, that is to say, the citadel. D the Ambact, or store-house; E the sail-house, or loft; F the house, or palace of Prince Alexander Danielowitz; G that of Fewdor Masfchwitz; H Usplenje Dogeroditza, or the Church of the Conception of the Mother of God. I Gufma Idemjan, or the church devoted to Cosmus and Damian, who were brethren in the catalogue of their saints; K Saboor, or the church of the Assembly of the saints; L Petritza Bogoroditza, or the Friday Church; which was

B b

fo

THE TRAVELS OF

1703

so distinguished, because in that place the Blessed Virgin Mary appeared in an extraordinary manner on that particular day; and from thence it was presumed that she required it to be set apart in honour of that day above any other in the week. M the old river. N the new river. O the hill from whence I drew the prospect of the town. As the old monuments before-mentioned appeared to me somewhat extraordinary in their kind, I drew them likewise, as well as the ground wherein they stand. And as they are on a hill, which has suffered greatly by the inclemency of the weather, this hill is by itself, and is from the top to the bottom of it covered over almost with skulls and bones, and large pieces of coffins. On the top there are two; one only a small matter damaged; but the other is shattered to pieces. I gave orders to a Russian to climb up this hill, which had two trees upon it, in order to try if he could bring back with him some bones which appeared to lie upon the surface, and which had been so perfectly blanched by the air that they were as white as chalk, which had a very odd effect in that black soil; but the earth was frozen so hard, that he could not possibly extract them. In Number XVI. the reader has a full view of the Old Burying-Ground. What now lies before it, was formerly one part of it; and the way to it on this side the river lies beneath this hill, on the left-hand; and on the right lies Siefoskie, in the bottom near the river, together with some mills, as the reader may see in Plate XVII, hereto annexed. As to the ships which we saw here, there were fifteen in the water, four men of war, the largest of fifty-four guns, three victualling vessels, two fire-ships, and six bomb-ketches. There were likewise five men of war on shore, ready to be launched, all built after the Dutch manner, from sixty to sixty-four guns, two in the Italian fashion, from fifty to fifty-four, a galeas, after the Venetian mode, and four gallies, besides seventeen other gallies at Siefoskie, which is about two wersts only from the city. Besides all this, the workmen were fully employed about five

Plate XVI.

Plate XVII

men of war, which were building after the English taste; two of them bored for seventy-four guns, and two for sixty or sixty-four; and the fifth, which is called after his Majesty, by reason he had the management and direction of her himself whilst on the stocks, is bored for fourscore and six guns. The same workmen were likewise farther employed about a packet-boat; and upon the shore, on the other side the river, there were about two hundred brigantines, most of them built at Veronis; and at this very juncture there were four hundred very substantial brigantines upon the (*a*) Nieper, or the Borysshenes, in the parts adjacent to (*b*) Crim Tartary, and three hundred flat-bottomed boats, upon the (*c*) Volga; and to these may be added eighteen men of war, a bomb-vessel, and a yacht at (*d*) Asoph. His Czarian Majesty has, moreover, divers other ships; the largest whereof are of sixty-six guns, four from forty-eight to fifty. Five of thirty-six. Two of thirty-four, and others smaller; the least of twenty-eight.

On that day his Czarian Majesty took the diversion of sailing on the ice, in a place that was made level, and fit for the purpose. On the thirteen that night, about twenty bombs were fired off from two vessels, and several others from a pinnacle, or galley, with twenty oars. When I returned, the vice-admiral informed me, that the Czar had sent a special messenger after me. Accordingly, I went that minute on board the ship where I knew he was, and saw several bombs fired off after the Dutch manner. I found his Majesty with a profusion of liquor before him; and was informed, that the next day, being the fourteenth instant, he was to go with a numerous retinue to the (*e*) Don, or Tanais, which is about twelve wersts from Veronis, in order to take a survey of the shipping at that particular place. We set out about three o'clock in the afternoon. Most of the company went on horseback; the rest either in waggons or coaches; and when we had got at some small distance from the town, the Czar stopt at a small church, and after that, we went a little

1703

Journey to
the Don, or
Tanaïs.

on one side to take a view
was of an octagon form,
extraordinary construction,
arched. Within this is
for others which were
without either sails, or an
vice for the wind to all
out; but there are sent
like those of a ship, and
by large windows or doors
is a brisk gale of wind, it
the same windows a
threw open, on that in
to it, so that rushing up
the machine a going to
The reader will find a
this machine in Plate X
next.

The Car came up with
and desired us to mend
that was more than all
public of doing; we re
our journey; and before
upon us. At our arriv
general discharge of the
ships in the river; and v
several of them, where
to sink bumpers. A
agreedly entertained at
Alexander Mechin Pech
per was over, a great
party retired to the ship
there were more to
consideration where
had not at that time
upon the place; tho'
rumour that a town wa
The day following we
operations that were
order to stop the current
to turn it into another
people there was a st
that the whereon they
it could have its co
which is likewise kno
the Tanais, and by it
part adjacent, called
the most noted rivers
crosses the Precipit
to the eastward, and
about a long way, it
steep towards the V
has been fortified by

which were building after the mode, two of them bored for guns, and two for sixty or a hundred the fifth, which is called *the fifth*, by reason he had the aid and direction of her him- self, in the stocks, is bored for six guns. The same work- man, likewise farther employed in the boat; and upon the shore, beside the river, there were added brigantines, most of them of *the Volga*; and at this very time were four hundred very good *brigantines* upon the *(a) Nieper*, *the Nieper*, in the parts adjacent to the *Volga*, and three hundred *brigantines*, upon the *(c) Volga*; and may be added eighteen men of war vessels, and a yacht at *the Caspian*. His *Casarian Majesty* has, besides other ships, the largest of sixty-six guns, four from *the Caspian*, five of thirty-six, four of twenty-four, and others smaller; and eight.

his Czarian Majesty took of falling on the ice, in a made level, and fit for the the thirteen that night, a- bords were fired off from and several others from a galley, with twenty oars, returned, the vice-admiral informed that the *Czar* had sent a messenger. Accordingly, I on board the ship he was, and saw several after the Dutch manner. a profusion of him; and was informed, the day, being the fourteenth as to go with a numerous le (é) Don, or Tanis, which twelve vessels from *Venezia*, in a *fortune* of the shipping at We set out about four place. Most of in the afternoon. the went on horseback; and y wagoons or coaches; and got at some small distance n, the *Czar* stooped at a little after that, we went a little on

1703

on one side to take a view of a mill, that was of an octagon form, and of a very extraordinary construction, by a Circassian architect. Within this mill, there are four others which work all together, without either sails, or any other contrivance for the wind to assist it from without; but there are seven sails within, like those of a ship, and shut up without by large windows or doors. When there is a brisk gale of wind, two or three of those same windows are immediately thrown open, on that side which is next to it; so that rushing upon the sails, it sets the machine a going with great rapidity. The reader will find a representation of this machine in Plate XVII, hereto annexed.

The Czar came up with us in a calash, and desired us to mend our pace; but that was more than all of us were capable of doing; we reached, however, our journey's end before the night came upon us. At our arrival, there was a general discharge of the guns from all the ships in the river; and we went on board several of them, where they obliged us to drink bumpers. At night, we were agreeably entertained at the house of Ivan Alexewitz Moesin Poeskin. When supper was over, a great part of our company retired to the ships for lodging; for there were none to be procured on any consideration whatever on shore; for they had not at that time began to build upon the place; tho' there had been a rumour that a town would be built there. The day following we went to see the operations that were going forward in order to stop the current of the Don, and to turn it into another channel. For that purpose there was a sluice contrived on that side whereon they proposed the water should have its course. This river, which is likewise known by the name of the Tanais, and by the inhabitants in the parts adjacent, called Donetz, is one of the most noted rivers in all Russia. It crosses the Precopian, or Little Tartary, to the eastward; and after it has winded about a long way, it takes a prodigious sweep towards the Volga; and when it has been swelled by the influx of several

Arrival at the Don, or Tanais.

The course of the Don.

1703

smaller rivers, discharges its waters by Afoph, formerly called Tanais, into the Lake (*f*) Mæotis, or Sea of Zabakey, or Zabac-Sea, where it divides Europe from Asia. Here, to our great surprize, we met with several elephants teeth scattered up and down upon the ground; one of which I am still in possession of, but cannot rightly conceive by what means they should lay there. The Czar, indeed, assured us, that Alexander the Great, having traversed that river, if he could credit the historians whom he had consulted on that occasion, came as far as the little town called Kastrinke, which lies but about eight wersts from that very spot; and that, in his opinion, it was highly probable, that several of his elephants died there, and that these teeth might possibly be all that were left behind.

Elephant's teeth.

Return to
the ship.

After this we returned to the ships, where we met with a very courteous reception. There were eleven men of war at anchor here, besides victuallers. One of these ships in particular was built under the immediate direction of the Czar himself, which made a much finer appearance than any of the rest, in regard to its extraordinary decorations. The captain's cabin was lined with walnut-tree. There was another, 'tis true, which lay along side of her, that had its peculiar beauties, which was built by a native of (g) England. As to the rest, they had no ornaments to boast of. At noon we were entertained with a profusion of fine fish, and at night, when we returned to the ships, we drank bumper after bumper to the cheerful roar of the cannon.

An unlap-
py accident

In the height of our carousals, a Russian sailor was so fool-hardy as to clap his hand to the mouth of a gun, by which mad frolic he was thrown down headlong, and by the violence of the fall broke some of his ribs. They used their utmost endeavours to conceal this unfortunate accident from the Czar; but by some means or other, it came to his ears, and he went directly, with abundance of concern, to see the poor wretch, whom he found upon the point of expiration.

About

23

1703

The author
takes his
leave of the
Czar.

About eight in the evening we broke up, and by ten got to Veronis; notwithstanding it rained extremely hard. On the sixteenth, having first obtained his Majesty's leave for that purpose, I made preparation for my return to (*b*) Moscow with my three friends; but the rains having made the roads excessively bad, we were obliged not only to hire eight waggons, but to secure the wheels with large plates of iron. On the seventeenth in the morning, we took our leave of his Majesty, who first gave us his hand to kiss, and then embraced us, wishing us at the same time a good journey, and desiring us to take a survey of some mortars that lay in our way on the river-side, not above two wersts from the town; which accordingly we did without making any considerable stop. They were planted against a hill, near a barn, in which they had been cast. About noon, I had orders from the Czar to turn back, and attend him once more, who was then taking his diversion on the ice; and had been overset in his vessel; but it was soon put in order again, without any ill consequence attending that mischance. About half an hour afterwards, he desired me to accompany him alone. Upon that, he got into a sledge with two horses, which he hired for that purpose. Soon after, one of our horses sank into a hole; but as the other luckily kept firm on the ice, that misfortune was likewise soon rectified. As I was sitting by him; "Come, said he, we will go to the Shalloop; I have a great inclination, "as you were not present when the "bombs there were last fired off, that "you should see one of them discharged." On our arrival, we examined the vessel, and the wooden bed wherein the mortar was fixed, and which might be turned, we found, with ease to any direction. When the bombardier was ready, the proper signal was given for all the spectators on the plain to stand out of harm's way. We then got out of the thalloop, and fire was according set to the fusee, but the bomb bursted in her flight. As this was a disappointment in some measure, his Majesty very obligingly asked me,

1703

whether I would see another or two more discharged, but I told him I thought it was needless, as my curiosity was sufficiently satisfied. I then waited on him to one Mr. Sleis, and from thence to his own habitation, which was not far off, and there I had the honour once more to take leave of him. He embraced me at my departure, and made use of his usual expression to his friends, namely, "God preserve you."

About three in the afternoon, I returned to my lodgings, and after a hasty meal, set out for Moscow. Before I went, however, I paid my compliments to the vice-admiral, thanked him for all favours received, and parted from him with pleasure, as I found he was greatly recovered from his late indisposition. He was a very worthy gentleman, highly esteemed by all the nobility, and by nobody more than the Czar himself.

Departure
for Moscow

We set out in the evening; and notwithstanding there was some snow-fell in the night, it rained the next day. On the eighteenth in the morning we got fifty-eight wersts from Veronis, as we had three horses to each waggon, which carried us back the same road we came.

Manners of
the Cir-
cassians.

We observed, that the Kabacks, or houses belonging to the Czar, for the accommodation of travellers, were for the generality inhabited by the Circassians, who are extremely neat and cleanly, not only in their houses, but their persons. They are most of them very free and good-humoured, gay and lively, and divert themselves almost every day with some instrumental music or another. We met with some of these musicians at every Kaback, as we passed along, till we came to that of Prince Alexander. They never fail of giving you a tune at your first entrance; and the common liquors which they sell there are mead and brandy. They have women likewise amongst them, that are very obliging to strangers. They are very remarkable, in regard to their drefs, which is widely different from the Russians; especially that of their females. Their ordinary drefs is a shift with a girdle, which they plait

all

1703

all round with a piece of stuff, that, like a petticoat to their feet. On their hands, a white linen cloth worn as a part of their drefs, and of this cloth is turned gently round on one in such a manner as to cover the other; if it does not do at least, if it does not do their heads likewise to their shoulders, which of plaited linen, which head, and is that behind the same manner as the first time amongst the Circassians are gathered about two fingers in breadth, and is firmly ad, when the reader, however, w clear idea of their hab eye on the Plate annexed in miniature from one of the girls amongst them, as we found behind her was a mark of dough, for bread, dref, sitting after their top of the oven. It was the afternoon when we here, and it then mixed quantity of snow. In towards, however, the to blow, and it soon had travelled fifteen a little fire, which over, but was too deep for us to pass. In our passage, we saw on our heads to an ancient village, whether there was not for our coming over; word that it was impossible, he venture to second time. When back to the village, and gave him orders to come in the morning. In was one of our servants got drunk the day before had thrown into a pond, that could we hear a In this dilemma, on

would see another or two
 aged, but I told him I thought
 myself as my curiosity was sat-
 isfied. I then waited on him
 at St. Isaac's, and from thence to his
 mansion, which was not far off,
 I had the honour once more
 to see of him. He embraced me
 warmly, and made use of his
 attention to his friends, namely,
 "I love you."

Once in the afternoon, I re-
 turned to my lodgings, and after a hasty
 supper, I paid my compliments
 to the Admiral, thanked him for all
 he had done, and parted from him
 as I found he was greatly
 in his late indisposition. He
 was a worthy gentleman, highly
 respected by all the nobility, and by no
 means less than the Czar himself.

Out in the evening; and not-
 withstanding there was some snow fall
 it rained the next day. On
 the 11th in the morning we got
 into the boats from Veron, as we
 were to each waggon, which
 we took back the same road we

went, that the Kabacks, or
 going to the Czar, for the ac-
 tion of travellers, were for the
 most part inhabited by the Circassians,
 who were extremely neat and cleanly, not
 at all like the Russians.
 The houses, but their persons
 most of them very free and
 cheerful, gay and lively, and dis-
 tinguished almost every day with
 musical instruments. We
 heard of these musicians at every
 place we passed along, till we
 got to the Prince Alexander. They
 were of giving you a tune at your
 request; and the common liquors
 were wine, brandy, and brandy.
 The women likewise amongst
 us were very obliging to strangers.
 They were very remarkable, in regard to
 which is widely different
 from the Russians; especially that of
 their ordinary dress is
 a girdle, which they plait

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

all round with a piece of party-coloured
 stuff, that, like a petticoat, hangs down
 to their feet. On their heads, they wear
 a white linnen cloth wound round; and
 one part of their chins is covered. One
 end of this cloth is turned up in a pretty
 genteel manner on one side of their heads;
 but the other is for the most part loose
 at least, if it does not hang down. On
 their foreheads likewise they wear a piece
 of plaited linnen, which goes over the
 head, and is flat behind, much after the
 same manner as the Arabian women, and
 those amongst the eastern Jews. Their
 shifts are gathered about the neck at least
 two fingers in breadth, as the Dutch la-
 dies formerly did, when they wore ruffs.
 The reader, however, will have a much
 clearer idea of their habit, by casting his
 eye on the Plate annexed, which I drew
 in miniature from one of the most agree-
 able girls amongst them, and in the same
 attitude as we found her in her stove.
 Behind her was a maid-servant kneading
 of dough, for bread, and several chil-
 dren, sitting after their manner on the
 top of the oven. It was about three in
 the afternoon when we went away from
 hence, and it then mizzled, with a small
 quantity of snow. In about an hour af-
 terwards, however, the north-wind began
 to blow, and it froze hard. After we
 had travelled fifteen wersts, we came to
 a little river, which was partly frozen
 over, but was too deep to ford: we made
 several attempts for two hours together,
 but all to no purpose. Upon this ob-
 struction in our passage, we sent two of
 our servants over on horse-back, and a third
 to an adjacent village, in order to enquire
 whether there was not some proper place
 for our crossing over; but he brought us
 word that it was impracticable; neither
 durst he venture to cross the river a se-
 cond time. Whereupon, we sent him
 back to the village from whence he came,
 and gave him orders to wait there till we
 came in the morning. In the meantime there
 was one of our servants missing, who had
 got drunk the day before, and whom we
 had thrown into a peasant's sledge; nei-
 ther could we hear any tidings of him.
 In this dilemma, our people being in

97

1703

Violent
 cold weather.

great danger of being frozen, we crowded
 our waggons as close together as possible
 to shelter them; whilst we were consult-
 ing what measures we should pursue. It
 was nine o'clock at night, and still we were
 perfectly at a loss; till at last, upon ma-
 jor deliberation, we determined, as there
 were no houses in that part of the coun-
 try, to turn back again to a little village
 that lay out of the high road, where we
 arrived about eleven, and got some re-
 freshment for our horses, as well as our-
 selves. Our drunken valet, who had
 been missing, reached us that night; and
 informed us, that his driver had taken
 his horses out of the sledge, whilst he
 was asleep, and conveyed them away
 without his knowledge; and that he was
 obliged to look out for some new vehicle,
 which he had sought to no purpose, had
 it not been for earnest persuasions, and the
 additional temptation of a sum of money,
 of which he happened fortunately to be
 then possessed, sufficient to answer that
 wished for end; and, in a word, that it
 was with the utmost difficulty that he
 had overtaken us. The very next day, I
 perceived, that thro' the negligence of our
 drivers, the axle-tree of the waggon I
 was in, was either actually broken, or
 at least in great danger of being so; and
 that being the true state of the case,
 and the frost proving very severe, with
 a deep fall of snow, I came to a resolu-
 tion to fix it on the bottom of a sledge,
 and to take the wheels along with me, in
 case the weather should happen to change.
 Besides this, one of our drivers took an
 opportunity to abscond, as 'tis frequent in
 this country for them to do, but had left
 us his horses, indeed, in hopes some of
 his comrades would bring them back
 with their own; inasmuch that we
 were reduced to the necessity of hiring a
 new guide. We took three, with sledges
 and horses, and furnished our selves with
 a sufficient quantity of plank and timber
 to assist us, when we were obliged in our
 passage to cross a river. Tho' the sun
 shone out bright enough, 'tis true, yet it
 was extremely cold, and about ten o'clock,
 we reached the place, where we had at-
 tempted to ford the river the evening be-
 fore,

Cc

1703 fore, but in vain. The river, however, was in that short compass of time so frozen, that several of our horses crossed it upon the ice; tho' one or two of them failed in the attempt. The horses were taken out, that the waggons might cross with the greater safety; and where the river was the deepest, we made use of planks and other pieces of timber; but notwithstanding all our precautions, some of our people slipped into a hole, and were well washed. There being help sufficient, however, at hand, they were soon taken up again. About one in the afternoon, we began to proceed on our journey; and in an hour's time, or thereabouts, we came to a place, where we found fresh horses ready for our service. All this time, we had travelled but twenty-eight wersts, and had two more still to go before we could reach a small town called Romanof, where we crossed the river of Belle Kollodis, that is to say, the White Pit, by a bridge, which was covered over with ice, about a foot and a half thick; where we dined, and were amused with Circassian music, during the whole time of our refreshment. We tarried there, tho' with no small reluctance, till eleven that night; for we were not able to prevail on the governor of the place to furnish us with horses till then. Here the wheels were taken off from our waggons, and laid on sledges, as I had done mine before; and in the dead of the night we went through a large village called Stooduncke; and on the twentieth instant, about break of day, we reached the pillar of one hundred and thirty-six wersts, where we tarried no longer than was requisite for the change of our horses. When we had proceeded two wersts farther, we passed the town of Dobri, which stands about a werst from the high-road, on the river Veronis. When we had travelled one hundred and fifty-one wersts, we came to a large village; at the end of one hundred and fifty-four to another, where we went up a hill, which was so steep, that on the left-hand of it, there were rails put up from the top to the bottom, in order to prevent passengers from falling. After that, we

passed thro' three other villages, and upon the pillar of the last of them, we saw an hundred and fifty-seven wersts. Soon after this, perceiving the main road so full of ice, that it was almost impracticable to keep it, we turned off somewhat to the right, in hopes of finding out a better way, and succeeded in the attempt so far, that we all got through, except one wagon, which was loaded with a greater weight than ordinary, and sunk down into the ice; but 'twas got out again, tho' with some difficulty, and no ill consequence ensued. In a word, after we had moved thro' several other villages, we arrived at Prince Alexander's house, which was an hundred and ninety wersts from Veronis. We did not tarry there, however, but made the best of our way to a village at some small distance from it; and there we dined. Tho' it was but six in the evening when we alighted, yet it was ten or better before we got our horses ready. On the twenty-first, about four o'clock, we were two hundred and eighteen wersts forward on our way, and soon after two hundred and thirty-eight, and then two hundred and fifty-seven, from whence, on the right-hand, we saw the town called Schoppin, which seemed considerably large, and some other villages, that lay between that and us: And as our post-wodens reached no farther, we went thither, and crossed over a bridge, which was a werst at least in length, and after that, over a spacious moor. However, this town, in reality, is not so considerable as it appears to be; neither has its castle, where the governor resides, and which is situate at the end of the principal street, any thing worthy of the least attention either without or within. Accommodations, indeed, were immediately appointed for us, and the burgo-masters, in the name, and on the part and behalf of the governor, waited on us, with a variety of liquors, such as brandy, mead, beer, &c. with bread, by way of refreshment. Here we made a demand of thirty horses instead of twenty-four, the better to carry our wheels with us; and this indulgence being granted us, we set out from hence about an hour be-

Schoppin.

1703 fore six-let, and ten wersts that night, then we reached the pillar of seven wersts, and came to the distance of Mr. Le Fe's house, about nine in the instant, about nine in the gentleman had sent his servants, to entertain his servants, to entertain them they possibly could to furnish us with horses, thing else that we could come. It was here, where the wheels behind not be so greatly increased, as the four horses, and as the four greatly needed the road we could make greater fewer horses. After about an hour only on horses, and proceeded to the length of twenty-nine wersts, at afternoon, we came and forty-seven wersts, called Poduncke, where silver in a very plentiful snow fell down deep, and frost continued; several houses once more changed horses once more several villages in the town called Stooduncke, tho' no considerable through it with abundance and the reason was, because of country people with their sledges, with a great variety of things, having reached as tired and twenty wersts on our journey with (1) Grodno, where we nine o'clock, but did not even or eight wersts from the river (2) Oca, where time in crossing had a very high and steep where there was but on the left-hand side of our passage, we met several sledges, by which under an indispensable.

three other villages, and upon
of the last of them, we saw an
of fifty-seven wersts. Soon
perceiving the main road to
that it was almost impracti-
cable, we turned off somewhat
to the right, in hopes of finding out a
and succeeded in the attempt
it we all got through, except
a, which was loaded with a
lighter than ordinary, and sunk
the ice; but 'twas got out
with some difficulty, and no
inconvenience ensued. In a word, after
we had thro' several other villages,
to Prince Alexander's house,
a hundred and ninety wersts
thence. We did not tarry there,
we made the best of our way
at some small distance from
where we dined. Tho' it was
a fine evening when we alighted,
we were as well as ever before we got our
; On the twenty-first, about
we were two hundred and
thirty forward on our way, and
a hundred and thirty-eight,
a hundred and fifty-seven,
; on the right-hand, we
in called Schoppin, which
is considerably large, and some other
lay between that and us;
post-roads reached no far-
ther thither, and crossed over
which was a werst at least in
after that, over a spacious
river, this town, in reality,
is considerable as it appears to be;
is a castle, where the governor
which is situated at the end
principal street, any thing worthy
attention either without or
accommodations, indeed, were
appointed for us, and the
governor, in the name, and on the
half of the governor, waited
a variety of liquors, such as
beer, &c. with bread, by way
of refreshment. Here we made a de-
parture. We had instead of twenty-
four horses instead of twenty-
four, and we were granted us,
indulgence being granted us,
hence about an hour be-
fore

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

fore sun-set, and travelled near forty
wersts that night, then, on changing our
horses we reached three hundred and
eleven wersts, and came within a small
distance of Mr. Le Fort's house, where
we arrived safe on the twenty-second in-
stant, about nine in the morning. This
gentleman had sent full instructions to
his servants, to entertain us in the best
manner they possibly could, and not only
to furnish us with horses, but with every
thing else that we could reasonably re-
quire. It was here, that we left our
waggon-wheels behind us, that we might
not be so greatly encumbered as we had
been; and as the frost and snow had
greatly mended the roads, from hence
we could make greater expedition with
fewer horses. After having stopt here
for about an hour only, we took fresh
horses, and proceeded on our journey
to the length of three hundred and
twenty-nine wersts, and by three in the
afternoon, we came to three hundred
and forty-seven wersts, and to the village
called Podasfincke, where we regaled our
selves in a very plentiful manner. The
snow fell down deep, and the bleak wind
and frost continued; and after we had
changed horses once more, we went thro'
several villages in the night; and through
the town called Nikole Saraiske, which,
tho' no inconsiderable place, we got
through it with abundance of difficulty;
and the reason was, because a great num-
ber of country-people had crowded it
with their sledges, which were laden
with a great variety of wares for Moscow.
On the twenty-third instant, in the morn-
ing, having reached as far as four hun-
dred and twenty wersts, we proceeded
on our journey with fresh horses to
(i) Grodno, where we arrived at about
nine o'clock, but did not tarry; and about
seven or eight wersts farther, we came to
the river (k) Occa, which took us up
some time in crossing. At that time we
had a very high and steep hill to get over,
where there was but one narrow gut, on
the left-hand side of the river; and in
our passage, we met unfortunately with
several sledges, by which means we were
under an indispensable obligation to make

Nikole Sa-
raiske.

a considerable halt in order to let them
pass by us; which could not possibly be
effected in any other place but on the
very brow of the hill; for the way was
too narrow for us both; and the way
they took was so very bad, so very steep,
and so full of large stones, that not only
the horses, but the sledges likewise were
in great danger; as most of the horses
went forwards without any drivers to
direct them. This, however, was not
all the misfortune that attended us at this
juncture; for words arising between those
sledge-men and our servants, they came
to blows; because one had not given
timely notice to the other, to prevent
this Stop. As several of these vulgar
fellows happened to be in liquor, they
exasperated those who had got down to
the foot of the hill, and made them
come up after us. There were twenty
of them, I am apt to believe in the
whole. As for my part, I was laid at
my length in my sledge, during this con-
test; and when I understood the occa-
sion of the disturbance, I leaped out di-
rectly with my sword and pistol in hand,
and the Sieurs Kinfius and Hill followed
me, one with his naked sword, and the
other with his pistols. Thus armed we
went down to Mr. Steel's sledge, who
was behind us and most exposed to the
insults of these madmen. He had but
just alighted, and had no arms to defend
himself, and the Russian boors were me-
nacing him very hard: he, however,
like a very discreet man, had presence of
mind sufficient, to order his servants to
get out of the way, and began to soothe
them by the softest expressions that he
could devise, judging, and that very
justly, that a more rash procedure would
prove of fatal consequence, reflecting,
wisely, that there were a great number
of Russians below, who would have in-
fallibly attacked us, had we ventured
upon an open engagement. And those per-
sons with whom we were thus parlying,
plainly perceiving that we came up to
them without any intention of creating a
quarrel, kept back those that were drunk
and obstinate, and hearkened to reason.
Those who were the most turbulent
being

Great dan-
ger.

THE TRAVELS OF

1703

being gone off, we proceeded on our journey on each side; tho' for my own part, I must confess, I was determined not to enter my sledge again; 'till we had reached the brow of the hill; notwithstanding it was so slippery, that I could scarce keep my footing, and the wind was so bleak, that I could scarce feel that I had any fingers. In the midst of this distress, I observed a sledge with one horse only, and without a driver, notwithstanding it was loaded more heavily than usual: the poor horse, thus embarrassed, incapable of turning a corner so advantageously as he should have done, on account of the high wind and the ice; incapable, in short, of keeping the beaten track, and coming unhappily too near the precipice, fell perpendicularly down upon the bank of the river, which was a sight most shocking to behold. The sledge broke into a thousand pieces, and in all probability, the horse broke all his ribs; tho' I saw him, indeed, lift up his head after this occurrence. At last, having reached the summit of the hill, tho' with no small difficulty, we proceeded on our journey, and about one in the afternoon arrived at the city of (*l*) Kholmna, which is four hundred and fifty-six wersts: when we were in the suburbs, we waited for an answer to a letter from the Czar, which we sent in, and no sooner had the Diack, or Secretary, of the city received it, but he came directly to us, offered us his service, and even desired that we would go into the city, and refresh our selves, but we made our proper excuses; and as he had sent us not only mead, brandy, beer, and some other provisions, we returned them all back with thanks, as we were plentifully supplied before with all manner of requisites for our journey. We converted with him for about two hours, and drank a few bumpers briskly about, and at four set forwards with fresh horses, and travelled twenty-five wersts before nine, when we arrived at a village called Kofachof, where we baited for near three hours, for our horses sake, who were to carry us from thence to Moscow, the end of our journey. On the twenty-

A remarkably frightful fall of a horse.

fourth instant by eight in the morning, we had reached forty-six wersts farther, and came within a small distance of the village called Ostrawceets. Here we rested, and fed our horses; and in about two hours time set out again, and about noon arrived safe at the Slabode of the Germans in Moscow, which was about twenty-five wersts from the place we left last.

On the twenty-seventh instant, the school-master and reader of the Lutheran church, named John Frederic Maes of (*m*) Koningberg, was murdered by one Krafso, a German ensign, without the least provocation. He was taken, however, and confessed the fact.

The author indisposed, March 5.

After so fatiguing a journey, I proposed to indulge myself the next day; but on the fifth of March, about evening, I found myself very greatly indisposed, hot and feverish, and going thereupon directly to bed, I had a very tiresome night of it. However, I arose the next morning by break of day; but found myself so weak, that I could scarcely stand upon my legs; and besides was troubled with a very bad cough for some considerable time afterwards. The heat within me was so inexpressibly intense, that had I drank an hundred times a day, it would not have quenched my thirst. Sometimes I drank milk, and sometimes beer: but at other times, I drank water, boiled with tamarinds and sugar, which was my favourite liquor, and what relieved me most when I found myself indisposed in (*n*) Egypt; but in order to strengthen my stomach, I drank likewise every now and then a glass of Rhenish wine, and some other liquors, that were proper for that purpose. In this manner did I pass five days and five nights successively without one wink of sleep; and in the night particularly, I was frequently delirious. Upon this, my friends, perceiving that I grew every day weaker and weaker, advised me to send for a proper physician; but I told them, that on such occasions I always trusted to my own judgment; that I knew the nature of my own constitution better than the ablest physician in the country; and

The author his own physician.

1703

consequently, what was than they could possibly I very well knew the real disposition, I was well able to resist any of their dictates; and besides, I for some considerable time upon me. On the sixth next following, I slept and found myself greatly refreshed thereby: in a uninterrupted regimen of exercise, I began to breathe, and now and then of meat, I felt a great relief thereby in respect, with which I had been very severely affected.

On the eleventh instant, returned with all his rooms, and on the thirteenth, that Colonel Bode have taken notice he beheld in his presence, seated in the German post, whereon the two mentioned had been hurt.

At the same time, I

hanged. After both

were over, his German

in order that no

should presume to a

any provocation what

death.

On Sunday the fourteenth

himself being, the Envoy

had retired for some co

Moscow in incog, he

dence of his German M

of Count Feodor Al

lowins.

The same day his

went, but with a ve

my Mr. Brants a wife,

emerged with a c

meat, and some other

this occasion, I came c

ment, in order to ha

taking my leave of hi

regretting his indige

for my departure on

1703

by eight in the morning, and moved forty-six werfts farther, in a small distance of the Straws. Here we rested, boiled, and in about two hours got out again, and about noon at the Shode of the Ger-cow, which was about werfts from the place we left.

Twenty-seventh infant, the
and reader of the Lutheran

John Frederic Maes of
Lemberg, was murdered by one
German ensign, without the
consent of his company.
He was taken, how-
ever, and the fact

ing a journey, I pro-
ge my self the next day;

lith of March, about even-
d my felt very greatly in-
et and feverish, and going
irectly to bed, I had a very
t of it. However, I arose
ning by break of day; but
f so weak, that I could
upon my legs; and besides
with a very bad cough for
able time afterwards. The

ronis, and on the thirteenth he gave orders, that Colonel Boden (of whom we have taken notice before) should be beheaded in his presence. He was executed in the German Slabode, near the post, whereon the sword and ax before-mentioned had been hung up.

Krafto
hanged.

At the same time, enſign Craffo was hanged. After both theſe executions were over, his Czarian Maſteſty iſſued out an order that no perſon whomſoever ſhould preſume to draw his ſword on any provocation whatſoever on pain of death.

March 14.

**The Envoy
of France
admitted to
an audience
with the
Czar.**

On Sunday the fourteenth, Monsieur Caffir Bolus, the Envoy of France, who had resided for some considerable time at Moscow in incog. had a private audience of his Czarian Majesty at the feat of Count Feodor Alexewitz de Gollowins.

The Czar
honours
Mr. Brant
with a visit

The same day his Czarian Majesty went, but with a very small retinue, to pay Mr. Brants a visit; by whom he was entertained with a collation of cold-meats, and some other refreshments. On this occasion, I came out of my apartment, in order to have the honour of taking my leave of his Majesty, and of requesting his indulgence of a pass-port for my departure out of his dominions.

physician; but I told them, I always trusted to my own constitution better than any physician in the country; and

weaker, advised me to seek
physician; but I told them,
occasions I always trusted to
judgment; that I knew the di-
own constitution better than
physician in the country; and

Two other
criminals
to be ex-
cuted.

On that very day, the two other criminals, Captain Sax, and Colonel Boden's valet, were to be executed, where the head and body of the Colonel still lay unremoved upon the ground, as Krafio hung upon the gibbet, which was surrounded by a guard of soldiers. Tho' both of them were brought to the block, and the executioner ready at hand with his ax, in order to give the fatal blow; yet fortunately for them a reprieve came at once, and the former was sent to (*p*) Siberia, and ordered to reside there in perpetual banishment; and the latter was sentenced to receive thirty blows with the Knoet; and afterwards to be a galley-slave for life; but I heard soon after, that the rigorous execution of his first punishment relieved him from the terror of the last.

Our resident having demanded a passport for me (as I observed before) by order from the Czar, Count Golowin, whose business it was to sign it, gave

Dd

1703

March 21.

orders for its being immediately dispatched.

On the twenty-first, the grand festival of Palm-Sunday was celebrated with great solemnity; that likewise of the Annunciation of the Blessed Virgin Mary, for which the Russians have a peculiar regard, on the twenty-fifth; and the high feast of Easter on the twenty-eighth. Nothing extraordinary occurred at that time besides, except a fire, which broke

1703

April 1.

out at Moscow on the thirtieth, and that the river Mosca thawed, and was open on the first of April. This thorough thaw made the roads extremely bad; and on the third, the waters arose to a greater height than had been known in the memory of man. Tho' at this time I happened to be seized with a tertian ague; yet it happily went off after three or four shaking fits.

April 3.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Nieper, or Boristhenes, see p. 68; n. *ec.*

(b) Crim Tartary, see p. 68, n. *dl.*

(c) Volga, or Wolga, see p. 28, n. *f.*

(d) Aloph, see p. 51, n. *b.*

(e) Don, or Tanais, see p. 62, n. *l.*

(f) Meotis Palus, is a sea of Turkey, which divides Europe from Asia, extending from Crim Tartary to the mouth of the river Don, or Tanais, being about two hundred miles long, and an hundred miles broad; to which there is no other passage than through the Straits of Kaffa, from the Black Sea; of both which seas the Turks have the sole navigation, since the demolition of the fortifications of Aloph, at the Mouth of the river Don.

(g) England, see p. 910, n. *f.*

(h) Moscow, see p. 23, n. *c.*

(i) Grodno, east-longitude 24. latitude

53. 40. a great city of Poland, in the province of Lithuania; and Palatinate of Troki, situate on the river Niemen, or Berzen's, eighty miles south-west of Wilna.

(k) Occa, or Ocka, see p. 61, n. *d.*

(l) Kolomna, see p. 61, n. *c.*

(m) Koningzburg, see p. 23, n. *b.*

(n) Egypt, see p. 33, n. *a.*

(o) Sleutelenburg, or Sluttelburg, east-longitude 31. 20, latitude 60. a town of Russia, in the province of Ingria, situate on the south side of the Lake Ladoga, thirty miles east of Peterburg, and wards of Smolensk, beyond

(p) Siberia, see p. 17, n. *b.*

(q) Moskva, see p. 4, n. *e.*

CH A P.

As soon as I found
had let me, as
feels, arrived, I
(A) Moscow, in order
to join Alexewitz, who
was his German Majesty
to give orders, while
flew me all the way
then were to be seen,
churches there, but in
their spacious city,
whose name I have
then better with the
and others, received
cousness manner, and
he was ready, at any
rejoiced to, to obey his
mand. Whereupon I
I should be glad to be
as a consequence
Excellency was found
to let out for 1/2 p.
time. Whereupon he
went to him on the
as I stayed in the room,
I went, and found him
here, in order to go
However, he told me,
dinner, that the gen-
tlemen with him, would
care to show me what
my situation.
In the first place,
the church of St. Peter,
which, preceded to
the church of St. John,
which was when led
by wind, and the
others call has. The

w on the thirtieth, and that
 (a) daved, and was open
 of April. This thorough
 roads extremely bad; and
 the waters rose to a greater
 had been known in the me-
 Tho' at this time I hap-
 seized with a violent ague;
 went on after three or four

1703

1703

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

103

1703

C H A P. XIV.

The Author is shewn all the most valuable Curiosities that are to be met with in their several Churches. A remarkable Cloth, not to be consumed by Fire itself, made of the Asbestos, a Sort of Stone, peculiar to the Island of Cyprus.

Chapter.

east longitude 24. latitude
 city of Poland, in the pro-
 vance, and Palatinate of Trevis,
 river Niemen, or Bezzena,
 north-west of Wilna.

or Odesa, see p. 61. n. d.

see p. 61, n. c.

burg, see p. 23, n. d.

see p. 33, n. d.

burg, or Stettinburg, east lon-
 latitude 60. a town of Russia,
 of the Volga, situate on the south
 of Lake Ladoga, thirty miles east of

see p. 171, n. d.

see p. 41, n. d.

CHAP.

AS soon as I found that my ague had left me, and that I was perfectly recovered, I set out directly for (a) Moscow, in order to pay my respects to Ivan Alexewitz Moesin Poeskin, to whom his Czarian Majesty had been pleased to give orders, whilst at (b) Veronis, to shew me all the most remarkable things, that were to be seen, not only in the churches there, but in all other parts of that spacious city. This nobleman, whose name I have had occasion to mention before with the highest veneration and esteem, received me in the most courteous manner, and assured me, that he was ready, at any time, whenever I required it, to obey his Majesty's commands. Whereupon I made answer, that I should be glad to be favoured as soon as conveniently might be; because his Excellency was sensible, that I proposed to set out for (c) Persia in a very short time. Whereupon he appointed me to wait on him on the tenth instant, as early as I pleased in the morning. Accordingly, I went, and found him just mounting his horse, in order to go into the country. However, he told me, in a very obliging manner, that the gentleman, who was then with him, would take particular care to shew me whatever was worthy of my attention.

In the first place, then, we went to the church of Saboor, where is shewn a picture, pretended to be drawn by the Evangelist St. Luke himself; as also, the identical vestment which our Blessed Saviour wore when led to the cross, and for which, after his crucifixion, the soldiers cast lots. This vestment, as they

2

told us, became the property of a soldier, who was a native of (d) Georgia; that he carried it with him into his own country, and made a present of it to a maiden sister of his, who, conceiving a more than ordinary veneration for it, requested on her death-bed, that it might be interred with her, and spread over her lifeless carcase; that her request being punctually complied with, a spacious tree instantaneously (as it were) shot out of her tomb; that the Persians soon afterwards, having made themselves masters of Georgia, and their King having heard several miraculous stories of this tomb, gave express orders to have it opened; that it was opened accordingly, and that he took the vestment away with him, and conveyed it into Persia; that not long afterwards, his Majesty having occasion to send an embassy into (e) Russia, he made a present of it to the Grand Duke, as he knew him to be a Christian; that the Moscovites being very zealous, and impatient to know whether this inestimable present was genuine or not, and the identical vestment, as pretended; got together a numerous crowd of such as were lame, blind, or otherwise very sorely afflicted, being firmly persuaded, if it was real fact, that the touch of it would inevitably cure them; that, upon making the experiment, the effects of it answered their warmest wishes; that it had been preserved ever since with the utmost care, and was set apart for that charitable purpose; and, in fine, that the application of it never so much as once miscarried.

As the miraculous virtues of this vestment,

A story relating to Christ's vestment, for which the soldiers cast lots.

1703

ment, in general, are as firmly believed as the Gospel itself, by all the Russians, I determined that it should be the first article of this narration.

The church
of Saboor.

The church of Saboor is square within, and the length of it is about ninety-six feet. The roof is supported by four large pillars, and the whole is embellished with the pictures of a great number of saints, and other figures of the like nature. Some of them, even those in the five little domes, are drawn after the Grecian mode, and may be justly said to be executed with some degree of taste; which said domes are in the form of lanterns, the largest whereof is in the middle, and the others at each corner.

That picture, which they insist was drawn by the hand of St. Luke himself, is placed on one side of the high altar, and is a half-length of the Blessed Virgin Mary, with the representation of Christ saluting her, their faces being close together: this picture is of a gloomy hue, if not absolutely black; but whether that accident is owing to the result of time, the smoke of their numerous tapers, or the real taste of the painter, is not easily to be determined: it is manifest, however, that it is no extraordinary performance; besides, it is all gilt, the faces and hands only excepted. The head of the Virgin is adorned with a crown of pearls and precious stones; and there is, moreover, a collar of pearls, which hangs down from her neck to her wrists. To say no more of it, it is planted in a particular niche, under which there is a stall. There is a large silver sconce, which was made at (*f*) Amsterdam (like those in our churches) with branches, hanging down between the two pillars of the high altar. However, there are three others besides these, composed of copper, or brass, which are commodiously enough disposed of in the body of the church. Notwithstanding there are but very few decorations in most of their churches, 'tis observable, in this, that there are no less than ten silver lamps around the altar abovementioned. These lamps, however, are never filled with oil; for the Russians make use of none, but instead

thereof have tapers, which are first put into nozzles, and then fixed upon the lamps. It is customary with them to hang an ostrich's egg at the bottom of their large sconces.

Our next visit was to the Patriarch's Church, which is small above, and erected in the form of a dome. Over-against the chapel, on the right-hand, there is an apartment, wherein our Blessed Saviour is delineated as sitting in a chair, in a picture which is all over gilt, the face and hands excepted; and the Virgin Mary; on the left-hand is represented St. John the Baptist; and on each hand one of the apostles in a kneeling posture, with a silver lamp. Between this picture and the chapel-door, there is a branch or seat, raised upon steps, which is covered with black velvet, and set apart for the reception of the Patriarch. At the entrance of this little church, there stands an altar, behind which there is a small choir, abounding with pictures from top to bottom; each representing the history of some saint or another; but there are columns, or pillars, which separate them from each other, in the nature of windows; and here likewise every thing is gilt; the other side of the walls, however, is painted blue. Once more, in the crown of the dome, there is the head of our Blessed Saviour, which almost fits it; and round about it, there is a great variety of other decorations. Over-against this church stands the Patriarch's Hall of audience, which is spacious enough; and as soon as you are entered, on the right-hand stands the patriarchal chair, which is all gilt; the seat is covered with a green velvet cushion; and there are gold fringes about the arms. This chair is raised upon steps; and over it, there is the representation of our Saviour in miniature, tolerably painted. At our departure from this hall, we were conducted into an apartment, called the patriarch's treasury, and full of chests and trunks, which were all opened to gratify my curiosity. In the first, there were six patriarchal caps, two of which in particular, were immensely rich, and separated from the others. These were

1703

embellished with large precious stones, other precious stones, were much like these, but were a less valuable. There was a less valuable, embellished with nothing but belonged in particular to The next curiosity which was a box full of jewels, green variety of costly with several diamond-crises, chains of gold. All the belonged to former patriarchs, made their appearance precious, and other extraordinary occasions; over, dress girdles, Jewels, embellished with we were shown likewise of large tortoise-shell co been made use of by tsar and several robes, V end of them. Behind trunks above-mentioned less than twenty-nine of patriarchal robes, all and embellished with precious stones. Amongst the nine several vestments more magnificent than and every one of the precious stones. In fact there were divers line which was worn by a slave (according to prison) in the year was of plain silk, and what damaged by length, there a peculiar venerable it amongst the vestments. In this there are to be seen several silver and other vessels of the

Having sufficiently inquiry for the present, to the other churches which happened to be first place, I made my Mocha Dockin, to could be favoured or of our Saviour's vest formed me, that it diligence not to be

pers, which are first put into
then fixed upon the lappets,
I with them to hang an
at the bottom of their large

visit was to the Patriarch's
which is small above, and e-
form of a dome. Over-
happel, on the right-hand,
apartment, wherein our Blessed
treated as sitting in a chair,
which is all over gilt, the
de executed; and the Virgin
the left-hand is represented
Baptist; and on each hand
cilies in a kneeling posture,
ump. Between this picture
del-door, there is a branch
upon steps, which is co-
back velvet, and set apart for
a of the Patriarch. At the
this little church, there stands
hind which there is a small
iding with pictures from top
each representing the history
t or another; but there are
pillars, which separate them
other, in the nature of win-
here likewise every thing is
ner side of the walls, how-
ed blue. Once more, in
at the dome, there is the head
fished Saviour, which almost fills
und about it, there is a great
other decorations. Over-
church stands the Patriarch's
ience, which is spacious e-
as soon as you are entered,
t-hand stands the patriarchal
h is all gilt; the seat is co-
a green velvet cushion; and
old fringes about the arms
is raised upon steps; and over
is the representation of our Sa-
miniature, tolerably painted. At
ture from this hall, we were
into an apartment, called the
treasury, and full of chests
which were all opened to
curiosity. In the first, there
patriarchal caps, two of which
were immensely rich, and
from the others. These were en-

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

embellished with large pearls, jewels, and other precious stones. The others were much like these, but not of equal value. There was a seventh cap, embellished with nothing but pearls, which belonged in particular to the Metropolitan. The next curiosity which was shewn us, was a box full of jewels; and amongst a great variety of costly trinkets, there were several diamond-crosses, which hung by chains of gold. All these trinkets had belonged to former patriarchs, who had made their appearance in them on public processions, and other solemn and extraordinary occasions. There were, moreover, divers girdles, which they call Pojasses, embellished with precious stones: we were shewn likewise a great number of large tortoise-shell combs, which had been made use of by former Patriarchs; and several crossiers, with jewels at the end of them. Besides the chests and trunks above-mentioned, there were no less than seventy-nine several presses, full of patriarchal robes, all of gold brocade, and embellished with pearls and precious stones. Amongst the rest, there were nine several vestments more beautiful and more magnificent than any of the others; and every one of them adorned with precious stones. In some of the presses, there were divers fine stoles, about a hand and an half broad; and one in particular, which was worn by the patriarch Constantine (according to the Russian computation) in the year 6176. Tho' this was of plain silk, and had been somewhat damaged by length of time; yet they shew a peculiar veneration for it, and preserve it amongst their most valuable vestments. In this treasury, moreover, are to be seen several silver gilt dishes, vases, and other vessels of the like nature.

Having sufficiently gratified my curiosity for the present, I deferred my visit to the other churches till the next day, which happened to be Sunday. In the first place, I made my application to Mr. Moesin Poeskin, to know whether I could be favoured or not, with a sight of our Saviour's vestment; but he informed me, that it was an act of indulgence not to be granted; since it was

105

1703

deposited in a particular place, secured under his Czarian Majesty's own signet, and not to be exposed to public view without an express order under his own hand: I must needs own, I was somewhat concerned, that I was not better informed in time of so important an article. In short, I went once more to the church of Saboor, to gratify my curiosity with surveying such things as I had omitted in my first visit. I was accordingly shewn a large chalice, or cup of gold, about two hands high, which their priests make use of in the administration of the Holy Sacrament. This chalice had four rich jewels on the cover; and the foot of it was enamelled with the representation of the various sufferings of our Blessed Saviour. The next thing they shewed me was a large golden dish, enamelled in the same manner as the chalice, and adorned likewise as that with four large jewels; two golden plates, a golden spoon with an agate handle; and a golden ladle for the wine in the cup; as also, a crown, all embellished with pearls and precious stones. Add to these, two other small chalices of agate, enriched likewise with precious stones. All which precious stones (as we were informed) were found at the bottom of that large cask, which St. Anthony, who was a native of Russia, procured to be dragged up by some certain fishermen, just at the time he was transported from (g) Rome to Nieugart, whilst he was sitting by, on a mill-stone, having made a punctual agreement with his hirelings before-hand, to be entitled to whatever should prove the product of their labours. After this, they shewed me a large book, which is generally carried in procession on some particular solemn festivals. This book is elegantly bound, and enriched with precious stones on the cover, and is filled within with a great variety of scripture-histories, finely painted, and wrote in characters of gold. All these curiosities are kept separate in cases of scarlet velvet. We were shewed, moreover, the body of Peter, the Archbishop, in silver, with a bas-relief of him above; a little slip of our Saviour's vestment before-mentioned, in a case, covered with glass: as also, the body of John, the Archbishop, in a coffin,

in

E e

1703

like that of Peter's; and that of Philip, in a third. After this, they shewed me the reliques of divers saints; one of the hands of John Satoletzeva; the skull, and the whole head of Gregory Bagalova, &c. &c.

Having thanked the priest for the trouble I had created him, I took my leave, and went to the church of St. Michael the Archangel, which is exceedingly fine within, and, like the former, abounds with pictures. In one particular spot of this church, lie all the Grand Dukes of Moscow, very magnificently entombed; the two last only excepted; namely, the brothers to his Czarian Majesty, who are deposited in another. Their monuments are raised high, and covered with rich habits of scarlet velvet, with green velvet bands; and thereon, their birth, age, and the exact time of their decease are inscribed in Russian characters; each tomb is embellished with large pearl crosses. Not one of them, however, is near so pompous and magnificent as the last of Ivan Alexewitz, which is adorned with a profusion of precious stones. From thence, I went to the church of the Annunciation, or that which they call Blagowiesne, which tho' but small, abounds also with pictures like the last. In a small apartment of this church I was shewed no less than thirty six silver boxes, filled with the reliques of some of their favourite saints, which, in order to oblige me, they had spread out upon a large table before I came. In the first, there was a small quantity of the precious blood of our Blessed Saviour; and in the others, several small crosses, composed out of the original; one of the hands of the Evangelist St. Mark; several bones of the Prophet Daniel; and divers other saints, in the manner of mummies; several heads, and a great variety of other reliques, all of a dark hue.

After having obliged me with the sight of the reliques above-mentioned, they offered their service to attend me to what other churches I thought proper; but my curiosity being sufficiently gratified, I excused my self in the handsomest manner I could, and returned my conductor many thanks for the trouble I had given

him, and the rest for their indulgence towards me, which was somewhat extraordinary, and I believe I may say, without example in that country.

On the fifteenth instant, I went with Mr. Poppe to pay a visit to the Knez Bories Alexewitz Galisten, at a neat country seat about five wersts from Moscow; and in our way we passed by the fine estate of the Knez Mighaile Serkaskie, which is the most valuable demesnes of all the Princes in his Czarian Majesty's Dominions. His power is so great, that besides his being Sovereign Lord of divers villages, he has above 20000 peasants who are his vassals and dependents. We met with the Knez, and I begged the favour of him to grant me a passport from the office of the Prikaes at *(b)* Casan, whereof he was viceroi, as well as of that at *(i)* Astracan, and the reason of my conduct in that particular was this; because Mr. Poppe had intimated to me some time before, that not only the governor of Casan, but that of Astracan likewise would pay no manner of regard to a passport procured from the Prikaes at Possolch, which, in all probability, would have proved very prejudicial, and have retarded at least, if not put an actual stop to my intended journey. The Knez Bories was not only so complaisant as to gratify my request, and dispatch one in my favour, without the least hesitation, but (out of respect to Mr. Poppe, who was one of his favourite friends) wrote a line or two, at the same time, in my behalf to the governors of Casan and Astracan above-mentioned, in order to prevent the least casual delay. We both returned him many thanks for this act of indulgence, and took our leave of him. This Nobleman, some months before, had been at Casan, in order to act as mediator between two exasperated Tartar Princes, father and son, which difference arose from the important incident herein-after-mentioned. The son, it seems, had in his retinue a lady, for whom the father had a passionate regard. The old gentleman, in order to gratify his amorous inclinations, by some successful stratagem, procured her to be stolen away, and sheltered

1703

sheltered either his passion or his interest. The son, enraged at this proceeding of the father, was war against him, in the field of battle at the same time. The father, with his petition, assembled no men on his; and both lately bent to enter on but the Knez happily arrested the critical conjuncture, and vented a prohibition of bloodshed a happy reconciliation.

The Tartar Prince a man of his family or person action, made it a piece of coarse cloth, extraordinary quality, that would or consume it making Mr. Poppe a present of it, he bestowed that He informed me, that fractured at a place called *(b)* China and Bogzeze continued to work it till formerly I brought it to *(i)* Cyprus some part called Abodes, which of being spun into the fine had any manner of in former times was but that art at present Pliny makes mention like nature; and some likewise, who have to man antiquities, and the the monuments of the destroyed to confirm assertion.

On the sixteenth in my friend Mr. Poppe

Urag

^(a) Moscow, see p. 2

^(b) Vienna, see the it in the preceding chapter

^(c) Persia, see p. 64

^(d) Georgia, in Asia

the rest for their indolence
 & which was somewhat ex-
 and I believe I may say,
 ample in that country.

fifteenth instant, I went with

to pay a visit to the Knez

exerwitz Galesen, at a neat

at about five wells from Mos-

in our way we passed by the

of the Knez Mighaile Bertakia,

the most valuable *terrefine* of

in his Cravian Majesty's

s. His power is so great, that

being Sovereign Lord of divers

he has above 20000 peasants

as vassals and dependents. We

the Knez, and I begged the

him to grant me a passport

ance of the Priksas at (b) Ca-

of he was viceroy, as well as

(i) Afracan, and the reason of

in that particular was this;

Mr. Poppe had intimated to me

to before, that not only the go-

Calan, but that of Afracan

ould pay no manner of regard

it procured from the Priksas at

which, in all probability, would

ad very prejudicial, and have

least, if not put an actual stop

ended journey. The Knez

as not only to complain as to

any request, and dispatch one in

of respect to Mr. Poppe, who

of his favourite friends) wrote a

at the same time, in my be-

governors of Calan and Afrac-

mentioned, in order to prevent

We both returned

usual delay.

thanks for this act of indul-

It took our leave of him. This

n, some months before, had

Calan, in order to act as me-

between two exasperated Tatar

father and son, which difference

in the important incident herein-

The son, it seems, had

in order to gratify his father

one a lady, for whom the father

affectionate regard. The old gen-

in order to gratify his amorous

as, by some successful intrigue,

her to be stolen away, and

sheltered

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

sheltered under his patronage and pro-
 tection. The son, enraged at the clan-
 destine proceedings of the father, declared
 open war against him, and appeared in
 the field of battle at the head of 20,000
 men. The father, with the utmost ex-
 pedition, assembled no less than 40,000
 men on his; and both parties were reso-
 lutely bent to enter on an engagement;
 but the Knez happily arrived just at that
 critical conjuncture, and not only pre-
 vented a profusion of blood-shed, but esta-
 blished a happy reconciliation between
 them.

The Tatar Prince, as an acknowledge-
 ment of his friendly office on this im-
 portant occasion, made him a present of
 a piece of coarse cloth, of such an ex-
 traordinary quality, that no fire will either
 tarnish or consume it; and the Knez
 making Mr. Poppe a present of some part
 of it, he bestowed that curiosity upon me.
 He informed me, that it was manu-
 factured at a place called Katay, between
 (k) China and Boggaer, and that they
 continued to work it there. I remember
 formerly I brought from the island of
 (l) Cyprus some part of the stone there,
 called Asbestos, which was then capable
 of being spun into thread, on which no
 fire had any manner of effect, and that
 in former times was fabricated into cloth;
 but that art at present is totally lost.
 Pliny makes mention of a cloth of the
 like nature; and some modern authors
 likewise, who have treated on the Ro-
 man antiquities, and the use of lamps in
 the monuments of the antients, have en-
 deavoured to confirm the truth of his
 assertion.

On the sixteenth instant, I dined with
 my friend Mr. Poppe; and in my return

to the Slabode, I observed, that there
 was a fire at some small distance from it;
 whither my curiosity led me to see what
 measures they took for the extinguishing
 of it; but they did nothing more (as I
 could perceive) than demolish the houses
 on both sides the flames for the prevention
 of its spreading.

As my passports were dispatched, I
 prepared for my departure, in company
 with an Armenian merchant, one Jacob
 Diedoff, who had travelled before from
 (m) Ipahan to (n) Holland, and had re-
 sided for some time at Amsterdam. We
 agreed to enter on our intended journey
 on the twenty-second, and to fall down
 the river as far as Afracan. What time
 I had to spare I employed in taking my
 farewell of my friends and acquaintance,
 and more particularly, of Mr. Vander
 Hulst, our resident, and the two Sieurs
 Brants and Lups, to whom I owed a
 thousand obligations. I was equally in-
 debted, indeed, to Mr. Coyet, who,
 being a perfect master of the Persian lan-
 guage, and well acquainted with all the
 customs of the country, gave me such
 important hints or memorandums, as
 proved of singular service to me in the
 prosecution of my journey. I set out
 from Moscow about noon, and not find-
 ing any vessel that would carry me on
 board the ship where my Armenian friend
 had been for some time embarked, and
 which had been fallen down as low as
 Maliko, in order to take the advantage
 of high water over the sands, I was re-
 duced to the necessity of hiring three
 waggons to carry me and my effects thither,
 in order to my own embarkation on the
 same ship.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Moscow, see p. 23. n. c.

(b) Veronis, see the author's description of
 it in the preceding chapter.

(c) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(d) Georgia, in Asia, the ancient Iberia, is

bounded by Circassia and Dagestan on the
 north; by the Caspian Sea on the east; by
 Armenia, or Turcomania, on the south; and
 by Mingrelia on the west; the eastern,
 and much the largest division, is subject to
 Persia; the capital city Teflis; though, it is
 thought, that neither Georgia, nor the ancient
 Iberia, extended so far eastward as the Caspian
 Sea;

THE TRAVELS OF

1703

Sea; yet it is separated from it by the Province of Chircoan. It is a mountainous, but fruitful country, producing corn, wine, and cattle in abundance; and the difficult access of some of their mountains has preserved them from being absolutely subdued, either by the Turks or Persians; but what this country is most remarkable for, is the beauty of its natives, and the traffic they carry on with the Turks and Persians for their children, who are sold and carried young to both those courts, where they expect to be advanced to the greatest honours; and for this reason, their parents part with them with joy, instead of lamenting their absence.

(e) Russia, see p. 7, n. c.

(f) Amsterdam, east longitude 4. 30. latitude 52. 20. the capital of the province of Holland, and of the United Netherlands, situate on the river Amstel, and an arm of the sea, called the Wye, a little to the eastward of the Zuyder-Sea, two hundred miles and upwards east of London, two hundred and thirty north-east of Paris, and upwards of four hundred miles west of Vienna, twelve miles east of Haerlem, and thirty north-east of Rotterdam. The city lies almost in the form of a crescent; it is the greatest port of the known world; no where are such numbers of merchant-ships seen, and yet of the most difficult access, it being scarce possible for a loaded ship, or man of war, to enter the harbour; and indeed the whole Zuyder-Sea is so shallow and full of sands, that scarce any but their own flat-bottomed vessels can cross it; but then this is their great security against foreign enemies, whose men of war scarce ever venture to pursue them beyond the Texel, and other entrances into this sea. The foundations of this town are laid upon vast piles of timber, drove into the morass, on which it stands at a prodigious expence: the Stadhoute alone has upwards of thirteen thousand piles of wood, it is said, to bear up those foundations. The first mention of this town in history is about the year 1300, when it was a poor fisher-town. In 1585, it appears to have been the chief town of trade in these provinces, when they began to fortify it; and great additions were made to the fortifications in the year 1672, when Lewis the XIVth. invaded the country. The houses are built with brick or stone; the streets are spacious, and well paved, and through most of them run canals, planted with trees; the town is computed to be about half as big as London, including the fortifications; in it

are people of almost every nation, and every religion in Europe, who are all tolerated in their respective persuasions; but none admitted to any share in the government but the Calvinists, or Presbyterians; all of them, however, apply themselves, with the utmost diligence, to heap up wealth, tormenting both body and soul (in the words of a late writer) to get an estate, not to enjoy it, but to have the pleasure of dying rich; money, the idol of the world, is adored most in this country, where it supplies the place of birth, wit, and merit.

(g) Rome, the capital of the Pope's territories, and of Italy, is situate in 13 degrees east longitude, and 41 degrees 45 minutes north latitude; one hundred and forty miles north-west of Naples, and an hundred and forty south of Florence, standing on the river Tiber, about sixteen miles north-east of the Tuscan Sea; the walls are about twelve miles in circumference, as they were in the time of the Romans, but not a third part of the ground within the walls is now built upon; the rest is taken up with vineyards and gardens. The inhabitants are computed to amount to about 120,000 souls. There are five bridges over the river, twenty gates, and three hundred antique towers still remaining; the castle of St. Angelo is a modern fortification, but of no great strength, and serves rather to keep the inhabitants in awe, than to defend them against foreign enemies. Modern Rome stands fourteen or fifteen feet higher than the old city, being built on the ruins of the former, and is much more upon a level than the old city was, great part of the hills being washed down into the valleys; inasmuch that the Tarpeian rock, which was once a terrible precipice, from whence malefactors were thrown, is not more than twenty feet high. The city is for the most part magnificently built; the streets are spacious, and adorned with 300 fine churches, and a vast number of palaces and convents, and the triumphal arches, pillars, obelisks, statues, and fountains, are no small additions to its beauty; but then there are other streets as meanly built as in any town whatever. The greatest curiosities in Rome are the ancient theatres and amphitheatres, Pagan temples, triumphal arches, baths, aqueducts, fountains, catacombs, obelisks, cirques, sepulchres, bridges, churches, palaces, statues, paintings, piazzas, colleges, and hospitals. The people of this city are said to be more obliging than in any town of Europe, and that an universal civility reigns there. They

1703

are not at all possessed with or persecution against strangers or upon whatever. The will supplied with water, b and fountains; an plenty of all manner of f fish, fowl, and fruit; variety of wines that are where; and in the midst the people are extremely down purely to drink and big wine without water.

(1) Cadix, see p. 62.

(2) African, see p.

(3) China, see p. 60, n.

(1) Cyprus, an island, eastern part of the Levant Sea, between 33 and 36 longitude, and between north latitude; sandy soil, of Caramania, or Cilicia, of the coast of Syria, b and fifty miles long, an chief town Nicosia, the Biglitz, or victory, a flower of the King of the of these mountains called another of the same name and a third in Greece; b or rivers but what the r happening to sail them th during the reign of Constantinians were obliged for some time; the n corn, wine, oil, wool, & silk; they have plenty a low, and a pretty built merchants of Europe an topen mines, particular their canals and factories was very populous until

almost every nation, and every
 pope, who are all tolerated in
 persians; but none admitted
 in the government but the Cal-
 dyseans; all of them, how-
 ever, with the utmost dili-
 gence, up wealth, increasing both
 in the words of a late writer)
 it, not to enjoy it, but to have
 it dying rich; money, the idol
 is adored most in this country;
 it is the place of birth, wife, and

is, the capital of the Pope's ter-
 of Italy, is situate in 13 degrees
 ; and 41 degrees 45 minutes
 ; one hundred and forty miles
 Naples, and an hundred and
 Florence, standing on the river
 sixteen miles north-west of the
 the wall are about twelve miles in
 , as they were in the time of the
 at not a third part of the ground
 walls is now built upon; the rest is
 in vineyards and gardens. The
 computed to amount to about

There are five bridges over
 city gates, and three hundred
 is still remaining; the castle of
 a modern fortification, but of no
 and serves rather to keep the
 awe, than to defend them
 enemies. Modern Rome stands
 sixteen feet higher than the old
 built on the ruins of the former,
 h more upon a level than the old
 at part of the hills being washed
 valleys; inasmuch that the
 , which was once a terrible pre-
 whence malefactors were thrown,
 than twenty feet high. The city
 it part magnificently built; the
 and adorned with 300 fine
 vicious, and a vast number of palaces and
 d a vast number of arches, pillars,
 d the triumphal arches, are no small
 ues, and fountains, but then there are
 its beauty; but then there are
 s as meanly built as in any town
 The greatest curiosities in Rome
 Theatres and amphitheatres,
 es, triumphal arches, battis, aque-
 ins, carombs, obelisks, cirques,
 ins, churches, palaces, fountains,
 ridges, colleges, and hospitals.
 piazzas, are said to be more
 of this city are said to be more
 in in any town of Europe, and
 are

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1091

are not at all possessed with a spirit of bigotry,
 or persecution against strangers of any country
 or religion whatever. The city is extremely
 well supplied with water; by their noble aque-
 ducts and fountains; and there is great
 plenty of all manner of provisions, as corn,
 flesh, fish, fowl, and fruits; and the greatest
 variety of wines that are to be met with any
 where; and in the midst of all this variety,
 the people are extremely sober; never sitting
 down purely to drink, and very seldom drink-
 ing wine without water.

(b) Casan, see p. 62. n. b.

(i) Astracan, see p. 62. n. i.

(k) China, see p. 66. n. k.

(l) Cyprus, an island, situate in the most
 eastern part of the Levant, or Mediterranean
 Sea, between 33 and 36 degrees of eastern
 longitude, and between 34 and 36 degrees of
 north latitude; sixty miles south of the coast
 of Carmania, or Cilicia, and thirty west
 of the coast of Syria, being about an hundred
 and fifty miles long, and seventy broad; the
 chief town Nicosia, the seat of the Turkish
 Beglerbeg, or viceroy, and formerly the re-
 sidence of the King of the island. Here is one
 of those mountains called Olympus; there is
 another of the same name in the lesser Asia,
 and a third in Greece; but there are no springs
 or rivers but what the rains produce, which
 happening to fail them thirty years successively,
 during the reign of Constantine the Great, the
 inhabitants were obliged to abandon the island
 for some time; the soil, however, produces
 corn, wine, oil, wool, cotton, salt, and some
 silk; they have plenty also of fish, flesh and
 fowl, and a pretty brisk trade between the
 merchants of Europe and Asia: several Eu-
 ropean nations, particularly the English, have
 their consuls and factors in this island. It
 was very populous whilst it was in the pos-

session of the Christians, and had a great
 many good towns in it; but it is now so
 thinly inhabited that half the lands lie un-
 manured. The present inhabitants are Turks,
 Jews, Greeks, Armenians, and some few
 Latins. The Turks have the government,
 but the Greeks are most numerous. This
 island was dedicated to Venus; and her vo-
 taries, it is said, prostituted themselves to fo-
 reigners. It has been successively governed by
 the Egyptians, Phoenicians, Persians, Greeks,
 Romans, Saracens, Venetians, and Turks.
 Richard I. King of England, meeting with
 an inhospitable reception here, subdued the
 island, and transferred his right to it to Guy
 Lusignan, titular King of Jerusalem, whose
 descendants transferred it to the State of Ve-
 nice; from whom the Turks took it anno
 1570, and have remained in possession of it
 ever since.

(m) Ispahan, or Spahawn, east longitude
 50. latitude 32. 30. the capital city of Eyrac
 Agem, and of all the kingdom of Persia, is
 situate in a fine plain, almost surrounded with
 mountains, which lie two or three leagues di-
 stant from it. The city is of an oval form,
 twelve miles in circumference, and stands two
 hundred miles north of the gulph of Persia, or
 Boffora, three hundred miles south of the Caspian
 Sea, one thousand four hundred miles south-
 east of Constantinople, and one thousand six-
 hundred miles north west of Delly, the capital
 of the Hither India. The streets of Ispahan
 are, several of them, arched over, with open-
 ings to let in light. The English East-India
 company had a factory here, and their factors
 lived like Princes, in the greatest splendor,
 till the civil war; but the court, and con-
 sequently the trade, seems to be removing
 from this city to Meshed, in the province of
 Chorasian, near the Caspian Sea, the usual
 residence of the Sha Nadir and his court.

(n) Holland, see p. 76. n. c.

Ff CHAP.

1703



1703

C H A P. XV.

The Author departs from (a) Moscow. The Course of the (b) Wolga. A Description of the several Towns and other Villages on that River. The Author arrives at (c) Astracan.

Kolom-
menke.

AS I went to the ship, I passed by the town of Kolommenke, on the right-hand, and on a rising ground: it makes a good appearance enough; has a curious convent, a church, and two towers. In order to enter each side of it, you must cross a raft of timbers, which are so fastened together, as that one part of them is with ease removed, when the passage of any vessel requires it, and with equal ease joined together again after it has past. I went by several villages, likewise, which were delightfully situated on a rising ground, and on the right-hand side of the river. By that time evening came on, I got into a wood, where the trees were very low; and as I was some hours travelling through it, the night was far spent before I reached Matko, where I was informed, that the Armenian barks were not as yet arrived. Notwithstanding there were two houses here; yet I lay the remainder of the night in a barn, which was partly open and exposed to the weather, and what was still worse, upon the hard floor. On the twenty-third, in the morning, my fellow-traveller came down with four barks, accompanied by three other Armenians, who were likewise bound for (d) Ifsahan, and assured me, that the ship on board of which we were to embark, and wherein he had a large quantity of cloths, was fallen down still three-score wefts lower: upon this information, we followed her by water, and reached her by about ten o'clock that night. As it was late, however, and nothing in proper order, we thought it most expedient, not to go directly on board till the next morning. Whereupon, we went into a house by

the water-side; where we made a very good fire, and had a parcel of fine pike and perch, which we had purchased before of some fishermen for three-pence only, dressed for our supper. There I embraced the opportunity of writing a few letters to some particular friends at Moscow, and in (e) Holland; and on the twenty-fourth, about ten in the morning we got on board. In these parts, they have several small, flat-bottomed vessels (called by the Russians Stroeks) which will carry about three hundred bales of silk, or about fifteen lasts. They are very capacious, and have only one mast, and one sail that is very wide, and principally made use of when the wind is aft; but when the wind is not either directly astern, or well upon their quarters, they ply their oars, of which the number for the most part is about sixteen or eighteen. They make use of no rudder, but a long sort of paddle, broad at that end which lies in the water; as to the other end, it is supported by a sort of crutch, made proper for the purpose, and this either the proprietor, or master, manages by some tackle, reeved on each side, which keeps the vessel steady, and is so contrived, that it can be put on, or taken off as occasion requires. There were on board twenty-three mariners, and above fifty passengers, some Russians, and others Armenians, servants included. Hitherto the river winds very much, and is about forty fathom in breadth all ways. We had not been on board above two hours, before we came to the convent of Smolenski, which, at a considerable distance, makes a good figure enough; it has a fine steeple, and is situate on the side of

The convent of
Smolenski.

a wood

a wood, about an hundred
It was near four
we hadly lost sight of it
was on each hand of us
at country, and full of
towards a more lofty
When night came upon
us. About nine the
we reached (f) Kazan.
rate on the south-west
of Moscow. It is an ex-
the western part of the
the eastward of Moscow
change of this city so
where I had no light
the prospect of it is in
Number XVIII. This
I have taken some notice
account of my journey to
we landed and eight
Moscow by water, on a
debris (sweeps of the
has a bridge, or rather
finest as we mentioned
Here we turned at right
order to give our people
make their necessary prepa-
ing. Before night cam-
the river of (g) Oka,
the south, where the wa-
till into it. This, as we
is very broad, which,
looked upon but as a
foundation-head is not in
(h) Gorn Taren. It is
part of (i) Moscow,
eastward of the city of
the study of the law
and employs its waters
(j) Nils-Novgorod.
country is very delightful
fish-head, such the
sculptures, where there
structures, in one of
of the place himself, it
left, there stands a vil-
under thirty structures
than from Kolommen-
the river now running
had done hitherto, we
greater one, and new-
ing the whole right,
sixth, in the morning

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

III

1703

a wood, about an hundred wersts from Moscow. It was near four o'clock before we perfectly lost sight of it. After this, we saw on each hand of us, a more cam-pain country, and full of villages; and afterwards a more lofty spot of land. When night came upon us, we dropped anchor. About nine the next morning, we reached (*f*) Kolomna, which is situated on the south-west of the river of (*g*) Moskva. It is an episcopal see, in the southern parts of (*b*) Russia, tho' to the eastward of Moscow. I took a draught of this city on the north side, where I had no sight of the river, and the prospect of it is hereto annexed in Number XVIII. This city, of which I have taken some notice before in the account of my journey to (*i*) Veronis, is one hundred and eighty wersts from Moscow by water, on account of the prodigious sweeps of the river, whereon it has a bridge, or rather such a raft of timber as we mentioned some time since. Here we tarried at least seven hours, in order to give our people time enough to make their necessary preparations for sailing. Before night came on, we reached the river of (*k*) Occa, which flows from the south, where the waters of the Moskva fall into it. This, as well as the Moskva, is very broad, which, till that time, we looked upon but as a small river; and its fountain-head is not far distant from the (*l*) Crim Tartary. It traverses the southern parts of (*m*) Moscovy, and flows to the eastward of the city of Moscow, through the dutchy of the same denomination; and empties its waters into the Wolga at (*n*) Nisi-Novogorod. This part of the country is very delightful, and on the right-hand stands the town of Kiekiena Serophof, where there are two stately structures, in one of which the governor of the place himself resides; and on the left, there stands a village, where there is another stately structure, about ten wersts distant from Kolomna. The course of the river now running more direct than it had done hitherto, we sailed at a much greater rate, and never came to, during the whole night. On the twentieth, in the morning, we passed by the

Kolomna.

See plate
XVIII.

The Occa.

1703

village, called Dedenawa, which lies on the left-hand, where there is a very handsome church upon the river, about thirty wersts from the town of Kiekiena before-mentioned. And here on both sides you behold a wood full of low trees; and the river is of the same breadth all along. The same day we passed by several other villages, and after that met with lands higher up which were very agreeable; but there the river began to wind once more. As we steered our course east-north-east, the land and the trees appeared to us cloathed in a very lively verdure; and at the last turn of the mountain, I took the draught of the view annexed in Number XIX. When we were got beyond these mountains, which we had to the right only, we found the river greatly contracted, and towards the evening, we had several hills covered with small trees, both on the right and the left of us. On the twenty seventh in the morning we saw, to the right, a lofty mountain, and on the left, several villages, with cows and sheep feeding in the adjacent meadows. In the meantime, we had fishermen, who came a long-side of us every day in small boats somewhat like canoes, hollowed out of the trunks of trees, of whom we frequently purchased more pike or perch for three-pence or four-pence, than were sufficient to satisfy eight or ten persons of moderate stomachs. As we still advanced eastwards, on the left-hand of us, we met with an island, which abounded with trees, and was of a considerable length; and after that, with divers villages, situated at the feet of mountains, and the fine convent of Bogoslova, which is all built with stone, and situated amidst a great number of trees, in the most rural manner, and upon an eminence; and on one side of it there is a spacious, verdant plain, with great numbers of flocks and herds grazing upon it, quite down to the river-side. This convent lies north-west, about twenty wersts from Pereslaw; whereof I have given the reader a prospect in Number XX. Here are abundance of villages round about, and the soil is exceedingly fertile. About three o'clock

See Plate
XIX.The fine
convent of
Bogoslova.

Pereslaw.

See plate
XX.

W2

officer, governor of Astracan, 1793
Russians, under tents, taking
on all along the river side:

passed farther on, we had a

divers villages, and all a flat

h on one side of us and the

ch was overlooked even above

the trees. In this place, the

broad; and in the evening, we

were surrounded with trees;

its had covered the banks to

s, that it was a very difficult

walk with safety upon them.

exceedingly hot, the weather

re. I went on shore with the

did so every day, in order to

h, to see if I could possibly

y game; and towards the

te back from Moscow rowed

the 29th in the morning,

out ten werfts beyond Relin,

upon the left, with an opening

tations within the land, where

which had made its way, formed

which was so deep as to be

great for small craft; but we

no village, as the weather

and hazy. A league from

w another gulph, where the

lake terminated in a cir-

The meadows all round

all of trees and herds, and

in were lofty mountains. About

ad a sight of more lands that

ter; but as we came to a

the river formed a small

old discern dry ground again,

place, called Katus, in

nothing but a few miserable

several vessels. It was here

ted sail for the first time,

was but easy. To the right

had a sight of the convent

, and a small village; and

parts of a place, called Solodke,

it was a tolerable good church,

th shore. From thence we

to several lands that were

nd had a sight of several

tho' very lofty ones, were

with water to their tops

nd these inundations usually

the month of July, at which

time,

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

time, the waters begin to abate. On the thirtieth, we came to a very agreeable place, about a hundred werfts from the city of Kasiemof: I drew the prospect of it, as it is annexed in Number 21.

See plate
Numb. 21.

Once more we hoisted our sails indeed, with the wind at north-east, but we were soon reduced to the necessity of taking them down again, and of standing to our oars; and after we had passed by several villages, we proceeded to a country so deeply overflowed, that nothing could be discerned but the sky, the water, and the tops of some few trees that were more lofty than the rest. Towards sunset, we met with a vessel which belonged to his Czarian majesty, laden with anchors, and bound for (t) Afoph, in company with another, not near so large. We saluted each other, however, in form, with what fire-arms we had. When we were arrived within thirty werfts of Kasiemof, we made use of but half our oars, that the crew might relieve each other by turns. On the first of May, about one in the afternoon, we were a long-side of the city of Kasiemof above-mentioned, which is situate on the east side of the river, and on the summit of a hill. This city, tho' very extensive, has no walls; and not only its houses, but all its four churches likewise are built with timber. Here is a tower to a mosque, which belongs to the Turks and Tartars, who reside here, where I landed, as did several Armenians, with an intent to purchase provisions and liquors; but we lost our labour. Thus disappointed, we rowed after the bark, which, as she kept on her passage, we were above an hour, and passed by several villages in our way, before we could overhaul her. Some of our passengers, however, who went ashore during our absence, met with a parcel of asparagus, and brought a considerable part of it away with them. Tho' they were long and slender; yet they were well tasted, and fit to stew; I got therefore some of the largest of them, and dressed them after the Dutch manner. After we had passed by several villages, there arose such a brisk gale directly against us, that it was with

the utmost difficulty that we escaped striking on the star-board shore. The wind was at south-east, and we struck a little once; but soon got a-float again: and I observed, that these barks, on such an occasion, are not ready in their answering at the helm. At night we drew near to a village which spreads itself all down the declivity of a hill, towards the river; and there the next morning I took the prospect of it, which is annexed in Number 22. On the second, in the morning, we arrived at the aforesaid village, (called Alactma) which is three-score werfts beyond the city of Kasiemof. It is situate on the top of a hill, and lies in some measure inwards; so that the whole is not to be viewed from the river. It is a pretty large place; has no less than eight churches in it, and several houses upon the river-side. It is surrounded with several villages, and on each side there are woods that are extremely pleasant. Some short time afterwards, we had a sight of several other villages, and a large meadow full of cattle and sheep; and beyond that, another gulph of the river, which appeared to us, to wind amongst the meadows and their trees to a village that stood at the foot of a mountain. The river here is very broad, and the banks, on each side, abound with trees. Here we saw a prodigious flock of geese in the air. On the third, we passed by Moruma, a town, situate on the declivity of a hill, which is considerably large; with seven several stone-churches, which are magnificent enough; besides divers others, not equally stately, built with timber. Here, as I have been informed, the inhabitants make the best bread that is to be met with throughout all his Czarian majesty's dominions. It is inhabited partly by Russians, and partly by Tartars; and here the Tartars of Mordua begin. As we proceeded, we had a sight of more villages and more lands, that lay under water. The river here is very broad, and one of the villages was situate at the foot of a mountain, which runs away several leagues farther. The soil is so sandy, and so full of stones, that it is

Plate 22.

Alactma.

Mordua.

G g

no

1703

Bergius.

no easy matter to go ashore. Here we saw a poor fellow, that was perpetually crossing himself, and every now and then bowing down his head to the very ground; which the Russians we had on board taking particular notice of, they went in their boat to him, and having first made a collection for him, gave him what they had got, and among the rest, some loaves of bread; for he was a poor beggar, it seems; and soon after we perceived three women, with their children, in the like manner, on whom they likewise bestowed their voluntary benefactions. These mendicants live, for the generality, in the mountains, and as soon as ever they espy a vessel at a distance, they run down to the river-side, in hopes of some charitable relief. After this, we came among a parcel of lofty hills, which, tho' there were very few trees upon them, were covered with a lively verdure: at last, arriving at a place where there was a Kabak, we landed, with a view of getting some liquors of one kind or another; but what we found proved very bad, and 'twas once more with abundance of difficulty that we recovered our bark. After that, a gale sprang up, that was directly against us, and so very strong, that we were under an indispensable necessity to lay still for several hours. After this, we traversed the mounds of two rivers, the first to the starboard, called Molua Raka, and on the larboard side about eight wersts farther, the Clefma, which rises at Volodimer. On the fourth, we got into the center of a lofty country, and from thence descended to a village, called Ispuletz, which is about forty wersts from (u) Nisen. Here we met with a bark that had ten cars, and made good way, tho' against the stream of the river, the banks whereof were perfectly level on each side, and abounded with trees; and there were several hills within sight, tho' at some considerable distance. About three o'clock we arrived within sight of the convent of Dudina, which is delightfully situated amidst a profusion of verdant trees, on the declivity of a hill, on the top whereof there stands a village, of which, nothing more is to

The Con-
vent of
Dudina.

1703

bee seen than the spires of their churches. At night the wind blew with that violence, and the waves swelled so high, that we were glad to shelter ourselves from it, as much as possible, on the larboard side of the river. On the fifth, the wind was greatly abated, and we began to make way again, by break of day; and having passed by several villages, we reached at last the ship-yards, which lie along the river, and extend themselves as far as the very suburbs of Nisen, where there is a magnificent monastery, which is walled all round; in the bottom there is a handsome church, built with stone, with abundance of wooden houses near it, down to the river-side. There is another church, built likewise with stone, and pretty large, which stands against a hill, on the summit whereof is a little village. This city is commonly called by the Russians, Nisen, or Niesna, otherwise Nis-Novogorod, or the little Novogorod; and by others again, Nisen Niengarten. It is the capital of the small dutchy, which is distinguished by that title, and has a fort or citadel on a rock, or the conflux of the two rivers before-mentioned; namely, the Occa and the Volga. This city is surrounded with a curious stone-wall, and passengers must go thro' what they call a Bazar, or spacious market-place, before they come to the gate, called Iwanoffkie, which is situated near the river. This gate is built with vast blocks of stone, and is extremely deep. From hence they ascend by a great street, which abounds with bridges, built with timber, till they come to another gate, called Diawietrofskie, near which stands the grand stone-church, with five domes to it, all varnished over with green, and decorated with curious crosses. On one side of this church, stands the archiepiscopal palace, all stone-work, and within its enclosure, there is a pretty little church with a steeple, and two other churches without; the one built with timber, and the other with stone. The Prikaes, or the chancery offices, which are situate near this gate, are all built with timber; and so likewise is the governor's house. There is nothing

Nisen and
its situa-
tion.

very material, however, this city, while circum-
sailed, and whose houses are
small, and whose streets are
narrow. It has no other
notable-mentioned. This
no more mentioned. This
city strikes the eye in a very
new way, as there are in a very
great number of houses, some
trees, and several houses
from each other. The w
banks with towers, some
other square, and one o
which are more conspicuous
than the others. The city
is situated at a greater distance
from the river than the
passage to the sea. The
city which lies on the
banks of the city, how-
ever, especially in the
factories, where there are
the river, where there are
churches, and where there
divided into several par-
ishes, which are not only
are enclosed not only by
churches likewise, but
there is no such thing
consequence of it, on
heights and depths which
prevail. The river be-
thoroughly with embarka-
or another, which are for
residing from different
side of it, there is a large
is the sole property of
mini Sinogorod, where
church built all with a
stone-work, where there
quarter residences.
About eight o'clock,
no less than forty eight
ten cars, and forty hand-
them, in order to take
all these belonged to,
for that gentleman, who
one of the most substan-
the Czarian majesty's
which hands, who in
the timber, he allowed
When night came on,
ing, on account of the
the darkness, which w
the evening day. He
selves with pieces of
particularly with
by very good as the

1703

chased my cargo, with no other view, than to be an eye-witness of the various pranks, and whimsical conceits of these Russian Bacchanals, as soon as the liquor begins to take effect; they are obliged to stand in the street, however; for none of their frolicks or gambols are allowed of within-doors. There is a table, planted some few yards from the house, where the money is deposited, and the quantity of liquor demanded is accordingly brought. This is taken out of a large kettle that stands hard by, with a proper ladle in it, composed of wood, and poured into a little wooden-bowl. The smallest measure is charged a half-penny only. And in this manner are the populace served by a waiter, who makes it his whole business; but there is another who gives equal attendance to receive the money. This practice of intemperance on holidays is as frequent amongst their women as the men. In short, I saw the same farce played over again at another Kabak, where beer only was sold, and where the customers had admittance into the house.

On the sixth, we embarked, in order to get our people on board, and spent the night upon the river. Early in the morning we pursued our voyage; and as we passed but slowly by the city and suburbs, I took such a liking to the place, that the Reader will find a prospect thereof annexed hereto in plate No. XXIV.

Pl. XXIV.

The Con-
vent of
Bessjerke.

As we advanced on our way, we came in sight of two villages, which lay on the larboard-side; one whereof was much larger than the other, and called Waesna; on the starboard-side we saw the convent of Bessjerke, which is a spacious edifice, all built with stone, the roofs only excepted, and several houses besides on each side of it, and is not more than one werst beyond the city. We saw, moreover, one small church, called Jassooni, situate on a hill, and some hundreds of people flocking up to it, from divers parts, in order to solemnize the festival before-mentioned; some of whom were busy in spreading their tents, in order for their amusement, in those kind of booths, after divine service. We continued at about

1703

The Convent
of Macaria.

three wersts from the city, till the seventh, and till seven in the morning; at which time, we advanced forwards, and by about twelve we came up with an island, which was two wersts at least in length, and abounded with trees. After that, we passed by several hills, and another island, whereon there was not a tree to be seen; and left the river called Kerfimia, and the convent of Macaria, to the larboard of us. This convent is a large stone edifice, and bears the resemblance of a fort or a castle; for it is surrounded with a lofty square stone-wall, which has a tower in every corner of it. Had not the day been too far spent, I should have had a great inclination to have drawn a prospect of it. On one side of it stood a village, and a chan, or a caravanisaraï, built with timber, where the merchants deposit their respective wares. Here there is kept a very considerable annual fast in the month of July, to which almost all the Russian merchants in general resort, notwithstanding it is kept no longer than a fortnight. Some of our Russians going thither, in order to purchase a parcel of fish, were informed that not long before, a certain governor, in his passage from Moscow, had been attacked there by three barks, each of them manned with eighteen Russian pirates; that an engagement ensued, and the Governor, was so well furnished with fire-arms, and behaved with so much courage and intrepidity, that he killed three of the pirates upon the spot, and obliged the rest to retreat like a set of cowardly villains; that this skirmish, however, had obliged the governor to return to Moscow, after he had left one of his retinue in the town under proper care, to be cured of the wounds he had received in his defence.

This information put us more on our guard than otherwise we should have been; and we prepared our arms accordingly, in order to be ready, if occasion should require it. We were furnished with about forty muskets and pistols for the reception of such a casual crew of villains, and, during the night, we had a Russian and an Armenian always on the watch.

On the eighth, about
we sailed at Bannino, where
than a hundred wersts from
we passed by; and here,
the banks were very high,
and by seven or eight in
reached Gockina, a town
to count Golovin. This
is a considerable way
thence (as we were
and contains (as we were
less than seven thousand
the country people brood
fell; in case we had be-
chance any. In the pe-
we came in sight of
islands, upon the river,
place is considerably broad
ten and eleven we cross-
the Sere, which flows
where the high moun-
at the foot whereof it
called Wafiel, and on to
We investigated, of which
from the river. I was in-
that the place was but so
walk and that all the ho-
timber; that the town was
detached twenty wersts from
these parts are principally
Czernissian Tatars, who
selves as far as Casan.
afternoon, we reached
Kudakmanzle, a town
wersts from Wafiel, and
tolerably large, and ex-
the river, and partly
it has no wall for its
wind happened to pre-
huddled up our sails, and
observed, that both the
houses were. We found
islands, but no hills
passed by a place, which
is forty wersts at least
thence mentioned, and
ground. To me it ap-
comely, and when
things were further, we
town called Koshlag
larboard side. On the
several high hills, and
in company with
were bound for

from the city, till the seventh, in the morning; at which advanced forwards, and by about came up with an island, which werfts at least in length, and with trees. After that, we several hills, and another island, there was not a tree to be seen; river called Kerimna, and the Macaria, to the harbour of us. It is a large stone edifice; and resembles of a fort or a castle; surrounded with a lofty square which has a tower in every t. Had not the day been too should have had a great in- have drawn a prospect of it. It stood a village, and a chain, tral, built with timber, where ters deposit their respective ere there is kept a very con- annual fair in the month of July, most all the Russian merchants resort, notwithstanding it is r than a fortnight. Some of going thither, in order to parcel of fish, were informed before, a certain governor, e from Moscow, had been e by three barks, each of ed with eighteen Russian at an engagement ensued, and or, was so well furnished with and behaved with so much intrepidity, that he killed three upon the spot, and obliged retreat like a set of cowardly this Kerimna, however, had governor to return to Moscow; left one of his retainers in the a proper care, to be cured which he had received in his

On information put us more on our otherwise we should have re prepared our arms: according to be ready, if occasion e. We were furnished forty muskets and pistols for of such a casual crew of during the night, we had an Armenian always on the

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

117

1703
Bormino.

On the eighth, about break of day, we arrived at Bormino, which is no less than a hundred werfts from the last town we passed by; and here, on each side of the shore, the banks were full of trees; and by seven or eight in the morning we reached Gockina, a town that belongs to count Golowin. This place extends itself a considerable way along the river, and contains (as we were informed) no less than seven-thousand houses; and here the country-people brought us their bread to sell; in case we had been disposed to purchase any. In the pursuit of our course, we came in sight of several floating islands, upon the river, which in this place is considerably broad; and between ten and eleven we crossed the mouth of the Soera, which flows from the south, where the high mountains commence; at the foot whereof stands a large village, called Waffiel, and on the summit, the town Waffielgorod, of which there is no view from the river. I was informed, however, that the place was but small; that it had no walls, and that all the houses were built with timber; that the town was about one-hundred and twenty werfts from Nisen; and that these parts are principally inhabited by Czeremissian Tartars, who extend themselves as far as Cafan. About four in the afternoon, we reached the town of Kufmademianski, which is about forty werfts from Waffielgorod. This place is tolerably large, and extends itself all along the river, and partly up the hill, but it has no wall for its defence. As the wind happened to prove southerly, we hoisted up our sail, and as we advanced, we observed, that both shores were full of linen-trees. We saw likewise several islands, but no hills. In the night, we passed by a place, called Sabalzar, which is forty werfts at least from the Town last mentioned, and stands on a rising ground. To me it appeared to be very compact, and when we had proceeded thirty werfts farther, we came in sight of a town called Kokshaga, which lay on our larboard side. On the ninth, we saw several high hills, and overtook a large bark, in company with several others, which were bound for Cafan. At this time,

Sabalzar.

Kokshaga.

the weather was calm, moist and hot. By

1703

noon we reached Blowolska, a town but about four-score werfts from Cafan, on the starboard-side; and from thence we came to a place called Bellawalaska, where our people went a shore, in order to purchase some fresh provisions. At three in the afternoon, we steered our course by a town, called Swyatki, and the wind flood directly for us. This place is situate on a rising ground, has a Citadel, and several stone-convents as well as churches; but the walls and houses are all timber-work. The whole is formed into an island by the river Swyage, which flows from the south-east, and here empties its waters into the Wolga. On one side of the last mentioned river, and directly opposite to the town, is seen, at the point of a hill, the village called Saldaetke-flabode, between which and this town, this Swyage falls into the Wolga, as we hinted before, and as evidently appears by the plate No. XXV. annexed; where thereader may observe there is an island before the Swyage, otherwise called Swyatki. We coasted all along this hill, or mountain, and steered our course south-half east, and by six we saw on the larboard-side, the city of Cafan, at the distance of about four werfts. It makes a very grand appearance here on account of the several churches and convents with which it abounds, and its fort or citadel which is surrounded with a stone-wall. Some small time before this, we had passed by the several ship-yards, which lie about six or seven werfts only from the town, in a reach, where the river is broad; and there we had a fight of near forty vessels of divers kinds upon the stocks, and several that were nearly compleated, and almost ready for launching. We were informed by some of the workmen, that they had orders for the building of three hundred and eighty, the greater part whereof were to sail to Astracan, for the service and protection of the (w) Caspian sea, and the rest were bound for other places. As we passed by, I took a prospect of Cafan, in the best manner so short a time would permit me, and the reader may see it in the plate No. XXVI. hereto annexed.

H h

It

Blowolska.

Bellawalaska

Swyatki.

The Swyage.

Saldaetke flabode.

Pl. XXV.

Cafan.

THE TRAVELS OF

1703
Isiua-
tigh.

210 1110

Tetrefic,

The third
of States for

It is situated in (x) Asia, and in the southern parts of the Moscowite (y) Tarry, on a river which bears the same denomination, called by the inhabitants, Casanské, and empties its waters into the Wolga. It is the capital of the kingdom so called, between that of (z) Bulgar and the Czeremissians. This city has a wall, indeed, but then it is a wooden one. As we advanced farther, we had a sight of several islands, which appeared to us like so many forests in the river; and we observed likewise a kiln upon the hills, where several were at work; and on our left, we saw several lands which were overflown. On the tenth we arrived at the mouth of the Kama, which fell on our left-hand-side, into the Wolga, at the distance of about threecore wersts from the city of Casan. It is very broad, and flows from the north-east, and disembogues it self with that impetuosity into the Wolga, that it hurries on vessels, without any other assistance, for several leagues together. Tho' some persons assert, that the waters thereof are of a brown colour; yet I confess, I could not perceive it. It is, however, very sweet, and in regard to drinking, far preferable to that of the Wolga. About noon we reached the small town called Tetoctse, or Tetus, which is situate on a high hill, about ninety wersts from Casan. It is surrounded with a wooden wall; and its churches and houses are all timber-work, and but very small. There was only one part of the wall to be seen as we passed by. There is likewise a small village on the river-side, where some of our passengers went a shore in order to purchase some provisions, and procure a small quantity of ice to cool our liquor. After that we passed by a large island called Stario, which is forty wersts from Tetus; and in the night by several others full of trees. Here the river is at least a league broad, and on the starboard-side of it has several mountains. Here we rode at anchor for some hours in the night, the wind blowing very hard, and directly against us. On the eleventh, I went a-shore with my Armenians and some few Russians, in order to purchase some provisions at a small distance from the town called Simbierka, which

1703

Аггоша,
on the river
Огша.

hands on the right, upon a rising ground, about three wersts from the river. We were informed, that in former days it was a spacious city, but destroyed by Tamerlane the Great; tho' there are no remains of it, as I can understand, at present; neither, indeed, had I any opportunity or time to spare in searching after them. Some insist, that, higher up, there were divers other cities and islands, the ruins whereof were still very conspicuous; but I much question the veracity of their assertions, notwithstanding they say, that there are the traces of an old castle, and the walls that once surrounded it, near the town of Zarists. They maintain, upon the whole, that there are several very ancient cities, and very populous ones likewise, between Casan and Astracan, and more particularly that of Acktoeba, situate on the river Oeffa; but even of this I could never procure any true satisfactory account. It must be acknowledged thus far indeed, that the waters of the Oeffa flow between Saratof and Zaritha, which are situate on the other side of the Wolga, and empty themselves into that river, and even washes one part of (*ad*) Siberia. It must be admitted likewise, that the city of Acktoeba stood once upon this river, notwithstanding there are no footsteps of it at present remaining, all the stones thereof in general having been removed from thence, in order to build the city of Astracan, and some other adjacent towns. When I went ashore, I perceived that the village of Simbierka and its environs were of large extent; partly, on the river, and partly again on the hill which we were to go up, before we could reach the Bazar. No sooner had we reached it, but we perceived a fire had just broke out, among some houses that stood upon the hill, and had then destroyed five or six at least of them; but within the compass of half an hour more, there were twenty of them reduced to ashes; for the wind was so high, that they burst out into flames before they could possibly be pulled down, which (as we have before observed) is their method of extinguishing fires.

right, upon a rising ground, the werfts from the river. We ascertained, that in former days it was a city, but destroyed by Tamerlane, as I can understand, at which, indeed, had I any opportunity to spare in searching. Some insist, that, higher up the river, there are divers other cities and towns whereof we still vary; but I much question the truth of their assertions, notwithstanding that there are the traces of cities, and the walls that once surrounded the town of Zaritsa.

As we proceeded, upon the whole, that the river was a very ancient one, and that it was likewise, between the town of Zaritsa, and more particularly at the place whereof I have spoken, situated on the left bank of the river, and even at the mouth of the river, it must have been a very ancient city. It must have been, that the city of Zaritsa, which is situated on the left bank of the river, and even at the mouth of the river, it must have been a very ancient city. It must have been, that the city of Zaritsa, which is situated on the left bank of the river, and even at the mouth of the river, it must have been a very ancient city.

When I went ashore, I found at the village of Simbirsk, a few houses of large extent; the river, and partly again, which we were to go up, could reach the Bazar. No other vessels were seen, but we perceived, that the river, and partly again, which we were to go up, could reach the Bazar. No other vessels were seen, but we perceived, that the river, and partly again, which we were to go up, could reach the Bazar. No other vessels were seen, but we perceived, that the river, and partly again, which we were to go up, could reach the Bazar.

Nothing fires.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

All provisions here, we found, as cheap, in all respects, as at Niesna. I had a great inclination to have gone up to the place it self, which is 180 werfts from Casan, but it was impracticable, as our vessel was on her way. However, I heard that it was considerably large, and surrounded with a wooden-wall; that there were 8 stone-churches in it, three or four convents, and no less than 10,000 houses, all inhabited by Russians only, the Tartars residing in the adjacent villages. It was above two hours before we could overtake our bark, and our rowing after her was attended with no small danger, as well as difficulty; for the river here whirls about with great violence, in some particular places, and being extremely deep, swells to that degree, that a small boat can scarcely withstand the surges. In our passage, we met again with several places covered with trees, whose verdure struck the eye agreeably enough, and had a full view of several hills that stood between them: When we had advanced thirty werfts from this place, we arrived at the village, called Siengiela, and divers others, all inhabited by Russians only; and not long afterwards at another town, called Nove Devitzke Salo, which is of large extent, very compact, and abounds with churches, some of whose steeples are very high. That night we met with a vessel, that was towing along, and manned with Russians, who asked us from whence we came, to what port we were bound, and what countrymen we were? We made answer, that we belonged to his Czarian majesty, and cautioned them to keep at a proper distance, lest they should repent it; for we were apprehensive that they were pirates. On the twelfth in the morning, we saw several hills on each side of us; some whereof were covered with fir-trees, which was a novelty, as we had never observed the like before. The river here was not above a werst broad at most; to make amends, however, it was extremely deep, and had risen so high this year, that it had laid all the land, which we have spoken of, under water to that degree, that there were rivers themselves at that

Siengiela.

Nove Devitzke Salo.

time which could not be distinguished. In such occurrences, the Russians are perfectly ignorant, and could give me no satisfactory account of the cause from whence they arose; neither could I procure any information on shore; because our vessel made no stay there. By nine we reached the village called Siera Barak, which is 40 werfts on this side Samara. There several of our passengers went on shore, in order to furnish themselves with fresh provisions; there the river began to widen; and we had not advanced far on our way before we had the sight of an island that was overflowed; and on the left side of us, stood a round high hill, almost without a tree upon it, called Sariol Kiergen. We were informed by the Russians, that the spot was remarkable for being the monument, or sepulchre, of a certain king or emperor of Tartary, whose name was Mammon; and who sailed up the Wolga, accompanied by 70 other Tartarian princes, in order to invade the Russian territories; and forasmuch as he died there, his soldiers, whom he had brought along with him, for that intended expedition, (who were very numerous) each of them contributed towards raising that eminence, or tomb, by filling their respective helmets with the adjacent earth. Scarce a league from this hill, we had sight of another, called Kabia Gora, which abounds with trees, and extends as far as Samara, such of them in particular as grow on the left side, being principally alders and willows, stand so thick, that there is no possibility of seeing through them. Here, we were informed, that the best sulphur that was ever discovered is to be met with in plenty; which was an impenetrable secret but two or three years before. Here we found no less than 4000 persons hard at work; some Russians; others Czaremiffians, and others again Mordwatians, over whom his Czarian majesty had proper guards, as well as surveyors. These hills lie on the west of the river; and by two in the afternoon we reached Samara, which lies on the east, on a rising ground, though not very high, and almost without a tree, and terminating with the town itself, which is situate

(as

The hill called Sariol Kiergen.

Remarkable for being the monument of a Tartar king.

The hill called Kabia Gora.

Fine Sulphur.

Samara.

1703

Plate 27.

Kalkur.

(as appears by plate No. XXVII) on the river-side, and, not (as some historians too peremptorily insist) at the full distance of two wersts from it. At the end of this town runs the river Samara, from whence it derives its name, and at about five or six wersts distance from thence, empties its waters into the Wolga. The town is moderately large, but the houses are all poor and inelegant, and built with wood. It is surrounded likewise with a wretched wooden wall, which is flanked on the land-side indeed, with a large tower. The city covers very nearly the whole hill; and the suburbs extend themselves all along the river-side. According to the nearest computation, it is about 350 wersts from Casan, and as we passed by it, we saw a large gate, several small churches, and a few convents. About five and twenty wersts from this place, we saw, on our starboard-side, the river Alkula, which empties its waters, as well as the Samar into the Wolga. Here we lost sight of all the mountains and hills; and here the river was very broad; but soon we recovered sight of them again, when they stood very near us on our right hand. That day we met with several barks, and saw a large number of ducks of a very extraordinary size; some of a very dark, brown colour, and others perfectly white. We crossed the river called Waffiele on our larboard-side, which is but a small one, and not far distant from it, but in the Wolga, we could discern a narrow slip of an island, full of trees, yet laid under water, which was looked upon as somewhat very remarkable. After that, we met with another bark from Astracan, the master whereof assured us, that there were fourteen more but a small matter behind him, all bound for Makaria-Fair, of which we have made mention in another place; and part of them, indeed, passed us in the night. On the thirteenth, we had sight of the town of Kalkur, which tho' but small, has a wooden enclosure flanked with wooden towers, and several churches built with timber. Its suburbs, or out-parts, lies on one side

Kalkur.

Waffiele.

of it, as may be plainly perceived, by the plate annexed, No. XXVIII. When we had advanced a league farther, we came to the town of Sieseron, which is moderately large, and has several churches in it, built with stone. Here indeed, the mountains are both dry and naked, but a little farther on, they made a better appearance.

The Calmuc Tartars infect these places, and carry off, by violence and rapine, not only man and beast, but every thing else of the least value that falls in their way. As we advanced still farther on, we perceived the river to wind very much, amongst large islands, full of trees; but as the country was covered with water to a very high degree, it was with difficulty that we could discern the bed of the Wolga. After that, we had a sight of the hills once more, on our right side; but they were perfectly parched up with the drought, and piercing heat of the sun; whereas, at other times they are all covered over with a lively verdure. The country-people, indeed, prayed very devoutly for rain, being greatly at a loss for fresh-water for their cattle. Not long after this, we advanced to a place called Sela, which is situate at the foot of the mountains, about sixty wersts distance from Kalkur. There we met with three large Storks, one whereof belonged to his Czarian Majesty. All of them were full of Cossac-women, whom their crews were transporting to Casan, and whose husbands had been executed the year before for their mal-practices, on which we shall take occasion to expatiate in a more proper place. From this place we traversed the mouth of the Waffiele, over against which stands the Nove Derevene, or the new village, which belongs to Count Golowin. As our sailors had been fatigued by a spell, (as they call it) of threelcore wersts, in order to ease them, we rode at anchor the best part of the night. On the fourteenth, as the wind blew briskly abast, we went down the river at a great rate. A vessel freighted principally with earthen ware, passed by us, bound for Astracan; and by eleven

1703

Plate 28.

Calmuc
Tartars.

when we reached a place called Sela, which is threelcore wersts from Astracan; where the hills, covered with a kind of moss, and full of stones. I met with several fishermen, and got their fish with our small quantity of it being a commodity they being a commodity they no sell: This spot about cake. Soon afterwards ed with a very impetuous thunder and rain, which fell with forces as in sea, which reduced us of riding at anchor under shelter of the where our bark struck against the trunks of so were in danger of being as well as of losing vessels have but a few they durst not venture open current when in tempestuous; because of strength sufficient to dining. This tempest happily put of short duration, and we went ashore from Sela, where we fire, and met with roses, and other flowers well recovered our nine we had been in, had been at, we returned but no longer were we but one of our Astracan was taken so violently was almost destroyed above three hours, did he lay motionless; a he showed some tokens of faint speechless. I and confusion on account we arrived at Sela, him upon deck; some blood that was of his mouth; from jected, that his mist posthumous in his throat never survive it. I however, we sent for a physician, or people; there was

Y be plainly perceived, by 1703
sard, No. XXVIII. When
enced a league further, we
town of Siefon, which is
large, and has several chur-
uilt with stone. Here indeed,
is are both dry and naked,
rather on, they made a bet-

the Tartars infest these pla-
off, by violence and rapine,
an and best, but every thing

Chief
Tatars.

least value that falls in their
re advanced still farther on, we
river to wind very much,
islands, full of trees; but as
was covered with water to a
gree, it was with difficulty
discern the bed of the
ter that, we had a sight of the
more, on our right side; but
perfectly parched up with
and piercing heat of the
s, at other times they are
ver with a lively verdure,
-people, indeed, prayed very
r rain, being greatly at a
h-water for their cattle. Not
is, we advanced to a place
which is situate at the foot of
as, about sixty wersts dis-
ur. There we met with three
s, one whereof belonged to his
very. All of them were full
omen, whom their crews
wing to Casan, and whole
been executed the year be-
ir mal-practices, on which
ce occasion to expiate in a
place. From this place we
mouth of the Wulfie, over
ch stands the Nové Deréens,
new village, which belongs to
As our sailors had
blown. As they call
ed by a spell (as they call
more wersts, in order to ease
ode at anchor the best part
On the fourteenth, as the
sickly abate, we went down
great rate. A vessel freight-
ly with earthen ware, passed
ad for Astracan; and by ele-

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

121

ven we reached a place called Woskef-
niska, which is threescore and five miles
from Saratof; where the hills were very
steep, covered with a kind of grey sand,
and full of stones. In this place we
met with several fishermen, who exchan-
ged their fish with our people for but
a small quantity of their brandy, that
being a commodity they are not allowed
to sell: This spot abounds with lofty
oaks. Soon afterwards we were terrifi-
ed with a very impetuous storm of wind,
thunder, and rain, which made the river
swell with surges as high as some in the
sea; which reduced us to the necessity
of riding at anchor for some time,
under shelter of the larboard-shore;
where our bark struck with that violence
against the trunks of some trees, that we
were in danger of being lost ourselves,
as well as of losing our boats; for such
vessels have but a small anchor, which
they durst not venture to let go in the
open current, when the wind is any ways
tempestuous; because it would not prove
of strength sufficient to secure them from
driving. This tempest, however, proved
happily but of short duration. When night
came on, we went ashore, about 20 wersts
from Saratof, where we kindled a good
fire, and met with several oaks, wild
roses, and other flowers. Having pretty
well recovered our selves from the pan-
nic we had been in, and the fatigue we
had been at, we returned to our bark;
but no sooner were we all got on board;
but one of our Armenian passengers
was taken so violently ill, that his life
was almost despaired of; the fit held him
above three hours, during which time
he lay motionless; afterwards, indeed,
he shewed some tokens of life, but con-
tinued speechless. During our concern
and confusion on account of this disaster,
we arrived at Saratof. There we brought
him upon deck; where we perceived
some blood that was clotted come out
of his mouth; from whence we con-
jectured, that his misfortune was an im-
posthume in his throat, and that he could
never survive it. In the mean time,
however, we sent a special messenger
for a physician, or surgeon, but to no
purpose; there was no such experienced

An Arme-
nian mer-
chant ta-
ken sud-
denly ill.

Saratof.

perfon to be found. As I was incapable
myself of being any ways assistant to the
unhappy patient, I went and took a fur-
vey of the place; which is situate in the
south-east of Russia, but on the north-
east of the Wolga, partly against, and
partly upon a hill, and its suburbs, or
out-parts, extend along the river. I
perceived, that tho' there were no walls
in the higher parts of it; yet there were
several wooden-towers, at some con-
siderable distance one from another.
At about a quarter of a league from the
river, there is a gate; and on the left-
hand, another, separate from the town;
and on the side of Moscow by land, a
third, with palisadoes between them.

When I went on that side, which is on
the right-hand of the river, there was
a descent with several gardens; and be-
yond the last-mentioned gate, there is a
campaign country and a high-road, that
is much frequented by all such as travel
from Astracan to Moscow by land; and
here there is little or nothing worthy of
observation but a few wooden churches.

'Tis proper, however, to inform the
reader, that the inhabitants are not only
all Russians, but almost all of them
military men, and under the command
of a governor. Not above eight-years
since, the whole place was reduced to
ashes by an unhappy fire; but at present,
it is all new-built. In these parts the
Tartars are perpetually committing out-
rages and devastations, extending them-
selves even as far as the Caspian, and the
river Jaika. It is computed to lie 350
wersts from Samara; and in the latitude
of 52 degrees 12 minutes. There we
saw several barks, full of soldiers, bound
for Asoph, and elsewhere; and departed
from thence before noon. From the
river there is no prospect of any thing
but the towers and tops of churches;
because the suburbs lie between the city
and the river.

When we returned to our vessel, we
found our unhappy fellow-traveller in
the very same piteous condition in which
we left him; and about three he took his
last gasp, which surprized us so much the
more, as he had been before on shore,
and then seemed as active and sprightly
as

The bodies
death of an
Armenian.

I i

as

1703
is lamented
by his com-
panions.

Their fune-
ral ceremo-
nies.

as any of his associates, who expressed a general concern for him, and covered him over decently enough with a cotton cloth, which they tied fast about his legs; then they placed a book upon his head, a-crofs on his breast, and an incense-pot at his head. Two of them, after these preliminary good offices, read out of some proper book of devotion, for two hours successively, and during that interval, his other friends took care to provide for him a winding-sheet, a shirt, and a pair of drawers of new cloth. When this was done, his servants went on shore, in order to procure a decent place for his interment; but before they removed the corpse, they read a second time over him, and concluded with a funeral dirge. As soon as the corpse was landed on shore, they stripped it; washed his head first, and then his whole body, which they placed upon a plank, and then put on his new shirt and drawers; when they had so done, they furnished him with a crofs, which hung down upon his breast; and put a chaplet, or string of beads, after that, in his right-hand, and in his left a taper. In the next place, they clapt plaisters, or small wads of linen, over his eyes, mouth, and ears, and laid his arms a-crofs; this done, they wrapped him up in the sheet before-mentioned, and put him on a bier, which was covered with a carpet. From thence they carried his remains in procession to the summit of the hill, where a decent grave had been before dug for his reception, and there they began to sing and read once more; and when his associates had, one after another, saluted his forehead, they committed his body to the earth; and each of them flung a handful of sand into his grave; making use at the same time of the sign of the crofs, and some other petty ceremonies, according to the custom of their country. At length they filled up the grave with earth and stones, and erected a large wooden crofs at his head, and three small ones a-crofs, one over the other. After that they threw large stones upon his grave, and strewn a small quantity of gun-powder all around it; not forgetting to place a taper likewise at the head. When these

friendly offices were over, they each of them kissed the highest stone, as they advanced in due form, and then burnt incense upon it, and setting fire to the gun-powder, they presented to all the company then present a small glass of brandy. Every passenger in our vessel, without exception, attended this funeral, nor could some of the other merchants refrain from shedding a tear as a testimony of their respect for one, who had so lately appeared amongst them in his full bloom. The name of this gentleman was Peter Archangel, and his usual place of abode was at Ipsahan, where his wife and children had lived for some considerable time, impatient to see him, and in hopes of his safe return. This hill, which is parted from the rest, and surrounded with oaks, willows, and alder-trees, had here and there a rose-tree in the bud; and had the soil proved somewhat moister, in all probability, we had met with divers plants, as well as flowers: we could not, however, go down to the village, because the waters were out. The name of this mountain is Goroponoffkie, and is computed to be about 26 wersts distant from Saratof. As we advanced farther, we had several prospects as agreeable as the most lively imagination can possibly devise. On the sixteenth, we saw once more several steep mountains, which were crumbled away in divers places, extremely sandy, and full of swallows nests, from whence we saw a great number of them fly in and out. Here likewise the river abounds with islands; and at some considerable distance we espied the golden mountain, called Solofogori, and several others, which were covered with verdure, and abounded with trees; and between two of them, we could perceive the small river called Doeziinke, whose waters flow to the north-west, and which is computed to be about 25 wersts from Sarogamis. Advancing still farther on our way, we met with a wood, which stood between us and the hills, and partly in the water, where two vessels had been cast away, when the waters of the river were at their highest, but not broken to pieces. Here likewise we had a sight of some fishermen's huts;

1703

huts; and when night came by Sarogamis, a town four years erecting, and w

by Sarogamis, a town four years erecting, and w
The
Kamulda
On the left-hand, and
the river, steep and ex
the town is erected, is w
order to reside here. Th
families, who came fro
played. There were l
number of workmen were
wall, in the completion
dently large, and surround
four years erecting. The
by Sarogamis, a town v

The golde
mountain
called Sa-
lofogori.

River of
Doeziinke
Sarogamis

The hill of
Goropon-
offkie.

very busy in the erecting
with a mud wall round
of the river Kamulda
however, was not carrie
vigour as it should be;
were incapable of withst
mency of the weather.
that reason, and no
Carian majesty declin
of digging a canal from
(or) Black-sea. I went
this work; where I
original intention was t
tom, where the first
that was wholly laid a
the indignity of the a
was likewise taken to
one mountain to the
intercept the course of
river, and prevent its
into the Volga; the

... were over, they each of the highest stone, as they due form, and then burnt it, and setting fire to the they presented to all the an present a small glass of very passenger in our vessel, tion, attended this funeral, ne of the other merchants edding a tear as a testimony it for one, who had so lately ought them in his full bloom. of this gentleman was Peter and his usual place of abode n, where his wife and chil- for some considerable time, re him, and in hopes of his

This hill, which is parted and surrounded with oaks, a alder-trees, had here and ure in the bud; and had the somewhat mother, in all pro- had met with divers plans, as s: we could not, however, e village, because the waters

the name of this mountain is distant from Saratof. As farther, we had several greasable as the most lively can possibly devise. On the we saw once more several steep which were crumbled away

ices, extremely sandy, and sows nests, from whence we number of them fly in and likewise the river abounds

and at some considerable elped the golden mountain, otogori, and several others, covered with verdure, and with trees; and between two we could perceive the small

Dozibuke, whose waters flow h-west, and which is computed it 25 wersts from Sarogamis. still farther on our way, we wood, which stood between hills, and partly in the water, vessels had been cast away, vessels of the river were at their not broken to pieces. Here had a sight of some fishermen's huts;

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

Sarogamis.

huts; and when night came on, we passed by Sarogamis, a town which had been four years erecting, and was then considerably advanced. The place was moderately large, and surrounded with a mud wall, in the completion whereof a great number of workmen were at that time employed. There were then near 400 families, who came from Moscow, in order to reside there. The hill, whereon the town is erected, is very lofty towards the river, steep and exceedingly rocky. On the left-hand, and below the town, runs the river called Kamuschinka, whose waters flow westerly; and springs, as we are informed, from the canal of Hoba, which falls into the (*bb*) Don, whose waters empty themselves into the lake (*cc*) Mocotis, and divide (*dd*) Europe from Asia. According to some accounts, we are told, that the Cossacs, who resided on the banks of the Don, made it a constant practice to come in boats upon the Wolga, and commit very great depredations in those parts, notwithstanding a considerable number of men, well skilled in military affairs, were frequently dispatched in order to chastize them for their insolent deportment: As all these precautions, however, proved ineffectual, this town was erected on purpose to restrain them. There were several workmen, moreover, very busy in the erection of a kind of fort, with a mud wall round it, on the other side of the river Kamuschinka. This building, however, was not carried on with that vigour as it should be; as the workmen were incapable of withstanding the inclemency of the weather. And it was for that reason, and no other, that his Czarian majesty declined his intention of digging a canal from this place into the (*ee*) Black-sea. I went to take a survey of this work; where I was informed, the original intention was to have erected this town, where the first was begun; but that it was wholly laid aside on account of the inclemency of the air. A resolution was likewise taken to make a dike from one mountain to the other, in order to intercept the course of the last-mentioned river, and prevent its waters from falling into the Wolga; that project, however,

The river
Kamuschin-
ka.

123

1703

was likewise laid aside, because the gates of the sluices were incapable of bearing up against the weight and violent pressure of the waters, which from time to time descended from the mountains. Besides this, the soil which lay beneath the stream, was so stony, and so much of it was solid rock, that there was no possibility of accomplishing a penetration through it. The consideration of all these difficulties were such a check upon the spirits of the projector, that he lay under an indispensable obligation to desist from his undertaking; left, after all his toil and fatigue, his endeavours should prove altogether vain and ineffectual.

We had reached thus far, not so much through the assistance of our sails, as by the rapidity of the current, and the dint of our oars; by virtue whereof, we advanced on our way after the rate of 120 wersts in a day, that is to say, in four and twenty hours. On the seventeenth in the morning, we traversed the river, called Boblolea, which is 90 wersts from the last town we passed by, where we met with a stout vessel that belonged to his Czarian majesty, and was on its passage from Astracan. In this place I drew the prospect which the reader will find in the plate No. XXX.

The river
Boblolea.

Pl. XXX.

About eleven we had such a violent squall of wind from the hills, that we were obliged to double-man our oars; and notwithstanding all their united strength, it was with the utmost difficulty that we kept clear of the larboard-shore: And after all our efforts, we were reduced to the necessity of making ourselves fast to some trees that were covered with water, at the foot of the mountains. Fair weather, however, coming on again, we quitted our hold, and advanced still forwards on our way as far as the island, which lay on the left of us, and was called Alinda Loeka. The mountain runs out to such a degree in a point towards this island, that the passage between them is extremely narrow; this place is computed to be three-score wersts from Zaritsa. Soon after this, we were blown on the shore by a sudden squall of wind; we were not long, however, before we got afloat again; but

The island
of Alinda
Loeka.

on Zaritsa. There is a canal
 cation between the Don and
 which lies behind this island,
 navigable, as I am informed,
 by the Russian Serpukhe as
 island. Soon after this, we
 the sight of the mountains, and
 k we had advanced three score
 Zaritsa, having passed by it
 in our way. In the men
 hills extended themselves still
 farther from us, up the coun-
 Tzenogor, to which we had
 is yet to sail, the river being
 it four wersts in breadth. At
 wind blew directly ahead, but
 that it was with no small
 t we kept our vessel from
 it to one side or the other,
 running aground. One of our
 is with such violence against
 that we were obliged to cut
 and let her sink. However, we
 e prevented that loss, had we
 and; for I had scarce been out
 a minute or two, on account
 the sporting dog of mine that
 which I removed into the
 my observing that she took
 was found and much better:
 of our passengers had lain in
 night before, as there was no
 us reception for them in the
 On the evening we were ab-
 far as the town of Tzenogor,
 o wersts distant from Zaritsa;
 at a great rate, as the wind
 ly fair for us all the preced-
 his town is about 300 wersts
 an, and situate on a hill upon
 shore. The first thing we
 of, was a Corps de Garde, and
 a very imperfect one, as we
 no more of it than the roof,
 and on the other side, there
 built with wood, in the form
 The town itself is very
 surrounded with a wooden
 but defended, indeed, with
 as nothing, however, remain-
 and nothing but a few petty,
 houses, or huts, which very
 de-

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

desirous of going a-shore, in order to di-
 stribute, as well as I could perceive, their
 voluntary benefactions amongst the poor
 people of the place; but the wind blow-
 ing excessively hard, and the current run-
 ning with such a prodigious rapidity, the
 vessel, before they were aware, shot,
 like an arrow from a bow, some consid-
 erable way beyond the town; and we were
 obliged to come to anchor; our cable,
 however, proving too weak to withstand
 the squall and the effort of the stream
 together, it broke, and we ran a-drift.
 This misfortune I very plainly foresaw,
 and advised our hands on board, accord-
 ingly to take down their sails some time
 before we arrived at the town, and to ply
 only their oars; but as they would not
 hearken to my advice, and as the shore
 was very steep, they were under an abso-
 lute necessity of getting into the water,
 and with hawfers to hale the vessel on
 shore: at which time, they took the
 boat, and went back to the town, whilst
 we tarried under the lee of the hills. I
 made one amongst the number, but as it
 was somewhat late before we got thither;
 the soldiers and inhabitants of the place
 would not admit us, but shut the gates
 for safety-sake upon us. However, they
 were so humane as to offer us beer, bread,
 milk and eggs, in case we were inclined
 to purchase such provisions. When we
 were all returned to the vessels, strict
 search was made for our anchor, but all
 to no purpose; in the morning, indeed,
 upon a repeated search we happily found
 it. This town is inhabited principal-
 ly by soldiers, who are planted there,
 in order to withstand the too frequent
 insults and outrages of the Calmuc
 Tartars, who sometimes come clan-
 destinely, and not only carry off what
 cattle they find in their way, but scour the
 country as far as Samara itself. On the
 nineteenth, as the wind sat directly against
 us, we plied our oars; and whilst we
 were rowing along, we had sight of sever-
 al steep hills, which were green at top,
 but sandy about the sides; and in this
 place the river was about a werst broad.
 From thence we steered our course to a
 grand wear, or fishery, which was about

125

1703

four score wersts from Tzenogor. This
 wear, which the Russians call Kasarskie,
 abounds with fine fish of divers kinds;
 here likewise we perceived a gulph, which
 the river Wolga had formed by its infringe-
 ment on the adjacent lands. When we
 had advanced 125 wersts on our way, we
 came at night to an anchor; at break of
 day, however, we weighed her again,
 and on the twentieth proceeded on our
 voyage: As the wind stood very fair for
 us, we reached within a hundred wersts
 of Astracan, by twelve o'clock. There
 we doubled a point, in which place the
 river winds round with such a rapid
 course, that vessels are frequently lost in the
 whirl-pool; the water there being forty fa-
 thom deep. As we advanced still farther on,
 we saw a great number of ducks, and an
 island likewise, which was ten wersts in
 length, in a kind of reach, where the
 river is very wide. There was a guard of
 about thirty soldiers, at the point of this
 little island, who had three or four
 cabbins to sit in, and shelter them from
 the inclemencies of the weather, where
 they stop all vessels that offer to pass by
 them without their permission. Whilst we
 were here, we saw on the opposite-side,
 two barks that came from Astracan, but
 the soldiers, observing that they were
 making off, got directly into a boat and
 sailed after them. There were two vessels
 riding at anchor here, bound for Casan,
 besides ours; however, we were detained
 no longer than an hour; and when we
 were got at a small distance forwards,
 we saw several hills, that extend them-
 selves as far as Astracan. By seven o'
 clock, we were advanced within twenty-
 two wersts of that city; and in about an
 hour after that, we saw a stout vessel on
 shore, which had been partly broke in
 pieces, notwithstanding there were several
 persons still on board. Not long after the
 sight of that vessel in distress, we discerned
 at some distance the church of Saboor,
 which is a very large one; and by about
 eleven that same night we arrived at As-
 tracan, which is 2000 wersts, or 400
 German leagues from Moscow. Casan
 stands much about the mid-way.

K k

Occa-

The worn
 called K. k.
 has been.

quishing habits; and as they have
is, whilst they are scholars, so re-
spect any fellowships when they
it degrees. The schools consist
of brick buildings, three to
the uppermost whereof the inge-
had his printing-room. A dis-
school is a physic garden, where
ts of botany read lectures. Their
er wear gowns but at lectures,
preside at public disquisitions.
is in great esteem for its manu-
their anatomy-theatre is laid to
Padua, and Surgeons-Hall in
g a greater variety of skeletons
of all kinds. There is a con-
an manufacture in Leyden.

5, or Graven Hague, is in the
east longitude, 4 latitude 30.
in the United Provinces, in the
Holland, situate two miles east of
Hilles north-west of Rotterdam,
sixth-west of Leyden, encompassed
meadows and groves, but no
therefore esteemed a village, but
west and most elegant in Europe,
the privileges of a city of Hol-
that of sending representatives
s. But here the states of the pro-
land, and the state-general assem-
as the council of state, and their
s of justice; and here foreign mi-
nistered to audience, and all pub-
here was an apartment for the
Orange, when stadholders; the
of the states general, and provincial,
council of state. On the west
is a large area, surrounded by
s, and planted with fine walks of
in make it sometimes to be sur-
J. James Park; and here every day
ted Provinces has a horse for their
epurities. But notwithstanding this
populous, and there is so great a
ple of figure here, they have but
in it. On the north-side of the
walk, planted with lime-trees,
one, extending to the village of
by the sea-side.

(1) *Afoph*, see p. 51. n. *b*.

(u) *Nifén*, *Nifna*, *Nifi Novogorod*, see p. 61. n. *f*.

(w) *Caspian Sea*, see p. 66. n. *q*.

(x) *Asia*, is situate between 25 and 148 degrees of eastern longitude, and between the Equator and 72 degrees of north latitude, and bounded by the Frozen Ocean on the north; by the Pacific Ocean on the east; by the Indian Ocean on the south; and separated from Africa by the Red-Sea on the south-west, and by the Archipelago, the Euxine-sea, &c. which separate it from Europe on the north-west. This quarter also is thrown into three divisions, viz. I. The empire of China, Chinese Tartary, and the Oriental islands on the east. II. India, Ufbec Tartary, Calmuc Tartary, and Siberia in the middle. III. Persia, Arabia, Astracan, and Circassian Tartary, and Turkey in Asia on the west; the whole being 4,800 miles in length from east to west, and 4300 in breadth from north to south.

(y) *Tartary*, see p. 18. n. *i*.

(z) *Bulgar*, see p. 70. n. *pp*.

(aa) *Siberia*, see p. 17. n. *b*.

(bb) *The Don*, or *Tanais*, see p. 62. n. *l*.

(cc) *The Meotis*, see p. 102. n. *f*.

(dd) *Europe*, is situate between 36 and 72 degrees of north latitude, and between 10 degrees west; and 65 degrees of eastern longitude, being about 3000 miles long from north to south, and 2500 miles broad from east to west; bounded by the frozen ocean part of the Atlantic on the north, and by Asia on the east, by the Mediterranean sea, which separates it from Africa, on the south, and by another part of the Atlantic ocean on the

west. — It is thrown into three grand divisions, viz. I. The north, or upper division, consisting of 1. Russia or Moscow, 2. Sweden, 3. Denmark and Norway, and 4. the islands of Britain, Iceland, Greenland, and those of the Baltic. — II. The middle division which consists of, 1. Poland, 2. Germany, and the hereditary dominions of the house of Austria contiguous to it, 3. the Low Countries, or Netherlands, 4. France with its late conquest and acquisitions on the Rhine. — III. The southern division, which comprehends, 1. Turkey in Europe (the antient Greece chiefly) the tributary provinces of Moldavia, Walachia, the Crim and lesser Tartary, 2. Switzerland, with the garisons and the rest of their allies and subjects, 3. Italy, Spain, and Portugal, and 4. the islands of the Mediterranean, consisting of those in the Archipelago, Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, Majorca and Ivica.

(ee) *Black-sea* or *Euxine-sea*, which lies between Europe and Asia, being bounded by Tartary on the north; by Circassia, Mingrelia, and Georgia towards the east; by Natolia, or the lesser Asia on the south; and by Romania, Bulgaria and Bessarabia towards the west; extending from the 29th degree of east longitude to the 44th, and from the 42d to the 46th degree of north latitude, entirely surrounded by the Grand Signior's dominions, who enjoys the sole navigation of it, but disturbed sometimes by the excursions of the Cossacs, who issue out of the mouth of the Boristhenes, and commit great ravages on the coasts of Turkey. The Russians did attempt to establish a navigation on this sea, but have been obliged by late treaties to deliver up all the fortresses they had erected on the coasts of the Euxine, and abandon this navigation. It is reckoned a tempestuous sea by the Turks, from whence it is said to have obtained the name of the Black-sea; and there are not many good harbours in it.

C H A P. XVI.

A Description of (a) Afracan. The Situation of the Gardens there. A profusion of Fish. The manner of Living among the Tartars.

The author's arrival at Afracan.

Is courteously received by the governor.

NO sooner were we landed, but every thing we had was immediately searched, my baggage only excepted. The first step I took was to wait on the governor of the place, whose name was Timafe Joanowitz Urstoffie, into whose hands I delivered my two passports, with a letter from the Knez Boris Alexewitz, who received me in the most courteous manner. No sooner had he perused my credentials, but he gave me an invitation to reside in his house, and wanted for nothing there during my intended stay in the place. I returned him many thanks for those unexpected testimonies of his respect; but intimated to him the obligations I lay under to my Armenian fellow-travellers; whose language I perfectly understood, and in whose company, I proposed to pursue my intended journey into (b) Persia; with this reasonable excuse he appeared very well satisfied, and sent my baggage, without the least search, or examination, and gave orders for its being carried directly to the Caravanferai belonging to the Armenians, where I lodged, as I have hinted before, with one Mr. Jacob Davidof. In less than an hour after we had dined, the governor very obligingly sent eight or ten of his domestics to us with a present of the following refreshments; namely, a cag of choice brandy, a large copper-vase, neatly tinned, full of red-wine, and two others much of the same size and form, full of mead and strong beer; four large loaves, two geese, and about ten or a dozen pullets. No sooner were these attendants of the governor dismissed, with a small present in return, according to my con-

as the last before us is a large herd to the we were informed was leagues in length, and towards the Black-Sea, at not so many, towards the salt here is extremely conveyed from hence to majesty's dominions.

This city has a free least a league in circumference gives for its several gates for its I went out through the bay, or the Nikolke- ed the river upwards round it. From there Red-Gate, or that called in the highest, and most the town. From then came into the count the Granary-Gate, or Warte, which was but then there was another, through which passed. This last was likewise surrounded with new buildings it the enclosure of the city proceeded to the Warte which, at some from the town, there which is not reason Warte. This is it who have their and a Russian guard After this I came to the time and soon after called White-Gate, be are two towers in the 300 paces at least distance. From thence we turned, in order to go to Spiska, and from thence, without any rest, marks for fifty At some distance from the gates stand at some small distance called Green-Gate, and far from it, is the particular spot of bakers, who are not their occupations with

stant custom on the like occasions, but two soldiers came to keep guard at my door, who were to be relieved once a week.

A Russian ensign was, moreover, sent to me, who understood the German language tolerably well, to attend me wherever I pleased to go, and act for me in the capacity of an interpreter. Much about that time, the governor had received advice, that the fort of Neyen had been taken by his Czarian majesty on the second of May then last past; and that he found, after the assault, fourscore pieces of cannon, eight mortars, and a garrison of Swedish soldiers amounting to between three and four thousand men, to whom, like a generous victor, he had given their freedom, instead of making them captives.

I took a tour about the city, which is situate on the east of the Wolga, in the ancient Scythia; notwithstanding at present the whole tract of land between the Wolga, the Jaika, and the Caspian-Sea, is called Nojaia, and the country in general, the kingdom of Afracan, from the metropolitan city of that name; which lies in the Asiatic Tartary, on the frontiers of Russia, and on the principal branch of the river Wolga, which, at a few leagues distance from thence, discharges its waters, into the Caspian-Sea; of which we shall treat more largely in its proper place.

This city stands in 46 degrees 22 min. of northern latitude, in a small island, commonly called Dolgoi, which is formed by a little narrow river that may be plainly discerned from one of the towers. The most fertile soil in the parts adjacent lies eastward leading to and proceeding as far

The situation of Afracan.

The fort of Neyen taken by the Czars, and his generous treatment of the Swedish garrison which he found there.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

129

1703

as the Jaika before-mentioned: There is a large heath to the westward, which we were informed was no less than 70 leagues in length, and extended itself towards the Black-Sea, and several leagues, tho' not so many, towards the Caspian. The salt here is extremely fine, and is conveyed from hence all over his Czarian majesty's dominions.

The city
gates.

This city has a strong stone-wall, at least a league in circumference, and ten several gates for its security and defence. I went out through that called St. Nicholas, or the Nikoolske-Warate, and followed the river upwards in order to walk round it. From thence I went to the Red-Gate, or that called Krafnie Warate, in the highest, and most elevated part of the town. From thence I steered my course into the country, till I came to the Granary-Gate, or that called Gietne-Warate, which was shut up indeed, but then there was another leading into the citadel, through which there is a free passage. This last-mentioned Warate is likewise surrounded with a stone-wall, notwithstanding it stands without the enclosure of the city. From thence I proceeded to the Motlagotkie Warate, near which, at some considerable distance from the town, there is a wooden gate, which is not reckoned as one of the city Warates. This is the gate of the Tartars, who have their residence on that side; and a Russian guard is always set there. After this I came to the gate called Refotisine and soon afterwards to another called Wisnenske, between which there are two towers in the walls, which stand 300 paces at least distant from each other. From thence we turned down towards the river, in order to go to the gate called Spaskia, and from that to another called Isadnie, without which are several different markets for fish, bread, herbs, &c. At some distance from these two last-mentioned gates stands another tower, and at some small distance from that the gate called Garenfskie, and without that, but not far from it, is the wood-market, and a particular spot of ground allotted for the bakers, who are not permitted to follow their occupations within the town. From

1703

this last gate we went to that called Ratskie, and passed by another tower which stands in the Mid-way between this gate and the former. Six of the ten gates are situate on the river, two whereof appertain to the citadel, which constitutes one part of the town-wall; and it has a third likewise, which they call Priestmiskinske, or the Clean-gate, which leads into the city over against the Bazar, or High-street, called Bolsjanlitz, where the Russians and Armenians have very large and commodious shops.

As we went through this gate, in order to go into the citadel, we had on the left-hand of us, the church of Saboor, which had been begun five years before we saw it, and was erected at the sole expence of the archbishop, or metropolitan, whose name was Samson. This right reverend prelate has his peculiar privileges over the inferior clergy, and a spiritual-court, or office under his own jurisdiction: he is also the metropolitan of Tirk, a city, under his Czarian majesty's power and authority, on this side the Caspian-Sea, situate on the mountains of Circassia; and distant from Astracan about 700 wersts.

The metropolitan
church

Whilst the workmen were employed in the erection of the dome of this church, one part of it, through a casual defect in the foundation, fell down to the ground; and whilst we were there, they were busy in building five small steeples, each with a dome, and on each they proposed to have a cross. The church is square, and in circumference about 200 paces. The front is 67 in breadth, and the sides 47 in length. As to the back part of it, it stands partly upon the wall belonging to the metropolitan palace, which is the most magnificent structure in the whole town, as well as of the largest extent; and the whole is built with stone. At some small distance from thence, and in the finest part of the space within the citadel, stands the governor's palace: this, however, is a wooden structure, and surrounded with a wooden-wall of its own. It has two gates likewise, one forwards, and the other backwards; and the court-chapel stands without the encient, or inclosure of this palace. Between the Fore-gate, where

L 1

stands

where they sell wines, 17;
beer, under his inspection;
has his majesty's fishery un-
der care,

the river, and without the city-
the convent of Ivan, which is
stone structure, besides two
ers, and divers slabodes, or
principal whereof is that for
residence of the soldiers,
the eastward of the city,
along the river called Koetso-
discharges its waters into the

My ships lie all along that side, over-against the city. After, which are called the Sapelewe, are for any other purpose, however without distinction. for the Tatars is separated from the others, and built for the general use only, and day hardened where they reside during the winter, but when it is Summer, they are in the open country. If it were twelve months before they were reduced to alms; and a few ruins were then subsiding; and, however, when we saw them, a great number of hands employed in rebuilding that part to its former state.

thus gratified my curiosity in
more, I made my applications
for his licence to take
of the place. I thought pro-
posed my request without the
Whereupon I went upon
in a small bark with oars ;
and the stream too rapid for
the end proposed, upon which
was so indulgent as to fur-
with a lighter vessel, that could
hot ; but as it happened at that
dark and rainy weather, I was
disappoint me design to a more
The city, to my
opportunity.
the handiwork appearance
the where the ships lay ; and
spect thereof from thence
as the reader may see by the
XXII annex ; where each par-

ticular is distinguished by their proper figures; as for instance. (1) The convent of Iwan or St. John, (2) That of the Ascension of our Lord, called the Wiefnifenskie. (3) The gate thereof, called the Wiefnifenskie Warate. (4) The church of Smolenske. (5) The convent or cloyfter of Jesus Christ in fwadling clothes, called the Spafk Monafir. (6) The church of Arisjetwa. (7) The Town-hall, called the Amofna. (8) The church of the Annunciation, called the Dwiefi-ins jetfirko. (9) The gate of the Kabbac. (10) The citadel, the enclosure whereof commences in the town, called the Kremli. (11) The steeple, or Klocknife. (12) The Clock-tower, or the Sialoeni. (13) The Metropolitan Church, or the Saboor. (14) The convent of Troyts. (15) St. Nicholas's Gate. (16) The governor's palace. (17) The church called Iwan Bagalfoef, in commemoration of a favourite Saint. (18) The church of Christ in fwadling clothes, called Wofkriffinie Sirko. (19) The Red Gate, which was the farthest advanced towards the river on the fide of the Caspian-fea. (20) The river Wolga, on the other fide whereof rode the fhips that were over againft the city; two whereof were a-ground, and all the reft perfectly rotten, and of no fervice, through the mifmanagement of one captain Meyer, a native of Hamburgh. There were fifteen other fhips that lay a little higher, and came there that year from (c) Cafan.

In this part, there are abundance of gibbets erected, as there are numbers likewise on the other side of the town, on each of which hung no less than six Cossacs, perfectly naked, whose clothes had been sold at market by the Russians, who had stript them: each of their carcasses had been so long broiled by the heat of the sun, that they were as black as pitch, and very shocking to behold. Those, however, who had been hung up nearer the city had been secretly conveyed away by their respective friends. These last, who had been joined by some rebels and deserters from Astracan, had posted themselves at a certain place called Gargan, on a river from whence it derives its name,

with three pieces of cannon, and two colours. Here they were besieged, and obliged to surrender at discretion, after a very vigorous defence for about fourteen days. The day of this surrender was on the 10th of August 1702. The greater part of them were hanged on the frontiers of Russia, where they had been most guilty of their invasions; there were others, that underwent the same execution at Astracan; besides 30 of the principals, or ring-leaders, who were conveyed to Moscow, and all of them either hanged or beheaded. As to their wives and children, they were all sent to Casan.

The prince, or Knez Aldrige Chan Bolatuwitz, who was a Circassian, was present upon this expedition, with 400 of his Tartars; and one Mr. Wigne, a native of Swedeland, was there likewise with a thousand Ruffians, of whom he was commander in chief; and 500 Strelfes were joined to them. Mr. Wigne's regiment had four pieces of cannon, and two mortars; and the Strelfes had indeed eight pieces of cannon, but then they came too late to be of any service. Mr. Wigne protested, in my company, that during the whole course of the siege, he heard in the dead of the night, the howling of 4 or 500 jackalls, or wild dogs, which made the most hideous noise that could possibly be conceived; and yet after the place was surrendered, there was not a single dog to be seen or heard.

The troops that were then in garrison at Afracan, were Mr. Wigne's regiment of 1000 men, exclusive of the officers; namely, the colonel, 2 majors, 5 captains, 10 lieutenants, and ten ensigns; the sergeants and corporals being included in the number of the common soldiers: 600 Mofcovite Strelfes, who were commanded by 6 captains and 12 sergeants; three other regiments of Strelfes, who were natives of the country, and consisted of 300 men each, under the command of a colonel and three captains, or stolnics; two regiments of horse, each consisting of 500 Russians and natives of this city; amounting in the whole to 3500 men. Mr. Wigne's regiment had 13 pieces of cannon, and the rest more or less in proportion.

Al

Rebels pr-
nished.

Hideous
howling of
wild dogs.

1703
Provisions
very plentiful.

All sorts of provisions, except wheat, are very plentiful in this country, and brought here from Casan, and other places; but more particularly fish, of which the Baloege, as it is here called, is in greatest esteem; and some of them are two fathoms at least in length.

The Strelet
a fish in
great esteem.

The Strelet is about an ell long, and notwithstanding you may purchase one here for two-pence or three-pence; yet in Moscow, a single one will sell for 6 or 7 rubles; and, in short, it is the best fish that Russia can boast of. It is generally dressed much after the same manner as the Germans do salmon, and it must be allowed to be a delicious dish. There are two sorts of them; one has a much longer beak than the other; but for the generality, it bears the resemblance of a sturgeon, as the reader may see in the Plate annexed No. XXXIII.

The Soedak
another fine
fish.

I purchased two of them that had been dried in order to keep. The Sev-roeks differ very little from a Sturgeon, which they call an Affetrine; and Cavaer is composed of the Beloges, the Affetrines and the Sevroefmes, and from hence are exported to all parts of the world. They have likewise another very fine fish, called by them the Soedak, which is generally dressed as the Melwell or Stock-fish. They have, moreover, great quantities of Pike and Perch, a fish not unlike a Herring, and divers others. The largest of those that are the least valuable are the Modicnes, with large heads.

The fish-market is full twice every day, that is to say, in the morning, and again at night: and the Wolga yields such a profusion of them, that what they have not a sale for is given to the hogs. Tho' bread is not an excessive dear commodity, they will give the common-people three or four fish, a foot in length, for a single slice of it. As to Bream and Carp, they have plenty of them likewise. In a word, one may purchase of some of the fishermen who live in the suburbs, a Severock, which is as large as a cod, for five-pence or six-pence; and from thence the reader may form a tolerable idea of the price of fish in general. Besides these, they have

a small round fish, of the breadth of about four inches only, and long in proportion, which they call a Viaenie. These are for the generality to be met with in pits, near the mouth of a small river; numbers whereof, I have taken myself in a sieve, and of various sorts; some of them I preserved in spirits, together with several small Soedaks, and there were divers others that I would have preserved likewise had they been smaller.

There are no less than 40 or 50 Armenian families in and about this city, who keep large shops, as I have observed before. The Indians reside in their Caravanferai, where they carry on their respective avocations; and are as numerous as the Armenians, but what is very remarkable they have no women amongst them.

This Caravanferai of theirs is moderately large, and surrounded by a square stone-wall which has several gates, at the two principal whereof there are always guards, and all of them in general are shut up at a stated hour of the night. The Armenian merchants, who only go backwards and forwards, take up their quarters here likewise; and here it was that I resided with them: and there are some of them, indeed, who live and keep open shop there for a constancy, where they have chans, or separate apartments for themselves.

That Caravanferai that is set apart for the service of passengers and travellers, is two stories high, and built with galleries; on the one side; and that for the Indians on the other is all composed of wood; but they have lately erected for themselves a stone-ware-house for fear of fire. This structure is about forty foot square. And the Armenians are following their example; for when I was there the foundation of theirs was raised about six foot.

I had not been long resident in this city before the deputy-governor, or his majesty's lieutenant, whose name was Mekiete Ivanowitz Apcochtemo sent a special messenger to inform me, that he wanted to have some conversation with me.

1703

me. Accordingly I presented myself, and I was met there with the German habit, who their leave, and their coming for them in it was received in a court and after I had been handsly and seen the governor, that I had not needed to him by the for the Car himself, himself to me; Sir, he said to me, now when I can send him many than minutes after he took his to be was gone, the decided me and my friend Jacob Davidoff, into entertained us with treatments and deprecations and compliments, and then he said to him.

Most of the gardens about the city abound with trees, but more I have plenty of apples, peaches, which are none of them I have ever seen. The Water-Melon they have here are even more in Persia. They seldom or never grow above six feet high, and I have seen them to prevent them from them to propagate, which are moderately perfect black, or of as I was informed, for at the season, when they grow in the gardens whether Armenians or there are no great number of them to public sale; but I have seen as many as grow which, principally belonging to the city, who receive all from them.

There were some very pleasurable, the said as they have found

A particular place for Indians and Armenians.

The author visits the deputy governor.

fish, of the breadth of about 1703
3, and long in proportion,
all a Viaque. These are
usually to be met with in pits,
th of a small river; numbers
have taken myself in a sieve,
6 sorts; some of them I pre-
s, together with several small
there were divers others that
preserved likewise had they

no less than 40 or 50 Arme-
in and about this city, who
shops, as I have observed be-
Indians reside in their Can-
re they carry on their respec-
s; and are as numerous as
as, but what is very re-
I have no women amongst

travellers of theirs is mode-
and surrounded by a square
which has several gates, at
principal whereof there are al-
and all of them in general
it a shared hour of the night.
ian merchants, who only go
and on forwards, take up their
e likewise; and here it was
d with them: and there are
am, indeed, who live and keep
there for a constancy, where
chairs, or separate apartments for

general that is set apart for
of passengers and travellers, is
ough, and built with galleries;
side; and that for the Indians
er is all composed of wood;
have lately erected for them-
ne-ware-house for fear of fire.
ture is about forty foot square.
Armenians are following their
for when I was there the
of theirs was raised about six

not been long resident in this
; the deputy-governor, or his
lieutenant, whose name was
vanowitz Apocbieno sent a
essenger to inform me, that he
have some conversation with
me.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

me. Accordingly I paid him a visit the
very next day, and I was so fortunate as
to meet there with the governor and all
his family, with several ladies all drest in
German habits, who were just taking
their leave, and their coaches were wait-
ing for them in the court-yard. I
was received in a courteous manner;
and after I had been entertained with
brandy and beer, the governor was pleased
to say, that I had not only been recom-
mended to him by the Knez Bories, but
by the Czar himself; and then addressing
himself to me; Sir, said he, "I shall be
"glad to see you every day, and let me
"know wherein I can oblige you." I
returned him many thanks, and in a few
minutes after he took his leave. As soon
as he was gone, the deputy-governor car-
ried me and my fellow-traveller Mr.
Jacob Davidof, into another room, and
entertained us with some Persian re-
freshments, and deported himself in such a
courteous and complaisant manner, as is
quite natural to him.

Their gar-
dens.

Most of the gardens which lie round
about the city abound with vines and
fruit-trees; but more particularly, they
have plenty of apples, pears, plums, and
apricots; which are none of the best in-
deed that I have ever tasted.

Water-Me-
lons.

The Water-Melons, however, which
they have here are more delicious than
even those in Persia.

Their Vine-
yards.

They seldom or never let their vines
grow above six feet high; for then they
prune them to prevent their growth, and
fasten them to proper poles. Their
Grapes are moderately large, and either
perfectly black, or of a purple colour,
as I was informed; for I was not there
at the season; when they are ripe, such as
grow in the gardens of private persons,
whether Armenians or others, of which
there are no great numbers, are frequently
exposed to public sale; but wine is made
of all such grapes as grow in the vineyards,
which principally belong to his Czarian
majesty, who receives all the profits arising
from them.

These wines when made, are red, and
very palatable; the soil is very sandy;
and as they have springs there in plenty,

133

1703

they frequently sink pits in their gardens,
and furnish them with water by subter-
raneous pipes. And from these pits they
draw up what water is from time to time
wanted, with a large wheel, whereto pro-
per buckets are fastened, which throw it
into wooden-gutters, or spouts, from
whence it is distributed, just as they think
most proper, throughout the garden; and
one single camel is strong enough to turn
all the wheels. These vineyards, or gar-
dens, are at the distance of two or three
wersts from the city; and the number of
them daily encreases; and as they are
open, they have what they call Guerits,
or watch-houses, at proper distances,
where centres are placed, to take care that
no passengers shall make too free with the
grapes, when they are ripe, and fit for use.
It is above a century ago, since they were
first cultivated, and as I am credibly in-
formed, they were brought to perfection
by several Persian merchants, who had
brought some choice slips from their own
country for that important purpose.

The author
pays a visit
to the Per-
sian ambas-
sador.

I had not been many days resident
in this city, before I went, in person, to
pay my respects to Mr. Serochen Beek,
who was intended by the king of Persia
to be sent in the capacity of his ambassador
to the Swedish court; but as his Czarian
majesty happened at that very juncture to
be engaged in an open war with the king
of Sweden, he was not only refused a
passage through the Czar's dominions;
but by his orders was put under an arrest;
inasmuch that he had resided in (d)
Muscovy for near three years successively.
He had about threescore persons in his
retinue, and left (e) Moscow, not above
a week before my own departure from
that city,

I found him sitting, according to the
custom of the Persians, on a sofa, and met
with a very courteous reception. He
treated me with a dish or two of coffee,
and some kullabnat, a very pleasant liquor
so called, composed principally of fine
sugar and rose-water.

He was a gentleman of a very graceful
deportment and of a very affable disposi-
tion. His mustachoes extended them-
selves to his very ears; and his beard hung
M m
down

His cha-
racter.

of the same month, eight there from Persia; four aged to the Russians, and the Turks; they had likewise an merchants on board of

whole time that I remained the governor was continually with the testimony of his was, by making me one prisoner, and by entertaining me at with all kinds of Persian re- and would frequently pre- know wherein he could be re: But of all his proffered

me, I accepted of nothing which was such liquor as purchased for money, and as was to acceptable, I never a sufficient stock of it. As

well that I proposed to re- w for some considerable time, in favour of me to draw, was

picture, but his too's like- is he made it his study to in every thing, I could not, gratitude, revivé compling at a request. Among other made me a present of a bird

when shot, indeed, upon the plain, ked. As to its body and feet, near resemblance to a heron;

however, as well as the bill is very beautiful, and of a quite a from those of the bird last-

He had a white tuft on his is bill was as black as ebony, inches in length, and an inch in breadth; the tip of it was yellow, and resembled a pur-

The name of this extraordinary in the Russian language is *Lopé- Colaptes*, which is a term in-

There are several of them where they are known and dis-

by the name of Goli. I pre- head of one of them, as the see in the Plate No. XXXIV.

There are herons like- vexed. There are met with in this country to be met with in this which are named *Lopé- Colaptes*. They

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

135

They are of variegated colours, white and an azure blue (like peacocks) grey and black. One of them is drawn; the reader will perceive with his neck shortened in Plate XXXV. hereto likewise annexed.

I frequently took a tour with captain Wagenaer, to the place where the Tartars reside, which is but three or four wersts from the city. They incamp in companies; each family apart, and at some considerable distance from each other. Their tents are erected in the form of parrot-cages; with this difference only, that they are not, in proportion near so lofty. They are composed of laths, which are three or four Inches in breadth, and are covered over with nothing but a felt or a hair-cloth. Some of them hang down but within a foot or two of the ground; and are surrounded only with either thatch or stubble. Those that are the most commodious are covered with cloth, and have an aperture at the top, in order to let out the smoke; they have likewise a pole in the middle, which sticks out four or five feet, to the end whereof they affix a fort of sail, painted with a variety of colours, which falls down to the ground, and is fastened there with a kind of strap, without one of the sides of the tent, and by virtue of that, they turn this painted sail which way they please, in order to keep out either the wind or the sun, whenever they find it necessary. When there is no smoke in any of these tents, and they are inclined to keep themselves warm, they cover their openings up, and then they are like so many stoves. The floors of them are covered with either particoloured stuffs or fine carpets; and such amongst them in particular who are of the higher class, have a sofa some small matter raised from the ground, after the manner of the Mahometans, which takes up at least one third of the tent; others are furnished with trunks and chests, in which they deposit their most valuable effects; and for the generality, these are very fine, and their other furniture perfectly neat and clean, and ranged in proper order. When they change their situation, they

throw their tents into waggons, and when the covering is taken off, the women and children sit in them; whilst the men attend them on horseback. They looked upon me, at my first coming amongst them, with a jealous eye; but when they perceived, that I had no other view, but the innocent gratification of my curiosity, they voluntarily shewed me almost every thing I requested to see. Tho' they very seldom suffer strangers to come near those tents where their women are; yet even that favour at last they granted me. In one of them accordingly, I saw a very pretty Brunette, and exceedingly well drest: her head-clothes were peculiarly remarkable, consisting of silver-gilt, or copper, and all covered with gold ducats, pearls, and precious stones; I was, in short, perfectly charmed with her, and I determined to draw her picture, for which she afterwards sat. In the interim, I made a draught of several of their tents, as I found them pitched at but a small distance from each other; as the reader may observe in Plate Numb. XXXVI. and one in particular at letter A; Plate Numb. XXXVII. hereto annexed. At letter B. in the same plate, the reader will have a perfect idea of the form of one of their waggons, which is drawn upon two large wheels. This vehicle is composed of wood which is painted, and covered with stuff, which is supported by two cross sticks before, and rests upon beams. When they deposit their tents in them, then the wheels are covered. Their chapel is placed on one side, and distinguished in the plate by letter C. Their common tents are only covered with felt, and the sail above is of the same; and they are as ordinary within as without. As their principal subsistence depends on the cattle they are possessed of, they always make choice of the best pasture-grounds they can meet with. Their women are principally employed in making up cloaths, and other things of the like nature; and when finished, they carry them into the city, and there dispose of them in open market. They observe the same Method, in their sewing, as the Russians do, but spin like the Germans,

with

1703

Pl. No.
XXXV.

Pl. No.
XXXVI.

Pl. No.
XXXVII.

back part of her mitre, came
it, and partly fell down be-
this, she had several silver
in shoulders, and around her
e of which hung divers little
in which she carried her toys
er-book. Her hair was tied
ad black ribbon, which had
tuffs, or tassels, at the end,
the plate annexed. This
of the most considerable li-
at the Tartars, and had three
eans. She was introduced to
by a Tartar of his acquaint-

ns distinguish the Tartars
these parts by the appella-
, because they are natives
neither, in fact, do they
te to his Czarian majesty,
ation they lie under to him is
, that they must lend a cer-
of their men into the field of
the Czar should require it.
ing this, in time of war,
0,000 able and experienced
occasion.

as, who, at Astracan, are di-
the name of Indians, share
a very peculiar manner at
ion of the year; for they
a up by the roots with the
ck-knife, till their blood runs
their cheeks. The priest,
n whom they dignify with
title, takes the first stroke,
does not execute his task
to their entire satisfaction,
stretch, crying out, *Sukle-*
temakale, or *Bellou Bakou*,
and dancing about at the

and dancing about at the
a variety of antic postures,
ook upon as a sort of a trea-
h to their grand idol *Sukle-*
is annual, religious rite was
th abundance of solemnity,
nary, which stood in the
short time before my arti-
as precise it are Indians,
n have their residence in
the Tartars. Those who
recede in tennis all round
y of Fieks. The Crim-

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

137

Tartary, however, never settle there; and only bring their cattle to market from time to time as occasion offers.

The govern-
nor's grand
entertain-
ment.

On the 20th instant the governor gave a grand entertainment, to which I was invited; as were likewise some of the principal Russian officers, and the most considerable amongst the Armenian merchants. In the first place, we were conducted into an apartment, where were the governor's lady and his daughter-in-law, with several of their female retinue; and on the right-hand stood a table, which was covered with a variety of dainties; and such liquors as was most agreeable for the morning. These two ladies presented each of us with a small cup of brandy, a customary compliment in this country, and from thence we went into the grand hall, where the dinner was set on the table. And after a great variety of fine dishes, and rich liquors, and the entertainment perfectly over, we were all sent home in coaches, provided for that particular purpose.

A second
grand en-
tertain-
ment on
the Czar's
name-day.

The next day, being St. Peters, was the Czar's name-day, when the governor gave a second entertainment, at which, not only the patriarch, but all the chiefs of the city were present; but as I happened at that juncture to be very greatly indisposed, I could not be there myself, neither could I attend them to their Metropolitan-church, in order to assist at the solemnity, to which I had received an invitation in form some few days before. On this occasion there were great rejoicings, and all the cannon upon the ramparts as well as those before the palace were discharged over and over. According to custom, the ladies were in another apartment, and the subaltern officers were handsomely treated the next day, and dismissed betimes.

July 2.

On the second of July, news was brought that his Czarian majesty was got within fifteen wersts of Nerva, with his victorious army, which swept off every thing that fell in their way.

July 3.

The day following I took a tour in a chaise towards the heath, by way of amusement, with the governor's son, and some officers, who had a Hawk with

them. When we were got about twenty wersts from the city, we saw, indeed, abundance of game, but could get no part of it, on account of the lands being at that time laid all under water. I happened, however, to bring down a duck that took her flight directly over my head. As we were disappointed in our diversion of shooting, we determined to amuse ourselves with fishing in a small adjacent river; where we caught plenty of pike and perch, which we took care to have elegantly dressed, and made a hearty meal of them. The same day, we saw a great number of Tartars encamped in some rich pasture-lands, which were full of such horses as belonged to the inhabitants of Astracan. Some of them were beautiful enough, and we had a great inclination to try their mettle in our Chaises; but they were too wanton and unruly, as they had been at grafs there all the Summer-season, in fine meadows, which are frequently to be met with in these parts. There is scarce a carman throughout the whole city, but is master of a fine horse; there is not a bad, or a lean one, to be met with, which is an incident which I never observed in any place before.

As the time of my departure from this city drew near, I not only desired, but very readily procured all the room that I had occasion for, in such of the barks as seemed most fitting for my purpose; and accordingly I made choice of some of the largest. Most of the Armenian merchants likewise were making all due preparations for their removal, as well as some Persians, who were returning from Moscow to Samachi, otherwise called Samofshi. Among the rest, was the Cham's Falconer, with five or six hawks, which he was carrying with him into Persia; from whence he had brought an elephant, as a present to his Czarian majesty, which he had delivered to the governor of Astracan for his majesty's use, who sent it forthwith to Moscow under the direction and care of some Russians and a Georgian; but it happened to dye in its passage at Zaritsa. This falconer came, in the name of the governor, to desire me to indulge him with a place in my bark; and I went

N n on

men tolerably large; and in 1791, but the other fruits had destroyed by a swarm of in-

as upon the point of my had got all my implement's forgetting a convenient fence es, which in these parts are troublesome, the governor small casks of brandy; one of the best he had; the o- of an inferior sort; one small ar; four of his most excellent of wine; three flitches of ge quantity of dried fish, a , and some other provisions. favoured me with a small

er, and unlade the large one the part of her cargo, as we (g) Caspian-Sea, an article aquiline, on account of the ights that frequently happen

r in the afternoon, I took the governor, and returned r the many favours I had en I had got back again epartment, he sent after me vities, well sealed, full of s. At length I embarked d, attended by five soldiers, ordered to carry my cargo he ship. The three Ame- were my friends, and fellow- bited, in like manner, each ll vessel, with the self same

Chapter.

See p. 23. n. 6.

See p. 109. n. 11.

See p. 66. n. 4.

CHAP.

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

139

1692

CH A P. XVII.

Certain Reasons produced for inserting, in this Place, the particular Route which Mr. Isbrants Ides took, in order to travel across (a) Moscow in his Passage to (b) China. His Departure from (c) Moscow. The Spring, or Fountain-head of the river (d) Dwina. The Arrival of that Minister into the Country of the Syrenes. A particular Description of the Natives of that Province, &c. He embarks on the Kama, and crosses over from (e) Europe into (f) Asia.

AS Moscow is, at this present time, become very considerable in the eye of the world, and has for a long while since been a very grand topic for discourse; and as the prince, who now fills the throne, has made himself famous by his extraordinary conduct, and wise administration of all his public affairs, his victories over his enemies, and the unwearied pains he takes in the cultivation and improvement of the manners and morals of his once almost savage subjects, by introducing all the arts and sciences into his own dominions, and every other article that can any ways contribute towards their future felicity and advantage; as this Solomon of his age has done such wonders, all Europe in general are attentive to what particularly relates to this rising empire, and fond of knowing the important affairs that are transacted therein. It would be a difficult undertaking to produce a more circumstantial, more honest and impartial, or in short, a more interesting and instructive account of it, than that of Mr. Le Brun, which is comprised in this voyage; but as he travelled only through one part of it, upon mature deliberation, it has been deemed an acceptable service to the public, to add, in this particular place, the route that Mr. Isbrants Ides took from Moscow, to the court of China, by the way of (g) Tartary (a way but little known, as the country is a kind of wild and barren waste) in the capacity of

March. 14.
Reasons for
inserting
here the
route of
Mr. Is-
brants Ides.

envoy extraordinary from their Czarian majesties John and Peter Alexowitz, in 1692. And we insert it here, with all the pleasure imaginable, as that minister has embellished this account of his journey thither, not only with several very entertaining, but very judicious and instructive reflections.

He departed from Moscow in a sledge on the fourteenth day of March, but before he had made any considerable progress, it began to rain in such a violent manner, that he was in apparent danger of losing his life by reason of the inundations that he met with in his passage to (b) Wologda, where he tarried three days, in order to recover himself from the fatigue he had gone through in that dangerous passage, and to wait for the return of more favourable weather. On the second day, the frost came on again, and continued so excessively hard, that, within the compass of four and twenty hours only, all the roads were passable with ease; whereupon he set out in pursuit of his journey on the twenty second, for Suchina, at which place he arrived the next day; and from thence he proceeded, with all the expedition possible, to the city, called Ustiga the great, where the rivers Suchina and Irga meet, and form the noted river Dwina, a term, that signifies a double river.

The Suchina flows almost direct north in a very fertile soil; on the borders whereof

His departure from Moscow.

The spring or source of the Dwina.

to knotty for those judges they go directly to Moscow, applications to the Privates a proper office for the ad- of foreign affairs. They the from the Russians, either dature or appeal; and are as natives originally of the avonia, or Courland, tho' is can give no other satis- at of their extradition, than aka a widely different language siffians; but whether they may heretofore forced to fly from naziety's dominions, tho' the any destructive war, or tho' ident, they neither remen- any ways account for. Their nfluence is agriculture; not, there is one part of them, on the banks of Ziloh, where considerable dealings in grey o the length of this country, German leagues, and ex- as far as Kaigood. There no such place as deserves the n of a town; but reside in s and hamlets, dispersed up amongst the woods. This wounded on a spacious forest, minister was once more en- by a violent thaw, and as heavy the former, by which unhappy in one night's time, the whole laid under water; innume- r days successively he durst not ether backwards or forwards, g scarce able to bear even on At last, however, tho' not some danger and difficulty, he on his journey, by throwing wet the rivers, and some other which he casually procured. the sixteenth of April, being hy wet, and prodigiously harried ned, he arrived late at Kaigood, no no inconsiderable fortrels on the as greatly inclined to pursue his as far as Solikamskoi, the mar- city of the great (4) Perm, in o go to (1) Siberia by land, over ountains of Wergotur; how-

1692

however, still continuing, that thought was entirely laid aside as altogether impracticable; and as the winter season was now near over, he tarried in this city for several weeks successively, in expectation that the river Kama would soon become navigable. In the mean time, he supplied himself here with every thing that he found either convenient or necessary for the prosecution of his intended journey; as also, with fire-arms and other weapons of defence against the free-booters, who swarm in those parts, and go sometimes in such numerous gangs, that they will plunder whole towns, as they pass through them, as Kaigarod itself had experienced not long before, to the great mortification of its inhabitants.

Plagued by
pirates.

Our author was informed by the governor of this city, that on a certain day, about noon, they discovered a considerable number of barks, crowded with men under arms, falling down the river, with colours flying, drums beating, and other instruments of music, making the best of their way directly to the city. No sooner were they arrived, but they leaped on shore; that the inhabitants of the city, thoughtless of any hostile outrages in the middle of the day, and in a time of peace likewise, had no idea of their evil intentions, and permitted them to approach without the least opposition; taking it for granted, that they were some distant neighbours and friends, who were come to pay them a visit purely for their amusement; that these friends, however, as they conceived them to be, to their no small surprize, set the south end of their city on fire; and at the other end, put every soul to the sword, that presumed to obstruct them; that they marched up to the Waiwode's, where they committed various outrages and acts of hostility; and used their domestics in the most savage and inhuman manner; that, in short, they carried off an immense booty, without the least controul; that soon after this plunder was made, they were credibly informed, that these piratical free-booters were all vassals to some certain lords; from whose jurisdiction they had unanimously revolted, in order to make themselves a

1692

formidable band of pirates; and that some of them, however, had been detected and secured, and instantly executed, as rebels, and examples of terror to all such evil doers. This made it absolutely necessary, as we observed before, for our prudent minister to be on his guard, and furnish himself and his retinue with sufficient arms, in case of any such vigorous and unexpected attack.

April 23.

From hence he departed on the twenty third of April; at which time the Kama was free from all ice, and perfectly navigable, and providentially arrived safe on the twenty-seventh at Solikamskoi.

Arrives safe
at Solikam-
skoi.

From this last city, he purposed to pursue his journey over the mountains of Wergotur before-mentioned; but as such an attempt in the Summer is altogether impracticable, by reason of the country's abounding with fens and marshes, all passengers and merchants are obliged to reside in this city during the season, till winter, and the hard frosts come on again, to enable them to cross those mountains. There is a possibility it is true, of going round about to the eastward by water; but then that passage is absolutely prohibited; the governor, however, of the city being before-hand apprized of the important affairs that minister had to transact, and the expedition they required; furnished him directly with the embarkations that were requisite, for his commodious passage down the Sufawaya.

A descrip-
tion of Soli-
kamskoi,
and its salt-
works.

Solikamskoi is a very fine, large city, and inhabited by great numbers of very substantial merchants; where there are very fine salt-works, and fifty boilers, or more, of twenty five, or thirty five ells in breadth. Great quantities of salt are manufactured here, which are annually transported to parts remote on all sides, in large vessels built for that particular purpose; each of which are freighted with no less than 120,000 weight of salt, or eight hundred or a thousand lasts, exclusive of seven or eight hundred hands, for whose use they have kitchens, furnaces, and other conveniences requisite for their transportation. These vessels which are about five and thirty ells in length, and sometimes forty, have no more than one mast, and one

O o

sail,

1692

fail, which is thirty fathom in length, and made use of when they only go up the river, and the wind stands fair; whereas, they always ply their oars, and have no sail up, when they go downwards, in order to keep their vessels steady in their steerage, which cannot possibly be done by the helm only. They are all flat-bottomed barks, and have neither bolts nor nails in them; and this is the method observed, when they fall down the Kama, in order to get into the (1) Wolga. They have tow-lines, in order to help them along, when they go against the stream, and make use of their sails, in case the wind fits fair. Thus they convey their salt to

1692

(m) Casan and (n) Nisna, and other places situate on the banks of that river.

On the fourteenth of May, that minister embarked at Solikamskoi, and having traversed the rivulet called Ufolkat, which lies about half a league from this city, he got into the Kama once again, and crossed that river, whereby he left Europe, and arrived in Asia. On Whitsunday he went on shore, and up a very pleasant hill, where he refreshed himself before he took his farewell of Europe, and then returned to his vessel, in order to proceed as expeditiously as possible on his intended journey.

He embarks on the Kama, and crosses over from Europe to Asia.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) Moscow, or Russia, see P. 7. n. c. | (b) Wologda, see P. 28. n. d. |
| (b) China, see P. 66. n. f. | (i) Archangel, see P. 8. n. d. |
| (c) Moscow, see P. 23. n. c. | (k) Permia, a province in the north east part of European Moscow, separated from Asia, by the river Ob. |
| (d) Dwina, see P. 23. n. b. | (l) Wolga, or Volga, see P. 28. n. f. |
| (e) Europe, see P. 127. n. dd. | (m) Casan, see P. 62. n. b. |
| (f) Asia, see P. 127. n. x. | (n) Nisna, see P. 61. n. f. |
| (g) Tartary, see P. 18. n. i. | |

C H A P. XVIII.

His Arrival in (a) Asia; a Description of the Country of the Tartars of (b) Siberia. Their Religion, and Course of Life.

THE minister before mentioned, being arrived in Asia, on the Sufawaia, observed, that the Kama was far more pleasant, as it was a much finer river, and abounded with all sorts of fish; besides it had several much larger, and more populous villages, situated on its banks; it had, moreover, fine salt-works, fine arable lands, fine woods, fine mea-

dow-lands, embellished with a thousand parti-coloured flowers, and every thing else that is calculated to strike the eye in the most agreeable manner, all the way from Solikamskoi hither. It must be allowed, indeed, that the country, watered by the Sufawaia, which empties its waters into the Kama, is very fine and fertile; but then 'tis very fatiguing in going a-

gainst the stream: a no resistance, especially as in the last twilled, object to make use of it On the twenty-fifth red in the country of t Siberia; commonly be guided by the name This country is not only but is very populous all of the river. At the ing the hills, they have n of flowers in plenty, ar lous, but they have fragrant smell; they in dignous number of deer, fore. As the Tartars this river are all Pagans had the curiosity to go on a little converse with in gund to the religion th the manner in which lives.

As to their persons, did men, with remarkable and, as to their religion, consists in an annual ob to accomplish this one r they assemble in the ad there kill some one bea prove of mosh, of each their favourite victims peculiar sort of goats head them, they hang substantial branch of hanging before them, tribe of their adoratio act of devotion is over, w sum and substance of th over the flesh of th and make a solemn e them. After this grand they return to their relig and never concern th further acts of devotio expel; and they inas tion would prove altogether superfluous. As they a net of wool for that or money; they content the reflection, that their tal custom before them.

May 14.
That mini-
ster's arri-
val in Asia.

and (a) Nina, and other places
the banks of that river.

fourteenth of May, that mini-

ed at Solikamskoi, and hav-

d the rivulet called Uolka,

about half a league from this

ot into the Kama once again,

d that river, whereby he left

id arrived in Asia. On Wit-

ent on shore, and up a very

where he refreshed himself

ok his farewell of Europe, and

ed to his vessel, in order to

expeditiously as possible on his

urney.

Chapter.

Asia, see p. 23. n. d.

engel, see p. 8. n. d.

a province in the north east
Asian Molcovy, separated from
river Obi.

or Volga, see p. 23. n. f.

see p. 62. n. b.

see p. 61. n. f.

Country of the Tartars Course of Life.

embellished with a thousand
ed flowers, and every thing
calculated to strike the eye in
agreeable manner, all the way
skoi hither. It must be al-
that the country, watered
ia, which empties its waters
ia, is very fine and fertile;
very fatiguing in going a-
gaint

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1692

gainst the stream : a vessel can make
no riddance, especially when the waters
are in the least swelled, and the crew is
obliged to make use of their tow-lines.

On the twenty-fifth of May he arri-
ved in the country of the first Tartars of
Siberia ; commonly known and distin-
guished by the name of the Wogulski.
This country is not only very beautiful,
but is very populous all along the banks
of the river. At the ingresses and egresses of
the hills, they have not only all sorts
of flowers in plenty, and of variegated co-
lours, but they have herbs of the most
fragrant smell ; they have likewise a pro-
digious number of deer, and game of all
sorts. As the Tartars of Wogul, upon
this river are all Pagans, our minister
had the curiosity to go on shore, and have
a little converse with the natives, in re-
gard to the religion they professed, and
the manner in which they led their
lives.

May 25.
A descrip-
tion of the
country of
the Tartars
of Siberia.

Their reli-
gion, and
course of
life.

As to their persons, they are able bo-
died men, with remarkable large heads ;
and, as to their religion, it principally
consists in an annual oblation. In order
to accomplish this one religious ceremony,
they assemble in the adjacent woods, and
there kill some one beast, that they ap-
prove of most, of each species ; though
their favourite victims are horses, and a
peculiar sort of goats. When they have
sleed them, they hang them up on some
substantial branch of a tree, and then
standing before them, pay them the
tribute of their adoration. When this
act of devotion is over, which is the whole
sum and substance of their religion, they
dress the flesh of these their Gods,
and make a solemn entertainment of
them. After this grand festival is over,
they return to their respective habitations,
and never concern themselves with any
farther acts of devotion, till that year is
expired ; and they imagine, that a repe-
tion would prove altogether needless and
superfluous. As they can assign no man-
ner of reason for that one religious cere-
mony ; they content themselves with the
reflection, that their fathers observed that
custom before them.

Their an-
nual devo-
tions.

143

1692

He asked them, if they had no idea of
a supreme Being, who inhabited the hea-
vens above, and created all things here
below ; and who governed the whole u-
niverse by his over-ruling providence, and
gave the inhabitants thereof sun-shine and
rain in their due seasons ? To this they in-
nocently enough replied, that it was high-
ly probable, that there was such a person as
a God, since the sun and moon, those
bright luminaries of the heavens, which
they themselves worshipped, as well as
those lesser lights, the stars, which are
numberless in the firmament ; and it was
their firm belief, that there was some power
but what they could not tell, that did su-
perintend and direct their motions. As to
the notion of a Devil, they had no con-
ception of any such Being ; since he
had never made himself known amongst
them. They don't absolutely, indeed,
deny a resurrection ; but they ingeniously
acknowledge, that they know nothing of
what shall be their lot after their decease,
or what shall become of their lifeless
corse. When any of the natives die,
their bodies are deposited in the ground,
and covered with the best ornaments they
were possessed of at their decease. Tho'
they erect no monuments, indeed, for
the commemoration of their friends, they
deposit a sum of money in their coffins,
in proportion to their circumstances when
living ; in order that they might be fur-
nished with common necessities, in case
there should be a day of resurrection.
They make hideous lamentations over the
deceased, when in their coffins ; neither
will they permit any man to marry a se-
cond wife, till his first has been interred
a whole year at least. When by acci-
dent a favourite dog dies, that has contri-
buted toward their diversion, or has o-
therwise been truly serviceable, in comme-
moration of his past good deeds, they erect
a small wooden hut for his reception, about
six feet high, upon four posts, in which
they deposit his remains, and there let
them lie, as long as their little building sub-
sists. A man here is allowed as many
wives as he can comfortably maintain ;
and when their women draw near the time
of

Acknow-
ledge a God
and an o-
ver-ruling
providence,
but deny
the exist-
ence of a
Devil.
Are doubt-
ful in re-
gard to a
resurrection

Their fune-
rals.

Their in-
dulgence
towards
their de-
ceased dogs.

Allow of
polygamy.

THE TRAVELS OF

144

1692

Their marriages in.

Their marriages.

Have no priests.

of their travel, they retire to some adjacent wood, where a decent hut is prepared for their reception; nor are their husbands permitted to embrace them again till two months after their delivery.

When they are disposed to marry, they purchase their wives of their parents; and have very little if any ceremony, at their weddings. They invite, indeed, some of their nearest relations to a kind of entertainment, and when that is over, the man goes to bed to his spouse without any more bustle or stir.

They have no priests; and cannot marry any nearer relation than one so far distant as the fourth degree of consanguinity. This minister, by way of conversation, exhorted them, in a very zealous and devout manner to acknowledge Christ, as the saviour and redeemer of all mankind; and assured them, that in case they would become profelytes, and put their whole trust and confidence in him, that he would pardon all their sins, and they would thereby not only be happy in this world, but forever happy in that which was to come. To this exhortation they paid but very little regard, and by way of cool answer, told him, they saw hundreds of poor Russians every day, though they were christians as they called themselves, who, with all their industry, were scarce able to earn their bread. That as to a future state, they did not much concern themselves about it; and in a word that they should content themselves with living and dying as their fathers did before them, let the articles of their belief be groundless well or ill.

Their dress. As to their dress the reader may form an adequate idea of it by the Plate annexed.

They dwell in square wooden huts, in the same manner as the peasants do in (d) Russia; but with this difference, they make use of hearths instead of stoves, and burn wood. The openings of their roofs where the smoke goes out, are covered with a large cake of ice, as soon as the wood is reduced to ashes, and thereby retain all the heat in their room, without

1692

Subsist by hunting, and their practice of that exercise.

flopping out the light, which darts through the transparent ice. They make no use of chairs; but of benches, which are near three ells in breadth, and about one from the ground, on which they set cross-legg'd after the manner of the Persians; and the self same benches are made use of as their beds at night. Their principal subsistence is on the food which they procure by hunting their elks; they being their chief and most substantial game, of which there are abundance in this country. Their manner of taking them is by the artful exercise of their bows and arrows; most of them being strong fellows and exceeding good marks-men. When their game is brought home, they flea them, and dry their flesh first, and afterwards cut it into proper slices, and then hang them up in the air all round about their huts. After it is thoroughly wet, and perfectly purified, it is deemed a most delicious repast. For the rest, they never taste either of their poultry or their swines-flesh. They have another manner of destroying their game without any toil or fatigue; and that is, they plant large cross-bows in the woods, to which they fasten a bridle and a proper bait, leaving the mouth of it open; and when an elk or any other deer casually comes to seize upon it, the bow instantly unbends, and the creature at once is shot thorough the heart, and drops down dead on the spot. They, moreover, dig pits in the ground, and cover them over with brambles, or any other materials that are light, into which those creatures fall as they run over them; and when they are once ensnared, there is no possibility of recovering their freedom.

To conclude; these Tartars reside in villages all along the river Sufawain, as far as the castle of Utka; and under the shelter and protection of his Czarian majesty, to whom they pay a customary tribute, lead a life of indolence and ease. Their habitations, in a word, extend no less than 800 German leagues, to the northward of Siberia, and even to the northward of the country of the (c) Samoëds.

Live under the protection of his Czarian majesty.

Occa-

145

Occasional

(c) Asia, see p. 127, n.

(d) Siberia, see p. 17, n.

(e) Samoëds, see the account of it in the preceding chapter.

Mr. Hume's Account

farther Progress in A Description of which is become Country of (b) S

Mr. Hume's Account of the country of those Samoëds last mentioned June, in the year 1692, of Utka, which is in the of those Tartars, w Baski, and Utki. The the fort, a Tartar-ge which lies within his dominions, came thither his spouse, who had ab though married but a without the least provocation hearing no tidings consoling himself with extraordinary reflection; sent himself from no bands before him; and too plainly perceived, things to her how than On the tenth, he place by hand; and had call'd it Allah, he cross and travelled all along of another river, called A thence, he came to the field. There is not a world to be seen, than

pp 70

1692
 Extraordi-
 nary news.

of the best grey furs that can be procured anywhere, and such as even in the winter never change their colour: they have likewise the additional good quality of being exceedingly strong. These are not to be procured in any other part but that of (*d*) Moscow; for whoever presumes to transport them clandestinely to any foreign part whatever, is liable to the severest penalties, and the Czar's resentments; for they are all peculiarly appropriated to the service of the Russian court. These animals will not permit any of their fellow-creatures, if of another species, to reside amongst them; and, in short, destroy them all wherever they find them.

No sooner was this minister arrived at Tumên, but he found, not only the inhabitants, but those of the adjacent parts in the utmost hurry and confusion; for the Cossacs and Calmuc Tartars had just at that juncture invaded Siberia, where they had plundered several villages, and killed the inhabitants, as they made their progress, and menaced hard this town, which was within the distance of 15 German leagues.

The governor
 not makes
 proper pro-
 vision for
 the sup-
 pression of
 those inva-
 ders.

The envoy
 embarks
 on the To-
 bol.

June 26.

The governor, however, sent for some auxiliary troops from Tobol, and other adjacent places, by whose timely assistance, he pursued those invaders, and cut off a considerable number of such as could not preserve themselves by flight.

The envoy, seeing the town in such a consternation, thought it most advisable to pursue his journey without delay; and accordingly embarked on the 26th on the river Tobol, having provided for that purpose a new set of rowers, and a guard of soldiers. Notwithstanding the banks of this river are very low, and consequently too liable to be laid under water in the spring; yet they are inhabited partly by Mohammedan Tartars, and partly by Russians. There is great plenty of exceedingly fine fish to be met with in this river.

On the first of July, the envoy arrived safe at Tobol or Tobolski, which is a very strong place, where there is a spacious stone-monastery, embellished with such a variety of high towers, that it might easily be mistaken for a strong fort. This city

is situate on a hill at the conflux of the (*e*) Irty and the Tobol. Not only the foot of this hill, but the shore of the Irty is inhabited by Tartars, and Mohammedan Bucharians, who carry on a very considerable trade with the Calmucs upon the river, and with others, beyond it, even with some of the natives of (*f*) China. It is the shortest way to China, by the lake Jamsachowa, in case you are travelling thither at a time, when it is safe for you to go through the country of the Calmucs.

Tobol, or Tobolski, is the capital city of Siberia, and the jurisdiction thereof extends on the southern part beyond Barabu; from Wergour to the river (*g*) Oby, eastward of the Samoëds; to the northern part, as far as the country of the (*h*) Ostiachs, and as far as Ussa, and the river of Sufawaia to the westward. The country all round about is very populous, and not only inhabited by Russian farmers, but by divers other people, both Tartars, and Heathens, who are all however, tributary to, and under the jurisdiction of his Czarian majesty.

All sorts of grain is so plenty there, that any one may purchase a hundred weight of barley-flower, for about sixteen-pence, which they call cops. An ox is not worth above six or seven florins; and one may buy a good hog for thirty or five and thirty-pence; and in the Irty there is such a profusion of fine fish of all sorts; that a Sturgeon, of 40 or 50 pound weight is frequently sold for six-pence, and sometimes for less: and these sturgeons are so rich and fat likewise, that sometimes the surface of the water wherein they are boiled, shall be an inch or two thick in grease. Moreover, in this country, there are vast numbers of elks, stags, deer, &c. to be met with; hares, pheasants, partridges, swans, wild-geese, ducks, storks, and, in short, all sorts of game, and any of them much cheaper than butchers meat. Besides this plenty of all kinds of provisions, this city is supplied with a strong garrison of well regulated troops; and upon any emergency, in case the Czar at any time requires it, can send 9 or 10,000 men into the field of battle. Here are, more-
 over,

A descrip-
 tion of Tobolski.

1692

over, several thousands
 who, his majesty demands
 to attend him, all on he be
 to attend him, all on he be

The hands, or gangs
 and Colliers, who have the
 the Tschichan, or prin-
 cipal-Tartars, commit-
 ted depredations on it
 and depredations on it
 Carian majesty, as well
 and Bukhar, the garrison
 ever, are always on the
 them no quarter, if it
 There is a metropolitan
 comes from Moscow, he
 and has the whole of his
 During entirely under his
 This city, and all Sib-
 bury to the Car for a
 manner following. A
 Jeremk Timofiewitch
 made divers elegant
 tions on certain land-
 Carr Jean Willems,
 and destruction of his in-
 apprehensive that the tro-
 were advancing towards
 ously, he hurried back-
 me with his crew, and
 river Sufawaia, which
 into the Kama, and
 the precipitation inag-
 diction of the lord of Si-
 mently rich, and posses-
 on the banks of that riv-
 of twenty German leagues
 This great made his
 grandmaster of this gre-
 and protection; and pro-
 would grant his request
 in under submission to
 pension for the man-
 dations on his subject
 succeeded, and that rig-
 ously him with all the
 answers, that he requir-
 expedition, but prom-
 ptoore, he pardon,
 good success, he embar-
 trades, and was directly
 herself, which shows
 of the mountains of V

a hill at the conflux of the river Tobol. Not only the hill, but the shore of the Irtysh by Tartars, and Mohammedans who carry on a very considerable trade with the Calmucs upon the Irtysh, and beyond it, even to the natives of (f) China. The shortest way to China, by the Irtysh, is in case you are travelling at a time, when it is safe to go through the country of the

Tartars, or Tobolski, is the capital city of the Irtysh, and the jurisdiction thereof extends to the southern part beyond Wergotur to the river (g) Irtysh, as far as the country of the Irtysh, and as far as Ufa, and the Irtysh to the westward. The Irtysh is a very populous, round about is very populous, and is inhabited by Russian farmers, and other people, both Tartars, and who are all however, tributary to the jurisdiction of his

The means whereby Siberia became tributary to the Czar.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1692

over, several thousands of Tartars, who, when his majesty demands it, are obliged to attend him, all on horse-back.

The hords, or gangs, of the Calmucs and Cossacs, who have their dependance on the Tschicham, or principal of the Bugarian-Tartars, commit frequent outrages and depredations on the frontiers of his Czarian majesty, as well as those of Ufimian and Baskir; the garrison of Tobol, however, are always on the watch, and give them no quarter, if they catch them. There is a metropolitan in this city, who comes from Moscow, by order of the Czar, and has the whole clergy of Siberia and Dauria entirely under his jurisdiction.

This city, and all Siberia, has been tributary to the Czar for at least these hundred years last past; and both were reduced to the obedience of that prince in manner following. A certain pyrate, one Jeremak Timofiewitz by name, having made divers flagrant inroads and devastations on certain lands belonging to the Czar Ivan Wasilewitz, to the utter ruin and destruction of his subjects; and being apprehensive that the troops of that prince were advancing towards him to avenge his insults; he hurried back again up the Kama with his crew, and then entered the river Sufawaia, which empties its water into the Kama, and withdrew, with all the precipitation imaginable, to the jurisdiction of the lord of Stroginof, a lord immensely rich, and possessed of all the lands on the banks of that river, for the compass of twenty German leagues round about.

This pyrate made his applications to the grandfather of this great lord for shelter and protection; and promised, in case he would grant his request, to put all Siberia under subjection to the Czar, in compensation for the many insults and depredations on his subjects. Accordingly he succeeded, and that rich lord, not only furnished him with all the vessels, arms, and artificers, that he required for his intended expedition; but promised, moreover, to procure his pardon. Flushed with this good success, he embarked with his comrades, and went directly up the river Serebrenskoi, which flows from the north-east of the mountains of Wergotur, and emp-

147

1692

ties its waters into the Sufawaia. Here he caused his crew to land, and march to the river Tagin, which flowed down to the Tura, where he took possession of the fort of Tuméen, which is situate on that river, where he slew every one that fell in his way. After that, he returned up the Tobol, as far as the very city which bears that name; where he met with a Tartar prince, of twelve years of age only, whose name was Altanas Kutzumowitz, the grandson of whom is at this present juncture in Moscow, and honoured with the title of Czarowitz of Siberia. Having thus secured this post, he fortified it directly, and sent the young prince captive to Moscow.

After this grand pyrate had proved thus successful, he went down the Irtysh, and was attacked in the night, not far distant from Tobol, by a party of Tartars. In this encounter, he lost the greatest part of his comrades; and attempting to jump, in a hurry and confusion, out of one vessel into another, he dropt down into the river, and was soon drowned; his body, however, being drove along by the rapidity of the stream, was never heard of more. In the interim, the lord of Stroginof had sent to court, and, according to his promise, procured a pardon for Jeremak; he sent troops likewise to the several places which that pyrate had subdued, and fortified them out of hand. And this was the manner in which Siberia fell into the possession of the Moscovites, who are masters of that fine country at this very day.

Divine service of the Tartars.

The Tartars, who are the inhabitants of Tobol, and the adjacent parts, are all Mohammedans in general. The envoy, being desirous of seeing their religious rites and ceremonies, went with the Waywod into one of their moschs; for without his being there he could never have procured admision. These moschs of theirs have large windows all round about, which are left always open; and the pavements of them are covered with no other decoration than a carpet. Upon their entrance, they leave their shoes at the door, and sit regularly enough, but all cross-legged. The musti appears in a robe of white cotton, and wears a white turban on his head. Having whif-

1692

Their usual
invocation.

whispered to one of his attendants, he immediately made his proclamation, on which they all instantly fell down on their knees. The musfi then repeated a few words in a very low and unintelligible voice; and after that, cried out, Alla, Alla, Mohammed; the rest did the same after him, bowing their heads down thrice successively to the ground. This ceremony over, the musfi fixed his eyes upon his hands, as if he proposed to read something; and then cried out a second time, Alla, Alla, Mohammed. In the next place, he turned back his face over his right shoulder, and then over his left, but uttered not a single word:

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Tobolski, or Tobol, east long. 63 lat. 57. 30. the capital of Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, situate at the confluence of the rivers Tobol and Irtis, whose united stream divides Europe from Asia, lies 800 miles east of Moscow, and 1000 miles east of Petersburg. This city stands upon a hill, and is surrounded by a wall, and other modern works. To this place, or near it, the Russians usually banish their state-prisoners. Hither the princes Menzikoff, Dolgorucki, and the duke of Courland, were sent, as well as the Swedish Prisoners, taken at the battle of Pultowa.

(b) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. b.

(c) Samoëds, or natives of Samoida, see p. 17. n. b.

(d) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(e) Irtis a great river, which runs from

1692

and when all the people present had observed the same ceremony, their divine service was immediately over.

The musfi was an Arabian by birth, and held by the people in great veneration; and as a testimony thereof, every one who could either read, or understand the Arabian language, was highly valued on his account. As his house was very near the mosch, he invited the envoy in, and entertained him with a dish of tea. There are great numbers of Calmuc slaves in these parts; and even the descendants of several princes, who were prisoners in former times.

fouth to north through Russia, falls into the river Oby, and makes part of the boundary between Asia and Europe.

(f) China, see p. 66. n. f.

(g) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.

(h) Ostiachs, or Oustsachs, this country is a part of Asiatic Russia. These people extend along the river Irtis to its confluence with the river Oby; from thence they extend themselves northward along the banks of the Oby and Jenisa, till they fall into the gulph of Mangatsea, or the frozen ocean; inhabiting the banks of several rivers, which fall into the Oby and Jenisa above-mentioned. They have no towns; but live in huts, that are easily moved, or new-built, whenever they go to hunt, or fish, which seems to be the employment of these people at the proper seasons; since they have no corn in their country, nor follow any kind of husbandry.

CHAP.

all the people present had ob-
served the ceremony, their divine ser-
vice immediately over.

It was an Arabian by birth, and
the people in great veneration;
testimony thereof, every one who
read, or understood the Ara-
bic language, was highly valued on his
account. His house was very near the
envoy, and he was invited the envoy in, and en-
joyed with a dish of tea. There
were numbers of Calmuck slaves in
the house; and even the descendants of
prisoners, who were prisoners in for-

Chapter.

The river, which flows into the
Arctic Ocean, and makes part of the boundary
between Asia and Europe.

See p. 66. n. 4.

The river, see p. 18. n. 4.

In this country is
the river, which flows into the
Arctic Ocean. These people extend
to the south of the river, and
along the banks of the Oby and
Irtis. They fall into the gulph of Man-
churia, and into the frozen ocean; inhabiting the
frozen rivers, which fall into the
Arctic Ocean. They have
not live in huts, but are easily mo-
ved, whenever they go to hunt,
built, whenever they go to hunt,
h seems to be the employment of
at the proper seasons; since they
in their country, nor follow any
industry.

CHAP.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

149

1692

C H A P. XX.

*Mr. Isbrants departs from (a) Tobol, or Tobolski. A Description of
the (b) Irtis. Sledges drawn by Dogs, and how. That Minister's
departure from Samoroskoi-jam, and his Arrival at Surgut.*

His depar-
ture from
Tobolski.
July 28.

THE envoy departed from Tobolski
on the 22d of July, having furnished
himself with proper vessels, and all other
things requisite for his purpose; and more
particularly with a strong guard for the
security of himself and his attendants.
Thus provided, he fell down the Irtis,
on the shores whereof are divers villages,
inhabited both by Tartars and Ostiachs
and amongst the rest, those of Demi-
anskoi, Jamin, &c. where the small river
of Penouka empties its waters into the
Irtis. On the 28th, the envoy arrived at
Samoroskoi-jam, where he changed his
rowers, and put up masts in his larger
vessels, in order to his sailing up the river
Oby, whenever he had a favourable wind;
the Irtis falling into this river by several
openings at but a small distance from
Samoroskoi-jam.

July 28.

A descrip-
tion of the
river Irtis.

The water of the river Irtis is clear and
light, and falls from the mountains in the
country of the Calmucs. This river flows
from the south to the north-east, and runs
through the two lakes called Kebac and
Suzan. It is bordered on the south-
east by some lofty mountains, which are
bound with cedars; and the land on the
other side to the north-west is low, and
full of pasture-grounds, or meadows,
wherein several black bears, wolves, and
foxes, both red and grey, are frequently to
be met with; and on the banks of the
river Kasimka, which empties its waters
into the (c) Oby, not far distant from
Samoroskoi-jam are the finest grey furs
throughout all (d) Siberia, those in
the woods of Hetkoi-Wollock before-men-
tioned only excepted.

Adventure
of a bear.

The inhabitants informed the envoy,
that, one day in the autumn before his
arrival, there came a bear into a stable
which fronted a meadow, from whence
he took a cow, holding her fast in his fore-
paws, whilst he walked on those behind;
that the people of the house and some of
the farmer, neighbours hearing the unusual
noise which the cow made, ran out to her
assistance; and fell foul upon Bruin with-
all their might. All their blows availed
but little; the bear obstinately kept his
hold; neither did the fray cease, till they
shot him and killed the cow.

Inhabi-
tants of
the bank
of the
Irtis.

Most of the inhabitants of these parts
are Russians in his Czarian majesty's pay,
and who are indispensibly obliged to fur-
nish all such Waivods as are sent thither,
and all such as travel into Siberia on that
prince's account, with proper carriages and
guides, as well to go by water in the sum-
mer-season, as on the ice in winter, as far
as the city Surgut, which is situate on the
Oby, at very reasonable rates.

It is very remarkable, that the inhabi-
tants keep a great number of dogs, to draw
their sledges in the winter; for they can-
not make use of horses for those occasions
on account of the depth of the snow,
which, upon the Oby is sometimes at least
a fathom deep.

Sledges
drawn by
dogs.

Two of those dogs are put to a very
light sledge; and notwithstanding two or
three hundred weight may be com-
modiously laid thereon; yet neither the dogs,
nor the sledge make the least impression
on the snow. There are some of these
inhabitants are so idle, as to imagine, that
these dogs have some fore-knowledge of
the

Q q

1692

A descrip-
tion of these
dogs.The envoy
departs
from Sam-
roskoï-jam,
July 29.

August 6.

the time when they are to be employed on these expeditions, and in the night before have their assemblies, and make a hideous howling on those occasions; from whence their masters conclude, that they have strangers coming to visit them. This, however, is by no means probable, and downright superstition. The guides, when they travel, carry a gun upon their shoulder, and put on certain long shoes, which are fit to run with upon the snow. Sometimes the inhabitants will take their dogs out with them, in order to hunt for game in the woods; where they frequently meet with fine black foxes, whose skins they make use of themselves, but give their flesh to the dogs; so that a double advantage arises from their diversion. These dogs are but of a moderate size; but have sharp noses, and pointed ears, which prick up, and curling tails, like those of wolves and foxes; and as there is such a manifest resemblance between them, they may very easily be mistaken for such when running in the woods. It is certain, that they frequently mingle together, and make their appearance in the neighbourhood of villages, when there are any preparations making for the diversions of hunting.

On the 29th of July, the envoy set out from Samraoskoï-jam, and having furnished himself with two vessels, went down the principal branches of the Irtis, towards the Oby, where he arrived the very next day. On the eastern side of this river there are several high mountains, and a great number of pasture-grounds, which extend beyond the reach of the eye, on the western side; and the river in this place is half a league at least in breadth.

On the 6th of August, this minister arrived safely at Surgut, which lies on the eastern side of this river. In these parts, as you go up the country to the eastward, and up the Oby from Surgut, as far as the city of Narum, there are very fine fables, both black and brown; as also the finest ermins of all Syberia, and even of all Russia; and black-foxes which are beautiful to the last degree; the finest of which are reserved for the use of his Czarian majesty, and are sometimes valued at no less than two or three hundred rubles a piece, some of

these black ones exceed the finest fables that are to be met with throughout all Dauria. They are taken by dogs; and the following story was related to our author by one of the inhabitants of the place.

A black-fox, of the most beautiful sort, appearing in the spring of the preceding year, in open day-light, near Surgut, was pursued by a country-man, who had dogs of the same colour with his game. The fox, finding that there was no possibility of making his escape, all on a sudden turned directly towards the dogs, with an air of intimacy and complaisance, and laid himself flat on his back, and began to lick their chops; after which, he ran about and played with them, during all which time the dogs, as complaisant seemingly as himself, never offered to hurt or secure him: at length, slyly watching for a favourable opportunity, he sunk at once into the woods. As the country-man had no firearms to shoot him directly, he soon lost sight of him, and all hopes of being ever possessor of the rich booty of which he thought himself at first almost secure.

Two days afterwards, this self-same fox returned to the same place, when the country-man, contrary to his expectations, had a second sight of his wished-for booty, and pursued him, not only with the same black dogs, but with a white one likewise, which (as he had observed) was somewhat more sagacious than the others. The black dogs having allured him once more into their company, the white one, who kept a steady eye upon him, and knew him better than the rest, made towards him as imperceptibly and safely as he could, thinking to jump upon him unawares; but the fox, by a sudden spring, made his escape a second time with safety into the woods.

Upon this second disappointment, the country-man determined to blacken his white dog, that the fox might not be able to distinguish him from the rest; and going back to the woods again with his dog in masquerade, he soon found his game a third time. At length, the fox thus deceived, and looking upon him as one of his footy companions, attempted to play with him as he had done with the others successfully before; but by that means, he

1692

Adventure
and subtil-
ty of a fox.

fell into the snare which
prepared for him, for
fasten him, and he high-
ly dole his skin for one
There are here likewise
her of faces that are
black, half grey, but the
feely black are but a
with. There are also
those that are red. The
over, abounds with other
the former live wholly u-
very dangerous creature
quently climb up trees
upon the watch, till it
deed, or a hare burrow-
which time they will sig-
their prey, which they
hence, and seldom leave
suddenly devoured them.
was possessed of one of
creatures else, there
and ten two dogs direct-
finding himself too closely
at the head of the first of
under water till he had p-
him; and after that co-
attack the second, which
ry, had not his master's
assistance, had met with a
Strange stories, and in-
credible, are told of
have their caverns and
the bank of this river,
ever, as are his legs
there is most fish, which
abundance. The inhabi-
they assemble together
spring, and form a kind
ry; that after this, the
their own society pri-
to their baking-holes,
and there oblige them to
or refuse; that they w
banial trees to the g
their foundations with
shadows, they will ca-

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1692

- (a) Tobol, or Tobolski, see P. 148. n. a.
 (b) Iris, the river, see P. 148. n. e.
 (c) Oby, the river, see P. 18. n. e.

- (d) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see P. 17. n. b.
 (e) Ostiachs, or Oustachs, see P. 148 n. e.

C H A P. XXI.

Mr. Ibrant's Arrival at Narum. A Description of the (a) Ostiachs; &c. tho' the River (b) Oby abounds with fish, yet its shores lie all unmanured.

August 13.

August 24.

Narum.

A description of the Ostiachs, and a succinct account of their religion, &c.

MR. Ibrant, having been for some considerable time labouring up the river Oby; one while by the assistance of their sail, and another, by the slower measures of the tow-line; crossed the mouth of the Wagga, (whose waters fall down from the mountains of Trugan, from whence that river has its source) on the 13th of August. The Wagga is a large river, and the waters of it are bordering on black, which discharge themselves into the Oby, to the north-north-west, a little below Narum, which is but a small city, where he arrived, however, safe on the twenty-fourth. It is situate on the side of the river, in a fine country; and moreover, is defended by a citadel, or fortress, which is well garrisoned by the (c) Cossacs. In the parts adjacent, there are prodigious numbers of trees of various colours, black, red, and grey, to be met with; as also of beavers, ermins, fables, &c. The banks of the Oby, as far as this city extends, are inhabited by a people called the Ostiachs, who are worshippers of idols, and acknowledge, indeed, that there is a God in Heaven, as well as theirs on earth, but they pay no tribute of divine homage to him. Some of their idols are composed of wood; others of clay, in human forms, which they mould with their own hands,

in as beautiful a manner as they can; and such as are persons of substance, and of a superior rank from the populace, clothe them in rich silk, after the Russian mode. These idols are, for the most part, planted in their cabins, which are composed of the bark of their trees, and sewed together with the guts of deer, instead of thread. On one side of them are placed large bundles of hair; and on the other, stands a little bucket, which is kept constantly full of a kind of broth, of which divine food, they administer divers spoonfuls every day, at least as much of it as they deem sufficient for their comfortable subsistence. And as this spoon-meat is continually running down at the corners of their mouths, it has a very disagreeable effect, and is enough to turn one's stomach. When they make their supplications to these gods of their own making, or pay them any other kind of divine adoration, they stand erect before them, and make a thousand different motions with their heads, but never bow down before them; and during these devotional exercises, they make a hideous hooping and hollowing, not much unlike those vociferations which are made by our European huntsmen, when they are exercising their dogs.

These idols are called Saitans, which name

name seems to derive from the arch-foe of Mankind, Satan the arch-fiend of Hell. Of these Ostiachs I happened to see the minister's retinue, when he was so far as to shew them their idols, and that was the first which was first invented by the Nuremberg, and by in cock-work, would hence his head and eyes about freedom, as if actually alive, observed the dexterity and of this extraordinary mask, which began to sing and and pay it all the very best divine adoration, as they carry their veneration to most favourite Saitan; next acknowledged this to be and one of a much superior, and were then met would death in the first best skin of one of the They would have had our minister ordered it for moved out of their sight, a shop to their religious words it.

It is customary for the as many young women sit, or at least, as many flames will with conversation and conversation itself nuptial enjoyments. They in short, with them best-fellow, as the remark Upon the decay of an they make incessant lament the couple for several d having their heads close our seeing any one person and being constantly When this testimony of silly paid, they carry upon poles, and deposit Mad of them, however, during the summer, terrible deplorable huts; but, with our nation, they might prove their little stock, as try round about the abundance, and the great plenty of fish, I

And a manner as they can; and
in periods of subsistence, and of
crack from the populace, cloth
in silk, after the Russian mode,
and, for the most part, plained
ones, which are composed of
their trees, and lewed together
its of deer, instead of thread.
of them are placed large hun-
; and on the other, stands a
which is kept continually full
of breath, of which divine food,
winter divers spoonfuls every day,
much of it as they deem suffi-
it comfortable subsistence. And
in-meat is continually running
e corners of their mouths, it has
treable effect, and is enough to
stomach. When they make
lications to these gods of their
ing, or pay them any other kind
decoration, they stand erect be-
, and make a thousand different
with their heads, but never bow
fore them; and during these de-
ercises, they make a hideous
and hollowing, not much unlike
iterations which are made by our
huntmen, when they are ex-
it dogs,
idols are called Saitans, which
name

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

153

1692 name seems to derive its origin from Satan the arch-fiend of Hell. As some of these Ostiacks happened to be on board this minister's vessels, he indulged them so far as to shew them an odd curiosity, and that was the form of a bear, which was first invented by a native of (d) Nuremberg, and by internal springs of clock-work, would beat a drum, and move his head and eyes about with the same freedom, as if actually alive. When they observed the dexterity and various motions of this extraordinary machine, they presently began to sing and dance before it, and pay it all the very same testimonies of divine adoration, as they would to their most favourite Saitan; nay, they seemed to carry their veneration higher; for they acknowledged this to be a Saitan indeed, and one of a much superior sort to their own; and were they masters of it, they would cloath it in the finest fables, and the best skin of one of their blackest foxes. They would fain have purchased it; but our minister ordered it forthwith to be removed out of their sight, in order to put a stop to their religious deportment towards it.

Their mar-
riages.

It is customary for these Ostiacks to marry as many young women as they think fit, or at least, as many as their circumstances will with convenience admit of; and consanguinity itself is no bar to their nuptial enjoyments. The nearest relation, in short, with them is as acceptable a bed-fellow, as the remotest stranger.

Their fune-
rals.

Upon the decaise of any of their friends, they make incessant lamentations round the corpse for several days successively; having their heads close covered up, without seeing any one person whomsoever, and being constantly on their knees. When this testimony of their respect is fully paid, they carry the deceased away upon poles, and deposit him in his grave. Most of them, however, are very poor, and during the summer-season reside in mean, despicable huts; but, were they industriously inclined, they might with ease improve their little stock; since all the country round about the Oby yields furs in abundance, and the river itself affords great plenty of fish, but abounds more

The Oby a-
bounds
with fish.

particularly with sturgeon; inasmuch that for three-penny-worth of tobacco, one may purchase a score of them. They are naturally, however, most shamefully indolent; and but very few of them are very solicitous after any thing more than what will afford them a bare subsistence during the winter-season.

Their diet.

When they travel, and when they employ themselves in fishing, which is but seldom, they live entirely on a fish diet. As to their stature, they are neither remarkably tall or short; their hair, for the generality, is either fair or red; but their faces and noses are very broad: they are not in the least addicted to any warlike achievements, and are perfect strangers to the use of arms. They have by them, indeed, both bows and arrows; in order to kill their prey, when they go out a-hunting; but even with them they do but little execution, as they are but miserable marksmen.

Their dress.

As to their dress, tho' they cover their nakedness, it is true, with the skins of fishes, but particularly that of the sturgeon above-mentioned; yet they wear no manner of linnen underneath them. Their stockings and shoes are composed of the same materials, and over their fish-skin covering, they wear a kind of waistcoat, as a loose mantle, to which a sort of cap is affixed, which is pulled over their heads when it happens to rain. As their shoes in particular are made of fish-skin only, they are never water-proof; so that their feet are very seldom free from being wet. They undergo all the inclemency of the weather, without any seeming concern, notwithstanding they are so thinly clad as is above-described; and in case the frost happens to be more intense, or the winds more bleak than ordinary, they only wear two waistcoats instead of one. As this happens, however, but very seldom, and once as it were in an age; they will ask one another, sometimes, do you remember the time, pray, when you were reduced to the necessity of wearing a double waistcoat? When they go a-hunting, in the winter, be it ever so cold, they wear but one; and never cover their breasts at all, taking it for granted, that they shall be hot enough

R r

in

1692

They bury themselves sometimes in the snow

in conscience with running backwards and forwards on the snow with their sledge-shoes. But when they accidentally meet with a severer winter than usual, and such a hard frost as proves too insupportable, they then strip themselves stark-naked, and bury their bodies as deep as possible in the snow, in order to prevent both a lingering and painful death.

How the Osiachs deport themselves upon their hunting down a bear.

There is very little difference in the dress of their women from that of the men's; and their principal amusement is that of hunting the bear. When they are on this expedition, they set out in bands, or companies; but armed with no other weapon of defence, than a kind of sharp knife, fastened to the end of a staff about six feet in length. When they have killed their game, they cut off his head, in the first place; then they hang it upon the branch of a tree, and run round it, hand in hand, as a testimony of their high veneration for it. When this ceremony is performed, they then dance round the body of it, in much the same manner, each of them asking the dead carcase, who it was that killed him? Then they return the answer themselves for the dead bear: "It was a Russian that murdered me." Who was it cut off thy head? "The ax of a Russian." Who was it that cut open thy entrails? "A Russian." In short, whatever injury is done to this particular animal, the barbarous treatment is ascribed immediately to the Russians.

Their petty princes.

Poor as they are, for the most part (as has already been hinted) they have some petty princes amongst them, who bear the title of Knezzes; and one of these illustrious personages came on board Mr. Ibrant's vessel, in order to pay his excellency a visit. This Knez was superintendent of some hundreds of their huts, or cabins; and his principal business was to collect the tribute which those Osiachs under his jurisdiction were obliged to pay to the Waiwodes, or officers, of his Czarian majesty. When he came, he brought with him a numerous train of attendants; together with a present of some fine fresh fish; and on his departure, the compliment was returned by an exchange

1692

Mr. Ibrant returns the visit of one of these Knezzes.

of brandy and tobacco, with which he went away, to all outward appearance, highly delighted. Some short time after this first interview, he paid this minister a second visit, and before he took his leave, gave him a friendly invitation to his palace; and Mr. Ibrant's curiosity inducing him to accept of his highness's offer, he waited on him according to appointment, and was received by the Knez himself, who personally did the honours of his house, and introduced him, without the formal ceremony of a master, as is customary with other princes. This magnificent structure was composed, like the cabins of his subjects, of the barks of trees, and those likewise sewed together after a very inelegant and artless manner.

A Russian account of his palace, and his female associates.

At this interview, Mr. Ibrant was favoured with the sight of four of this prince's wives: the youngest was dressed in a scarlet cloth petticoat; with a great variety of glass trinkets; some composed of coral, and others of glass, which were disposed of round her waist, her neck, and in the tresses of her hair, which hung down in ringlets on each side, and over her shoulders; in her ears she wore rings, or more properly speaking, buckles, from whence hung down strings of coral beads. Three of these consorts of his highness presented this minister with a kind of small tub, made of the same materials as their habitation, filled up to the brim with dried fish; but the youngest, before particularly described, gave him a little tub full of sturgeon, which was as yellow as gold itself; and in return for all their favours, he regaled them very plentifully with brandy and tobacco, which with them is esteemed a very delicious and grand repast.

The furniture of the palace.

This royal cabin could boast of no other furniture than a few cradles, and trunks, composed of the barks of trees, in which were their beds and bedding, full of wood-duff, but as soft as down itself. The cradles were placed at one end of the cabin, and full of little children, all stark naked; but then there was a good fire in the center. There were no culinary implements that he could perceive, one copper kettle only excepted, and a few others

1692

others made of bark, which he used, in what was intended.

When they smoke their favourite animal as well as the tobacco, along with such an influence

has such an influence sometimes are perfectly by, and fall down upon their deprived of their eyes wide open, like Europeans afflicted with the same disease; some of them sink down with such a faintness upon the spot, they are thus affected, the river, if they happen and sometimes into the cabins. Some of them are so fatigued with it in a most miserable manner.

If any mention be made of these relations, they are highly look on it as a gross affront, with any degree the name only of such been dead for many perfect strangers to all that are so illiterate, that they can neither notwithstanding they of bread, they are too their hands.

They have neither tents nor houses. Their bears, like their hawks, are in the pocket of the bark of the tree, the timber and frame-work is very slight. Tho' they are so indifferently built, more than three fathoms about an ell broad; piling, they will lie in water.

During the winter-season, they have their residence in large openings at the top of the smoke of them it is customary with them

body and tobacco, with which he
away, to all outward appearance,
delighted. Some short time after
interview, he paid this minister a
visit, and before he took his leave,
him a friendly invitation to his
and Mr. Ibraut's curiosity indu-
him to accept of his highness's offer,
ed on him according to appoint-
and was received by the Knez him-
o personally did the honours of
s, and introduced him, without
and ceremony of a waiter, as is
ary with other princes. This mag-
structure was composed, like the
of his subjects, of the banks of
d those likewise sewed toge-
t a very inelegant and artless

interview, Mr. Ibraut was
with the sight of four of his
wives: the youngest was dressed in a
cloth petticoat; with a great variety
runkets; some composed of coral,
s of glass, which were disposed
er waist, her neck, and in the
her hair, which hung down in
each side, and over her shoul-
her ears she wore rings, or more
peaking, buckles, from whence
in strings of coral beads. Three
consorts of his highness presented
with a kind of small tub,
the same materials as their habi-
led up to the brim with dried fish;
youngest, before particularly de-
we him a little tub full of tur-
ch was as yellow as gold itself;
um for all their favours, he re-
an very plentifully with brandy
a, which with them is esteemed
icious and grand repast.

The most
least re-
public
royal cabin could boast of no
more than a few cradles, and
omposed of the barks of trees, in
ere their beds and beddings, full
half, but as soft as down itself.
s were placed at one end of the
full of little children, all stark
t then there was a good fire in
There were no culinary
s that he could perceive, one
ttle only excepted, and a few
others

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1692 ~ others made of bark, which could not pos-
sibly be used, in case the fire was any
ways intense.

When they smoak, which is one of
their favourite amusements, both the
women, as well as the men, take a mouth-
ful of water, and swallow the smoak of
the tobacco along with it. This habit
has such an influence over them, that they
sometimes are perfectly intoxicated there-
by, and fall down upon the ground, en-
tirely deprived of their senses, with their
eyes wide open, like persons amongst the
Europeans afflicted with the falling-
sickness; some of them swallow this
smoak down with such excess, that they
expire upon the spot. Sometimes, when
they are thus affected, they will fall into
the river, if they happen to be near it,
and sometimes into the fire, if within their
cabbins. Some of them again are perfect-
ly suffocated with it, and end their days
in a most miserable manner.

If any mention be but made of their
relations, they are highly offended, and
look on it as a gross affront; nor can they
bear, with any degree of patience, to hear
the names only of such of them as have
been dead for many years. They are
perfect strangers to all transactions abroad,
and are so illiterate, for the generality,
that they can neither write nor read; and
notwithstanding they are remarkably fond
of bread, they are too indolent to cultivate
their lands.

They have neither temples, nor priests.
Their boats, like their habitations, are com-
posed of the bark of trees; and what lit-
tle timber and frame-work there is within,
is very slight. Tho' these vessels of theirs
are so inelegantly built, and are seldom
more than three fathom in length, and
about an ell broad; yet it is very sur-
prising, they will live in the worst of
weather.

During the winter-season, these Ostiachs
have their residence under ground; with a
large opening at the top of their caverns
for the smoke of them to evaporate. As
it is customary with them to lie naked

round a fire; in case it happens to be
snowy weather, they find themselves,
upon their waking, half covered with it;
whereupon they only turn themselves, and
feel no other inconvenience on an occasion
that so frequently occurs.

If an Ostiach happens to prove jealous of
his wife, he cuts off part of the fur that
grows on the belly of a bear, and carries
it to the person suspected. In case the
party is innocent, he accepts readily of it,
but if he be conscious of his guilt, he
frankly acknowledges the illicit freedom
he has taken, and enters directly into an
amicable treaty with the party injured, and
pays a premium accordingly. Nor dare
they, indeed, prevaricate on this important
occasion; since they are all firmly per-
suaded, that, if any one should accept of
the hair, and at the same time be guilty
of the crime laid to his charge, the bear,
from whose belly the hair was cut, would
avenge the wrongs of the party injured, and
devour the delinquent before the week
was at an end.

On the same jealous account, there are
other presents frequently made to the
person suspected. Some present bows and
arrows; some hatchets, and others again
sharp, large knives; no ways doubting, but
that the party who accepts them, and at
the same time, is actually guilty of the in-
jury done to the donor, will within a few
days, inevitably come to some untimely
end. This all of them unanimously as-
sert, and the Ruffians, who reside in the
parts adjacent as unanimously confirm.
Tho' we have now no more to add in re-
gard to the Ostiachs themselves; yet we
cannot drop the subject wholly without
making the following remark on the
banks of the Oby, where they pitch their
cabbins; and that is this, that they lie en-
tirely uncultivated from the sea quite up to
the river Tun, on account of the in-
clemency of the weather, and the ex-
cessive frosts, for which reason, they pro-
duce no manner either of corn or fruit; and,
in a word, nothing at all but the cones of
cedars.

Occa-

- (a) Oltiachs, or Oultsiachs, see p. 148. n. b.
 (b) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.

(c) Cossacs, people inhabiting the banks of the rivers Nieper and Don, near the Black-sea, and the frontiers of Turkey. Their country usually called the Ukraim, and for the most part subject to Russia.

(d) Nuremberg, a city in Germany, in the circle of Franconia, capital of the territory of Nuremberg. East long. 11. lat. 49. 30. situate near the confluence of the rivers Regnitz and Pegnit, 50 miles north-west of Ratibon, and 40 miles south of Bamberg. It is 7 miles in circumference defended by a wall, a castle, and other works, but of no great strength. It is very populous, and has the best inland trade of any town in Europe: their clock-work, and manufactures in iron, steel, ivory, wood, and alabaster are much admired, and afforded exceedingly cheap; and from hence come most of those toys we call Dutch

toys. It is nothing but the genius and industry of this people that procure them the flourishing trade and plenty they live in; for it is a barren country, and produces scarce any thing to traffic with, but what receives the greatest part of the value from their labour and art. It is an imperial city, or independant state. The governors and magistrates are elected out of the nobility; and the burgher-master, or chief magistrate is changed every month; the legislative trate is lodged in a council, or diet, of authority being lodged in a council, or diet, of 400 of the principal burghers. In this city are kept the Regalia used at the emperor's coronation. The established religion is the lutheran; the calvinists are forced to go three miles out of town to church; and the papists are allowed to perform divine service only in one church, when the lutherans have done with it. The territories of Nuremberg are about 30 miles in length, and 20 broad, in which they have a great many good towns and villages.

C H A P. XXII.

His Arrival at Makoffkoi, upon the Keta. The Inconveniencies that attended him thereon, for want of Provisions. His Departure from Makoffkoi. A Description of the Keta. He proceeds on his Journey by Land, and arrives at Jenizetkoi. A Description of that City.

Missionary's
leaves the
Oby.

Death of
one of his
retinue.

His arrival
at Makoff-
koi, on the
Keta.

M. R. Ibrents having spent some weeks on the river (a) Oby, and some small time amongst the (b) Oltiachs in the last chapter particularly described, arrived, on the first of September, at the town of Keetlkoi, situate on the Keta, which empties its waters north-west into the Oby; from thence he came, on the twenty-eighth, to the convent of Saint Sergius; and on the third of October then next following, to the village called Worozoikin, where one of his domestics, by name John George Wetfel, of Sleswick, painter, died on that day of a very high fever.

On the seventh of the month last-mentioned, he arrived with safety at Makoff-

koi, where he interred the said Wetfel, on a rising ground, near the bank of the river. During his navigation of the Oby, he was more harrassed and fatigued than in any other part of his long and tedious journey; for he spent five weeks successively in his passage up that river, without the sight of any convertible creature, except a few indolent illiterate Oltiachs, who, upon his approach towards them, flew from him with a kind of terror into the adjacent woods. These Oltiachs were a different clan, indeed, from those which we have just described, but as equally addicted to idol-worship.

In his passage up the Keta, he found him-

himself extremely embarrassed of proper provisions, and the scarcity of flour, or any principal support from the deer, had so far that he departed from him in a manner of received no manner of that of a few fresh fish. knowledge, indeed, it have been done to so. distill, and he with-held to the poor Oltiachs, who his vessel, and sometimes with no small reluctance, as we have seen, to hard labour; and in willing, have desired there actually did, had very narrowly over-looked to send a helping hand, they became perished, had, doubtless, sunk of their toll and fatigue, mediate assistance been the governor of Jenizet application made to him took his distress into consideration, and immediately sent him immediate relief, look'd on him with an been so inhuman as to demand he requested, that have stopped at least thirty Makoffkoi, and in all have perished in the snows which he met with in that manner there being no inhabitants of the Keta to be met with extent of ground.

No longer had he depend on the Oltiachs, but the river by no means navigable in season, began to be blocked through an excessive and waters run through sounds with words, winds about to that degree, that, after a tedious passage from successively, stand night to find how little gained since the dawn country abounds with as plentiful, and particularly disagreeable direction to

ing but the genius and industry
at procure them the flourish-
they live in; for it is a bar-
nd produces force any thing to
it what receives the greatest part
from their labour and art. It is
%, or independent state. The
magistrates are elected out of the
burgher-master, or chief magis-
a every month; the legislative
is lodged in a council, or diet, of
principal burghers. In this city are
also used at the emperor's coro-
established religion is the luther-
are forced to go three miles
church; and the papists are
from divine service only in one
the luthers have done with it.
of Nuremberg are about 30
th, and 20 broad, in which
great many good towns and vil-

the inconveniences that
His Departure from
He proceeds on his Tour-
A Description of that

he interred the said Wetzel,
ground, near the bank of the
navigation of the Obi,
his navigation and fatigued than
e harassed and fatigued than
er part of his long and tedious
or he spent five weeks successively
passage up that river, except
any convertible creature, who,
violent illness Otiachs, flew
approach towards them, the
with a kind of terror into the
woods. These Otiachs were a
man, indeed, from those ad-
it described, but as equally ad-
del-worship. Keta, he found
passage up the Keta, he found him-

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1692

himself greatly embarrassed through want of proper provisions, especially through the scarcity of flour, or bread, which is man's principal support; for, from the time that he departed from (c) Tobol, he had received no manner of supply, excepting that of a few fresh fish. It must be acknowledged, indeed, that he would not have been drove to so high a degree of distress, had he with-held his beneficence to the poor Otiachs, who were on board his vessel, and sometimes tow'd her, tho' with no small reluctance, as having a natural aversion, as we have before hinted, to hard labour; and more of them would willingly have deserted the vessel than there actually did, had they not been very narrowly over-look'd, and compelled to lend a helping hand. At last, indeed, they became perfectly spent, and had, doubtless, sunk under the weight of their toil and fatigue, had not an immediate assistance been sent them from the governor of Jenizefskoi, who upon application made to him by this minister, took his distress into consideration, and sent him immediate relief; for had he look'd on him with an evil eye, and had been so inhuman as to deny him the assistance he requested, that minister must have stopped at least thirty leagues short of Makoffskoi, and in all probability would have perished in the ice, and the deep snows which he must have inevitably met with in that melancholy passage, there being no inhabitants on the banks of the Keta to be met with in all that vast extent of ground.

No sooner had he departed from Makoffskoi, but the river Keta, which is by no means navigable in the winter-season, began to be blocked up with ice, through an excessive and sudden frost. Its waters run through a country which abounds with woods, and thickets, and winds about to that degree, that the traveller, after a tedious passage for twelve hours successively, stands astonished at night to find how little ground he has gained since the dawn of day. This country abounds with heath-game, such as pheasants, and partridges; and it is no disagreeable diversion to see them morning

His departure from Makoffskoi.

157

1692

and evening upon the banks of the river regaling themselves in whole flocks; where you may kill almost what number you please as you pass along. And this proved no trivial assistance to them at a time when they were reduced to short commons. The soil here affords great plenty of gooseberries both red and black; as also large quantities of strawberries, and raspberries; but as to the river itself, it can boast of no plenty of fish, that are worth the fatigue of catching.

Not far distant from hence, in the mountains which rear their heads towards the north-east, several passengers have met with the teeth and bones of a creature, which is there called a Mammut; but more particularly on the banks of the several rivers distinguished by the respective names of (d) Jenisia, Trugon, Mongan-sea, and (e) Lena, not far distant from Jabutskoi, and quite as far as the Icy Ocean. And this discovery is principally made, when there happens to be a great thaw which has flooded the last mentioned river; and the ice has carried a large quantity of earth from off the sides of the mountains. It is at such times as these, that the carcases of those creatures are found lock'd up in the earth, which is frozen almost from the top to the bottom; but more particularly, when the thaw has proved excessively great. One of Mr. Ibrant's attendants, who had been several years employed in making his strictest researches after these particular animals, assured him, that he once found an entire head of one of these Mammuts in some of those thaw'd grounds; that when he had split it, and laid it perfectly open, he found almost all the fleshy part of it absolutely putrified; and that the teeth of it stuck out in much the same manner as those of the elephant, and were so fast riveted in, that it was with no small difficulty, that he drew them: — That some short time after, meeting with a fore-quarter of one of these creatures, he carried away one bone only of it to the city of Trugan, which was as thick as the waist of a moderate man, and, in short, that he perceived something that bore a resemblance of blood towards the neck.

S f

There

The teeth and bones of a Mammut.

to use or value at all; where
re found whole and perfectly
white as ivory. Those who
business to make researches
carry them in large quantities
to) Moscow, where they are
rel into combs, and other little
the like nature.

oy's attendant but mentioned
that he once found two
and the same head, which
three pounds, or thereabouts
weight; that is to say, 400
German weight, from whence
it beyond contradiction, that the
then living, must be of a mon-

This is all the account we
the creature; for Mr. Libner
es, that he never met with
no had seen the animal while,
re or dead; nor any one that
a satisfactory description of its
form.

this envoy had once happily
the village of Mekolokoi, he
ined not to expate either him-
q of his retinue, to the perils
as that attend the navigation of
any farther; and for that reason
the remainder of his journey on
Having travelled in the man-
coat sixteen leagues, on the 13th
over he arrived safe at Jenizekoi.

he tarried for some considerable
at only in order to refresh him-
and his retinue after their long ja-
it to wait till the winter season
ly settled, that he might par-
tion'd journey more agreeably in a
In the interim he took care to
himself with every convenience
requisite for that purpose; and
foreover, leisure-hours enow to
is researches after every thing in the
that was worthy the attention of the
traveller.

ies its name from the river of Je-
which, having its source in the
averages the Kaimuc mountains;
its waters on, almost in a straight
the northward, till it discharges
to the icy sea of (i) Tartary, but
the same manner as the Oby does,
which

1692

which disembogues itself into the bosom
of its own waters, and from them rolls
into the sea. At this town the river is at
least a full quarter of a league broad: Its
water is both clear and light; but affords
no great quantity of fish. The inhabi-
tants of this city, about seven years since,
fitted out a substantial vessel, in order to
go upon the whale-fishery; but she never
returned, neither did they ever hear any
tidings of her afterwards. The inhabi-
tants of Tiguma, a town that lies con-
siderably farther down the river, sends
ships annually on the same expedition; but
then they act with more precaution than
the former; they watch their proper sea-
sons, and consider when the winds blow

the ice from off the shore, and by that
means fish without danger. The city of
Jenizekoi is moderately large, is very
populous and well fortified. They have
plenty of corn, and all sorts of poultry,
as well as butchers meat. Its jurisdiction
extends over a prodigious number of Tan-
gusians, who inhabit the banks of the Te-
nisa and the Tungussa, and all the parts
adjacent. They pay their whole tribute
to the Czar in various kinds of furs. The
cold is so intense here, that their trees
yield no manner of fruit. All that they
can boast of, which can properly be term-
ed fruit, is a small quantity of gooseber-
ries, both black and red; and a few
wood-strawberries.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- (a) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.
- (b) Ostiachs, or Oustiachs, see p. 148 n. b.
- (c) Tobol, or Tobolski, see p. 148. n. a.
- (d) Jenisa, see p. 18. n. f.
- (e) Lena, the river, see p. 18. n. g.

(f) Russians, see p. 7. n. c.

(g) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. b.

(b) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. e.

(i) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.

C H A P. XXIII.

*The envoy's departure from Jenizekoi. His arrival at the Island, cal-
led Ribnoi; or the Isle of Fish. His arrival, in the prosecution of
his journey, at Ilnskoi; and from thence at the Cataract, or Fall of
Shamanskoi, or the Torrent of the Magician: Concluding with an ac-
curate, tho' compendious Description, of the natives of Tungus.*

MR. Ibrants set out from Jenizekoi
in a sledge; and on the 20th of
January 1693, he arrived at the Island
called Ribnoi, or the Isle of Fish.

This island is situate in the center of
the river Tunguska; and affords great
plenty of fish of various kinds; but more
particularly, it abounds with sturgeon and
pike, of the largest size: It is principal-
ly inhabited by the natives of (a) Mos-
covy.

On the 25th of the same month, he
arrived at Ilnskoi, situate on the river Il-
ni, which has its rise towards the south,

Jan. 20.
He departs
from Jeni-
zekoi, and
arrives at
the Island
of Ribnoi.
Its situa-
tion.

Jan. 25.
He arrives
at Ilnskoi.

The Cata-
ract of
Shaman-
skoi, or the
Torrent
called the
Magician.

south-west, and discharges its water, on
the north-north-west, into the Tunguska.
The banks of this river, however, are in-
habited by the natives of Tungus, as well
as by the Moscovites.
After the envoy had proceeded on his
journey from hence for some few days, he
arrived at the Cataract, or Fall of the
Torrent of Shamanskoi, otherwise called
the Magician; from a celebrated Shaman,
or Magician, who formerly made that
particular spot his favourite place of abode.
The Fall of this Torrent, or Cataract,
in regard to its extent, is no less than half
a league

age, to cover up the vessel, as
libly it can be, to prevent them
g in any quantity of the water
et them.

scarcely a year, however, passes,
one fatal accident, and the loss
ves, through the want of able
anced pilots; who frequently
g upon the rocks; and when
oves their unhappy case, they
pond all redemption, and are
maneuverally swallowed up by the
Torrent, or, in a very short
ed to pieces against the rocks,
it an easy matter ever to re-
leless carcasses of those who are
lly buried in the waves; nor
there are divers crosses erected
at such places where such
ts have occurred, and where
y hands that have perished,
interred. The waters that flow
ticular spot from the northern
this torrent to such a degree,
er-cession, that the Fall was
imperceptible, that passengers
are to cross it in ledges; in
-season, however, the waters
ly low.

These
delegates distance from this Ca-
a numbers of Tungusians, at
the L. and
celebrated Shaman, or magi-
be met with. The great repu-
that pretender to necromancy,
Miant's curiosity so far, as to
int at his cell, or place of in-

is us, that he was a well-set
A ship
on of
had
in the decline of life had
; and did not seem to be in
amed of his protection. This
ged him at once with a night
ical vestment, and every other
it besides that he made use of in
In the first place
e of his art. In the first place
not which he put on, was deco-
rons, which represented the
great variety of animals, such
as, owls and ravens, fishes, and
besides these, there were other
in the form of hatchets, darts,
ives, &c. which when shook,
His feet
odd sort of tinkling. and

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

161

1693 and legs, were covered with trinkets of the
same nature, and his hands with a pair of
iron-gloves, in the form of bears-paws.
His cap was likewise decorated with
various pieces of iron, in as various shapes,
as those on his gown: and on his forehead,
he wore a large pair of horns, like those
of the rein-deer, but composed of iron, as
well as the rest.

When he exercises his diabolical art, he
holds a drum in his left-hand, and a flat-
kind of a stick in his right, which is covered
with the skin of a mountain-mouse; then
he hops awhile upon one foot; and after
that upon the other; and during this kind
of dance to his drum, the pieces of iron,
which hang all about him, make a hideous
clutter. Besides, at almost every step, he
rolls his eyes, and imitates the grunting,
or grumbling of a bear. After this exor-
dium, he insists on his fee before he will
proceed one single step farther, towards the
discovery of what the poor, credulous
Tungusians want to extort from him,
whether it be to recover any thing of value
that has been stolen; or to hear from him
any important news, of which they are
solicitous to be informed. The fee being
deposited, he begins to dance again, and to
repeat the grumbling as before; till he
observes a black-bird, perching upon his
cell, or hut, at that particular spot where
the smoke goes out; and then, in the last
place, he falls prostrate on the ground, and
there lies, for a short time, like one that is
totally deprived of his senses, till the bird
of omen is flown again out of sight. In
about a quarter of an hour's time, he re-
covers his lost senses, and then makes his
declaration of what is the request of his
client; and what he pronounces is deemed
as sure as fate. The drefs of this magi-
cian, with its additional trinkets, is so heavy,
that it must be a strong man who can
lift it fairly with one hand. This impostor
was possessed of abundance of cattle; and
those who were so weak as to consult him
on such occasions, never denied him the
gratuity he demanded, were it ever so
exorbitant, in case they had it to depo-
site.

A descrip-
tion of the
Tungusi-
ans.

These natives of Nisovier, who are all
Pagans, are, for the most part, robust

fellows, and well-set. Their hair, for the
generality, is remarkably long, and per-
fectly black. It is a custom amongst them
to have it knotted behind, and to let it hang
down their back, like a horse's tail. Tho'
their faces, indeed, are broader than most
of our Europeans their noses, are not flat;
as to their eyes, they are remarkably small,
like those of the (e) Calmucs.

The women, as well as the men, go
almost naked, during the summer-season;
for they have nothing about them but a
kind of leathern girdle, much like our
fringed sashes; which they wear out of
modesty to conceal their nakedness.

The women, by way of distinction, drefs
up their hair with coral, to which they
affix divers little iron trinkets, by way of
decoration. In order to preserve them-
selves from being stung by their flies, they
generally wear on their left arm a little
light vessel, or pot, full of a smoking-wood.
These insects swarm to that degree on the
river of Tunguska, that the men, for the
most part, cover their faces, as well as their
hands, whilst upon the water, for the same
purpose; but as they are so much accus-
tomed to them, they scarce feel them
when they bite. Tho' they are ambitious
of being thought handsome, yet they
entertain but very odd ideas of what is
generally called beauty; for, in order to
render themselves as graceful as possible,
they quilt their foreheads, cheeks, and
chins, with a kind of thread, steeped in a
black greafe, which, when taken off, leaves
such a mark behind it, as is deemed high-
ly ornamental. And, indeed, the custom
is so universal, that there are very few a-
mongst them but make it their daily
practice. The reader, however, will have
a more adequate idea of this imaginary ad-
ditional beauty by having recourse to the
plate annexed.

During the winter-season, they generally
drefs themselves in the skins of their rein-
deers, with the addition of a proper quan-
tity of horse-hair to the fore-part of their
vestments, and dogs-skin to the bottoms.
They make no use either of linnen or
woollen, but adorn themselves with a sort
of ribbands, and a thread made of fish-
skin. They wear, likewise, upon their
heads

T t

1693

Their drefs
during the
summer-
season.

Their
whimsical
decora-
tions.

Their win-
ter drefs.

1693

heads a kind of cap, made of the skin of their rein-deers, with their wide-spreading horns on; but more particularly, when they set out, in order, to hunt down that creature, by which artful deception, and gliding gently along the grafs, they get within bow-shot of them; and most of them are such dexterous marksmen, that their arrows seldom fail of doing the execution proposed.

Their diversions.

When they are inclined to amuse themselves, they form a ring, whilst one of their companions stands in the center, with a kind of wand in his hand, with which he endeavours to lick the legs of those who pass round about him; most of them, however, so dexterously avoid the blow, that all his endeavours prove, for some time, fruitless and ineffectual; but when he happens to take his aim aright, the person on whom the blow falls is immediately ducked in the river.

Their odd burials.

As to their burials, they strip their dead, in the first place, stark naked, and then deposit their lifeless carcase under some distant tree, where it lies till it is perfectly rotten. After that, they collect the bones, and bury them in the adjacent ground.

Their idols.

Tho' they have no priest but their Shaman, or magician; yet all of them have their wooden idols in their tents or huts. Each of these images, or idols, are made in a human form; and, for the most part, are about an ell in stature; and these, to testify their veneration for them, are

1693

fed by their devotees, or pretended at least so to be, with the best viands they can possibly procure for them, much after the manner of the (c) Otiachs, and with equal neatness.

Their tents or huts.

Their tents, or huts, which are for the most part composed of the bark of their birch-trees, are decorated, on the outside, with the tails and mains of their horses; as also with their several bows and arrows, and here and there a dead puppy, by way of additional embellishment.

During the summer-season, they principally live upon a variety of fish, of which they have plenty.

Their summer diet.

Their boats, which are generally large enough for the reception of seven or eight persons, are composed of the barks of trees, few'd strong together. They are long and narrow, and have no benches in them, or any other convenience for their sitting down. They fall, however, on their knees in them, and make use of a double paddle or oar, which they hold by the middle, and are very dexterous in the management of it. This they dip in the water all at once, in large rivers, as well as small.

Their subsistence, as we observed before in the summer, is principally on fish; and as to their diet in winter, they live upon deer of divers sorts, which they hunt down daily, and secure by the dexterous use of their bows and arrows.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

African, and the adjacent country once or twice a year.

(c) Otiachs, or Oustiachs, see p. 148. n. b.

(b) Calmucs, wandering tribes, or hords of Tartars, who inhabit the country north of the Caspian-sea, and sometimes put themselves under the protection of Russia, visiting the city

CHAP.

devotees, or pretended at least with the best winds they can procure for them, much after the manner of the (c) Offiacks, and with e-

ms, or huts, which are for the most part composed of the bark of their trees, and are decorated, on the outside, with the skins and mains of their buffaloes, their several bows and arrows, and there a dead puppy, by way of embellishment.

the summer-season, they gather upon a variety of fish, of which they have plenty.

boats, which are generally large, and are the reception of seven or eight persons, composed of the barks of trees, and are long and narrow, together. They are long and narrow, and have no benches in them, or any other convenience for their living; they sail, however, on their knees, and make use of a double paddle, which they hold by the middle, and are very dexterous in the management.

This they dip in the water, in large rivers, as well as

in the lakes, as we observed before; and is principally on fish, and on deer, in winter, they live upon deer's flesh, which they hunt down and secure by the dexterity of their bows and arrows.

Chapter.

and the adjacent country east of

the, or Offiacks, see p. 148. n. b.

CHAP.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

C H A P. XXIV.

The Envoy's Arrival at Buratskoi, and from thence at Bulaganfskoi. A succinct Account of the Burates, their Manner of Hunting, &c. His Arrival at Jekutskoi. A short Description of that Place, and of the burning Cavern over against it. His Departure from Jekutskoi, and Arrival at the Lake, called Bakal, or Baikal; with a Description of the Parts adjacent, &c.

MR. Isbrants, on the first day of February, arrived at the fortrefs of Buratskoi, situate on the river of Angora, which empties its waters into the lake, called (a) Bakal, or Baikal, and is a very populous place, but inhabited by the Burates, who are very illiterate, and almost all of them heathens.

On the eleventh, the envoy arrived at Bulaganfskoi; the vales and lower part whereof are inhabited likewise by the above-mentioned Burates, who are most of them rich in cattle. Their beeves abound with hair, and their huts, or tents, are low, composed of wood, and covered with clay. Their fire-place is in the center, and the smoke is conveyed away through an aperture in the top of the structure. They have no idea of agriculture, of orchards, or garden-grounds, and their villages are, for the generality, situate on the banks of their rivers; from whence they are not so much accustomed to shift their quarters, as the Tungusians, or some others amongst those Pagan people. They drive stakes or posts into the ground before the doors of their tents, which they decorate with the skins of goats, sheep, and horses.

As soon as the spring is somewhat advanced, they assemble together in large bodies on horse-back, in order to hunt down their stags, rein-deer, and other wild beasts, which they distinguish by the name of Ablavo. Upon the first sight of their game, they divide themselves into distinct companies, or bands, and surround them; when they have so done, they jointly drive great numbers of them

The method of hunting observed by the Burates.

gradually into some narrow avenue; and when they have got within reach of them, (as they are plentifully provided with arrows) they exercise their bows, and but very few of those wild animals escape the fury of the chase.

No sooner is their diversion over, in which they frequently wound either one another, or the horses they ride on, each looks out, as narrowly as possible, for his own particular arrows, which are all properly marked; and, when in possession of his game, he first fleas off the skin, and dries the flesh, which he separates as clean as possible from the bones, in the warm rays of the sun.

When their stock of provisions is pretty nearly exhausted, they renew their attack, and are morally assured of a sufficient supply, as the country abounds, not only with fallow-deer, but with wild sheep, which are to be met with by thousands, in a manner, upon the mountains. For five or six leagues about, however, there are very few (if any) creatures that furnish them with furs, except, by chance, a bear, or wolf, should fall in their way.

When strangers have occasion to apply to these natives either for oxen or camels, in order to pursue their travels into (b) China, they are under an indispensable obligation to come to an agreement with them for other commodities in exchange; for they have no notion of any current coin. They are very ready, however, to traffic with any foreigners, for whitish fables, copper, or pewter basons, red-scarlet (c) Hamburgh cloths, the skins of otters, the silks of (d) Persia, of any colour

Casualties upon these public occasions.

The manner of traffic.

colour whatsoever, and for any quantity of gold or silver, if it be in ingots. In this way of trade and commerce, a stranger may purchase an ox, which, when dressed, would weigh 800, or near 1000 weight, for about four or five rubles; and a camel for ten or a dozen at most, the ruble being estimated amongst those people, at five livres as they are in (e) Russia.

The price of their cattle.

The stature and constitution of the natives.

The natives of this country, the women as well as men, are for the most part very hearty, robust, and tall. As to their faces, they are handsome enough in their way, and resemble in some measure the (f) Chinese Tartars. Both the one and the other, during the winter-season, wear a kind of mantle, made of sheep-skins, which they buckle round them close with a girdle, and a cap, which covers their ears, and, in their language, is called a Malachaven. In the summer-season, however, they wear gowns of a coarse scarlet-cloth. In all other respects, as they are washed but once in their lives, and that on the day of their nativity, and never pare their nails, which grow like eagles claws, they look, if we may be indulged the expression, like human devils.

Their dress in regard to the men.

The men wear a beard under their chins, but pluck off all the superfluous hairs. The skirts of their cloaths are adorned with furs; their caps are made of fox-skins; their vestments of a blue cotton-stuff, which are plaited in the middle; and their sandals, or boots, of the skins of beasts, with the hairy part only exposed to view.

The dress of their women in years. The dress of their maidens.

Their women adorn themselves with coral, rings, and small pieces of money, fastened in their hair; and their lasses, or maidens, plait their hair in ringlets, like so many snakes, which make them look like little furies.

The hair of their women in years, falls down on each side of their faces, and is decorated with a great variety of little figures, composed of copper, or brads; and whenever any of them die, they are interred in their best cloaths; to which are added, a bow and arrow.

Their divine worship, if it may be so called, consists wholly in making some particular fantastic motions with their

heads, at certain seasons of the year, to the several goats or sheep, which they have fastened to the door-posts of their cabins, or tents.

The same act of devotion is, at certain times likewise, paid both to the sun and moon, but that in a kneeling posture, with their hands joined together in a solemn manner, but in a profound silence; for they don't so much as whisper, or use the least verbal invocation whatsoever. They have their priests, 'tis true; but they put them to death, whenever they see convenient, which is somewhat very peculiar. They inter them, however, with some solemnity, and furnish them both with money and cloaths, that they may go before them into the unknown world, and make intercession for them.

When they are indispensably obliged to take their solemn oath on any particular occasion amongst themselves, they repair to the lake, called Bakal, or Baitain, within the distance of two days journey, which they look upon as sacred. They are firmly persuaded, it seems, that should they take a false oath upon that most holy ground, they should never more return alive to their habitations. This mountain has for a long course of years been held by them in the utmost veneration; and they frequently make free-will oblations thereupon, of the choicest of their cattle.

In the parts adjacent, they have a particular animal that affords a valuable musk, not unlike that in the plate annexed, which bears some resemblance to a dark-coloured deer, that has no horns, and a head, not altogether unlike that of a wolf. The valuable musk abovementioned lies concealed in a small bladder near its navel, and is covered with a kind of down. This animal is called by the natives of China, the Yehiam, or Musk-deer, notwithstanding its head is no ways like one; and its teeth bear some resemblance to the tusks of a wild-boar.

Signior Martini, in his Chinese Atlas, assures us, that this creature is to be met within the country of (g) Xanxi, or Xanfi, near the city of Leao; but more frequent-

Their priests, how treated by them.

The manner of their taking a solemn oath, and the place to which they repair, the that put-

by in that of Manchuria; as well, of (h) Szechuan; as well, in some parts of India; in some parts of Persia; the borders of Fennia; part of the territory in Asia, some other ph-

word.

The description, which has given of it, is well known of the curious reader. "The most remarkable incident and incident in the history of the nation, that he inter- "which, without the least "resistance. As his blood "is valuable, tho' not ex- "they are careful to pre- "his novel, he has not "det full of blood; be- "ing a certain consanguine "blood, which they in "the last place, and after "him and out him into "In order to make "the natives of China in "yes of this animal, it "which they pound in "with a small quantity "whole is of the con- "and when dried, "cous, composed of it "creature. "When they are dis- "musk of an inferior "and genuine at the "pound all the parts of "ther, without using "them to a jelly, and "method is above me- "They have, more "of this valuable c "do not so perfectly "the two former, is in "This is a compound "of this same animal "from the need to this "together with the n "make a common mu "all is good, and so

certain seasons of the year, to
gouts or sheep, which they
d to the door-posts of their
houses.

The act of devotion is, at certain
times, paid both to the sun and
that in a kneeling posture,
hands joined together in a so-
lent, but in a profound silence;
it is so much as whisper, or the
mental invocation whatsoever.

Their priests, too, but
them to death, whenever they
sistent, which is somewhat very
They enter them, however,
solennity, and furnish them
grey and cloths, that they
are them into the unknown
make intercession for them.

They are indispensably obliged
their solemn oath on any pri-
sation amongst themselves, they
the lake, called Bakal, or Bai-
mentioned upon a high moun-
the distance of two days
which they look upon as sacred,
singly persuaded, it seems, that
take a false oath upon that
ground, they should never
n alive to their habitations.
man has for a long course of
held by them in the utmost
; and they frequently make
celebrations thereupon, of the
their cattle.

parts adjacent, they have a par-
al that affords a valuable mule,
that in the plate annexed,
is some resemblance to a dark-
er, that has no horns, and a
together unlike that of a wolf.
The musk abovementioned lies
in a small bladder near its ni-
is covered with a kind of down.
animal is called by the natives of
the Fekim, or Musk deer, not-
ing its head is no ways like one;
it bear some resemblance to the
a wild goat.

Martin, in his Chinese Atlas, says
that this creature is to be met
the country of (g) Xami, or Xami,
city of Liao; but more frequent-

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

165

ly in that of Hanchungfu, in the country
of (b) Suchurn; as also, in that of Pao-
ningfa; in some parts of Kiating; and
near the fortrefs of Fiencevin; in divers
parts of the territory of Junan; and,
in short, some other places to the west-
ward.

The description, which that author
has given of it, is well worthy the atten-
tion of the curious reader, and is as fol-
lows. "Tho' the musk-animal, says
he, bears some small resemblance to a
deer, yet it is of a darker colour, and so
indolent and inactive, that the sportf-
men there can scarcely rouse him; in-
somuch, that he suffers them to cut his
throat, without the least struggle, or
resistance. As his blood is looked upon
as valuable, tho' not equal to its musk,
they are careful to preserve it. Under
his navel, he has not only a small blad-
der full of blood; but another, contain-
ing a certain coagulated, and odoriferous
liquid, which they take from him, in
the first place; and after that they flea
him and cut him into pieces.

The man-
ner of ma-
king the
best musk.

"In order to make the best musk,
the natives of China take the hind-quar-
ters of this animal from the kidneys,
which they pound in a stone-mortar,
with a small quantity of blood, till the
whole is of the consistency of a jelly,
and when dried, deposit it in little
cods, composed of the skin of the same
creature.

Their fe-
cond fort.

"When they are disposed to have their
musk of an inferior sort, tho' good
and genuine at the same time, they
pound all the parts of this animal toge-
ther, without distinction, and reduce
them to a jelly, and observe the same
method as above-mentioned.

The third
fort.

"They have, moreover, a third sort
of this valuable commodity, which,
tho' not so perfectly good and pure as
the two former, is highly esteemed.
"This is composed of the fore quar-
ters of this same animal, that is to say,
from the head to the kidneys; which,
together with the remainder, serve to
make a common musk, inasmuch, that
all is good, and no part lost."

Mr. Isbrants, however, seems at a loss
to determine, whether the Burates, or
any of their savage neighbours, take the
same measures as the Chinese do, in ma-
king this same musk of different degrees
of goodness.

The en-
voy's arri-
val at Je-
kutkoi, and
a succinct
account of
the place.

The envoy after making some short stay
amongst these savage natives, proceeded
on his journey to Jekutskoi, situate on the
river of Angara, which rises from the
lake of Bakal, or Baikal aforesaid, at the
distance of eight leagues, or thereabouts.
This town, which had not at that time
been long built, was flanked with good
substantial towers. Its suburbs are very
large; and not only corn and salt, but
butchers meat, and all kinds of fish are
remarkably cheap there: And as to bar-
ley in particular, a whole German hun-
dred weight of it may be purchased for
about seven pence, or eight pence at far-
thest.

The soil all round about is very fertile,
and as 'tis well cultivated, it abounds in
all sorts of grain as far as Wergolenskoi,
which is but at a few leagues distance.
The Russians, who reside in these parts,
have some hundreds of villages all round
about, and are very industrious in the
cultivation of their lands.

A burning
cavern
there.

Over against this town, towards the
east, there is a cavern for ever burning,
which for some considerable time past,
had cast forth flames with an astonishing
degree of violence; but at present, in-
deed, nothing shocking appears from it;
since it only smokes. Those flames, it
seems, burst forth from a large aperture,
which still continues to be burning; as,
by thrusting a long stick into the said fif-
sure, may be plainly experienced by the
curious traveller.

A fine con-
vent like-
wife there.

On one side of this town, likewise,
there stands a fine monastery, or convent,
on that particular spot, where the river
Jakut, from whence it derives its name,
empties its waters into the Angara. Tho'
the natives of these parts are accustomed
to feel great earthquakes during the
latter part of the summer, yet as no fa-
tal consequences ever attend them, those
shocks never terrify, or disconcert them.

U u

Whilst

THE TRAVELS OF

1693

A Taichia,
or Mongu-
lian lord.

Whilst the envoy resided in this place, he met with a Taichia, that is to say, a (i) Mongulian, or Mogulian lord, who had thrown himself under the shelter and protection of the Czar of (k) Moscow, and had been for some time a proselyte to the christian faith, and received a member of the Greek church.

His sister, a
Mongulian
nun.

This young nobleman had a sister, who was a Mongulian nun, and was greatly inclined to become a christian convert, as well as her brother. In conversation upon that serious and important topic, she would ingeniously acknowledge, that the God in whom the christians put their trust and confidence, must of necessity, in her opinion, be an omnipotent God indeed; since he had expelled their Mongulian deity out of Paradise; but she was firmly persuaded, that a time would come, when he should be restored, and never be subject to the like disgrace again.

Her belief.

Her parti-
cular de-
portment in
conversion.A Lama, or
Mongulian
pious.

When any of these nuns, or Mongulian devotees enter into a room, they never salute any person present whomsoever, tho' 'tis a customary thing with their ladies, who live under no restraint; since their order is too strict to approve of such formal acts of complaisance. In her hand, she held a string of beads, which she counted over and over with her fingers; and was attended by a Mongulian-priest, whom they call a Lama, who held in his hand likewise a string of beads, which he kept constantly counting with her, and at the same time visibly moved his lips, like one deeply engaged in private contemplation, as is customary amongst the Mongulians, as well as the (l) Calmucs. This priest, by the incessant practice of this branch of devotion, had wore his thumb, his nail, and the joints of his fingers to that degree, that he had perfectly lost the sense of all feeling in them.

May 1.
The envoy's
departure
from Je-
kutskoi.

Mr. Ibrants, having rested himself for some considerable time at Jekutskoi, departed from thence in a sledge, on the first day of May, and crossed the country as far as the lake Bakal, or Baikal aforesaid, where he arrived on the tenth of the same month, and found it frozen, notwithstanding

standing the spring was so far advanced.

When he had crossed it, he got into the country of (m) Catania. The lake abovementioned, is in breadth, about six German leagues, and in length about forty; and the ice, he found at that time, was no less than a Dutch ell in point of thickness.

It is a very dangerous passage, however, if it happens to snow, and the wind proves high, at the same time; and as the ice is very slippery, and the snow driven off by that means, great care must be taken, that the horses are all properly shod for that purpose. When the winds are violent, and the horses improperly shod, the traveller too often meets with holes in the ice, into which he is too often plunged unawares. The ice there frequently cracks, thro' the impetuosity of the winds, with a noise almost as loud as thunder; but it soon knits, and joins together again.

As the camel and oxen, which are accustomed to travel into China must unavoidably cross this lake, as they go thither from Jekutskoi, the former, in order to enable them to proceed on their journey with safety, are provided with a sort of boots well shod for the purpose; and very sharp irons are fastened on the hoofs of the latter; for without such care and precaution, they would never be able to stand on the smooth slippery surface. The water, however, of this lake is perfectly sweet, notwithstanding, at a distance, it appears as clear and as green as the ocean itself. Numbers of seals are to be met with in the fissures of the ice, which are perfectly black; whereas those in the (n) white sea are, for the most part, of divers colours.

This lake abounds with all sorts of fish, but more particularly with pike and sturgeon; and some of the latter are of such an enormous size, that they will weigh little less than two hundred German pounds. The only river that flows from this lake is the Angara, which runs to the north-west; there are several, however, that empty their waters into it, the principal whereof, is the Silinga, which

169

The lake of
Baikal, or
Baikal de-
scribed.Its passage
dangerous.Faint ca-
stles oc-
casioned by
violent
winds.The man-
ner of cross-
ing this lake
with camels
and oxen.

1693 rises to the southward
country. There are some
and others that fall into it.

and there are some like
Lemba. Its borders,
which all round about it
the Barats, Mongulians
and produce a large quan-
tity of fish. Besides the
fishes. Besides the
which is very dangerous.

In regard to the above
it is very remarkable, that
draw near it, on the ice
or monastery of St. N.
on the spot, where the ice
cut of the lake, the inhabi-
dence of warmth and
them warning never to
whilst they are crossing
of Oser, or still water,
they should be overtake

On the

(1) Bakal, or Baikal, a
cradle of Sibir, in the north
China.

(2) China, see p. 61. n.

(3) Hamburg, east by
great city and port town
circle of lower Saxony, an
situate on the river Elbe,
of the German ocean, 40
leagues, and 25 north east of
on the north side of the river
shores, and partly on the
more subject to it is small,
real large villages and no
The tide flows through it
between the shores, and the
there in some spring tides
change in their bodies,
fishes, and their bodies are
light, and make a grand
is actually strong, it is as
all is a town of that mag-
and the country people
all people of Europe, and
their goods are sent into the
pire by the sea. All pro-
here, and there have been
they export a great deal

spring was so far advanced, he had crossed it, he got into of (m) Catania. The lake is in breadth, about six leagues, and in length about forty leagues. The ice, he found at that time, than a Dutch ell in point of

if dangerous passage, however, it is to snow, and the wind proves the same time; and as the ice is very thin, and the snow driven off by the wind, great care must be taken, for the horses are all properly shod for the ice. When the winds are violent, the horses improperly shod, the ice often melts with holes in which he is too often plunging. The ice there frequently melts, and the impetuosity of the winds, which is almost as loud as thunder; on knits, and joins together a

channel and oxen, which are accustomed to travel into China must undertake this lake, as they go thither by the sea, the former, in order to proceed on their journey, are provided with a lot of sleds for the purpose; and very few are fastened on the hooks of sleds; for without such care and preparation they would never be able to travel the smooth slippery surface. The sleds, however, of this lake is perfectly smooth, and at a distance, it appears clear and as green as the ocean, and is so deep as to be met with sleds of seals are to be met with the sleds of the ice, which are the sleds of the ice, whereas those in the sea are, for the most part, of sleds.

The lake abounds with all sorts of fish, and is particularly rich in salmon; and some of the later are of enormous size, that they will be less than two hundred German miles. The only river that flows into the lake is the Angara, which runs to the west; there are several hundred empty their waters into it, the largest of which is the Siliga, which rises

rises to the southward in the Mongolian country. There are some brooks, indeed and rivulets that fall into it from the rocks, and there are some little islands in it likewise. Its borders, and the adjacent lands all round about it are inhabited by the Burates, Mongulians and the Onkotes, and produce a large quantity of fine black fables. Besides, the inhabitants frequently catch an animal, called the Kaberdiner, which is very advantageous.

In regard to the above-mentioned lake, it is very remarkable, that when travellers draw near it, on the side of the convent or monastery of St. Nicholas, which stands on the spot, where the river Angara flows out of the lake, the inhabitants with abundance of warmth and superstition, give them warning never to call the lake, whilst they are crossing it, by the name of Ofer, or Still-water, but a lake; for fear they should be overtaken by tempestuous

weather, and perish in the storm, as too many had done before them, who had been so rash and presumptuous as to give it the ill-omen'd appellation above-mentioned.

This superstitious precaution, however, of these natives appeared so idle and so groundless, to Mr. Isbrant's, that he never scrupled to call it the Still-water, during his passage over it; and notwithstanding their predictions, he arrived safe at the castle of Catania, which is the first fort in the province of Dauria, in the midst of very fine weather, sincerely commiserating the ignorance and enthusiasm of those poor deluded heathens, who stand in awe of, and tremble at the fury of the elements, instead of putting their trust and confidence in the Almighty, who is the great creator, and lord of the universe, and holds the winds in the hollow of his hands.

The superstitious notions that are imbibed by the natives about this particular lake.

The castle of Catania.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Bakal, or Baikal, a great lake in the middle of Siberia, in the road from Moscow to China.

(b) China, see p. 66. n. l.

(c) Hamburg, east long. 9. 40. lat. 54. a great city and port-town in Germany, in the circle of lower Saxony, and dutchy of Holftein, situate on the river Elbe, 70 miles south-east of the German ocean, 40 miles south-west of Lubec, and 55 north-east of Bremen. It stands on the north-side of the rivet Elbe, partly on islands, and partly on the continent; the territory subject to it is small, but there are several large villages and noblemens seats in it. The tide flows through the channels, which separate the islands; and the town lies so low, that in some spring-tides they receive great damage in their houses. They have spacious streets, and their houses are built of brick, very high, and make a grand figure. As the town is naturally strong, it is as well fortified by art also, as a town of that magnitude can well be; and it is exceedingly populous, merchants from all parts of Europe resorting to it, from whence their goods are sent into the middle of the empire by the Elbe. All provisions are plentiful here, and their beer has such a reputation, that they export a great deal of it. They have ve-

ry elegant gardens, and summer-houses for several miles about the town, on the land side; and on the water, ships come up to their doors, to deliver, and take in their lading; the tide flowing sixteen miles above the town. It is an imperial city, or sovereign state, governed by its own magistrates, subject only to the general laws of the empire, as other princes and states are; but the people have sometimes disputed the authority of the senate, of late years, and the empire has interposed, and compelled them to put an end to their dissensions by force. And the king of Denmark, as duke of Holstein, sometimes lays claim to the dominion of this city, and extorts money from them; for as he is possessed of the fortrefs of Gluckstat, towards the mouth of the river, it lies in his power to distress them pretty much. Their liberties also are sometimes endangered by religious disputes with the Roman catholics, in whose behalf the emperor sometimes interposes, as he did in the year 1708, commanding a body of troops to march into the city, and they were forced to buy their peace. They are at variance also with other denominations of Protestants; for the Lutheran persuasion, is established in this city; and they will tolerate no others, whether Popish or Protestant, except in the chappels of foreign ministers, and will suffer none of their subjects to resort to these.

THE TRAVELS OF

1693

(d) Persia, see p. 64. n. c.

(e) Russia, or Moscow, see p. 7. n. o.

(f) Tartary (Chinefe) fee p. 18. n. 1.

(*g*) **Xanxi**, or **Xanfi**, a province of China in **Afia**, bounded by the province of **Peking** on the east; by the great wall on the north; by the province of **Honan** on the south; and by the river **Crocei**, which divides it from the province of **Xenfi** on the west.

(*b*) Suchuen, a province of China, is bounded on the north, by the province of Xendü; by Honan and Hugnam on the east; by Quecheu and Ynam on the south; and by the moun-

(i) Mongulians, or Mogulians, the natives of a part of Tartary, which lies north of India and Persia. Tamerlane, one of the Mogul princes, conquered India and Persia, and from him the present Great Mogul, or emperor of India, is descended. Samarcand, in Ubec Tartary was the ancient seat of their empire.

(b) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7, n. c.

(1) Calmucs, fee p. 162. n. b.

(*m*) White-fea, fee p. 7. n. b.

C H A P. XXV.

Mr. Ibrants departs from Katania, and arrives at Udinkoi. A Description of the latter, and the Parts adjacent. He sets out again from Udinkoi, and arrives at the Fort of Jeranna. A Description of the Natives. He arrives afterwards at Nerzinkoi. A Description of that Place, and of the People who reside therein, and in the Country on each side. He arrives at last at Argunkoi, the very last Fort belonging to his Czarian Majesty. The situation of it described.

Feb. 11.
The envoy
departs
from Kata-
nia.

ON the eleventh of February, Mr. Ibrants departed from the cattle of Catania, and on the next day arrived at the large town, called Ilniskoi, or Bolfoi Saimka, the principal inhabitants whereof are (*a*) Ruffians, whose occupation, for the most part, during the winter-season, is hunting for fables; since they can scarcely subsist on the products of their soil; as the whole country abounds with barren hills.

On the fourteenth he arrived at Tantzimkoi castle, where there was a considerable garrison of (*b*) Coffees, in order to oppose the outrages and depredations of the (*c*) Mangulians, who reside upon the frontiers.

On the nineteenth he arrived at Udinkoi, situated on a high hill at the foot whereof the greater part of the inhabitants pitch their tents, under the cannon of that

Feb. 14
Arrives at
Tanzin-
thei castle.

Leib, 10.
Arrives at
Udhokoi,

1693
was here, there was
cartilage, which great
for in the place only of o
less than

[illegible]

Uda,
north-
west Uda.

On the next day river Kurby, the spring whereof lies to the north empties its waters, in it the Ony into the Ula.

He kept as close as to the banks of this river at about the middle notwithstanding, he obliged to leave it, in haste, yet he always within view.

On the 29th he arrived at the mouth of Kurby, and was highly pleased with some ways, that he had traversed, full of rocks, trees, and with one hour the hour he departed

on the wall, its chief town is

ians, or Mogulians, the natives
array, which lies north of India
Tartarians, one of the Mogul
conquered India and Persia, and from
reside Great Mogul, or emper-
is defended. Somewhat in
was the ancient seat of their

sons, or Ruffia, see p. 7. c.

sons, see p. 162. n. b.

see, see p. 7. n. b.

XXXXXXXXXXXX

XX.

arrives at Udinskoi. A
advent. He sets out a-
Fort of Jerauna. A De-
wards at Nerzinskoi.
he who reside therein, and
a last at Argunskoi, the
jesty. The situation of it

along the banks of the Uda, which
is waters into the Silinga, about
h part of a league below the
which there is likewise a strong
Russian Colonies, in order to
the nations of the Mangulians.
own, which is the way to the
Dauria, lies even in the sam-
greatly exposed to the incursions
of the Mangulians, who
drive off what cattle they find
in the meadows. Tho' the land
which is for the most part unim-
is so barren, as scarce to be worth
raising, yet they have plenty of
cabbages, carrots, and turnips,
vegetable food of the like kind;
is not a trace of any sort what-
ed in those parts at this ves-

time at night, whilst the enemy

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

169

was here, there was a violent shock of an earthquake, which greatly surpris'd him; for in the space only of one hour, it shook all the houses no less than three times successively; but as providence ordered it, no fatal consequences attended it.

Though the river Uda produces but a very small quantity of fish; (pike and roach only excepted) yet, in the month of July in particular, there are surprising shoals of one species of fish, which are there called the Omuli, and which swim up the river from the lake of (d) Baikal. These Omuli, in point of size, are about the bigness of our herrings. It is observable, that very few of them are ever seen above the town, but seem to rest themselves at the foot of a decayed hill, for two or three days only at farthest, and then return to their native lake. Great quantities of them, however, are caught by only throwing a large sack into the water, instead of a net; and those sacks are frequently dragged up with as many as they can hold. Here Mr. Ibrants was indispensibly obliged to tarry till the sixth of April, in order to furnish himself with a sufficient number of camels and horses for the prosecution of his journey.

On the 26th he went to the river Ona by land, which flows from the north-west, and empties its waters into the Uda.

On the next day he travelled to the river Kurba, the spring, or fountain-head whereof lies to the north-north-west, and empties its waters, in the same manner as the Ona, into the Uda.

He kept as close as possibly he could to the banks of this river, till he arrived at about the middle of its source; and notwithstanding, he was several times obliged to leave it, indeed, at some distance; yet he always took care to keep it within view.

On the 29th he arrived at the fort of Jerauna, and was highly delighted with meeting with some towns again in his way, after he had traversed a long, tedious desert, full of rocks, during which, he met not with one single passenger from the hour he departed from Udinskoi.

This fort is supplied with a very considerable garrison of Cossacs; and in this place there are resident great numbers of Ruffians, whose principal subsistence consists in the sale of fables.

The Konni Tungusians, who are all Heathens, and inhabitants of the banks of those two rivers, Tunguski and Angara, disperse themselves all over this country, and speak a language, understood by no one but themselves.

When any of these natives dye, they are buried in their cloaths, with their bows and arrows deposited by their sides; and when the ground is filled up, it is covered with large stones. When this ceremony is over, they drive a stake into the ground hard by, to which the best horse that the deceased was possessed of is fastened, and soon after killed, with some kind of solemnity, as an oblation. Their principal subsistence depends on the sale of their fable furs, which in this country are extremely fine, and of a very beautiful black. Here likewise, great numbers of what they call Luxes are to be met with, and a kind of dark-grey Squirrels, which the (e) Chinese, in former times were accustomed to hunt down, and carry away with them.

To the northward of this fort, there are three small lakes to be seen, which are situate but at a small distance from each other, and are about two leagues in circumference, computing all together; in each of which there is great plenty of pike, carp, perch, and other fish of the like kind. From this place there are two roads leading to Ziinskoi, otherwise called Plabitschna. Mr. Ibrants sent part of his retinue by the one, and his caravan proceeded to the southward; keeping along the banks of the lake, called Schakze Ofer, and then crossed the hills of Jablusnoi, that is to say, of Apples. There are none grow there, however; and those hills produce only a red sort of a fruit, which has, indeed, somewhat of the flavour and taste of an apple. The other road he took himself, with fourteen of his attendants notwithstanding the way was very moorish; and besides he had several high rocks to pass over

X x

be-

1693
An earthquake.

The inhabitants of this country.

The manner of burying their dead.

1693

April 29.
Arrives at Jerauna.

April 26.
Goes by land to the river Ona.

before he could reach Telimta; at which fort there are great numbers of Ruffians, who, during the winter-season, catch-fables of a beautiful black, that are fat and well fed, and no ways inferior to the very finest that are to be met with throughout (f) Siberia, and the whole province of Dauria.

A Knez, or prince of Tungus, visits the envoy.

Here the envoy spent one night, and a Knez, or prince of the Tungusians, whose name was Liliulka, came to visit him. This lord wore his hair, twisted up with leather, which was so excessively long, that it went three times round his shoulders.

As Mr. Ibrants told him he should take it as a favour if he would gratify his curiosity so far as to let it flow loose; and as the Knez was in high spirits, having drank a little too freely of brandy, he very readily complied with his request; and upon an exact admeasurement it proved to be no less than four German ells in length; and the hair of his little son, who was but about six years of age, and was present with his father, which hung down upon his back, was at least an ell long. These natives of Tungus, are very populous, and dwell upon the hills and mountains of this country; and most of them are in good circumstances, thro' their advantageous traffic in fables.

The envoy and his retinue past for two days together over stony hills, which were very high, especially to the north-west and the south-east. The river of Konela, which afterwards is distinguished by the name of Witum, rises there towards the north; runs to the north-east, and proceeding onwards empties its waters into the (g) Lena, and from thence into the Icy or Northern-sea. The Zitta commences about half a league from thence, on the other side of the mountains, and discharges itself into the Ingodda, or Amur, and from that river into the eastern ocean.

May 15.
The envoy arrives at Plodbitcha.

On the 15th of May, Mr. Ibrants arrived at Plodbitcha, but the caravan on the day before, which had been greatly incommoded in its passage from the Tungusians, as they had set fire to the grass, which was extremely dry; insomuch that, the

cattle standing in want of forage, they were obliged to go as far as the mountains for it, which lay at least a league out of their way.

Mr. Ibrants was obliged to stop, for two or three days at Plodbitcha, which is situated on the river Zitta, not only in order to refresh himself after his fatigue, but to procure some rafts, by the help of which he might fall down the rivers of Amur afore said and Schilka, and get to Nerzinskoi; for the waters were so very low, that there was no possibility of going in boats; neither was it, indeed, perfectly safe to go upon those rafts where the places were rocky, and two of them in particular were broken and decayed, which were laden with some part of the envoy's equipage; however, with some difficulty the whole was preserved.

When all matters were in readiness, Mr. Ibrants sent his camels, and other beasts of burden before him towards Nerzinskoi, by the way of the mountains, and followed them in person on the eighteenth of May. On the nineteenth, he proceeded on his journey as far as the Onon, which rises from the Mungalian fens, and empties its waters towards the north-east into the Amur, where, upon the union of their streams, they roll down together by the name of Schilka.

Their waters are perfectly white, and their banks are inhabited by a great number of hords, or clans of the Mungaians, who are frequently committing insults on those who reside on the other side of the Schilka, and as far as Nerzinskoi. They are not always, however, successful in those outrages and invasions of their neighbours; for they frequently meet with strong repulses, and whenever they happen to be overpowered, they are executed immediately, without the least hopes of a reprieve, as audacious free-booters. The Russian Cossacs likewise set out in bands, and steer their course all along the banks of the Onon, in order to chastize those invaders wherever they can find them. They give, in short, no quarter; and carry death and desolation with them wherever they go.

On

On the twentieth of animal life at Nerzinskoi first Nerz, which flows north-east, and empties its waters into the Schilka, at about a quarter of a league from the town; is well defended by those furnished, not only with of birds artillery, but with Daurian Cossacs, who set cross as horse and foot, ing this place is encompassed by high hills; yet there are in the parts adjacent, plentiful provision of g new, horses, and all the cattle. And moreover, at two distance from the several parcels of low-land to be met with, which producing all such commodities the inhabitants can be the distance of a league above the town, on the banks of the Schilka several fisherman Russians to be met with, whose success depends on the their large dwellings in fish adjacent to the town, a their hills there is peculiar flowers, as well as p others the baldest called Raponiz, of growth, exceedingly in white lilies, white are are peculiarly fragrant species; add to these, lavender, sweet Marjoram variety of other odoriferous are unknown in our Europe. As for fruit, indeed, boast of but their good The heathens, who years past resided in the try, and are under the Cossacs chiefly, are distinguished by the name Tungusians, and the Cossacs are obliged to apprehend wherever the Tungusians think fit to live out

ing in want of forage, they
d to go as far as the mountains
h lay at least a league out of

ants was obliged to stop for two
days at Plobincha, which is situ-
river Zitta, not only in order to
himself after his fatigue, but to
the rafts, by the help of which
fall down the rivers of Amur
d Schilka, and get to Nerzin-
the waters were so very low,
e was no possibility of going in
either was it, indeed, perfectly
upon those ruts where the places
and two of them in particu-
broken and decayed, which were
some part of the envoy's equi-
ment, with some difficulty the
expedited.

all matters were in readiness,
ants sent his camels, and other
borden before him towards Ner-
y the way of the mountains,
ed them in person on the
of May. On the nineteenth,
d on his journey as far as the
ich rises from the Mongolian
empties its waters towards the
into the Amur, where, upon
of their streams, they roll
together by the name of Schil-

waters are perfectly white, and
as are inhabited by a great num-
s, or clans of the Mongolians,
requently committing insults on
re side on the other side of the
ad as far as Nerzinskoi. They are
s, however, successful in those
ad invasions of their neighbours;
requently meet with strong repul-
whenever they happen to be ar-
they are executed immediately,
the last hopes of a reprieve, as
free-boaters. The Russian
s likewise set out in bands, and
course all along the banks of the
order to chastize those invaders
they can find them. They
short, no quarter; and every
decimation with them wherever

On

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1693

On the twentieth of May, the envoy arrived safe at Nerzinskoi, situate on the river Nerza, which flows from the north-east, and empties its waters into the Schilka, at about a quarter of a league distance from the town; the fort whereof is well defended by strong out-works, and furnished, not only with a great number of brass artillery, but well guarded by Daurian Cossacs, who serve in both capacities, as horse and foot. Notwithstanding this place is encompassed round with high hills; yet there are meadow-grounds in the parts adjacent, sufficient for the plentiful provision of grass for their camels, horses, and all their other kinds of cattle. And moreover, at about a league or two distance from the hills, there are several parcels of low-lands fit for tillage to be met with, which are capable of producing all such conveniences of life as the inhabitants can reasonably desire. At the distance of about four or five leagues above the town, and ten below it, on the banks of the Schilka, there are several substantial Russians as well as Cossacs to be met with, whose principal subsistence depends on tillage, grazing, and their large dealings in fish. In the parts adjacent to the town, and at the feet of their hills there is plenty of all sorts of flowers, as well as plants; and amongst others the bastard Rhubarb, otherwise called Rapontica, of an extraordinary growth; exceedingly fine yellow as well as white lillies; white and red piones, that are peculiarly fragrant, and of divers species; add to these, thyme, rosemary, lavender, sweet Marjoram, and a great variety of other odoriferous plants, which are unknown in our European countries. As for fruit, indeed, they have none to boast of but their gooseberries.

Two kinds
of the inha-
bitants are
heathens.

Their dis-
tinction.

The heathens, who have for many years past resided in this part of the country, and are under the jurisdiction of his Czarian majesty, are of two kinds; and distinguished by the names of the Konni Tungusians, and the Olenni. The former are obliged to appear on horseback, whenever the Waiwode of Nerzinskoi thinks fit to issue out orders for that pur-

pose; or when the borders of that place are in the least invaded by the (d) Tartars; the latter, on the other hand, are obliged to serve on foot, and to stand to their arms in the town, upon all emergent occasions.

The head
or chief of
the Konni.

The head, or principal of the Konni, is a knez, or lord, by name Paul Petromitz Gantimur; one, pretty far advanced in years, and a native of Nienheu, where he had acted in the capacity, or high post, of a Taika, under the power and jurisdiction of the king of China: but having casually given some disgust to that prince, he was deposed, and removed into Dauria, with his hords, or vassals. This knez, having embraced the Christian faith, and been admitted a member of the Greek church, sheltered himself under the protection of his Czarian majesty; In four and twenty hours time, this lord, or knez, has it in his power to bring no less than 3000 men into the field of battle, if occasion requires, all well mounted, all able and experienced soldiers, and all accoutred with their bows and arrows. A small band, or body of these men, not above forty in number, will frequently put to flight three or four hundred of the Mungalian Tartars, if they attempt to attack them. Such of them as reside either in this town or the parts adjacent, subsist principally on their traffic in cattle; but those who live on the banks of the Schilka and the Amur, trade chiefly in fables, which are exceedingly fine there, and of a most beautiful black.

Their place
of abode,

They live in tents, or huts, which they call Jurtes, the inside whereof consists of poles, which are joined, or framed in such a manner together, that they can be removed with all the ease imaginable; as they are frequently obliged to shift their habitations. As soon as these poles are erected, they are covered over with skins, that part where the smoke of their chimneys is to have its proper vent only excepted. Their fire-places are for the generality in the center of their huts; and they have seats of turf all round about them.

Their method of devotion, or form of divine worship, is much the same with that

Their wor-
ship,

I

that

171

1693

THE TRAVELS OF

1693

that of the inhabitants of Dauria, from whom they pretend to derive their pedigree, and differs in no one essential article from that of the Tartars, quite to the frontiers of the Mungulians.

The drefs
and warlike
accoutre-
ments of
their wo-
men.

The women here are as robust, and have as broad faces as the men; and when on horseback, appear with their bows and arrows, in the use of which they are remarkably dexterous, as they are accustomed to them even from their infancy: neither is there any material difference in their habits from those of their men, as the reader will plainly perceive by the plate annexed

Their leve-
 ralliquors,

Water is their drink for the generality among the poorer fort; thole, however, who are in more easy circumstances, indulge themselves in drinking tea, which by them is termed Kara'tza, that is to say, black tea; because it changes the water in which it is infused to a blackish colour instead of green. This tea they boil in mare's-milk, mingled with a proper quantity of water, to which they add some grease, if they are unprovided with butter.

Their water
distilled
from mare's
milk.

They have, moreover, a sort of liquor, which, when distilled, they call Kunnen, or Arak, which is an extract from mare's-milk, and deposited into a vessel, whilst hot. To this they add a small quantity of four milk, and then stir it once or twice perhaps within the compass of an hour. When it has continued in this condition for about twelve hours, they pour it into an earthen vessel, which is covered up close, and patted over, and then distilled, in the same manner as is customary amongst us Europeans. This is required to be twice repeated before it is fit to drink; and after that, it becomes as clear and strong to the full as any malt-spirit, and will have the same intoxicating effect.

It is very observable, that the cows in Siberia, Dauria, and in short, in any part of Tartary, will never stand still to be milked, whilst they have any calves at their dugs, and as soon almost as they are out of their sight, their milk is lost. This is the true reason why they make use of

The true
reason why
they make
use of
mare's
milk.

mare's milk instead of that of the cow ; but besides, the milk of the former is not only fatter, but much more soft.

These savages employ themselves in hunting, during the spring-season, and lay in their flock of venison much after the same manner as the Burates, and dry it afterwards, as they do, in the beams of the sun.

Their bread, which they call Surana, and which they apply to various uses, is composed of the dried roots of the yellow lilly.

These natives are very dexterous in shooting fish in the waters with their arrows, and seldom miss their mark, tho' they stand sometimes at the distance of fifteen or sixteen fathom. As their arrows are for the most part very heavy, they are fit only for the killing of pike, or trout, which swim pretty close to the bank side in clear water, and there lie on the gravel. These when they are shot, are split asunder, like a lamb by a butcher's cleaver, the points of their arrows being no less than three or four fingers in breadth.

These people, when they are under an indispensable obligation to take a solemn oath, put the following abominable and shocking custom into practice. In order

to prove their innocence, and acquit themselves of the crime laid to their charge, they take a dog, and open one of his veins on the left-side, from whence the person accused sucks his blood, till the poor, harmless creature drops down dead at his feet. Mr. Ibranis was an eye-witness of an operation of this kind whilst he was at Nerzinskoi, in respect to two Tungusians, who were then in custody as hostages, to be accountable for the integrity and innocent deportment of their country-men, who were dispersed up and down in Siberia, and go thither in order to shelter themselves under the protection of the Czar: One of these Tungusians had charged the other with having bewitched several of his companions, and who lost their lives by his illicit and clandestine incantations; but the party acquitted himself of the crime laid to his charge, by taking the oath in the manner above related, and the infor-

Their em-
 ployment
 during the
 spring-sea-
 son.

Their man-
 ner of
 catching.
 fish.

(d)
n. a

(d) Baikal or Bika! (the)

(b) Colles, see P. 126.

(c) *Mongolians, or Mongols*

Π. Α.

The Envoy returns

As Mr. Ibrants
(a) Tartary, and

(a) Tartary, and

(b) China bears no affinity to the travels to the East by way of (c) Madagascar has not been deemed to follow that enjoin by ries of these countries the Carl's dominions, are divers, meeting and in his return from T are confilant with our countries that the air is by no means unsuited them in this place,

Mr. Ibbans then
Pekin on the nineteenth
1869, and on the
morning arrived at Galg
ried of well, which p
China from Tientsin.
Proceed onwards the
arrived in the forenoon
the edge of the forest

60

met was punished acc
field.
carried at 1

The envoy arrived
mouth or more, in order
with camels, horses, oxen
variety of other things
protection of his journey
18th of July departed for
and on the third of August

k instead of that of the cow; the milk of the former is not but much more soft.

Swages employ themselves in using the spring season, and lay stock of venison much after the manner as the Buzares, and dry it as they do, in the beams of the

reed, which they call Sur- which they apply to various kinds of the dried roots of the

naties are very dexterous in fish in the waters with their and seldom miss their mark, tho' sometimes at the distance of seven fathom. As their arrows most part very heavy, they are the killing of pike, or trout, are pretty close to the bank side water, and there lie on the gravel. When they are shot, are split along a lamb by a butcher's cleaver, of their arrows being no less than four fingers in breadth.

As the people, when they are under an obligation to take a solemn oath, the following abominable and detestable ceremony is performed in order

to atone, and acquit themselves of innocence, and the crime laid to their charge, a dog, and open one of his veins at the side, from whence the person

draws his blood, till the poor, harmless drops down dead at his feet. This was an eye-witness of an

if this kind whilst he was at the execution of two Tungusians,

in respect to two Tungusians, then in custody as hostages, to

able for the integrity and innocence of their country-men,

ment of their country-men, dispersed up and down in Siberia,

in order to shelter themselves from the protection of the Czar:

under the protection of the Czar:

these Tungusians had charged the having bewitched several of his

is, and who lost their lives by and clandestine incantations; but

acquitted himself of the crime charged, by taking the oath in the

above related, and the

met

1693 mer was punished accordingly in his stead.

The envoy tarried at Nerzenkoi for a month or more, in order to furnish him with camels, horses, oxen, and a great variety of other things requisite for the prosecution of his journey; and on the 18th of July departed from Nerzenkoi, and on the third of August then next en-

July 18.
The envoy
departs
from Ner-
zenkoi.

suings, he arrived at Arganskoi, which is the last fort on that side which belongs to the Czar.

That fort is situate on the river Argun, which rises towards the south-east, and empties its waters into the Amur, and serves as a boundary between the dominion of his Czarian majesty, and those of the king of China.

August 3.
Arrives at
Arganskoi.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Russians, or Moscovites, see p. 7. n. c.

(b) Cossacs, see p. 156. n. e.

(c) Mongulians, or Mogulians, see p. 158. n. i.

(d) Baikal or Bakal (the lake of) see p. 167. n. a.

(e) Chinese, see p. 66. n. t.

(f) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. b.

(g) Lena, (the river of) see p. 18. n. b.

(h) Tartars, see p. 18. n. i.

C H A P. XXVI.

The Envoy returns through the Dominions of the Czar to Tartary.

AS Mr. Isbrants journey beyond

(a) Tartary, and his embassy to (b) China bears no affinity with our author's travels to the East-Indies, by the way of (c) Moscow and (d) Persia, it has not been deemed any ways requisite to follow that envoy beyond the boundaries of those countries which belong to the Czar's dominions. However, as there are divers interesting and important articles in his return from Tartary, and which are consistent with our plan, we flatter ourselves that the curious reader will be by no means disgusted at our inserting them in this place.

Mr. Isbrants then departed from (e) Pekin on the nineteenth of February 1694. and on the 25th of the same month arrived at Galgan, near the much talked of wall, which parts the empire of China from Tartary. From thence he proceeded towards the river Naun, and arrived on the frontiers of Tartary, to the edge of the large desert of which

Feb. 25.
Mr. Isbrants
arrives on
the frontiers
of Tartary.

we have before taken sufficient notice.

There he tarried for some few days in order to furnish himself with necessaries for the prosecution of his journey; having hitherto had all his disbursements duly discharged by the king of China; but as that expence is no longer defrayed by his Chinese majesty when any ambassador gets once into the territories of Argun, which is the border of his Czarian majesty's dominions; the envoy I say conscious of so essential an article, had taken all due care whilst at Pekin, to furnish himself with camels, horses, and other cattle, proper for his purpose, where he could purchase them at a cheap market.

This prudent precaution answered in all respects the ends proposed; for he would have met with a fore disappointment, had he put his trust and dependance on the several horses and camels which he had left behind him at Nuna, most of which died during his absence for want of proper

Y y

1694

proper subsistence.

On the 22d of the same month the envoy made a very elegant entertainment for the Mandarin, who, by express order of the king his master, had waited on him so far, and took his farewell both of him and his retinue.

Feb. 26.
Mr. Ibrahims enters on the frightful Tartarian desert.

On the 26th instant Mr. Ibrahims entered the extensive but tremendous desert; and after two days travel, arrived at Targasnia, situate on the little river called Jalo, where there was no grass comparatively speaking throughout the country, as the season was so backward. There he rested for some time after his fatigue, and was, in a friendly manner, forewarned to be upon his guard, during his passage over that frightful desert, and whilst he was approaching the banks of those two rivers Sadun and Kallar; for that no less than three thousand (*S*) Mungulians lay in wait for his coming, at that passage. He took accordingly all the prudent steps he could think of to prevent their intended attack, and gave orders directly for three score men well provided with arms, and on horseback, to patrol every night about the caravan; neither did he meet with any opposition, tho' expected, and advanced forwards on his journey the next morning. When he had got so far as the mountains of Jalsch, there was little or no forage to be procured; and the very next day he past over them notwithstanding it was excessively cold, and the snow lay deep, which happened very unfortunately for his poor camels and horses, which had nothing to subsist on but a small quantity of dried and withered grass. Whilst he was here he consulted with his attendants, whether he should pursue the usual route, or take a tour round to avoid any casual skirmish with the Tartars, who were in waiting, as he imagined, at the passage. Tho' the last was a very difficult task to carry into execution, and more especially as all their cattle were heavy laden; yet that resolution was unanimously approved of.

In their taking this by-road, they were obliged to pass over several very high hills,

1694

and to traverse divers fens, which were excessively deep, for about fourteen or fifteen days successively. At his first setting out he lost no less than twelve camels and fifteen horses, and afterwards a proportionable number, which sunk under the weight of their burthens, being weak and spiritless for want of necessary subsistence and support; for this hideous desert affords no forage whatever, as we have before hinted, but a little dry and withered grass; and they were afterwards deprived even of that poor pittance; for the Tartars set fire thereto; inasmuch that he was indispensibly obliged to take a double journey, in order to find out some place or another where forage was to be procured.

The greatest part of the merchants who made a part of his retinue, having lost their horses, were reduced to the necessity of pursuing their journey on foot; and as those cattle that survived were perfectly spent and their strength exhausted, they must inevitably have been constrained to leave a considerable part of their effects behind them in the deserts, had not the envoy taken that precaution of furnishing himself with a sufficient number of camels and other cattle, which were led by the bridle.

In fine, having with inexpressible difficulty, and after a thousand hardships and turmoils, reached in safety the river of Sadun, he there found the climate much more moderate, and a tolerable quantity of grass growing fresh upon the ground. Here he rested for two days and nights in order to refresh his camels and horses, which were perfectly tired and scarce able to stir.

Here a Chinese envoy who came from Masgeen, and was sent by the emperor to the Waiwode of Nerzinikoi, overtook him, and joined him with a retinue of no less than a hundred persons; and by that reinforcement, enabled him to withstand the opposition he was menaced with from the Mungulians, having at that time with him a body of six hundred to defend him.

The arrival of a Chinese envoy.

On

On the fifteenth of March arrived at the river called he asked at a proper place was but low; and he added to a tale at about a and there pitched his camp ing there was little or no place. In this valley h next night, and at the he plainly discerned a con that arose from the north- course created him no as he had too just grown the Tartars had set fire, in order to make the upon him, as the wind in their favour. And as depended on the protection and after that on the fat- smiles, and other cattle i dered them to be led hill, where there was the flames could never At the same time he hundred men in his r with tents towards the in customary practice to &c. in order to extinguish prevent its spreading too van.

However, notwithstanding prudent precautions, the space through the wind, instantaneously red grass that was near and gave him no time to a farther distance, b less than twelve of the men, as it were, reduce flames flew like a flash their caravan. The fir hold of several pieces and scorched fourte to the train in a dan but one indeed, who ally perished in the fi time, Mr. Ibrahims ha to the summit of a hil no grass upon the gr only by two of hi who covered him ove From this place,

perle divers fens, which were deep, for about fourteen days successively. At his first he lost no less than twelve fifteen horses, and afterwards an equal number, which sunk in weight of their burdens, being spiritless for want of necessary food and support; for this hideousness no forage whatever, as we hinted, but a little dry and straw; and they were afterwards even of that poor pittance; for as it is set fire thereto; inasmuch that indispensibly obliged to take a prey, in order to find out some other where forage was to be

the best part of the merchants who part of his retinue, having lost as, were reduced to the necessity of leaving their journey on foot; and as the few that survived were perfectly exhausted, they probably have been constrained to considerable part of their effects in the deserts, had not the army in that precaution of furnishing with a sufficient number of other cattle, which were led by

having with inexhaustible difficulty after a thousand hardships and reached in safety the river of there found the climate much temperate, and a tolerable quantity of fresh water upon the ground. They remained for two days and nights in fresh his camels and horses, perfectly tired and scarce able

The Chinese envoy who came from and was sent by the emperor to the mode of Nerzinski, ordered him, at him with a retinue of no less than hundred persons; and by that reinforcement enabled him to withstand the he was menaced with from the time with having at that time with by of six hundred to defend

On

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

1694

On the fifteenth of March Mr. Isbrants arrived at the river called Kailan, which he forded at a proper place, where the water was but low; and from thence proceeded to a vale at about a league's distance, and there pitched his camp, notwithstanding there was little or no forage near the place. In this valley he tarried all the next night, and at the dawn of day he plainly discerned a considerable smoke, that arose from the north-west; which occurrence created him no small uneasiness, as he had too just grounds to suspect that the Tartars had set the withered grafs on fire, in order to make their intended attack upon him, as the wind and smoke were in their favour. And as his welfare first depended on the protection of providence, and after that on the safety of his camels, mules, and other cattle in his train, he ordered them to be led behind an adjacent hill, where there was forage, and where the flames could never reach or affect them. At the same time he gave orders for an hundred men in his retinue to advance with felts towards the smoke; as it was a customary practice to cover the camels, &c. in order to extinguish the flames, and prevent its spreading too near their caravan.

However, notwithstanding all these prudent precautions, the fire gained ground apace through the impetuosity of the wind, instantaneously destroyed the withered grafs that was near half a foot high, and gave him no time to convey his tents to a farther distance, by which means no less than twelve of them were in a moment, as it were, reduced to ashes, and the flames flew like a flash of lightening over their caravan. The flames likewise caught hold of several pieces of valuable goods, and scorched fourteen persons belonging to the train in a dangerous manner, tho' but one indeed, who was a Persian, actually perished in the flames. In the meantime, Mr. Isbrants had withdrawn himself to the summit of a hill, where there was no grafs upon the ground, and attended only by two of his domestic servants who covered him over with a felt.

From this place, the flames, in the

A dreadful fire.

175

1694

twinkling of an eye, as it were, flew away to that particular spot to which the Chinese envoy had retired at some considerable distance upon the hills; but as they were perfectly spent before they reached him, he was in no great concern about the affair.

In a word, tho' this fire spread in an instant all along as far as the river Kailan, yet it spent itself there, which was at a league distance, however, from the caravan.

This fire having thus consumed all the grafs that was standing near Mr. Isbrants, he sent his guide to search out for some commodious place, in which the caravan might spend the night; but he did not return till the next morning, at which time he brought the melancholy news, that there was no manner of forage to be found within two days journey of the spot whereon they then stood, the flames having destroyed every thing in their way; and that even in some of those particular places, where the grafs had escaped their fury, there was not a quantity remaining any ways sufficient for the provision of such a number of camels and horses that were in his train. This was a melancholy article, indeed, for the whole caravan.

Whereupon the envoy proposed to repass the Kailan, at that place where the flames had stopt, and beyond which, he had just grounds to hope that a stock of grafs might be met with to answer their purpose; but that proposition was overruled, as it was thought a too dangerous attempt, being apprehensive of falling in with the Tartars on that side; and for that reason, it was deemed more advisable to venture upon a march for two days, tho' destitute of every convenience, than to run the risk of falling a sacrifice into the hands of those merciless barbarians.

At dawn of day, the caravan began their progress, and soon after sun-set, they halted on one side of a large fen, having gone through an inexpressible fatigue; besides the misfortune of losing no less than eighteen camels and twenty horses in those marches.

The caravan in great distress.

1694

marshy grounds. And that misfortune was still aggrandized, as the cattle that survived were ready to sink under the weight of the loads and harnesses of those that were actually dead; the merchants dreading the fatal consequences of leaving them behind.

The caravan
in great
danger.

The day following they traversed once more several marshy vales, and lofty hills, and at length advanced as far as the river called Margen, where no disaster had befallen the gads. When they had forded that river, they proceeded with the utmost hazard as well as fatigue, as their camels, which were perfectly spent, and decreased gradually as they advanced on their journey, were unable to keep pace with the caravan. And what was still a more afflicting circumstance than all the rest, was this, viz. their stock of provisions began to fall short, and consisted now of nothing but a parcel of such lean, raw-boned cattle, as scarce had strength to follow them; and were by no means a sufficient stock for such a numerous train: and the rather, because it is not customary on these occasions, to make any great provision of bread or other refreshments; since the merchants want their cattle to carry their loads of goods; and moreover, since they could not well bear the additional expence of purchasing camels for no other use than carrying provender for the rest.

As all this was duely weighed; and as they had still near a fortnight's journey before they could reach to Argun, they began to think of coming to short allowance, and to take a survey of the remainder

of their stock in general, that each man might have his just dividend without favour or affection.

On the eighteenth instant, after numberless apparent dangers, and almost unnumberable difficulties, they reached the river, called Gan, which they forded, as the waters happened at that time to be very low, and, as fortune favoured them, they met with plenty of gads on the other side.

Mr. Ibbrants determined to rest here for three days successively to refresh himself a little, after such an almost insupportable fatigue; and here, indeed, he would have tarried, it is very probable, some considerable time longer, had not the merchants, the (g) Cossacs, and the guides belonging to the caravan, represented to him in very affecting terms, the deplorable state and condition to which they were reduced; namely, that they were forced to eat the very blood of the cattle which they killed; that they preserved it till it came to the consistency of a piece of liver, and then made shift with it instead of bread; that some even fed upon the very skins, after the hair was stript off, which they cut into small portions, and broiled them for their subsistence: in short, that others fed upon the entrails; and that they much feared it would not be long before they should be drove to the dreadful necessity of living after the manner of the Cafres and Hottentots, on raw flesh, and of devouring every morsel, the very excrements themselves not excepted.

And almost
famished.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i. | (e) Pekin, see p. 66. n. ii. |
| (b) China, see p. 66. n. i. | (f) Mongulians, or Mogulians, see p. 158. n. i. |
| (c) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c. | (g) Cossacs, see p. 156. n. c. |
| (d) Persia, see p. 64. n. c. | |

CHAP.

The Envoy arrives at
at (a) Tobol, a

Mr. Ibbrants being in great adjacent, abundant pastures, selected several and flags, selected several who were excellent men accustomed to the horse chase. They let them loose, and proved so successful, and proved so successful, no less than 50 of the four the envoy's directions, wrought the train belonging whole appetites were could scarcely have they were divided: their less more shocking, than ing condition; and in posting, as to have it to appease that excessive quenching of one's thirst.

Mr. Ibbrants, however of his return, attended face to the governor of (a) der to inform him of it, and condition, and to furnish them with such uncommon dishes required.

The governor, indeed cut to their petition, and to take their melancholyous consideration; but time to send them the pe every minute seemed, as such persons as were re-cho of distress, and just flaring.

In the depth of this they unanimously resolved the sake of the Gen, however, with vigour. A who sleep whole days, that fainter feeling.

block in general, that each man
his dividend without favour

at dangers, and almost uncer-
difficulties, they reached the
el Gan, which they forded, as
happened at that time to be
and, as fortune favoured
met with plenty of grafs on the

caravans determined to rest here
days successively to refresh him-
selves; after such an almost unexpec-
ted ease; and here, indeed, he would
find, it is very probable, some
time longer, had not the mer-
chants of Cossacs, and the guides

the caravan, repulsed to
affecting terms, the deplorable
condition to which they were
reduced, namely, that they were forced to
drink blood of the cattle which they
they preserved it till it came
to the danger of a piece of liver, and
to mix with it instead of bread;
even fed upon the very skins,
their air was stupefied off, which they
all portions, and broiled them
in silence: in short, that others
entails; and that they much
would not be long before they
drove to the dreadful necessity
after the manner of the Caffres
to eat raw flesh, and of de-
stroying mankind, the very elements
not excepted.

Chapter.

see p. 66. n. 11.

gullans, or Mogulians, see p. 138. n. 6.

see p. 138. n. 6.

CHAP.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

177

1694

C H A P. XXVII.

The Envoy arrives at Nerzinskoi. He departs from thence. Arrives at (a) Tobol, and from thence at (b) Moscow.

MR. Ibrants being informed, that the banks of the river Gan, and the parts adjacent, abounded with rein-deer, and stags, selected several of his retinue, who were excellent marks-men, and well accustomed to the bow, in order to give them chase. They set out accordingly, and proved so successful, as to return with no less than 50 of the former. These by the envoy's directions, were distributed amongst the train belonging to the caravan, whose appetites were so keen, that they could scarcely have patience to stay till they were dressed: there is nothing, doubtless more shocking, than to be in a famishing condition; and nothing so transporting, as to have it in one's power to appease that excessive hunger; the quenching of one's thirst only excepted.

Mr. Ibrants applies to the governor of Argun for gun and provisions.

Mr. Ibrants, however, dispatched one of his retinue, attended by eight (c) Cossacs to the governor of (d) Argun, in order to inform him of their deplorable state and condition, and to request of him to furnish them with such provisions as their uncommon distress required.

The governor, indeed, lent an attentive ear to their petition, and readily consented to take their melancholy case into his serious consideration; but it required some time to send them the proper succours; and every minute seemed, as it were, an age, to such persons as were reduced to the lowest ebb of distress, and just upon the point of starving.

In the depth of this dreadful calamity, they unanimously resolved to remove from the banks of the Gan, and pursue their journey with vigour. At the expiration, however, of three days, they were plunged into deeper distress than ever; in so much that famine actually stared them in the

2

face; the rein deer above-mentioned, being but a trivial refreshment for such a number of persons for three hungry days successively, in a long, lonely desert, that afforded no manner of subsistence. Their business, however, at this critical conjuncture, was to make a virtue of necessity, and to exert their patience to the utmost, under a calamity that could by no means possibly be remedied, or relieved. At last, tho' tired and fatigued to the last degree, they happily arrived at the banks of a small river, in which there was great plenty of trouts and pike; which, in that country, the natives, as has been before hinted, shoot with arrows.

Such of the Tungusians and Cossacs, therefore, as made a part of Mr. Ibrants train, secured a great number of them, which, together with the several rein-deer, they had successfully hunted down in the evening, contributed greatly towards the refreshment of the half-famished caravan.

A fortunate fishing and hunting bout.

The persons who were selected from the train, to scour the mountains for provisions, met in their way with a Shaman, or Magician, who happened to prove the uncle of the envoy's guide, who was a Tungusian by birth; and there are a considerable number of those Shamans in that country. The envoy (about midnight) was waked out of a sound sleep, by an unexpected out-cry which alarmed him so far, as that he hurried out of his tent, with precipitation, and enquired of the watch, from whence that disturbance arose? He was presently informed, that it was nothing but the result of his guide diverting himself with his relation; which excited his curiosity so far, that he determined to go to his cell, or hut, with one of the watch only for his attendant. No sooner had he

reach.

Z z

1694

reached the hut-door, but he perceived his guide and his uncle deeply engaged in their magical incantations; and notwithstanding the much greater part of their diabolical ceremonies were over, Mr. Ibrants perceived, at his first arrival, that the Shaman held an arrow, with the blunt end fixed upon the ground, and that the point of it touched the tip of his nose. About a minute afterwards, the Shaman starting from that position, made a most hideous out-cry, and after jumping round the hut three times, sank down into a profound sleep. The next day, those Coffacs, whom Mr. Ibrants had dispatched, in order to make a narrow search for provisions, returned, and informed him, that the said Shaman, or Magician, had accidentally met with his nephew, and, in their fight, had carried him off the premises; an action, that might very easily occur, without the aid or assistance of any magical operation, in the dead of the night, and amongst a parcel of unfrequented mountains. The envoy, however, at the very same juncture, received the agreeable news, that he should be furnished, within three days time, with all such necessaries as he had requested, from the governor of Argun; an article of that importance, that it gave fresh vigour to the whole caravan, who at that time stood in need of all the common necessities of life.

Proper provisions arrived safe from the governor of Argun.

This timely relief, accordingly, with the blessing of the Almighty, came safe to hand on the third day, which consisted, not only of five and twenty oxen, with some additional cows; but a large quantity both of bread and oat-meal. The officers, however, that brought the caravan this seasonable relief from Argun, embraced that favourable opportunity of making their market of the train; for they obliged the merchants to deposit a crown for every loaf, and to pay in proportion for every article that they were thus so humanely supplied with: the purchasers, however, considering the half-starved condition they were in, never murmured in the least at their exorbitant demands.

1694

Having at length, very comfortably refreshed themselves, they pursued their journey with some alacrity; and arriving at last at the end of that long, tedious desert, where they had met with so many repeated mortifications, they came in their progress to several meadow-grounds, which gave a double relish to their late refreshments.

On the 27th of March, they reached, to their infinite satisfaction, the banks of the river Argun, which they crossed the very next day, and on the 31st arrived in safety at Nerzinikoi, where they returned their solemn and unfeigned thanks-givings to the Almighty, who had delivered them from the jaws of death.

There they rested for some considerable time; but on the fifth of August, departed from thence by land, coasting it all along the banks of the river, and in three days time arrived at Udinskoi; where they met with proper vessels, in which they embarked, fell down with a fair wind, and by the dawn of the next day advanced as far as the frontiers of (e) Siberia.

On the 12th, they arrived at Jakutskoi; from whence they departed on the 17th for Jenizelkoi, which they reached with safety, notwithstanding the imminent dangers to which they were exposed, from the floods that had poured down upon them for several days.

Mr. Ibrants, on the 26th, proceeded on his journey by land, and passed through a thick wood, which was near 20 leagues long, and abounded with game not only of the fur-kind but the feather; but both of them proved too cautious to be caught.

After that, he arrived at the town called Makoffkoi, where he met with as many vessels as he wanted to transport both him and all his train down the Keta; and on the 28th of September following, he arrived at Ketkoi-castle situate on the (f) Oby.

He met with no obstructions in his passage down that river; and on the 16th of October then next ensuing, he arrived safe at the town of Samoroffkoi-jam, which

March 31:
The envoy arrives safe at Nerzinikoi.

Arrives at Jakutskoi, and at Jenizelkoi.

which is situate on the
It is
Here he arrived some
of being enabled
of the prosecution
by land, and on the 20
march arrived at Tobol,
for three weeks successive
only to refresh himself, I
such materials as he judges
for the prosecution of
end to which he was
for.

October

- (1) Tobol, see p. 148.
(2) Moscow, see p. 22.
(1) Colfax, see p. 156.
(2) Argun, see p. 66.

Of (a) Siberia in
Kinds of them.
Weyal's Straits
Jenizel Account

THE envoy, w
several intelligence
account of his travels
personally declares, to
faction, that he applied
real matters of fact, w
views of advancing the
romantic story for the
his relation, as is that
of travellers, who fr
truths what they ha
them by hear-say only
circumstances of the
connection, and with
can regard whether
on trade or fishood, I
ingeniously acknowledge
strictly observed the c

1694

Nov. 29.
Arrives at
Tobol.

at length, very comfortably themselves, they pursued their h some alacrity; and arriving e end of that long, tedious de- e they had met with so many mortifications, they came in efs to several meadow-grounds, e a double relish to their late s.

27th of March, they reached, motive satisfaction, the banks of Argun, which they crossed the day, and on the 31st arrived in Verzhniskoi, where they returned in and unforgotten thank-givings ghry, who had delivered them us of death.

y rested for some considerable n to the fifth of August, departed e by land, coasting it all along of the river, and in three days ed at Ulimskoi; where they met er vessels, in which they en- all down with a fair wind, and e of the next day advanced as rriers of (e) Siberia.

Arrived
12th, they arrived at Jakutskoi;

nce they departed on the 17th oi, which they reached with withstanding the imminent which they were expelled, from s that had poured down upon several days.

stants on the 26th, proceeded on by land, and passed through d, which was near 20 leagues abounded with game not fur-kind but the leather; but them proved too cautious to be

at, he arrived at the town called i, where he met with as many he wanted to transport both him is train down the Keta; and on of September following, he at- Ketskoi-castle situate on the (f)

with no obstructions in his n that river; and on the 16th then next ensuing, he arrived ne town of Samorosskoi-am, which

which is situate on the mouth of the Irtis.

Here he tarried some few days, in expectation of being enabled to make use of sledges in the prosecution of his journey by land; and on the 29th of the same month arrived at Tobol, where he resided for three weeks successively, in order, not only to refresh himself, but to secure all such materials as he judged most requisite for the prosecution of his journey, an end to which he most sincerely wished for.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Tobol, see p. 148. n. d.

(b) Moscow, see p. 23. n. e.

(c) Cossacs, see p. 156. n. e.

(d) Argun, see p. 66. n. s.

(e) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. b.

(f) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.

(g) Irtis, the river, see p. 148. n. e.

XX

C H A P. XXVIII.

Of (a) Siberia in general. Of the (b) Samoëds, and the various Kinds of them. An accurate though compendious Description of Weyat's Straits; with the Burgo-master Witsen's Illustrations. A Succinct Account of the Mountain, called Pojas, &c.

THE envoy, who has made the several subsequent additions to the account of his travels into (c) China, peremptorily declares, for the reader's satisfaction, that he applied himself wholly to real matters of fact, without any sinister views of advancing the least marvellous or romantic story for the embellishment of his relation, as is the too frequent practice of travellers, who frequently assert for truths what they have communicated to them by hear-say only, without taking the circumstances of the narrative into due consideration, and without the least concern or regard whether they are grounded on truth or falsehood. In other respects, he ingenuously acknowledges, that he has strictly observed the exact order of events

as they actually occurred, and that he has omitted divers incidents, that might be well-worthy of being introduced, and expatiated upon to advantage; for which act of remissness, he begs the candid reader's pardon, and his permission to revise and correct those little imperfections, and touch them up with more accuracy and exactness.

Mr. Isbrants then (as we have hinted before) traversed Siberia and Dautia, and gave a full and satisfactory account of the several countries, cities, towns, and rivers, from north to east, that is to say, from Weygat's Straits to the river called (d) Amur, and from the west of the Uffa, as far as the country of the (e) Mongulians; and after that, from the west even to the

A recapitulation of his journey.

1694

Nov. 24.
Reaches
Wergotur.

Jan. 1.
Arrives at
Moscow.

On the 24th of November, he passed through the city of Wergotur, without any casualty attending him on the road, and on the 1st of January 1695 he arrived in safety at Moscow, where he paid his compliments to the Czar, and gave him a particular account of his negotiation, after a tedious journey of three years or thereabouts; during which time, he had laboured under a thousand hardships and fatigues.

1695

A descrip-
tion of Si-
beria in
general.

the south.

The frontiers of Siberia, according to Mr. Ifbrants, are plentifully supplied in all places with (*f*) Russian troops, who entertain no thoughts of, nor make any attempts towards the oppression of those (*g*) Tartars who reside in the southern parts of that country, or towards making them tributary to his Czarian majesty; especially, since it is evident, that prince would reap no benefit or advantage from such rash proceedings. The kingdom of Siberia, and the country all round about it, is of a vast extent, as is apparent from the map, which was inserted in the very beginning of these travels; in respect to which, the reader must have recourse to the degrees, without being over-curious as to the exact distance of places, whether towns or rivers within the boundaries of this country, which may sometimes prove, perhaps, a little defective in point of a league or two, little more or less and; the reason he urges for requesting that indulgence is this; namely, that even those geographers and historians, who have given us an account of that country, never crossed it themselves; neither has there ever been published an accurate and actual ad-measurement thereof. However, he assures us, that, upon the whole, no pains had been spared in him to attain the best knowledge of it he possibly could; and that, in order thereto, he made use of all the instruments which he thought requisite for answering that end, and that afterwards, he ranged and fixed all the parts and places according to the best of his judgment. And modestly concludes, that he submits with pleasure the honour of making more interesting and important discoveries to others, who may make the same tour after him; and thinks it credit and reputation enough for him to have paved the way, and been the first German, who ever ventured to traverse those dangerous and lonely deserts, quite as far as China, both forwards and backwards.

Mr. Ifbrants, moreover, modestly declares, that he was indebted, for his first instructions towards planning a general map of this country, to one Mr. Wilsen, a

1695

burgo-master of Amsterdam; for whom, as well as for the whole body of Iterati, he shall ever retain the utmost veneration and respect.

He farther declares, that the aforesaid Mr. Wilsen, was the first gentleman, that ever obliged the Europeans with a general map of Siberia, and of the countries of the (*b*) Calmucs and Mongulians, and divers other nations, quite as far as to the celebrated Chinese wall; and, in a word, that the said map was so accurately laid down, that he made it his principal guide and direction when he travelled into those parts, and that he made use of it as the ground-work and foundation of that new map, which is here offered (by way of embellishment) and prefixed to these entertaining travels.

He commences at the northward, that is to say, at the country of the Samoëds and Wangulians, who are under the jurisdiction of Siberia, and the Waiwodes of Pelun quite as far as to the sea.

There are divers kinds of these Samoëds, who talk a distinct language from each other; such as those of Beresoffky and Purstorf, who are generally looked upon as one and the same nation; those that reside on the sea-coast to the east of the (*i*) Oby, as far as Truchankoy, or Mangazetskoy; and those who inhabit the parts adjacent to (*k*) Archangel, upon the (*l*) Dwina, during the summer-season, but dwell in tents or huts, and in the woods, during the winter.

These last are the absolute aversion of those who dwell along the sea-coast; which they have abandoned on purpose to reside in those parts.

As to those Samoëds, who inhabit the coast of the northern sea, they have but little more of the human species to boast of than barely the form; they are savages, for the most part, of little or no understanding, and, upon the whole, look more like unpolished bears than men.

They live (as wild beasts do) on the dead carcases of horses, asses, cats, and dogs; as also, on such whales and seals as are driven on shore by large mountains of ice: and so very indolent and slothful are these

Divers kind
of Samoëds.

human beings, that not only country which they thus with fish, fowl, and cattle in covered down with snow-mountain, with the of improving it by

ing.
There are, however, heads, amongst them, to certain acknowledgements towards sent by them to such cities or towns, as are elusion of the Czar.

One, who had refused desirable time at Possol-
Herberts information of others when they travel by sea, which with the cost the mountains

ed with snow.

In the plate annexed, representation of a hedge are harnessed, as likely themselves who drive clouded in rain, their

thrown over their shoulders
Their chiefs, indeed, and have their fleeces by day, and sometimes

fully harnessed. The rows is composed of narrow, in the room

With respect to the with truth be said, the creatures; and that not the earth can be more

agreeable to the sight, they are short, and corp and shoulders are broad and their lips thick, hanging down; their more their eyes more along their other features.

weather-beaten; their long and flows over it red, some pale; but the colour: notwithstanding hair, their beads are brown, and their skin is black and swarthy creatures, however, are nimble, and very delicate

er of Amsterdam; for whom, 1695
for the whole body of li.
all ever retain the utmost vene-
respect.

er declares, that the aforesaid
n, was the first gentleman, that
d the Europeans with a general
itia, and of the countries of the
s and Mongolians, and divers
s, quite as far as to the cele-
siete wall; and, in a word, that
up was so accurately laid down,
made it his principal guide and
when he travelled into those
that he made use of it as the
k and foundation of that new
is here offered (by way of
nt) and prefixed to these en-
vels.

ences at the northward, that
at the country of the Samoëds
goliars, who are under the juris-
Siberia, and the Waiwodes of
as far as to the sea.

divers kinds of these Samoëds,
distinct language from each
h as those of Beresilly and

who are generally looked upon
the same nation; those that re-
sea-coast to the east of the (i)
as Truchbinkoy, or Mangan-
and those who inhabit the parts
to (k) Archangel, upon the
during the summer-season, but
ists or huts, and in the woods,
winter.

It is the absolute aversion
to dwell along the sea-coast;
have abandoned on purpose to

whole parts.

whole Samoëds, who inhabit the
the northern sea, they have but
re of the human species to build
irely the form; they are large,
most part, of little or no under-
and, upon the whole, look

polluted bears than men.
e (as wild beasts do) on the
s of horses, asses, cats, and dogs;
such whales and seals as are
more by large mountains of ice:
indolent and slothful are these
hu-

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

181

1695 human brutes, that notwithstanding the country which they thus inhabit abounds with fish, fowl, and cattle, they will still sit contented down with such carrion as above-mentioned, without the trouble of improving it by any art of dressing.

There are, however, certain chiefs, or heads, amongst them, to whom they make certain acknowledgements, which are afterwards sent by them to the governors of such cities or forts, as are under the jurisdiction of the Czar.

One, who had resided for some considerable time at Poffoi-Ofer, gave Mr. Isbrants information of the method they observe when they travel in sledges, drawn by rein-deer, which with incredible swiftness cross the mountains that are covered with snow.

In the plate annexed, the reader has the representation of a sledge, to which the deer are harnessed; as likewise of the Samoëds themselves who drive them; and are clothed in rein-deer skins, with the fur outwards; and their bow and quiver thrown over their shoulders.

Their chiefs, indeed, are dressed in scarlet, and have their sledges drawn, sometimes by six, and sometimes eight rein-deer properly harnessed. The point of their arrows is composed of the tooth of the narwhale, in the room of iron or steel.

With respect to their persons, it may with truth be said, that they are frightful creatures; and that nothing on the face of the earth can be more shocking, or disagreeable to the sight. As to their stature, they are short, and corpulent; their faces and shoulders are broad; their noses flat, and their lips thick, blubbered, and hanging down; their mouths are wide, and their eyes more disagreeable than any of their other features. They look perfectly weather-beaten; their hair is excessively long, and flows over their shoulders; some red, some pale; but black is the prevailing colour: notwithstanding this profusion of hair, their beards are but short, and their skins are thick and swarthy. These ugly creatures, however, are very active and nimble; and very dexterous in their art of

driving. The rein-deer, which they thus harness to their sledges, bear a very near resemblance to our European stags; their antlers, or horns, are much alike, tho' their necks, indeed, are more like those of the dromedary; but what is peculiarly remarkable in them is this; that though they are grey in the summer, they are perfectly white in the winter. Their usual food is a sort of moss, which they meet with in the woods upon the ground in plenty.

As to all other respects, these savages are all heathens; and every morning and evening pay their adoration to the sun and moon, and bow down their heads, tho' not quite so low as the (m) Persians. They have idols likewise, which they hang up in the trees that grow round their huts, or tents; some composed of wood in a human form, and others dressed up in irons, to which they pay some particular acts of devotion. Their cabbins, or huts, are covered with the bark of several birch-trees, sewed together. When they remove them from one spot of ground to another, which is a common custom amongst them every winter and summer, they fix the poles to each other, and then cover them with the barks of trees, leaving a hole, however, at the top of them for the passage of their smoke. Their fire-place is usually planted in the center, and they lie round about it in the night, as naked as they were born, both men and women; and as to their children, they put them into boxes, or rather cradles, made of the bark of trees in the same manner as their cabbins, and fill them with the raspings of the said timber, which is as soft as down, and then cover them up with the skins of the rein-deer.

As to their marriages, they pay no regard to consanguinity; and purchase their wives, for whom they give in exchange either rein-deer or furs. Neither do they confine themselves to one, or any particular number, but inter-marry with as many as they see convenient to maintain. At their leisure-hours of amusement, they plant themselves two and two, one before the other, and making particular motions

A a a

with

practicable to penetrate those
of ice that block up the passage,
withstanding the stars continue to
the course he was to steer. The
of Nature has surrounded,
ed the Siberian coasts with such
in of ice, that there is no ship
can reach so much as the river
which less be able to touch the
and go down to Jedio or

ants had been informed by seve-
as who had often passed through
ate straits, as far as the mouth
is, in proper vessels for the catch-
and the narwhale, that, at the
the wind blows from the offing,
craft is so incumbered with ice,
who happen to be then there,
ably obliged to fly for shelter
small gulphs, or little rivers, in
escape the danger, and to ride there
till such time as a wind from
blows the ice off again to sea,
is so effectually, and to all in-
poses, that not the least signs
to be discerned in those straits,
ance of several leagues: that as
ice is so removed by that means,
sea again with the utmost ex-
out take care, however, at the
how they leave the coast, till
bulk gale from the sea reduces
the necessity of making a second
in some rivulet, or other place of
their vessel may not be crush-
es, or otherwise lost through
that should fall down upon

ants adds to this relation, that,
years before, some particu-
who resided in Siberia, procured
license for furnishing themselves
places situated on the coast, with
visions as they might have occa-
such as corn, flour, &c. and in
for them to transport the natural
of Siberia by Wergat's straits,
ie least molestation or restraint,
e places, upon the payment of
as should be imposed upon
the Czar: that these people, how-
ever,

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1695 ever, having abused that important privi-
lege by clandestinely conveying of divers
other kinds of merchandize by other rivers
in Russia, to the great detriment of his
Czarian majesty's revenues, they were re-
strained from trading any longer in those
Straits; and an order was issued out for
the said commodities to be brought by
Beresofve, and the Kamenkoi, or the rocks
of Pojas.

This, however, is not only very dif-
ficult to be accomplished, but very in-
convenient, because, in their passage from
Beresofva, they lie under an indispensable
obligation to cut their canoes, or little
barks, which are hollowed out of the
trunk of a tree, directly into two equal
parts; and in that manner to drag them
over the mountains for several days toge-
ther; and as soon as they have reached the
most northern part of the country, they
join them artfully together again, and pro-
ceed on their voyage to Archangel, or
to some other places situate on the river
Oby.

A descrip-
tion of the
Pojas.

Mr. Isbrants likewise went to the Pojas,
which is a rock, or more properly speaking
a chain of stone-mountains, which begins
at Petzerkai, and extends a-crofs the coun-
try of Wergotur, and Wolock, without
the least discontinuance; and from thence
proceeds to the south, on one side of the
Utka castle, quite as far as the country of
Uffian Tartars, from whence springs the ri-
ver, distinguished by the name of Uffi, and
to the eastward of those two rivers called
Nitra and Tuna; the last of which emp-
ties its waters to the north-west into the
Kama.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- (a) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17.
n. b.
- (b) Samoëds, see p. 17. n. a.
- (c) China, see p. 66. n. i.
- (d) Amur, or Amour, see p. 18. n. h.
- (e) Mongulians, or Mogulians, see p. 158.
n. i.

183
1695 This chain of mountains after that ex-
tends southwards towards the frontiers of
the Calmucs, and the spacious river of
Jaika, in which there is great plenty of fish,
flows out of it to the westward, and then
proceeds, till it empties its waters into the
(o) Caspian-sea. The (p) Tobol like-
wise issues from it to the northward.
They proceed afterwards to the eastward
along the country of the Calmacs, and the
frontiers of Siberia, on one side of those two
lakes, distinguished by the names of Saifan
and Kalkulan; from the first whereof
flows the Oby, and from the last, the (q)
Irtis. From the Kalkulan, the Pojas a-
gain extends itself to the southward,
from whence flows the (r) Jenifia,
the mouth whereof is in the icy sea of
Tartary.

These mountains, in the next place,
form an elbow, and divide themselves
after that into the north-east and south;
to the northward all along the river
Jenifia; and to the southward, on one
side of the lake, called Kofogol, from
whence proceeds the river Silinga, which
empties its waters into the lake, called (s)
Baikal. From thence this Pojas stret-
ches away still farther to the sandy desert
of the country of the Mongulians;
and having penetrated into it some
considerable way, it divides again, and
extends to the southward as far as the
famous wall of China before-mentioned,
and then stretches out eastward quite
as far as the sea, as the curious rea-
der may plainly perceive by consulting
only the map of the travels of this en-
voy.

- (f) Russians, or natives of Moscovy, see p. 7.
n. c.
- (g) Tartars, or natives of Tartary, see p. 18.
n. i.
- (h) Calmucs, see p. 162. n. b.
- (i) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.
- (k) Archangel, see p. 8. n. d.
- (l) Dwi-

- (1) Dwina, river, see p. 23. n. *b*.
 (m) Persia, see p. 64. n. *o*.
 (n) Amsterdam, see p. 108. n. *f*.
 (o) Caspian-sea, see p. 66. n. *q*.

- (p) Tobol, see p. 148. n. *a*.
 (q) Irtis, see p. 148. n. *e*.
 (r) Jenissa, or Jenisa, see p. 18. n. *f*,
 (s) Baikal, or Bakal (the lake of) see p. 167.
 n. *a*.

C H A P. XXIX.

A Description of the Tartars of Uff and Baskir and of divers other Hords, or Clans. A succinct Account of the Towns of Tora Tomkoi, and the Parts adjacent. Of the Inhabitants of Tungus, and the people, called the Burates, &c. A short Description of the Natives of Dauria, Korea, and other Nations. A short Account of the Icy-Cape, of the Town of Jakutkoi, &c.

THE natives of that country which is very extensive, and lies between Peim and Wergotur, along the river, called Zusawaya, and as far as the country of Uff, are all heathens.

The river, called Kungur, on the banks of which reside the Tartars of Uff, has its source or spring in the country of Uff, between the Zusawaya and the Uff, and proceeds till it empties its waters into the Kama, on which the town of Kungur stands, where there is a garrison belonging to the Czar.

These natives of Uff and Baskir reside in the parts adjacent to the town of Ossa, and are dispersed up and down, in little hamlets, or villages, (built much after the manner of those in (*a*) Russia) to the westward, as far as the Kama, and all along the (*b*) Wolga, or Volga, and extend almost to the cities of Saratof and Sarapul, which are situate on the Wolga, where his Czarian majesty has likewise strong garrisons for keeping the Tartars in subjection, and for collecting his duties there, which are principally paid in furs and honey. The governors, however, of these places are obliged to deport themselves with some degree of courtesy and complaisance towards the inhabitants all round about; lest they should murmur, or rise up in rebellion, and disclaim his Czarian

majesty's dominion over them.

There are likewise divers other hords, or clans of these same Tartars, who reside in the south-west part of the country, and in the kingdom of (*c*) Astracan, who are under no subjection whatsoever, and unite with those (*d*) Calmucs who are their neighbours, in order to make their occasional excursions into the country of (*e*) Siberia. These Tartars, however, cultivate the lands about them, and sow divers sorts of grain there, which they carry home to their cabbins, or huts, when they have reaped it, and threshed it in the field. These people have, moreover, not only the finest honey the world can produce, but a prodigious quantity of it.

Their usual dress is a strong cloth, of a light grey colour, and much like that which is worn by the peasants of Moscow.

Their women appear for the most part in their shifts, from their girdles upwards, except the weather proves intensely cold indeed; which shifts are not only striped, but worked with silk of divers sort of colours. In other respects, they wear petticoats, much after the German mode, and slippers, which cover only the end of their feet, and are fastened about their ankles. As to their heads, they dress them

commonly with a long shawl breadth of four fingers, which they and work with silk & wool, in the same manner as the Persians. These, likewise, dress their heads with coral, and glass beads, dangling about their eyes, and wear them high instead. When they go abroad, they cover this head-dress of cover with head-dresses of horse-hair, not only to keep them from the sun, but also to adorn them like the Persians.

These natives of Uff have soldiers, and even their bows and their arrows they use with great dexterity. They are strong and sturdy, and moderately tall, and are broad, and as to their eyes, sometimes grown to their eye-brows are so covered, not only their eyes, but their heads, they have a true, peculiar to them, and are converted to the Christian religion, though still of Astracan, though still of the same nation.

As to their religion, many of them are Mahomedans, but there are also some who are Christians, and extend themselves as far as the town of Ossa, which is called Jernikowa, which is a town of rock- salt. To the westward of this town, there is a river, called Jernikowa, which is a river of rock-salt. To the westward of this town, there is a river, called Jernikowa, which is a river of rock-salt.

The Calmucs refuse to receive the Christian religion, and extend themselves as far as the town of Ossa, which is called Jernikowa, which is a town of rock-salt. To the westward of this town, there is a river, called Jernikowa, which is a river of rock-salt. To the westward of this town, there is a river, called Jernikowa, which is a river of rock-salt.

and of divers other Hords,
of Tora Tomskoi, and the
rus, and the people, called
Natives of Dauria, Ko-
f the Icy-Cape, of the

conjunction over them.

are likewise divers other Hords,
of these same Tartars, who reside
in the west part of the country, and

hom of (c) Astracan, who are
injection whatsoever, and unite

(d) Calmucs who are their
in order to make their occa-

sions into the country of (e)

these Tartars, however, cultivate
about them, and sow divers sorts
where, which they carry home to

cabins, or huts, when they have
it, and threshed it in the field.
people have, moreover, not
finest honey the world can

but a prodigious quantity of

usual dress is a strong cloth,
t grey colour, and much like
is worn by the peasants of

women appear for the most part
hists, from their girdles upwards,
the weather proves intensely cold,
which shifts are not only striped,
ted with silk of divers sort of co-
in other respects, they wear petti-
much after the German mode,
ers, which cover only the end of
t, and are fastened about their an-
s to their heads, they dress them

commonly with a long ribbon about the breadth of four fingers, which they tie behind, and work with silk of various colours, in the same manner as they do their shifts. These, likewise, they embellish with coral, and glass beads, which hang dangling about their eyes. Some of them, indeed, wear them higher upon their foreheads. When they go a-visiting, they cover this head-dress of theirs with a handkerchief, not only wrought with silk, but adorned likewise all round with a fringe.

These natives of Uffi and Baskir, are brave soldiers, and excellent horsemen. They wear no other arms, indeed, than their bows and their quivers; but those they use with great dexterity and address. They are strong and sturdy, for the most part, and moderately tall; their shoulders are broad; and as to their beards, they let them sometimes grow to a great length. Their eye-brows are so thick, that they cover, not only their eyes, but their fore heads likewise. They have a language, it is true, peculiar to themselves; but can understand and converse with the Tartars of Astracan, though different from their own.

As to their religion, most of them are heathens; but there are some amongst them who are Mahomedans, through the persuasions of the (f) Grim Tartars, with whom they correspond in a very friendly manner.

The Calmucs reside chiefly between the springs, or fountain-heads of those two rivers the (g) Tobol and the (h) Oby, and extend themselves as far as the lake called Jamusowa, which abounds with a kind of rock-salt. To this lake about twenty or five and twenty Docheniques, that is to say, Russian small vessels, come from the town called Tobol, and up the (i) Irtis constantly once every year with a strong guard of no less than 2500 men; and as Jamusowa lies at some considerable distance from the Irtis, they travel the remainder of the way by land. When they arrive at the lake, they cut the salt, as they would cakes of ice, upon the banks, and convey it afterwards to their respective ves-

fels, notwithstanding all the obstructions that they meet with from the Calmucs; with whom, upon these occasions, they have frequently several smart engagements.

As you pass down the Irtis, a little below the above-mentioned lake, and enter upon the little river Tora, you come to the little river, called Tora, which is the last frontier-place belonging to his Czarian majesty, and borders upon the dominions of a Calmuc prince, called Bustu-chan.

The natives of this country, (which extends from the city of Tora, situate on the Tora, from whence it derives its name, towards the east, as far as to the Oby, over against the river Tom, and the city situate thereon, called from thence Tomskoi) are distinguished by the name of the Barabinsky.

These traverse the country of Barnabui in the summer as well as the winter, tho' more particularly during the cold months; because the Oby, at that season of the year, is by no means navigable, by Surgut and Narum; for which reason, all travellers are then indispensibly obliged to go into Siberia by Tomskoy and Jenusefskoy.

These Barabinsky, who are a kind of Calmucs, pay their acknowledgements, by way of tribute, not only to the Czar, but to the prince Bustu-chan likewise above-named. They have three heads, or chieftains, whom they distinguish by the name of Taisai, who are collectors of all the duties that are imposed upon them, and account, at proper times and places, with his Czarian majesty for his peculiar dues, or demands upon them: the first place, appointed for that purpose, is the town of Tora; the second the castle, or fort, called Telpwa, and the last, the fortress, or castle of Kulenba: their whole tribute, however, is paid in furs.

They are a turbulent, warm sort of people, and addicted to warlike exploits, notwithstanding they live in huts, or cabins, erected in the woods, much after the manner of the Siberian Tartars. In these, they admit of no stoves, but of little chimneys, which may more properly be termed tubes, or pipes only, for the discharge of their smoke; which said tubes or pipes, when

B b b

1695

Are brave
soldiers and
excellent
bow-men.

Their re-
ligion.

The Jamu-
sowa lake,
full of
rock-salt.

1695

A descrip-
tion of
Tora, and
the parts
adjacent.

The Bara-
binfy

Are a kind
of Calmucs.

Have three
chieftains.

186

THE TRAVELS OF

1695

when their wood is burnt down to a coal, are flopt up close, in order to keep in as much heat as possibly they can; and, when the fire is out, they open them again.

Their habi-
tations.

In the summer-time, these people reside in little villages, or hamlets, under huts, or tents, erected in a very slight manner; but during the winter-season, indeed, they take care to have their cabbins more firm and substantial: they cultivate the lands that lie all round about them; and they sow barley, oats, and french-wheat, &c. but no rye. However, when any bread is offered them, made of that last kind of grain, they seldom, if ever, refuse to accept of it; but chew it, indeed, with some seeming tokens of disgust, as unpalatable, and for the most part throw it away, or spit it out, as if it went against their stomachs.

Their bread
and other
food.

Instead, therefore, of rye, they make use of clean barley, which, after it has been duely parched in a hot iron-kettle, grows as hard almost as any stone; and this they take care to eat the very next day that it is so parched as aforesaid. They make likewise a kind of flour, of their Sarana, as they call it, which is the root of their yellow lilly; and with a proper quantity of it make a kind of soup.

Their drink.

As to their drink, it is for the most part a liquor distilled from a proper quantity of mare's-milk, which they call Kumis; or else they drink what they call Karaza, that is to say, a black sort of tea, with which commodity, they are principally supplied by the Bolgares.

Their arms.

Their furs.

They make no use of any other warlike weapons than bows and arrows, in which they follow the example of the other Tartars. They have cattle of almost all sorts amongst them; but no hogs; they have plenty likewise of furs, in their country; that is to say, fables, the skins of squirrels, ermins, foxes, and other creatures of the like kind. This country of theirs extends to the Toraguite to the Oby; and tho' there are no mountains to be met with there, yet there is a great plenty of lofty cedars, birch, alders, and woods, which are standing in rows on the banks of several small streams, or rivulets, whose

waters are as clear and transparent as chrystal.

1695

These natives, as well the women as men, dress much after the manner of the Calmucs; and they are indulged with as many wives as they please, as far as their circumstances will admit.

Their wives

circumstances will admit.

Their idol.

When they traverse the woods, in order to hunt down their game, they take their Saitan, as they call it, along with them; which is an image, made of wood, inelegantly carved with a knife only, and covered with a parti-coloured stuff, not unlike that which is frequently worn by the female Russians. This idol, or Saitan, of theirs is inclosed in a box, which is carried upon a particular sledge; and to this their god, they offer up the first-fruits of their chase, be it what it will, without any exception.

Their usual
present to
their Saitan,
when suc-
cessful in
the chase.

When they prove more successful than they could reasonably expect, and when safely arrived at their respective cabbins, this Saitan, or idol, is deposited in the most conspicuous part of their tent, or hut, in its proper box, and covered over with the finest furs they are masters of, by way of grateful acknowledgement of the great success they have met with thro' their means; and there they are left untouched till they are grown rotten and worthless in process of time; for they are firmly convinced, that they should be guilty of the most heinous sin of sacrilege, should they strip them of those robes, or apply them to any other purpose whatsoever.

An account
of Tomskoi.

When you are got beyond the Oby, you come to Tomskoi, which is a frontier-place belonging to the Czar; this Tomskoi is a fine, spacious city, well fortified, and well furnished with a numerous garrison both of Russians and Cossacs, in order to oppose the incursions and outrages of the Siberian Tartars. In the suburbs likewise beyond the river, there are planted a large body of Buchar Tartars, who pay homage, and certain duties to his Czarian majesty. This beautiful place is situate on the river Tom, from whence it derives its name, the spring, or fountain-head whereof lies in the country of the Calmucs.

Here

Here they carry on a trade
(A) China, which is prin-
cipally by the Chan of Bulachin
Bachan, amongst whom
several Russian merchants
carry on their trade.

their journey to China, it
takes three months, and return
pass of time, but it is a very
pass and towards, with
cables and faggots; for in
places, these traders are in-
gled to load their camels
and water. In the pro-
cess of the journey, you must cross
the Calmucs, and so go
called Kokon, a city in
China without the wall.

It is not practicable, how-
ever, to go to the Chan of
Russia, and other strange
trade this journey; be-
cause it is over-run with free-
booters, and all travellers in gen-
eral, except they have
sufficient guards to win-
take.

As you fall down the ri-
ver, the country all round
is very wild, even as
[Kishikoi, an absolute pl-
ces. And it is much to
little better, between the
Kia and Tsium, even as
towards, called Kishikoi,
where the country is
bordered only, which ad-
Kishikoi, and are under
the Chan of Bulachin.

The last-mentioned city
strong garrison in it, which
Cossacs, and subject to the
to withstand the attacks
of the Kirgises. In the
accordingly, there are al-
20 troops, well accom-
panied by the governor's
palace, and ready furnished
with both night and day
watching, it is in a
peace with the
there is no manner of de-
pendence to be put
alliance, for they frequently
dreadfully the inhabitants.

is clear and transparent as they
 natives, as well the women as
 much after the manner of the
 and they are indulged with as
 es as they please, as far as their
 nces will admit.

they traverse the woods, in or-
 t down their game, they take
 , as they call it, along with
 which is an image, made of wood,
 carved with a knife only, and
 with a parti-coloured stuff, not
 at which is frequently worn by
 e Russians. This idol, or Saitan,
 is inclosed in a box, which is
 in a particular sledge; and to
 id, they offer up the first-fruits
 ce, be it what it will, without
 non.

they prove more successful than
 d reasonably expect, and when
 rived at their respective cabins,
 , or idol, is deposited in the
 pious part of their tent, or
 proper box, and covered over
 nest furs they are makers of,
 f grateful acknowledgement of
 ices they have met with thro'
 ; and there they are left un-
 ill they are grown rotten and
 in process of time; for they are
 convinced, that they should be
 the most heinous sin of sacrilege,
 they strip them of those robes,
 them to any other purpose

you are got beyond the Oby,
 to Tomskoi, which is a frontier-
 ang to the Czar; this Tom-
 one, spacious city, well fortified,
 furnished with a numerous gar-
 n of Russians and Cossacs, in order
 the incursions and outrages of
 rian Tartars. In the suburbs like-
 and the river, there are planted a
 ty of Buchar Tartars, who pay
 and certain duties to his Czarian
 This beautiful place is situate
 er Tom, from whence it derives
 the spring, or fountain-head
 lies in the country of the Calmucs.
 Here

1695
 Their trade
 with China.

Here they carry on a large trade with
 (k) China, which is principally conducted
 by the Chan of Bufuchtu, and by the
 Buchars, amongst whom we may reckon
 several Russian merchants. They perform
 their journey to China, it is true, in about
 three months, and return in the same com-
 pass of time, but it is attended, both back-
 wards and forwards, with incredible diffi-
 culties and fatigues; for in some particular
 places, these traders are indispensibly obli-
 ged to load their camels both with wood
 and water. In the prosecution of this
 journey, you must cross the country of
 the Calmucs, and so proceed to a place
 called Kokoton, a city which belongs to
 China without the wall.

It is not practicable, however, for the
 Russians, and other strange nations to un-
 dertake this journey: because the country
 is over-run with free-booters, who plun-
 der all travellers in general, without dis-
 tinction, except they are provided with
 sufficient guards to withstand their at-
 tacks.

A desert
 country.

As you fall down the river from Tom-
 skoi, the country all round about is a per-
 fect wilderness, even as far as the town
 Jenisefskoi, an absolute plain, but full of
 copies. And it is much the same, or very
 little better, between the two rivers called
 Kia and Zulim, even as far as to the two
 towns, called Kusneskoi and Krasnagar,
 where the country is inhabited on the
 borders only, which adjoin to those of the
 Kirgises; and are under the dominion of
 the Chan of Bufuchtu.

The coun-
 try of the
 Kirgises.

The last-mentioned city is a fort, with a
 strong garrison in it, who are principally
 Cossacs, and subject to the Czar, in order
 to withstand the outrages and devastations
 of the Kirgises. In the market-place,
 accordingly, there are always no less than
 20 troopers, well accoutred, planted before
 the governor's palace, and their horses stand
 ready saddled both night and day. For
 notwithstanding, it is true, that the Kir-
 gises are at peace with the Siberians; yet
 there is no manner of dependance, no trust
 or confidence to be put in that pacific
 alliance; for they frequently carry off
 clandestinely the inhabitants of the out-

parts of the town, and of the villages round
 about it; and their cattle likewise when
 opportunity admits. The Cossacs, how-
 ever, make them often pay very severely
 for the depredations they are guilty
 of in so fraudulent and illicit a man-
 ner.

These Kirgises extend themselves to-
 wards the south-east, even as far as the
 country of the (l) Mongulians, who are a
 robust, and warlike people, tall, broad-
 faced, and bear a manifest resemblance to
 the Calmucs.

Their ex-
 tent.

Tho' bows and arrows are their princi-
 pal arms; yet they seldom or never enter
 upon any expedition, without being furnish-
 ed with fine coats of mail, and long spears,
 or lances, whose points almost trail along
 the ground as they ride on horseback.
 They reside for the most part in the moun-
 tains; where they are in no manner of
 danger of being taken by surprize.

Their arms.

Their language bears a very near affinity
 to that of the Calmucs; and most of them
 can talk that made use of by the Crim-
 Tartars likewise, to which the Turks are
 no strangers.

Their lan-
 guage.

From Krasnagar, as you pass down the
 river (m) Jenisa, or Jenisia, even as far as
 Jenisefskoi, the country is inhabited by the
 Tungusians and Burates. The castle, or
 fort of Ilinskoi is situate on the frontiers of
 the Mongulians, opposite the Pojas before-
 mentioned, between the two towns, called
 Jenisefskoi and Selinginskoi. Though this
 place, thus situated, is not very spacious;
 yet it is furnished with a very good garrison,
 chiefly consisting of horsemen, in order to
 guard and protect the western part of the
 country of the Mongulians, and to with-
 stand the frequent ravages and incur-
 sions of the Mirotti, Mily, and Burates,
 who are all Tartars, dependent there-
 upon.

The Tun-
 gusians and
 Burates.

In the parts adjacent to this town, there
 is great plenty of sandal-wood to be met
 with, which is remarkable for its peculiar
 hardness. The Burates, who live at pre-
 sent under the shelter and protection of
 the Czar, resided formerly in the country
 adjacent to Selinginskoi; but ever since
 they have been found guilty of uniting
 with

1695

with the Mongulians, through the migration of the Chinese, they have been removed into the country round about the lake of (*n*) Baikal, in the mountains, and there they pay their tribute to his Czarian majesty all in furs.

Chieftains
of the Mon-
gulians.

There is a mountain, which stretches out from this town to the northward, even as far as the last-mentioned lake of Baikal, where there are the finest sort of fables as well as furs. The country of the Mongulians contains the whole extent between Kologol lake to the eastward, even as far as the great desert; from thence to the Mongulian lake, called Dway, and to the country of (*o*) Argun; and after that, towards the north-west, even as far as those two rivers, called Onon and Sikoi. They live under the government of three heads, or chieftains, who are brethren, the first of whom is named Kuttugt, who is high-priest likewise of his nation: the name of the second is Aziroi-Sain-Chan, who lives in peace and perfect friendship with Kuttugt; but the third, whose name is Elict, and whose frontiers abound on the territories of the western Tartars, is committing daily outrages and depredations, and is guilty of robbing and plundering all he meets with, even as far as the Chinese wall; without paying the least regard to those presents which the emperor of China annually sends to the Tartars all round about, in order to tempt them to be inviolably attached to his interest, as their rightful sovereign. The two others have thrown themselves under the shelter and protection of his Czarian majesty; because they are under apprehensions of being insulted by the Calmucs, and particularly those who are dependent on the prince Buischutu-Chan, by whom they were very sorely injured and oppressed in the years 1688 and 1689.

The castle
of Argun.

Let us now return, however, to the frontiers belonging to his Czarian majesty; and in the first place, to the fort, or castle of Argun, which is situate on the western part of the river of that name. That castle is defended by a Russian garrison, and the inhabitants round about are all

Konni Tungusians, and tributary to the Czár.

These Tungusians are a very warlike people, and in this place, are capable of bringing into the field 4000 men, who are well armed with their bows and quivers, and very expert and dexterous in the use of those hostile weapons. So formidable, in short, are they, that the Mongulians durst not venture to face them, or any ways injure or oppress them, but by clandestine robberies in the dead of the night.

Their dress.

During the winter-season, they dress themselves in some skins or another, or rather in the fleeces of their sheep; and they wear sandals, or boots, in the same manner as the natives of China. There is a broad rim, or border of fur to each of their caps, which they wear either up or down, according to the inclemency, or mildness of the weather. As to their girdles, they are armed with iron, about four fingers broad, and an arrow, that serves them on occasion for a flute. In the summer, they shave their heads, and wear no caps. They reserve, however, one lock behind, as is customary amongst the Chinese. As to their dress, they wear a blue Chinese cloth, which is quilted with cotton, but have no linnen underneath it. In a word, they are almost beardless by nature; their faces are, for the most part, rather broad than thin; and take them all together, they bear a near resemblance to the Calmucs.

Their chase

When their flock of provisions begins to grow low, they go in hords, or clans, to hunt the rein-deer and the stag, which they first drive before them together, and then they surround them. When they have shot a sufficient number of them, and they very seldom miss of their aim, they fairly divide the spoil between them: as to their women, they dress much after the same manner as the men do; and the only difference that is any ways perceptible, is that they have two tresses of hair, which fall down on each side upon their breasts.

Poligamy is a constant practice amongst them; and every man may indulge himself,

self, without control, at his circumstances.

minibus. They are not content in their choice when without making an enquiry, whether the possession of any face them.

Though they entertain there is a God in the He they pay him no tribute nor make the least for by way of prayers, inclined to consult their in order to be in the shall meet with success ing hunting-match, a upon their neighbours, the nighttime by bears

And when they pro- selves, they make mare's-milk, which turned, and then dis- over, between two ea- stop up, to which is aff- pipe. This makes a this both the men and ple down in such plea- company will someti- incoaxed with their l Their wives and d their horses, with as men, and make use rows with equal de- ment.

Instead of bread, th yellow flies dried, and duced to a horse, they of soap. They nelle- praise the art of seg- however, as well as w who are in the best c- valued and cherished, amongst them, who to be persons of fortu- very advantageous tra- and the Xii, who are jurisdiction of the c- which were so comm- sible in an exchange of cloth, and other clo-

Angulians, and tributary to the

Angulians are a very warlike
in this place, are capable of
to the field 4000 men, who are
d with their bows and quivers,
expert and dexterous in the use of
le weapons. So formidable, in
they, that the Mongulians durst
to face them, or any way in-
quies them, but by clandestine
in the dead of the night.

the winter-season, they dress
s in some skins or another, or
the fleeces of their sheep; and
sandals, or boots, in the time
the natives of China. There is
s, or border of fur to exit of
which they wear either up or
according to the inclemency, or
if the weather. As to their ge-
are armed with iron, about four
road, and an arrow, that serves
occasion for a flure. In the sum-
have their heads, and wear no
y reserve, however, one lock
s is customary amongst the
As to their dress, they wear a
le cloth, which is quilted with
it have no linen underneath it.

they are almost bearded by
their faces are, for the most part,
read than thin; and take them all
they bear a new resemblance to

their flock of promiscuous begins to
they go in herds, or clans, to
in-deer and the stag, which they
before them together, and then
ound them. When they have
sufficient number of them, and they
on miles of their aim, they fairly
re spoil between them: as to their
they dress much after the same
as the men do; and the only diffe-
at is any ways perceptible, is that
ve two tresses of hair, which
n on each side upon their

is a constant practice amongst
and every man may indulge him-
self,

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

1695

self, without controul, with as many wives as his circumstances will permit him to maintain. They are not, it seems, over curious in their choice; for they purchase them without making the least scruple, or enquiry, whether they have been in the possession of any stranger or not, before them.

Their reli-
gion.

Though they entertain the notion, that there is a God in the Heavens above; yet they pay him no tribute of adoration; nor make the least formal addresses to him by way of prayers. When they are inclined to consult their Saitan, or Magician, in order to be informed whether they shall meet with success in their approaching hunting-match, or in any incursions upon their neighbours, they visit him in the night-time by beat of drum.

Their a-
musements.

And when they propose to regale themselves, they make a kind of arrack of mare's-milk, which they let stand till it is turned, and then distil it twice or thrice over, between two earthen vessels, closely stopp'd up, to which is affixed a small wooden pipe. This makes a strong spirit; and this both the men and the women will tipple down in such plenty, that the whole company will sometimes be downright intoxicated with their liquor.

Their mar-
ried women
and maid-
ens.

Their wives and daughters will mount their horses, with as much activity as the men, and make use of their bows and arrows with equal dexterity and judgment.

Their bread

Instead of bread, they eat the roots of yellow lillies dried, and when they are reduced to a flour, they make with it a kind of soup. They neither understand, nor practise the art of agriculture. There, however, as well as in other places, those who are in the best circumstances are most valued and caressed; and there are some amongst them, who may properly be said to be persons of fortune; who carry on a very advantageous trade with the Targasi and the Xixi, who are people under the jurisdiction of the emperor of China: which trade or commerce principally consists in an exchange of furs for blue cotton cloth, and other cloths, and large quanti-

189

1695

tities of tobacco. They pretend to be descendants of those Targasi, or the Aorsi, with whom they contract alliances, and live in a perfect state of love and friendship.

When you have gone about half a days journey from the fort of Argun into the mountains, you will find, that a silver mine has fallen in there, and to this very day plainly discern several melting-places, which the inhabitants of Nienchen and Dauria formerly made use of. From this place to Nerzinkoi, which is the principal city of Dauria, it is a ten days journey by land, in case you ride upon camels.

A descrip-
tion of
Dauria.

It is a very fine country, and divided into several parcels by brooks or rivulets, upon the margins whereof, you will meet with abundance of the finest plants, and the most beautiful flowers that nature ever produced. In the mountains, and on the tops of the hills, you will find grass of at least three feet in height. The country, however, all round about lies perfectly unmanured, as it is in the possession of such Tartars as are tributaries to the Czar of Moscow.

The fron-
tiers of Si-
beria and
China.

Having travelled through the country of Argun, and traversed the large river called (p) Amur, towards that other of Gorbisa, which is deemed the common boundary of his Czarian majesty's dominions, and those of the emperor of China, whose territories extend eastward from that last-mentioned river, quite as far as to the sea; and those of his Czarian majesty westward and northward: to the eastward of the Gorbisa, we came to the rivers, called Tugur and Uda; which lie to the northward of the Amur, and flow down till they empty their waters into the Chinese ocean, or the sea of Amur.

Between these two rivers, the borders whereof are inhabited by Tungusians Alemeuri and Kereisi, a vast number of fables are taken.

A descrip-
tion of the Ke-
reisi.

It is highly probable, that the Kereisi last-mentioned, came originally from the place called Coela, which does not lie at a great distance, and to which, in case one meets but with a fair wind, it is but a few days passage. It is the general opinion, that

C c c

1695

that they came first and settled on the borders of the Amur, and that in process of time, they extended their limitations.

Those that reside on the sea-coast, get their principal subsistence by fishing; and those who live higher up in the country, by hunting; and frequently enrich themselves by those excursions; because there are no finer furs in the whole world than there are in these parts.

Subsist chiefly by fishing or hunting.

The Islanders of these parts.

The inhabitants of the adjacent islands constantly visit the two last-mentioned rivers once a year. Their aspects and deportment are comely and graceful enough; they cloathe themselves in the finest furs, under which they wear a silk vest, after the mode of the (q) Persians. They are for the most part tall proper men, and their beards give them an air of majesty. They frequently deal with the Siberian Tartars for women and maidens; for they are very amorously inclined; and give fables and black fox skins, (of which according to their own account there is great plenty in those islands) by way of exchange. They even tempt the Tungusians of Siberia to come and visit them; and in order to induce them to become traders amongst them, they insinuate, that the country of Jakutskoi formerly belonged to them; and it must be acknowledged, indeed, that their language, in some measure, seems to confirm such a conjecture.

The river called Ogota runs to the northward of the two rivers last-mentioned; and between them and that of Uda, there are a great number of whales to be met with upon the coast, and even as far as to the frozen cape; where there are seals and narwhales in great plenty.

The Xaxi and Koeliki.

The town of Kamatska, and the whole coast beyond it, is inhabited by other nations, who are distinguished by the names of, the Xaxi and the Koeliki, whose language is widely different from all the rest.

Their dress.

Those who reside upon the coast cloathe themselves in the skins of seals, and dwell in caverns under the earth, and are for the

most part poor and indigent: those, however, who have their habitations farther up in the country are more substantial people, and regale themselves frequently with fat venison and raw fish, and when they walk themselves make use of their own wine.

In other respects, these are a people in whom no trust or confidence can well be put; since they have very little, if any notion either of, honesty or honour.

Their arms are nothing but slings, but then they are exceedingly expert and dextrous in the use of them. For seven months of the year successively the ground there is covered with snow; notwithstanding it is seldom very deep, and falls only at the commencement of the winter-season.

Near Kamatska, there is a gulph, in which the inhabitants round about it, take a prodigious number of narwhales, and divers other animals that frequent the sea.

As to the frozen Cape, the farther it extends itself into the sea, the more it is cut and divided and formed into distinct islands. At some small distance above Kamatska, there is a particular passage, where those who fish for the narwhale only find their expectations fully answered. One part of those, who reside in Anadeiskoi, and Sabatia, are Xuxians and Koelikians; and the river, called there Salafia, abounds with herrings, sturgeon, and what they call Sterbeth and Nebna.

As you proceed higher up the country, you meet with divers houses, situate on the banks of the river Simaniko, which are inhabited by the Cossacs, who are under the dominion of his Czarian majesty, and who collect there the tributes which are paid by the Tartars in those parts to their sovereign lord and master. And as it is in that part of Siberia where they take the greatest number of fables and lynxes; all along the rivers; so the inhabitants of those parts are burthened with heavy duties in proportion.

The climate of this country, which the Moscovites call Sweelminos, or the sacred

Cape,

1695

The diet of their richer sort.

Their arms.

A description of the frozen cap.

Cape is excessively cold there is that surprizing mass of ice there, which form tremendous winds, which have the effect of scattering the ground. Sometimes, are scattered and disposed of the wind, into numbers when they join in whirling on the waves, they are converted into again. This sea, we are sometimes petrified, is sometimes perforated, and sometimes of was well known for the year 1697.

The great river call towards the south-west which runs Siberia from this river is situated near the sea; from whence it feels that sea, during for the sea-coast, and Cape of Siberia to Kamatska, in order to and provide themselves quantity of whale-balls the Tartars in those small boats, compelled they manage with supple art. The natives of who reside on the banks are distinguished by Jakutes whole dress felves.

Their coats are cut after the German fashion, of various kinds, and sewed together, with hind-skin, about four their coats are open, be each side; but they wear warmth. As to their let it grow to a great As to their religion, a supreme Being to be believe them with life, as the with wives and have arms, and

The climate excessively cold.

poor and indigent: those, how-
ever, have their habitations farther
country are more substantial
and regale themselves frequently
with venison and raw fish, and when
a themselves make use of their

in respects, these are a people in
trust or confidence can well be
they have very little, if any
of honesty or honour.

There are nothing but flogs, but

are exceedingly expert and dex-
ter in the use of them. For seven
of the year successively the
is covered with snow; not-
withstanding it is seldom very deep, and
at the commencement of the

in Kamatska, there is a gulph, in
the inhabitants round about it,
a prodigious number of narwhales,
and other animals that frequent

the frozen Cape, the farther it
is into the sea, the more it is
divided and formed into distinct

At some small distance above
there is a particular passage,
the who fish for the narwhale
their expectations fully answered.
of those, who reside in An-
d Sabatia, are Xurians and Ke-
and the river, called there Salaz,
with herrings, flurgeon, and
call Serbeth and Néma.

proceed higher up the country,
with divers houses, situate on the
the river Simaniko, which are
by the Colics, who are under
vision of his Czarian majesty, and
lect their the tributes which are
the Tartars in those parts to their
in lord and master. And as it is
part of Siberia where they take
a great number of fables and lynxes;
the rivers; so the inhabitants of
are burthened with heavy

proportion, which the
climate of this country, which the
call Sweetloines, or the land
Cape.

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

191

Cape, is excessively cold; and it freezes
there in that surprizing degree, that the
islands of ice there, when driven by the
winds, form tremendous and lofty moun-
tains, which have the appearance of solid
ground. Sometimes, however, those hills
are scattered and disposed, by the violence
of the wind, into numberless pieces; but
then they soon join with others that are
floating on the waves, by which means
they are converted into high mountains
again. This sea, we are credibly inform-
ed, is sometimes perfectly frozen over for
two or three years successively, without
intermission; a memorable instance where-
of was well known from the year 1694 to
the year 1697.

Mountains
of ice.

The river
Lena, and
the town of
Jakutskoi.

The great river called (*r*) Lena, rises
towards the south-west, near Baikal-lake,
which parts Siberia from Dauria. On
this river is situate the town called Jakut-
skoi; from whence there are several ves-
sels that set sail, during the summer-season,
for the sea-coast, and the openings of the
cape of Sabatia to Anadieskoi, and to
Kamatska, in order to catch narwhales,
and provide themselves with a sufficient
quantity of whale-oil. For this purpose
the Tartars in those parts make use of
small barks, composed of leather, which
they manage with surprizing dexterity and
art. The natives of Jakutskoi, and those
who reside on the banks of the river Amur,
are distinguished by the names of the
Jakutes whose dress is peculiar to them-
selves.

Their dress
particu-
lar.

Their coats are cut in some degree af-
ter the German fashion, and made of furs
of various kinds, and of various colours,
sewed together, with a white border of
hind-skin, about four fingers in breadth;
these coats are open both behind, and on
each side; but they wear no linnen under-
neath. As to their hair, most of them
let it grow to a great length.

Their reli-
gion.

As to their religion, they acknowledge
a supreme Being to be in Heaven, who
blesses them with life, food and rayment;
as also with wives and children. They
have an annual festival, moreover, at which

they make their solemn oblations to him
of Kunis and Arrack. During the time
this grand festival lasts, they abstain from
drinking, and kindle up great fires, in
which they sprinkle their best liquors, and
in this ceremony, their whole free-will
offerings principally consist.

Their fune-
ls.

When any of them happens to dye,
they bury his nearest relation along with
him; a custom that bears some affinity to
that barbarous one of the savage Indians,
whose wives are indispensibly obliged to
accompany their husbands to the fatal
pile, and burn along with them under the
ridiculous notion, that they may never
be separated from them in the world to
come.

Their lan-
guage.

As to their language, it bears a near
affinity to that usually spoken by the
Mahomedan Tartars, who reside within
the jurisdiction of Tobol, and are originally
natives of Bolgar. They indulge them-
selves likewise in polygamy. As to their
method of travelling, they are sometimes
drawn by stags in sledges; and sometimes
again they ride upon them; and gain
a vast compass of ground in a short
time.

Their parti-
cular dispo-
sition.

They are a sort of people, that are na-
turally brave and courageous, have some
taste of honour, and look upon lying as an
odious vice, and the certain mark of a
mean spirit. Notwithstanding, however,
these notions of generosity, they will some-
times be guilty of the most flagrant out-
rages and disorders, and shamefully invade
their neighbours property, when ever it
happens, that the governor of Jakutskoi,
(under whose inspection and command
they are) connives at their proceedings, and
does not call them to account for their
incurfions. It is true, however, that when
his eye is upon them, and he keeps them
under due subjection, they are submissive
and peaceable enough, and peculiarly
cautious how they give offence. Nay, it
must be allowed, in their favour, that they
entertain a real affection for him, and
would be extremely sorry for the loss of
him. They pretend to be descendants
from

1695 from the Mongolians and the Calmucs, and to be transplanted to the northwards by the Russians.

The distemper to which they are most naturally subject, is the scurvy; but even that they cure themselves by eating of raw fish, and what they call Deughti, which is a kind of tar.

There is another sort of heathens who reside in that country, who are distinguished by the name of the Jukogates. These people have a custom peculiar to themselves, in respect to their relations when they die. In the first place, they strip off all their flesh, and when they have dried the bones, they decorate them with coral and glass-beads, of all sorts of colours. Thus adorned, the skeleton is carried in funeral procession all round about to their several huts, or cabins, and the very same honours are paid to it as they do to their idols.

The Lena.

The banks of the river Lena abound with the teeth, and other bones of the Mammut, which proceed from the mountains, and such grounds as are frozen, all along the banks of that river, which are frequently torn away by the ice. There are several fine rivers that empty their waters into this; namely, the Witim, the Olekina, and the Maja; and in the parts adjacent, there are black fables, and other furs in plenty, and more particularly such as are grey, a thousand of which they will sometimes purchase, in the winter season, of the Tartars, at so reasonable a rate as three or four rubles.

The soil of the lands which are watered by the river Maja last mentioned, is very rich, and yields a profusion of all kinds of grain; and so likewise do those lands which are situate near the spring, or fountain-head of the Lena; but more particularly those of Wergolen, Skello, and Kirenga, which are remarkably fertile; and from hence it is that the inhabitants of Jakutkoi, and the country there all round about, furnish themselves in plenty with all the necessaries for their subsistence: And they have rye in such abundance, that a hundred weight of it may be purchased for ten pence, or twelve

pence. Cattle likewise there are as cheap in proportion; but then, indeed, money is a very scarce commodity amongst them.

The sea-coast between the two rivers of Lena and Jenifia is unnavigable quite as far as the river called Taraida, because 'tis constantly full of ice; the country, however, between the Taraida and the Jenifia is inhabited by the (s) Samoëds, and Tartar Tungusians, concerning whose manner of living, and religion, sufficient has been said already.

As to the banks of the river Jenifia, whose source is to the southward of Tartary, in the country of the Calmucs and Kirgises, they are all inhabited for the most part by the Russians. There are three fine rivers, namely the Wergnaja Tunguska, the Podkamenna Tunguska, and the Nisnaja Tunguska, which flow down hither, and empty their waters into this river. The banks of those three last mentioned rivers are chiefly occupied by a kind of savage Tungusians, not much unlike the Samoëds; but then they are for the generality somewhat taller, and more robust. They are a turbulent and vexatious sort of people, and take delight in going to war with their neighbours.

When these Tartars set out, with their bow and arrow in their hands, which are the only arms they make use of, in order to hunt down the Elk, and when they have actually shot him, they pursue him by the track, sometimes for eight or ten days successively, accompanied by their wives and children; and as they never take any provisions along with them upon these expeditions, relying wholly on their game, they wear a kind of girth, or bodice, which they take in an inch, and sometimes two, according as they find themselves oppressed with hunger. At length, when they have overtaken and secured the Elk, which they had been so long in pursuit after, they cut his throat; and spreading a light tent upon the ground, they never stir a step farther till they have eaten him fairly up, all but the bones. Sometimes, indeed, when they make these excursions, they take a few furs with them, which they sell in those

1695

places where the Russians country there are great numbers of brown foxes and brown mink; but no fishes.

The two towns called Tunguska stand at but a small distance from the Jenifia, and are chiefly inhabited by land in a

Occasional

(1) Russia, or Moscow

(2) Wolga, or Volga

(3) Astracan, see p. 62.

(4) Calmucs, see p. 62.

(5) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia

(6) Ginn-Tamry, see p.

(7) Tobol, see p. 128.

(8) Obi, the river, see

(9) the river, see p.

(10) China, see p. 66.

The Town of Mr.

can. A Continuation

(1) Caspian Sea de

Author's Arrival

On the 20th of July at Astracan, in our tents, and went for some distance above the town, where we was prepared for our reception by several merchants. These being about an hour or of great variety of merchandise we had sufficiently replenished our stores. In our passage, we had a view of a Tartarian hut, or tent, a considerable way up in the night we ventured to

little likewise there are as cheap on; but then, indeed, money is scarce commodity amongst them. The coast between the two rivers and Jenisia is unnavigable quite as river called Tazda, because 'tis full of ice; the country, however, between the Tazda and the Jenisia is by the (s) Samoëk, and Tartarians, concerning whose manners, and religion, sufficient has already.

the banks of the river Jenisia, the source is to the southward of Tartaria the country of the Calmucs and they are all inhabited for the by the Russians. There are rivers, namely the Wergaja the Pookamenna Tungulka, Soudja Tungulka, which flow on, and empty their waters into the. The banks of those three named rivers are chiefly occupied d of Savage Tungulians, not te the Samoëk; but then they generally somewhat taller, and h. They are a turbulent and sort of people, and take delight war with their neighbours.

These Tartars set out, with their row in their hands, which are arms they make use of, in order down the Elk, and when they ally shot him, they pursue him & sometimes for eight or ten miles, accompanied by their children; and as they never divisions along with them upon tations, relying wholly on their wear a kind of girth, or bow h they take in an inch, and two, according as they find as oppressed with hunger. At when they have overtaken and the Elk, which they had been so after, they cut his throat; a light tent upon the they never sit a step farther till they have fairly up, all but the eaten him fairly up, when they sometimes, indeed, when they die excursions, they take a few them, which they sell in those places

1695 places where the Russians reside. In this country there are great numbers of white and brown foxes and squirrels to be met with; but no fables, or very few. The two towns called Tangviskoi and Mungaseja stand at but a very small distance from the Jenisia. There they deal largely by land in all sorts of furs,

1695 nar-whales, and the teeth of the Mammut. From these two towns they even send out divers vessels to the mouth of the river, and upon the icy-coast to fish for nar-whales, and seals, which, if they meet with any success, prove a profitable commodity, and an ample recompence for all their labour.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- (a) Russia, or Moscovy see p. 7. n. c.
- (b) Wolga, or Volga, see p. 28. n. f.
- (c) Astracan, see p. 62. n. i.
- (d) Calmucs, see p. 62. n. b.
- (e) Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, see p. 17. n. b.
- (f) Crim-Tartary, see p. 68. n. dd.
- (g) Tobol, see p. 148. n. a.
- (h) Oby, the river, see p. 18. n. e.
- (i) Irtis, the river, see p. 148. n. e.
- (k) China, see p. 66. n. t.
- (l) Mongulians, or Mogulians, see p. 158. n. i.
- (m) Jenisia, or Jenisa, see p. 18. n. f.
- (n) Baikal, or Bakal, the lake, see p. 167. n. a.
- (o) Argun, see p. 66. n. s.
- (p) Amur, or Amour, see p. 18. n. b.
- (q) Persians, see p. 64. n. o.
- (r) Lena, the river, see p. 18. n. g.
- (s) Samoëds, see p. 17. n. a.

C H A P. XXX.

The Travels of Mr. Le Brun continued. His Departure from (a) Astracan. A Continuation of the Course of the River (b) Volga. The (c) Caspian-sea describ'd. The Situation of (d) Derbent, and the Author's Arrival in (e) Persia.

ON the 12th of July, we embarked at Astracan, in order to pursue our travels, and went from thence to a certain place not above three wersts distant from the town, where an elegant dinner was prepared for our reception, by the Armenian merchants. There we amused ourselves for about an hour or two, at the sound of a great variety of instrumental music. After we had sufficiently refreshed ourselves, we took our farewel of all our friends and acquaintance. In our passage down the river, we had a view of a great number of Tartarian huts, or tents, which extended a considerable way up into the country. At night we ventured to lay on shore, as

1703 we were under the guard of two soldiers, who were sent, at my request, by the governor, for our greater security. There I slept for some time, without ever so much as once thinking of my net to secure me from the flies which are very troublesome in those parts; but to my cost, I found, that I stood in great need of it; for I was soon disturbed from my repose by their perplexing stings, and could rest no more all the night long. We continued our course at the first dawn of day; and found the shore not only level, but full of trees. About seven that morning, we came in sight of the convent called St. John's, which stood on our star-board

D d d

1703

A wear,
or decoy
for fish.

board side; and at some small distance from thence, we could perceive there was an island in the river, in which were abundance of birds of divers kinds. About eleven we passed by a wear, or place artfully contrived to detain the fish in, which bore the resemblance of a little island likewise, and directly over against that decoy, if we may use that expression, there was a body-guard, consisting of a considerable number of soldiers, who are planted there to observe what ships come up the river. This decoy, or wear, was farmed by some of the substantial inhabitants of (*f*) Niefna, or Nisna, who made it their business to salt the fish they caught, in order to carry it home, and were provided with a large vessel there, proper for that purpose. In some places thereabouts, the river runs but narrow, on account of the islands; for it divides itself into divers branches all around them. At about a league distance from thence we came to another wear, which we found encompassed with reeds; and after that to another body-guard, upon an island (on which there were four small hills) about three-score wersts distant from the town of Astracan. Here the river is purposely dammed, or stopped up, with an opening, in some measure, like one of our European sluices, in order to the passing and repassing of vessels. About two in the afternoon, we steered our course southward, notwithstanding we had sailed eastward all the time before. At about six in the evening, we had reached within four wersts of the Caspian-sea, which is about fourscore, or fourscore and ten wersts from Astracan, that is to say, about seventeen German leagues. Here I discharged both my vessel and my soldiers, to whom I delivered a letter which I had received from the governor. We lay, for the first time, all that night in the ship; but I took care to remember my net, with which I covered myself all over; for without it I must inevitably have had such another restless night as I had before, the flies being exceedingly troublesome in these parts, as I hinted above: Nay, their bites or stings are sometimes

Thus here
exceedingly
trouble-
some.

1703

so very venomous, that they prove mortal. At this time I had a hound with me, that was so tortured by them, that he threw himself headlong into the river, to assuage the pain; and it was with no small difficulty I got him out again: Upon which I took compassion on him, and covered him all over with my net; and after that he slept very contentedly.

On the 14th in the morning, we held on our course, but very slowly, by the assistance of our oars; for here the river was not only very narrow, but full of reeds. At about one werst from the Caspian-sea, where we made a stop, we met with our lighter. However, the pilot went on before us, to sound upon the banks, where he found the water not above five palms deep; but as the wind stood at the south, they were well satisfied it would not be long before the water would rise. At five o'clock he repaired to the same place again, and found, according to his expectations, that the water had risen two palms, or thereabouts; so that as our vessel did not draw that, by waiting with patience only about two or three hours longer, we should be able to get over the sands. During this interval, we amused ourselves with throwing our nets into the river, where we caught a considerable number of perch, and a few lobsters. After our fishing, I went myself on shore, in quest of some game, with my gun on my shoulder, and took a walk towards the sea: But that scheme was soon frustrated; for I was obliged to return in a very short time, the way proving very marshy, and choked up with reeds. I caught, however, in the mean time, several very beautiful butterflies, which were all like vermilion without, and parti-coloured within. About nine at night, the lightest part of the passengers baggage was carried on shore; and all the passengers themselves, indeed, went after, except three, who lay in the lighter. When we came to the mouth of the river, as the land, in divers places, ran into it on each side, we found it to be very

strait

1703

first and narrow; and there were several sandbanks, some into the sea, the others distinguished, not by being distinguished, but by large branches sufficiently conspicuous; however, at night, fear of casualties; but at the very dawn of day, we chose, in order to get a clear view, notwithstanding which, yet by unluckily struck, yet by unluckily into the lighter, we got out our material damage.

We unhappily, indeed,

upon them a second time an indispensable necessity our tender, or lighter, it not only the goods, but and other people a-flashed far fair for our out at sea, in a short time by land on every side, that raised their heads

board of us. On the sixteenth put morning, our lighter, our passengers and effects we had a large bank of reef, and notwithstanding large island between us on our inland side. Some time along the sea the last mentioned the mistime to strike focus got a boat again, there near a fashion and took all our goods out well as our people who the her; and sent her back with a letter, which I own head to the place.

About noon, we on one side of us, the which are distinguished by under the name of H get, that is to say, the so the land about point one hundred wersts from side. We soon left the that land; and as the

monous, that they prove most
time I had a bound with me,
to tortured by them, that he
himself heading into the river, to
re pain; and it was with no
difficulty I got him out again:
which I took compassion on him,
and him all over with my net;
that he slept very contentedly,
4th in the morning, we held
course, but very slowly, by the
of our ears; for here the river
only very narrow, but full of
At about one west from the
22, where we made a stop, we
our lighter. However, the
on before us, to found upon
where he found the water
five palms deep; but as the
d at the south, they were well
it would not be long before the
could rise. At five o'clock he re-
the same place again, and found,
to his expectations, that the
I risen two palms, or there-
that as our vessel did not draw
of water, we were in hopes
waiting with patience only
or three hours longer, we
able to get over the sands,
is interval, we amused ourselves
rowing our nets into the river,
we caught a considerable number
and a few lobsters. After our
went myself on shore, in quest
game, with my gun on my
and took a walk towards the
that scheme was soon fruit-
or I was obliged to return in a
time, the way proving very
and choked up with reeds. I
however, in the mean time,
very beautiful butterflies, which
like vermillion without, and pur-
red within. About nine at night,
rest part of the passengers baggage
ed on shore; and all the passen-
selves, indeed, went after, ex-
s, who lay in the lighter. When
e to the mouth of the river, as
in divers places, ran into it
side, we found it to be very
strait

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

strait and narrow; and moreover, that there were several sand-banks at the entrance into the sea; these, however, were distinguished, not by sea-marks, as usual, but by large branches of trees, which lay sufficiently conspicuous. We were obliged, however, at night to come too, for fear of casualties; but on the fifteenth, at the very dawn of day, we drew up our anchor, in order to get over the sands, on which notwithstanding we too hastily struck, yet by unlading part of our cargo into the lighter, we got a-float again, without any material damage.

We unhappily, indeed, after that, struck upon them a second time, and were under an indispensable necessity to make use of our tender, or lighter, in order to convey, not only the goods, but all the passengers, and other people a-shore: but as the wind sat fair for our progress, we were out at sea, in a short time, tho' encompassed by land on every side, and by mountains, that reared their heads high on the star-board of us.

On the sixteenth pretty early in the morning, our lighter came up with both our passengers and effects, notwithstanding we had a large bank of sand still to traverse, and notwithstanding there was a large island between us and the main sea on our larboard-side. After having coasted some-time along the said island, we reached the last mentioned sand-bank, and had the misfortune to strike once more; but soon got a-float again. The water being there near a fathom and a half deep, we took all our goods out of the tender, as well as our people who then were on board her; and sent her back directly to Astracan, with a letter, which I sent under my own hand to the governor of that place.

Red moun-
tains.

About noon, we could see very plainly on one side of us, those four mountains, which are distinguished by the (f) Russians, under the name of Krasna-fattier-boegre, that is to say, the four red Mountains, the most distant point whereof is about one-hundred wersts from Astracan as I said. We soon lost sight, however, of that land; and as the wind had shifted

195

1703

more southward, we steered our course directly south-west; and the weather at that time proved very serene; but the wind soon after chopping about to the eastward, we were obliged to cast anchor in a fathom and half water, or thereabouts.

On the seventeenth in the morning, we heaved our anchor, and proceeded on our voyage, and bore away to the southward, the wind at that time blowing brisk at north, and the weather being hazy; after that, however, as the sun had dispelled the clouds, and driven off the little rain that fell, a fresh gale sprang up, which continued all the night long, and occasioned a great swell in the sea. As our pilot was greatly fatigued, and wanted some rest and refreshment, he entrusted another hand with the helm, who, if I had not happened to prevent him, would have carried us directly back again to Astracan; for you must know, I always carried my own compass along with me, whether by sea or land. In the night, the wind shifting again, and falling all on a sudden, we were obliged to drop anchor again in eight fathom-water.

On the eighteenth, we weighed anchor in the morning, and got under sail again, notwithstanding it rained pretty fast, and a calm ensued; a breeze, however, soon after springing up towards the north-west, we steered our course towards the south. As a very brisk gale arose, not only the mariners, but the soldiers, who are obliged to help work the vessel whenever occasion absolutely requires it, were most grievously vexed. Amongst the number on board, there were about one and twenty of those last-mentioned occasional hands, and about fifty passengers, most of whom were natives of (g) Armenia. Our vessel carried two small brass cannons; and notwithstanding it might be loaded without any inconvenience with about two hundred and fifty bales; yet in order to have room sufficient and to spare, I reduced them to one hundred and four-score.

She had three rudders, one on each side, and

THE TRAVELS OF

1703

and one a-ſtern ; all which are made uſe of at proper times. Theſe veſſels have only a main-fail, which, when the wind blows fair, they take care to double, info- much that they are very improper to ply with to the windward ; neither is there any contrivance in them for the convenience of rowing ſhould an occaſion offer. Our Pilot, however, returned that day in the afternoon to the poſt he had before quitted through fatigue as above-hinted ; but bearing too cloſe upon the wind, the veſſel came all entire into it, as the fail happened to be trimmed ; ſo that the crew were obliged to hand their fail, as the veſſel never felt her helm ; after that another helm was made uſe of to bring her about ; and then the fail was all ſpread again ; by which injudicious method of proceedings, I plainly perceived, that the hands on board were as artleſs mariners as the Greeks. As the wind continued blowing from the north, we ſteered the ſame courſe as before ; and notwithstanding we were advanced a conſiderable way into the ſea ; yet I perceived, that the water was ſtill perfectly ſweet, and to be more brackiſh, and greener by far than before ; and beſides the waves became very ſhort.

Having fleered this courfe all night, which proved as light almoft as day, we perceived, on the nineteenth in the morning, one of the mountains of Perfia, called Samgael, to the weltward of us; and coafting it along towards the fouth, at leaft a whole league from the fhore, we doubled our fail about nine o'clock; having not only mountains confantly on one fide of us, but feveral woods, and a fandty beach. After having been becalmed for fome time, a brisk gale arofe at the north-eaft, and we fleered our courfe fouth-eaft, confantly coafting it along, in order to double the outermoft point of the fharp mountain, diftinguifhed by the letter (A) in the plate annexed.

This coat, even as far as Derbent, is a very dangerous one, on account of the Samgaelians, who reside in those mountains, and plunder on every side of them :

informuch that there is no such thing as landing in safety among them. They are Mahomedans by profession ; and secure all goods whatever belonging to any ships, without favour or affection, that are so unfortunate as to strike upon their coast, and think themselves under no obligation to account for them to any other person than their legal prince.

At three, the wind veered about at east, at the very time, that we were upon the brink of the hill, in sight of, and within the distance of a league only from Derbent. There we cast anchor, and there it was, that I drew the prospect of the place, which the reader will perceive is distinguished by the letter (B.) in the last-mentioned plate annexed

Before night came on we got under fail once more ; the wind, however, proving slack, we made no great way ; for by break of day we were advanced but to a small distance from the town, which is situated westward on the sea-shore, the circumference whereof (as it appeared at least to me) was but about a league and an half. On the sea-side, and at the foot of the hill, it is strongly fenced by a stone-wall. There are three gates to the town ; one whereof is very feldom, if ever opened.

The citadel stands contiguous, or adjoining to the town : on the right-hand of it there is a well, with a subterraneous spring, the waters whereof frequently rise to a considerable height. The town is well supplied with cannon and suitable ammunition ; and as it is situated on an eminence, it makes, when viewed at a distance upon the sea, no inconsiderable figure. The much greater part of the stones whereof the citadel is composed are about seven palms and an half long, and five and an half broad, and artfully enough wrought, but in an antique manner. The Persians peremptorily insist, that this place was in being in the days even of Alexander the Great.

At some small distance from the town, there are no less than forty or fifty monuments, each in length about fifteen palms; but in breadth no more than between two and

1703

The town
of Derbent.

The situa-
tion of Der-
bent.

aidance. There, how
by accident. There are
kennel, a spacious table
the round about it, all
terrace.

The pirates, who the name of the Ka about a day's journey Detent, and the Ruff frequently quit their own to accompany them in Cagrian-fee, where th immediately all they meet

This country border-
tan, which is a small
and Zuiria on the
mentioned, and, in
have forty leagues. It
duines of (a) Taryan,
indification of their ow
(g) Malcooy and Peth
towns are (p) Taku
this province is seldom
our maps; yet it is w
under the government
princes, herein-alle
tioned: the first and
distinguished by the ti
second is called Cim S
called Belu; and the
Bel, there is to say, the
dash.

The town of Tarku
sometimes it is called T

that there is no such thing as
safety among them. They are
ans by profession; and secure
whatever belonging to any ships,
their love or affection, that are so un-
willing to strike upon their coast, and
themselves under no obligation to
them to any other person than
winch.

the wind veered about at ebb,
time, that we were upon the
the hill, in sight of, and within
ence of a league only from Der-
where we cast anchor, and there it
reader will perceive is distin-
the letter (B.) in the list-men-
annexed.

light came on we got under sail
; the wind, however, proving
made no great way; for by
day we were advanced but to a

distance from the town, which is fi-
ward on the sea-shore, the cit-
whereof (as it appeared at least
as but about a league and an
the sea-side, and at the foot of
it is strongly fenced by a stone-
there are three gates to the town;
of is very seldom, if ever opened,
ed. Hands contiguous, or adjoin-
ne town: on the right-hand of it
is a well, with a subterraneous spring,
ers whereof frequently rise to 2
able height. The town is well
with cannon and suitable ammu-
id as it is situated on an emi-
makes, when viewed at a dis-
on the sea, no inconsiderable
The much greater part of the
ereof the citadel is composed are
even palms and an half bog, and
an half bread, and artfully contrived.
it, but in an antique manner. The
permanently indistinct, that this
is in being in the days even of Alex-
le Great.

the small distance from the town, and
the less than forty or fifty miles;
no less than about fifteen miles;
each in length than between two
readth no more than between two
and

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

and three: These, however, are not actual-
ly erected. There are several reservoirs
likewise, a spacious table and several ben-
ches round about it, all of the same ma-
terials.

The hill, whereon the town is erected,
is all one rock, and abounds (as well as the
town) with springs of fresh water. Such
passengers as were never here before, are
obliged (by a custom, time immemorial)
to compliment the sailors on their landing,
with some small present to drink; which,
if too obstinately refused, so tenacious are
they of their ancient privilege, that the
delinquent is pretty severely ducked for his
non-compliance. This town, or city, is
situate on the north-west of (b) Asia, and
the kingdom of Persia, on the frontiers of
(i) Georgia, and Zuiria, between the
Caspian-sea, and mount (k) Caucasus;
the passage whereof is extremely nar-
row.

The pirates, who are distinguished by
the name of the Koeralocks, resided at
about a day's journey from the city of
Derbent; and the Russian (l) Cossacks fre-
quently quit their own country, in order
to accompany them in a cruise upon the
Caspian-sea, where they plunder indiscrimi-
nately all they meet with.

This country borders upon (m) Dages-
tan, which is a small province of Georgia,
and Zuiria on the Caspian-sea before-
mentioned, and, in extent, not much a-
bove forty leagues. It is inhabited by the
natives of (n) Tartary, who are under the
jurisdiction of their own princes, between
(o) Moscow and Persia, whose principal
towns are (p) Tarku and Andres. Tho'
this province is seldom taken notice of in
our maps; yet it is well known, that it is
under the government of the four several
princes, herein-after particularly men-
tioned: the first and chief of these is dis-
tinguished by the title of Samgael; the
second is styled Crim Samgael; the third is
called Beki; and the last Careboedagh
Bek, that is to say, the prince of Careboe-
dagh.

The town of Tarku has several names;
sometimes it is called Tirak, or Tarki, and

Tarku, its
situation,
and various
names.

again Targhoe by the Persians. It lies o-
pen, and is situate against a mountain on
the Caspian-sea, to the eastward of Georgia,
under the dominion of the Czar, and at a-
bout three days journey from the town, or
city, called Nisawaey.

About noon, as the wind was then north-
east, we soon lost sight of Derbent, and
steered our course to the south-east.
Whilst we were on this coast, we could
plainly discern both hills and trees at a
great distance from the shore. As the
wind, however, about an hour afterwards,
chopped about to the south-east, we were
obliged to cast anchor, at about half a
league distance from the land, in a place
where there were plenty of trees on the
bank-side. On the twenty-first, we
weighed anchor in the morning, and pro-
ceeded on our voyage, all along the coast,
and the weather was very fine. About
eight o'clock, we could discern Nisawaey-
point; and at noon we cast anchor on that
coast, in about three fathom and a half
water; where we met with six several
vessels that set sail from Astracan some
considerable time before us.

About three in the afternoon, I landed
with all my equipage; and I had never set
foot on Persian ground before.

Le Brun
lands in
Persia.

The Caspian-sea is, in length, about one
hundred leagues from Astracan to Fercha-
bad, and in breadth, about ninety from
Chowarasm to the coasts of (q) Circassia,
or Shirwan. The passage from Astracan
to Ferchabad afore said may be performed
(without the aid or assistance of any wind
whatever) with oars only, within the com-
pafs of about a fortnight. The waters of
this sea neither rise nor fall; and if ever its
banks are overflowed, it is wholly owing
to the wind. Some will insist, that this
sea is bottomless about the middle of it,
and where it runs before Derbent; In the
other parts, however, they frequently, by
thirty or forty fathom of line, strike down
upon the bottom. Its waters are salt, as
we have elsewhere observed, and the fresh-
ness of those which roll along the coast
is entirely owing to the several rivers that
discharge themselves into it. As to all o-
ther

E e e

1703

ther respects, it has not the least communication with any of the other seas; since it is encompassed all round about, not only with lands, but high mountains likewise.

The rivers that fall in to it almost numberless.

It is almost impossible to conceive what a number of rivers empty their waters into this sea. Some peremptorily assert, that they amount to one hundred at least if not more; the principal whereof are the (q) Volga, the Cyrus, and the (c) Araxes, or Arras; the two last whereof unite their streams, before they flow to the Caspian, and then empty themselves into it both together, bringing the waters of divers other rivers along with them; and those particularly of the Buftroww, the Akkay, the Koi-su, the Kistofein, the Laik, the Sems, the Nios, the (s) Oxus, the Arxantes, or Tana-is, and divers others too tedious to mention.

It is various names.

Formerly some people distinguished this sea by the name of Hyrcania; and others by that of Bachu. The Persians sometimes call it the sea of Kollum, and sometimes again that of Astracan; it is cal-

1703

led, moreover, by the Russians, the sea of Gualenfkoï, or that of Gevalenske; by the Georgians, Sgwaz; and Soof by the natives of Armenia.

Ships sent from Moscow.

The Russians and the Mahomedans, are the principal persons that navigate this sea: notwithstanding his Czarian majesty has sent several vessels under the convoy of one captain Meyer to Astracan with no other view; yet the merchants for the generality prefer the ordinary Russian vessels, for the transportation of their respective effects from one place to another, because the latter are not near so liable to take water. The others, it is true, if that was not the objection, would be much more commodious for their purpose; and if due care was but taken, would perform the voyage as soon again.

There is another defect likewise that these labour under; and that is, they are not near so flat-bottomed as the common vessels, and therefore are incapable of reaching so near the coasts of Persia and Nisawaey, where the others are frequently obliged to lie all the winter-season.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Astracan, see p. 62. n. i.

(b) Volga, or Wolga, the river, see p. 28. n. f.

(c) Caspian-sea, see p. 66. n. q.

(d) Derbent, east long. 51. lat. 41. 15. a city of Daghestan, in Asia, situate on the western coast of the Caspian-sea, subject to Russia.

(e) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(f) Niesna, or Nisna, see p. 61. n. f.

(g) Armenia, consists of the modern Turcomania, and part of Persia, having Georgia on the north; Curdisthan, the ancient Assyria, on the south; and Natolia, or the lesser Asia, on the west.

(h) Asia, see p. 127. n. x.

(i) Georgia, see p. 107. n. d.

(k) Caucasus, a chain of mountains, which

run from the lesser Asia, through the north of Persia to East India, which obtain different names from the several countries they pass through.

(l) Cossacs, see p. 156. n. e.

(m) Daghestan, a country of Asia, bounded by Circassia on the north; by the Caspian-sea on the east; by Churvein, a province of Persia, on the south; and by Georgia on the west; of which the chief towns are Tarku and Derbent; but the generality of the natives live in tents, wandering from place to place; and tho' they are but a small state, the country being mountainous, and of difficult access, none of the neighbouring powers have been able to subdue them. When they find themselves hard pressed at any time by one power, they put themselves under the protection of another; as lately, when they were attacked on the side of Persia by Kouli Kan, they called in the Russians, and so well-defended themselves, with a little assistance given them under-hand, that Kouli Kan was obliged to retire, having lost

Great

part of his army in the towns of Tarku and Derbent, are usually in the possession of the Russians.

(n) Tarku, see p. 156. n. e.

(o) Moscow, or Russia.

(p) Tarku, see p. 156. n. e.

(q) Circassia, is situate degrees of east longitude, 50 degrees of north latitude on the north; by Astracan on the east; by Derbent on the west. The Circassians are a kind of Republic, but so far from being under the protection of Russia, or the Turkeys, are much commonly, rather

under the protection of the Russians.

A short Account of the ancient Scythians, or Scythians, as they are called in the Persian and Arabic histories.

THERE is not one nay, not to say, he seen on the coast of lies low; inasmuch, foreigners land thereon, either to pitch their tents, or to trade, as they do, rather up the country, as convenient, and accordingly they propose to reside in the natives of (e) Arabia, here both camels and horses meet with strangers, and Samalini; and as when happened to be several there was a great number of their assistance. On the twenty second morning we threw out small wooden canoes in the sea, at the distance of about from thence, by two eyes

by the Russians, the sea of
or that of Gualienke; by
Sgwa; and soof by the
ment.

and the Mahomedans,
principal persons that navigate this
thrhing his Czaria majesty
eral vessels under the convoy
in Meyer to Astracan with no
yet the merchants for the ge-
the ordinary Russian vessels,
incorporation of their respective
n one place to another, becau-
are not near so liable to take
e others, it is true, if that was
tion, would be much more
for their purpose; and if one
taken, would perform the
n again.

another defect likewise that
ur under; and that is, they are
to flat-bottomed as the common
therefore are incapable of reach-
the coasts of Persia and Nila-
e the others are frequently o-
all the winter-season.

Living Chapter.

After Asia, through the north of
A India, which obtain different
on the several countries they pass

see p. 156. n. 4.

Asian, a country of Asia, bounded
in the north; by the Caspian-sea on
Churwein, a province of Persia, on
and by Georgia on the west, of
of towns at Tarku and Derbent;
valley of the natives live in tents,
from place to place; and tho they
a small state, the country being
us, and of difficult access, none of
ouring powers have been able to sub-
When they find themselves hard
any time by one power, they put
under the protection of another;
in they were attacked on the side of
ull kan, they called in the Rus-
is well-defended themselves, with
nce given them under-hand, at
was obliged to retire, having lost
great

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

199

part of his army in their mountains. The towns of Tarku and Darbent, on the Caspian sea, are usually in the possession of the Russians.

(n) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.

(o) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(p) Tarku, see p. 66. n. p.

(q) Circassia, is situate between 40 and 50 degrees of east longitude, and between 45 and 50 degrees of north latitude, bounded by Russia on the north; by Astracan and the Caspian sea on the east; by Daghistan on the south; and by the river Don, and the Palus Meotis, on the west. The Circassian Tartars are a kind of Republic, but sometimes put themselves under the protection of Persia, and sometimes of Russia, or the Turks. They live in tents most commonly, rambling from place to

place with their flocks and herds. Their country is now most taken notice of for its beautiful children, from whence, and the neighbouring country of Georgia, the seraglios of Turkey and Persia, are usually supplied with boys and young virgins.

(r) Arraxes, or Arras, a river which rises in Georgia, and running south-east, joins the river Kur, or Cyrus, the united stream discharging itself into the Caspian-sea, between the province of Shirvan and Aderbeitzan in Persia.

(s) Oxus, a river, which rises in the mountains on the north of India, and running north-west through Usbec Tartary, afterwards separates Persia from Usbec Tartary, and falls into the Caspian-sea, in 44 degrees of north latitude. Some late maps carry it to a lake, situate east of the Caspian-sea.

CH A P. XXXI.

A Short Account of the Situation of the Country, called Nisawaey. A violent Storm arises: as also, a flocking and tremendous Dust. The Author's Arrival at Samasli.

Nisawaey.

THERE is not one single village, nay, not so much as a house to be seen on the coast of Nisawaey, which lies low; infomuch, that whenever any foreigners land thereon, they are forced either to pitch their tents hard by, as commodiously as they can, or else travel farther up the country, as they see most convenient, and according to the time they propose to reside in those parts. The natives of (a) Arabia frequently bring here both camels and horses, in order to meet with strangers, and conduct them to Samasli; and as when we arrived, there happened to be several vessels in the port, there was a great number of us that were glad of their assistance.

On the twenty second, early in the morning, we threw out our nets into a small river that empties its waters into the sea, at the distance of about half a league from thence, by two apertures; and not-

withstanding it sometimes abounds with fish of various kinds, at that time, it did not in the least answer our expectations; for what we caught proved very trifling. This river is distinguished by the name of Nisawaey, from whence the country derives its name. Its source, or fountain-head, arises in the mountains.

On the twenty third, five of the vessels there, as the wind blew at south east, set sail for (b) Astracan. Several merchants, who were natives of (c) Armenia, embarked with their respective effects on board of those vessels; and for my own part, I embraced the favourable opportunity of paying my respects, by way of letters, to several of my most intimate and valued acquaintance, both there, and in the city of (d) Moscow.

The persons who are generally employed in the conveying away of all such wares and commodities as are brought by ship-

boasted of; as also, a kind of herring, which is as worthless as the former.

On the twenty-ninth, we moved on-wards, and in about an hour's time, entered the mountains, which are very lofty indeed, but extremely naked, full of rocks, and scarce a tree to be seen. Even in the plains, there are an abundance of pebbles. When we had traversed the high and rocky mountains of Barma, about nine in the morning, we halted at a flat hill, which was furrounded by divers others much more lofty, and in a deep valley, we met with a brook of exceedingly fine water.

A large
bird.

The roads
here very
dangerous.

Fff midnight we began to move again; and

As the weather was perfectly calm and serene, those mountains and plains struck the eye very agreeably, and had a fine effect. The (!) Caspian-sea, in these parts afford but very little, if any fish at all. They have here, however, a kind of carp, the goodness of which is not greatly to be

1703

and in less than an hour's time we got amongst a parcel of hills which were all covered with trees. By break of day, we came to a narrow passage, which was so deep, that we thought it most advisable to dismount, and each man to lead his horse by the bridle.

As soon as we were got down upon the plain, we traversed, more than once, the river, called Atalafaei, that is the paternal, or principal river, which empties its waters into the Caspian-sea. On the top of one of the mountains we met with a large pond, which was full of water, and round about it, we found a great variety of birds; some small and others of a considerable size. After that, we came to a spring, the water whereof was as clear as crystal, and rises from a hill, and from thence forms a little canal. This was one branch of that river which we had crossed twice the day before; as there had been a remarkable drought, however, for two years last past, we now forced it the third time.

About eight o'clock, we saw a spacious stone caravanserai, or place of public reception, lie on the left of us all in ruins; with a burial-ground contiguous to it, where were several monuments, or tombs; some of Arabians, and others of Turks. When we had got at some small distance from these ruins, we halted by a brook-side, on a plain, about four leagues from a small village called Rastarat, where some of the Arabs had pitched their tents; but the place was so incapable of supplying us with even common necessities, that we were obliged to send to another place, no less than at a league distance, for proper refreshments.

At about two in the morning, we advanced forwards once more; now ascending high hills, and then again descending them, and traversed a river, called by the Turks Orota, that is to say, the dry river; and it might very properly, indeed, be so called; for at that time, it was perfectly dry, and full of pebbles. It is the same however, (as we were informed) during the winter-season, as well as in the summer. At about break of day, we heard

1703

several pheasants whirring upon the hills; which abound likewise with hares, as well as springs of water. We halted, on the last day of the month, in a large plain, full of stones, and encompassed with rocks, where we happily met with ten tents, or cabins of the Arabs, who furnished us with a large quantity of milk, fresh butter, eggs, and some water that was moderately sweet. Here we killed one of the best sheep, which we had brought with us from African, and regaled ourselves in a more plentiful manner than we had done before for some time.

At two in the morning, we set forwards again, in the midst of several very rocky mountains; and at dawn of day, we found ourselves at but a very small distance from the spring called Borbeelagh; and all around this water several Arabians had pitched their tents; but in a spot, that was perfectly burnt up by the intense heat of the sun, and the droughts consequent thereupon. This was upon the first day of August, and we got but three leagues forwards, though we travelled all the day long, it being impossible, in sultry weather, to drive camels above four or five leagues at most in the compass of four and twenty hours; besides, it is absolutely requisite, that the caravans should halt at such places, where there was any water to be procured. This spring of Borbeelagh is situated about three leagues from the town called Samachi; and as there is no wood to be met with on the mountains, the inhabitants are obliged to make use of cameldung, like the (*m*) Egyptians for their fuel.

About two in the morning, we proceeded on our journey, and crossed the river, called Sahanshai, where, instead of water as we expected, we found nothing but pebbles. However, as we advanced nearer to Samachi, we passed by several gardens, that produced great store of fruit.

No sooner were we in sight of the town, but we were stopped by the custom-house-officers, in order to their counting the number of our camels, which was soon done, and then we were permitted to enter the town. This was on the second day

The dry
river called
Orota.The river
called Sa-
hanshai.

of August, and that night
laying at the Caravan
the Americans, where we

Orota

(6) Arabia, a country
by on the north; and Persia
Persia on the east; the
fourth, and the Red Sea a
on the west; a country of
divided amongst many
hates, most of them living
ing from place to plac
water for their cattle; b
ing a barren desert, with
table in many places.

The emperor Moosom
country, and made the Hal
who, within forty years sit
great part of Asia, Africa
established their religion
Arabia is situated between
degrees of east long, and
thirty degrees of north
whence whereto are 1. A
the Persian, and 3. Arabia

(b) Arabian, see p. 60.

(c) Armenia, see p. 198.

(d) Moscow, see p. 23.

(e) Turkey is a very
comprehending some of
in Europe, Asia, and Af
In Europe, the Tur
man, Bulgaria, Servia
Wallachia, Moldavia, Bel
Czarkow, Tauris, Cim
with Albania, Epirus, Ma
and all the ancient Grece
islands in the Archipelago.
In Asia they possess Cy
Armenia, now Curdistan, A
manis, part of Georgia,
cissa, part of Arabia, Syria
or Asia Minor.

In Africa they possess E
They happily situated
country, and the most
convenient, the best of
the empire of the whole
advantages were not lost to
activity of the Turks, &

ilation. Nothing, however, is more than the constitution of the is Bajas, governors, officers, and when they die, or displease him; are plundered provinces, and armies of treasure, the Grand Signor is and only allows the family a maintenance out of it, but their ancestor never so well; the long or tedious in advanced, or confined in any government.

or Moscow, see p. 7. n. 6.

Many is situate between five and 6. of east long and between forty-five degrees of north lat. bounded an ocean, Denmark and the Baltic north; by Poland and Hungary Bohemia on the east; by Switzerland, which separate it from Italy, and by the dominions of France wetlands on the west; from which it by the three following rivers; viz. Moselle and Maas.

divided into ten circles, three whereof are in the fourth; viz. (1) the circle of Upper Saxony, viz. (1) the circle of Upper Saxony, and (2) the circle of Lower Saxony, and (3) the circle of Westphalia.

at the middle; viz. (1) the circle of Saxony, viz. (1) the circle of Upper Saxony, and (2) the circle of Lower Saxony, and (3) the circle of Westphalia.

the circle of the lower Rhine, viz. (1) the circle of Saxony, viz. (1) the circle of Upper Saxony, and (2) the circle of Lower Saxony, and (3) the circle of Westphalia.

the circle of Burgundy, or Belgium, viz. (1) the circle of Burgundy, viz. (1) the circle of Upper Saxony, and (2) the circle of Lower Saxony, and (3) the circle of Westphalia.

are in Germany upwards of 300 circles and states; most of them their respective territories. 1. The circles of the empire. 2. The ecclesiastical circles, consisting of archbishops, bishops, abbots, &c. 3. Secular princes consisting of counts, landgraves, &c. 4. Free cities, which are either imperial or burgher. 5. Free cities or burgher states, and land their deputies, or representatives to the general diet, or parliament. The burgher states are also divided into two classes, viz. the burgher states, not different from the other states at present, but were about two centuries ago, allied, or confederated in defence, and the protection of their rights, and at first consisted only of a few.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

great sea-port towns on the German ocean, or the Baltic-sea, and near the mouths of their great rivers, but afterwards they took in many inland cities into their alliance, monopolized most of the trade of Europe, and were a most formidable maritime power.

Germany is generally a level country towards the north and east, consisting of a barren sand, or marsh; on the south, it is encumbered with the mountains of the Alps; but in the middle of the country there is a variety of hills, vallies, fruitful fields, and meadows; especially along the banks of their great rivers, the Danube, Rhine, &c. Abundance of fine cities, castles, and palaces, adorn it; and it is much more populous than France.

Charlemain, the son of Pepin, king of France, laid the foundation of the German empire, in the year 800, being then sovereign of Italy, and great part of Spain and the south of Germany as well as France; the empire being afterwards divided amongst the posterity of Charlemain, the sovereign of Germany and Italy, only retained the title of emperor, the princes of the empire being then his vassals.

The imperial crown was hereditary for three hundred years after Charlemain, when the pope, to lessen the imperial authority and advance his own, incited the German princes to alter the constitution, and render the imperial crown elective. And during the struggles between the emperor and the pope for superiority, several sovereign states and principalities were erected in Italy and Germany, which claimed an independency on either.

The emperors, after the hereditary line was broke, were at first elected by the body of the people, which occasioning some confusion, the nobility and great officers of state excluded the common-people from their share in the election, and chose the emperor themselves, and the number of electors was at length reduced to seven, viz. the archbishop of Mentz, Triers, and Cologne, the king of Bohemia, the duke of Saxony, the Palgrave, or prince palatine of the Rhine, and the Marquis of Brandenburg; to whom the dukes of Bavaria and Hanover have been since added.

But notwithstanding the imperial dignity was elective, the Austrian family found means to continue it in that house for 300 years, till, for want of male issue of the house of Austria, the elector of Bavaria was chosen emperor, in the year 1742; who, contending for the hereditary dominions of the house of Austria, brought himself into great difficulties, ruined his native

205

1703

country of Bavaria, and after a short and troublesome reign, died in his own capital on the ninth day of January in the year 1745.

The emperor is now chosen by the nine electors on a demise, unless the king of the Romans hath been chosen in the preceding reign, and then he succeeds of course.

The emperor is the fountain of honour in Germany, and disposes of almost all places and honours, civil and military, except those that are hereditary; as the great chancellor, the treasurer, &c. which are rather honorary, than lucrative posts.

By the golden bull, the person elected emperor ought to be a Christian prince of German extraction, and 28 years of age, and is obliged to sign a capitulation, which the electors present him, before he is installed; by which he promises that he will maintain the rights and privileges of the electors, princes, and states of the empire; that he will not alienate the lands or revenues of the crown; and that he will not introduce foreign forces, or employ foreigners in his service.

The emperor's ordinary revenue arises from the crown-lands, fines, forfeitures, and confiscations, and he is heir-general to all the princes and nobility of the empire, that have no heirs male.

There is also a tax called Roman months, to which all the princes and states contribute a certain proportion for the support of the government; and all extraordinary taxes are raised, and forces for the defence of the empire maintained, by the several electors, princes, and states, at their own expence; or by taxes raised by the diet, or general assembly of the electors, princes, and states of the empire.

They are well able to raise and pay 500,000 men, and were they unanimous, would be an over-match for France by land; but this scarce ever happens. The French, when they enter into war with Germany, ever corrupt some of the princes of the empire, and bring them over to their party; or incite the Turk, or Swede, to make a diversion in their favour.

The diet, or parliament of the empire, consists of the emperor, the nine electors, the ecclesiastical and secular princes of the empire, and the deputies of the towns, who constitute the legislature, to whose laws all the princes and states are subject; but yet every elector, prince, and state, are sovereigns in their respective territories, where the diet, or the supreme courts of judicature do not interpose; for there are two such councils; one called, the Aulic council, the other, the Chamber of Triers; each consisting of fifty members of the first quality; some, appointed by the emperor; others,

G g

1703

thers, by the electors; and the rest, by the several circles.

The emperor's revenues, as emperor, are not very great; but, then he is at no charge in the administration of the government, or maintaining forces. These are provided for by the empire. And the Austrian emperors had very considerable revenues, from their hereditary countries; which, with the disposal of all places of profit, gave them such an influence, that they were able to keep the possession of the imperial throne for three hundred years, and might have kept it much longer, if there had not been a defect of male issue.

The Germans are much divided in their opinions of religion; the principal sects are those of the Papists, the Lutherans, and Calvinists; there are also, Independents, Anabaptists, Quakers, and Christians of every other Denomination; and a multitude of Jews, in all their great Towns.

The emperor is always a Roman Catholic; Saxony, and Brandenburg, are most of them Lutherans, but some Calvinists; Bavaria and Austria are Catholics; the Palatinate, and the upper and lower Rhine, are a mixture of all denominations; the imperial cities are most of them Lutherans, and some Calvinists; the two last hate and persecute one another, more than they do the Papists. At the treaty of Munster, or Westphalia, in the year 1648, the protestants were not only tolerated, but put on the same footing with the papists, in their respective territories. But from the reformation, till that time, they were almost always at war, and some hundred thousands of Christians butchered in the quarrel.

When the Protestant religion was established by that treaty, several archbishopsricks and abbeys were secularized, converted into duchies, or lay-fee's, and applied to the support of the government, with the revenues of all church lands.

The protestant clergy of Germany, have neither glebe, or tythes, but depend on the bounty of their respective governments for their support. Instead of bishops, the Lu-

therans have superintendants; and the Calvinist churches are governed by their presbyters, or parish-priests, and elders, who are all equal, and claim no superiority over any of their brethren.

Germany produces corn, wine, oil, sheep; black cattle, and an excellent breed of horses, fit for the coach, or army, and with these the French usually remount their cavalry. The country also produces great quantities of flax and hemp, and they have abundance of good timber; nor should their bacon, beef, and mumm, be forgot; they have also mines of iron, copper, and silver, lead, salt, coal, vitriol, quick-silver, nitre, ocre, and sulphur; and some of the best medicinal springs and baths in Europe; as at Pyrmont, Baden, Aix-la-Chapelle, &c. They have also plenty of deer, fish, and fowl; and their orchards are full of the best fruits.

The people are excellent mechanics, and chymists; the invention of pinning, and gunpowder, is generally ascribed to them; clocks, watches, locks, swords, and fire-arms, they have also brought to great perfection; and they have, in a manner, monopolized the manufacture of tin-plates, or white iron. They are reckoned good artists at painting and engraving, and are excellent engineers.

They carry on their foreign trade, by the rivers Rhine, Elbe, Oder, Weser, and the Baltic-sea; particularly, from the ports of Hamburg, Lubbeck, Bremen, Steutin, &c. and by land, with Italy, Switzerland, France, and Holland; they export a good deal of linen, particularly to England; and what we call Dutch toys, come from hence; provisions, and consequently labour, is very cheap, or it could never turn to account, to employ their hands in such trifles.

(b) Sweden, see p. 68. n. *kk*.

(i) Tartary, see p. 18. n. *i*.

(k) Persia, see p. 64. n. *e*.

(l) Caspian Sea, see p. 66. n. *q*.

(m) Egypt, see p. 33. n. *q*.

Public Rejoicings
Reception of a
Delegation of
Rum of a Span
Kara-Kulshahana

ON our arrival a
informed, that
nor of that city, had
royal welcome, as a man
of his noblest military
tem: upon which joyous
ordered great public rejo
and continued for four
by.

When we first arriv
weather was so excessi
had begun to fall the
years then last past, th
death, or a great scarc
means of provisions.
that time sold for ten
near a hundred years b
been valued at above th
pence. All the other
were as dear in propor
which usually before
for three half-pence, a
purchased under the per
the lowest.

All goods, or commodi
ture or kind soever, that
this city were highly op
ned; and several custom
made it their constant pa
caravanserai, where the
dious apartment for the
demand, it is true, no
tion; but the passage
for every camel's load;
a man only was demand
er, relates only to the
as we imported to (a) Pe
carriage is for the most
the bulks are obliged to b

superintendants; and the Caliphs are governed by their prebys, priests, and elders, who are all claim no superiority over any of them.

produces corn, wine, oil, sheep; and an excellent breed of horses, coach, or army, and with these usually remount their cavalry. The produces great quantities of flux and they have abundance of good iron should their bacon, beer, and tongs; they have also mines of silver, and silver, lead, salt, coal, black silver, nitre, ore, and sulphur; of the best medicinal springs and Europe; as at Pyramont, Baden, Alsace, &c. They have also plenty of and iron; and their orchards are best fruits.

able are excellent mechanics, and the invention of printing, and gunpowder is generally ascribed to them; they are also brought to great perfection; here, in a manner, monopolized the use of tin-plates, or white iron. They are good artists at painting and engraving, and are excellent engineers.

every on their foreign trade, by the Rhine, Elbe, Oder, Weiser, and the Danube; particularly, from the ports of Hamburg, Lübeck, Bremen, Stettin, &c. and with Italy, Switzerland, France, &c. they export a good deal of linen, particularly to England; and what we much buy, come from hence; provided consequently labour, is very cheap, and never turn to account, to employ as in such trades.

water, see p. 68. n. 11.

array, see p. 18. n. 1.

sea, see p. 64. n. 1.

the Black Sea, see p. 66. n. 4.

Egypt, see p. 33. n. 1.

1703

1703

C H A P. XXXI.

Public Rejoicings on Account of the Khan, or Governor of Samachi's Reception of a rich Royal Vestment from the King, his Master. A Description of the City of Samachi, and a particular Account of the Ruins of a Spacious Fortrefs, formerly erected on the Mountain of Kata-Kulustahan.

ON our arrival at Samachi, we were informed, that the Khan, or governor of that city, had just received a rich royal vestment, as a mark, or testimony, of his indulgent master's favour and esteem; upon which joyful occasion, he had ordered great public rejoicings to be made, and continued for four days successively.

A rich royal vestment, as a present, to the Khan of Samachi, and the rejoicings thereupon.

Provisions excessively dear.

When we first arrived at this place, the weather was so excessively hot, as no rain had happened to fall for the two or three years then last past, there was a kind of dearth, or a great scarcity at least of all manner of provisions. A single loaf, at that time sold for ten-pence, which, for near a hundred years before, had never been valued at above the price of two-pence. All the other necessaries of life were as dear in proportion, and a fowl, which usually before was sold in market for three half-pence, could not then be purchased under six-pence, or five-pence at the lowest.

All goods, or commodities, of what nature or kind soever, that passed through this city were strictly opened and examined; and several custom-house-officers made it their constant practice to visit the caravanferai, where they have a commodious apartment for that purpose. They demand, it is true, no fee for their visitation; but the passenger pays fifty-pence for every camel's load; whereas formerly a florin only was demanded. This however, relates only to such merchandizes as are imported to (a) Persia; and as the carriage is for the most part by horses, the bales are obliged to be diminished one

half at least; a horse-load amounts to no more than four hundred weight at most; whereas that of a camel would sometimes be between eight and nine hundred.

On the fifth instant, the Khan, or governor, repaired, by eight in the morning, to a garden, at near a quarter of a league's distance from the city, in order to dress himself, and make his public appearance in the rich royal robes he had received as a mark of distinction from his master as above-mentioned. As there had been great preparations made for the carrying this public rejoicing into execution, I went with several others of my friends and acquaintance to have a sight of that solemn procession. In the first place, a great number of persons on horse-back moved forwards, with ten camels after them, each decorated with two little scarlet standards, one to the right, and the other to the left-side. On six of these last beasts were kettle-drums, that is, in the Persian language, Tambalpaes, four of which were of a larger size than common, and pointed at the bottom, which a drummer, who rode on one of the other camels, struck from time to time, as he saw most convenient. At proper intervals, four trumpeters stopt on the road-side to sound their Karamas, or what we call their trumpets, which are exceedingly long, and wide at the bottom; the music whereof, as they call it, was, at least in my ears, very disagreeable, and perfect discord. At some distance from these, marched four hautboys, or as they call them, Karana-nafiers. The camels were likewise succeeded

A grand cavalcade of the Khans on the occasion before-mentioned.

1703

ed by twenty musqueteers, all in different dresses; some in green, some purple, and others grey; and after these appeared, six of the Khan's, or Governor's domestic servants; and after them, their master himself, mounted on a fine chestrhorse, caparison'd in a very rich and elegant manner. This nobleman, who was dressed in a short kind of mantle, and with a large turban on his head, after the Persian fashion, was followed by four eunuchs; some tawny, and others, indeed, perfectly black; all richly dress'd, and well mounted. After these came several of the most considerable magnificates of the city, with divers others, on horse-back; after them appeared nine led sumpter-horses belonging to the Khan, all richly caparisoned; with each a small drum affixed to the right-side of the saddle. Most of those gentlemen, who were persons of distinction, had little drums likewise, which they struck occasionally with their fingers. The greatest part of them, like that of the Khan's, were made of silver. There were, moreover, besides all these, a great number of soldiers ranged in order all along the garden on the right-hand towards the mountains, each of whom had a feather in his cap; and, in short, two horses, on which were two men, who were covered all over from head to foot, with a kind of gown, which was quilted, and wrought in a great variety of colours, representing monkeys. And as they had been well broke, and made familiar with the antic tricks and vagaries of that particular creature, they attracted the eyes of all the numerous spectators upon them, and kept at the distance of twenty paces at least one from another, each with attendants, musicians near them. As soon as they had reached the garden before-mentioned, the Khan, and the other illustrious personages who accompanied him, dismounted at the fore-gate; which was very spacious and built with stone. There he invested himself with the royal robe, and in about half an hour afterwards remounted, and returned to the town in the same order as he went out of it. This vestment was of a

considerable length, and of gold brocade; and his head was then adorned with a golden cap, in the form of a crown. This cavalcade was attended by a great number of menial servants likewise on horse-back, who rode and pranced about on each side of the procession; some with a smoking-bottle, or kajan, as they call it, in their right hand, for the use of their master; which bottles are composed of glass, embellished with either gold or silver at top, and are exceedingly neat and pretty; others of them carried a small pot of fire, at the pommel of their saddles, for their master to light their pipes with; upon this solemn occasion, however, there was no tobacco smoked.

Several of these personages of distinction amused themselves on the road, with dating the ayner, as they call it, which is a kind of cane. Thousands had ran out of the city in order to be spectators of this grand cavalcade; some on horse-back, but more on foot; a fight, which struck the eye, indeed, agreeably enough, on account of the variety of objects: others again flocked to see the show, from the adjacent villages, with which the country here abounds, from the tents of the (*b*) Arabians, and from the gardens that lie on all sides. The Khan, before he invested himself with the royal robes, covered his head with the gold cap, or crown, just before-mentioned, which was decorated with a great number of jewels, or precious stones, closed at top, and carried at a small distance before him on horse-back. This cap, as they would insinuate, represents the arms of the prophet Ali, who, when living, wore much such another. When the Khan had put on his robes, he uncovered his head again, which was carried before him as he went back, as well as it was at the time of his coming. This procession took up at least two hours.

In the evening some rain fell, which continued falling, without intermission, till noon the next day. This accident made the road so exceedingly bad, that it was with some difficulty the horses got forward; it was fine-weather, however, from the

1703

In such time, there was generally felt throughout the island no greater damage, if not a terrified feeling of it, that they had degree, that they had for fear of their families to the open fields.

On the eleventh instant,
or project of the city from
was situated to the south
whence it makes the n
figure, as the reader m
plate (No. 38), annexed

The city is considerably
is broad, and as it has no

1703 }

generally their thoroughness, it did no greater damage, or it inflicted several of the degrees, that they had feared of their houses for fear of their families in the open fields.

On the elevated infant, or project of the city from was incase to the fourth evidence it makes the figure, as the reader might (No. 8.) annexed plate (No. 8.) annexed by distinguished the Khan capital letter (A) the Car Cretina, which stands o the town, by the letter reference, and all open, it uniformly been those earthquake about five an for we came to view it are no superfluous to be distance from the town. my distinguish by the name into which they enter by have no decorations with erected in a circular form. The houses in this city are built, part with stone, and at the top, and make a given height, and to remain a tall man may reach the them by climbing the arm Most of them, notwithstanding their, notwithstanding contemptible on file, a

1703

the seventh to the tenth day of the month. In which time, there was an earthquake generally felt throughout the city; and tho' it did no greater damage, as it happened, yet it terrified several of the inhabitants to that degree, that they fled from their houses for fear of their falling, and lay out in the open fields.

The situation of the city.

On the eleventh instant, I drew a view, or prospect of the city from a hill, which was situate to the southward, and from whence it makes the most advantageous figure, as the reader may perceive in the plate (No. 38.) annexed.

Plate 38.

The city is considerably longer than it is broad; and as it has no moschs, towers, or pompous edifices to boast of, I have only distinguished the Khan's palace by the capital letter (A) the Caravanfara of (C) Circassia, which stands on the east side of the town, by the letter (B) and a hill, whereon are the ruins of an ancient fortress by the letter (C.) This hill lies to the north-west of the city, and we shall have occasion to speak more amply of it in another place; as also of another, which lies on one side of it, and is considerably higher. The city stands on the declivity of a hill; is a league, or thereabouts in circumference; and all open, the walls having unfortunately been thrown down by an earthquake about five and thirty years before we came to view it. Though there are no superb edifices to be met with in the city, yet there are several moschs; but then, as they are very small as well as low, they can make no conspicuous figure; nay, they are not seen at all at any considerable distance from the town. These moschs, they distinguish by the name of Mu-zejits. Two of them in particular have small domes into which they enter by a court. They have no decorations within, but a place erected in a circular form, and full of seats. The houses in this city are very irregularly built, part with stone, and part with earth; are flat at top, and make a poor, mean figure without; and so remarkably low, that a tall man may reach the roof of one of them by extending his arm to its full stretch. Most of them, notwithstanding this their contemptible out-side, are neat enough

within; and are adorned with carpets, and other things of the like nature. The walls are well plaistered, and exceedingly white, with some streaks of various colours. Some of them, indeed, are two stories high, and raised at top.

Tho' that of the Khan, or Governor, stands on a rising-ground; yet it makes no great figure on the out-side. In this city are likewise to be seen the ruins of a considerable spacious mosch, to which there were two or three domes belonging, and which seem to have formerly made a handsome appearance. This building is a stone one, and well compacted together, the most antient, and the most worthy of notice in the whole city, where are likewise divers other ruins to be met with here and there. At the foot of the hill, where the Khan keeps his court, there is a spacious market-place, where they sell all sorts of provisions; but fruits, in greater plenty than any other commodity whatsoever. Though this is the district, or quarter peculiarly appropriated to those who are professed braziers; yet still there are divers other shops, and more particularly cook-shops where all sorts of provisions are to be purchased ready drest. At one end of this market-place are the bazars, which are full of shops likewise; some for goldsmiths, some for sadlers; others for shoemakers, and the like. Some of these shops are covered with stone, and others with wood; and compose divers streets. There you have coffee-houses, and there are the caravanferas, but these have no prospect of the streets, and you enter into them through a great door. There are twenty or more of them, whereof those that belong to the natives of (4) India are the finest of all, and built with stone; and are, moreover, three or four and twenty feet in height. That which we resided in was quadrangular, and had forty rooms on the lower floor. These are the places where they sell the most valuable kinds of merchandise; for there are no great shops in the bazars for the sale of any commodity whatsoever. This city is known and distinguished by several names; some call it Samachi, some Sumathia, and the Persians themselves call it Schamachi. It stands in

H h

about

1703

The Khan's house.

The market place.

The bazars.

THE TRAVELS OF

1703

about forty degrees and fifty minutes of northern latitude, and is the capital of the province of Shirwan, or Servan, which is part of the ancient (*e*) Media, to the north-north-west of Persia; to the westward of the province of (*f*) Gilan, and to the northward of that of Irak, and extends full as far as to the frontiers of (*g*) Hyrcania. This city, which is about four and twenty leagues from the (*h*) Caspian sea, was first built by a certain king whose name was Shirwan Shah. The passage over the mountains has so many turnings and windings, that we spent no less than four and twenty hours in getting over them, and were six days in the performance of our whole journey with camels, notwithstanding it may be done in three with horses. From hence to (*i*) Derbent, if you go over the mountains called Lahati, is much about forty leagues.

The extent
of the
Khan's ju-
ridiction.

The Khan acts as a sovereign in this city, and has only a kind of burgo-master under him, who is called there a Kalentaer, and is invested with no power or authority; for his whole business consists in preparing a list of such subsidies as the country are indispensibly obliged to supply the Khan with, who keeps in his palace, a kind of court of equity, and proper counsellors to attend it; as also an arsenal, which is provided with proper ammunition and divers pieces of cannon, two whereof are planted at the entrance to it, and are several times discharged on all solemn festivals, and other days of public rejoicings. He has, moreover, a body of horse consisting of no less than five hundred men, three hundred of whom serve him likewise in the capacity of foot-guards, and constantly attend him, whenever he makes his public appearance, or takes the royal diversion of hunting.

A descrip-
tion of his per-
son, &c.

The Khan, who was in the sixth year of his reign (if we may be allowed to call it so) as to his person, is well set, a man of a graceful presence, though somewhat too slender, and his muskaches rather too long. He is distinguished there by the name of Allerwedikhan, and bears the additional title of Beglerbeg, or the Khan of Khans. He is a native (*k*) of Georgia, and a

1703

christian by profession; some years before he was invested with this high post, he acted in the capacity of a gentleman of the bed-chamber to the king of Persia, to whom his father made a present of him in his infancy, as is a customary practice amongst the Georgians. He is a descendant, as we were informed, of the ancient family of the Borgodians, who flourished some years before the nativity of our blessed Saviour, and were at that time Jews by profession.

The government of Samachi is one of the most considerable throughout the whole kingdom of Persia, and its Khans, or governors, amass immense riches with more expedition, as well as more ease, than those who are possessed of any other public posts; and the principal reason is, because they levy such large subsidies on the country all round about them, and more particularly on Gilan, which abounds with silk, cotton, and saffron.

The soil of
Samachi.

As to the soil of Samachi and the parts adjacent, it is exceedingly fertile, and produces excellent wine, both white and red; the former whereof is so prodigiously strong and heady, that there is no such thing as drinking it, till 'tis qualified with a small quantity of water. It abounds likewise with a great variety of fruits, such as apples and pears; and towards Georgia, they are plentifully supplied with a particular species of a chestnut, the flavour whereof is exceedingly delicious. In short, there is nothing wanting there but a greater number of inhabitants, to cultivate the lands.

Here are as fine horses as any country can boast of, and as fine cattle. All provisions likewise are to be procured here in plenty. Their meat in general is very fine, and they have abundance, not only of common poultry, but of all sorts of game, as well of the fur as of the feather; and all exceedingly cheap, especially during the winter season. And as to their bread, 'tis as good as any I ever tasted.

A fine port.

The town of Baku, (the port whereof is an exceeding fine one) has within these few years been strongly fortified by the Persians, who took the advantage of the

misconduct of one captain mention has been made of this travels more in commander injudiciously demand a free entrance to all such ships and vessels to his Persian majesty, Persians to that degree, with such a jealous notion tensions, that they came resolution to fortify the port for his reception, it paid for his reception, it with.

As the natives of (*l*) Persia, had (for time immemorial) indulged with a free ad port, the captain was as friends to avoid taking so step; but their wife admin had not the least influence It had been an easy to this, had it not been for dence in that obdurate commander, to have seen the whole country, even and the Araxes, and several fortifications, with only of men, &c. in the hope shall more fully and at the the inhabitants at that in their incapable of making tion; and had such power taken, they would have vigorous to the Persian

This city of Baku is western part of Persia, in led stream, upon the it's ancient walls are still is no better mule-trail to throughout the whole w the inhabitants have here adherent. There is two of one brown, and the former is exported to G leagues beyond it into here is carried almost to have been very credibly it had, and only of two from the place, the land and very being, which the vast quantity of salt. it is impregnated, that

small passages, one from the other. The last it was so very dark, that I ventured to proceed any farther, as I had but one companion along and as the way to the left, I was full of rubbish. However, I went, and I believe not without some success, that most of these apartments, ran through the mountain west and north-west, where it was to the greatest extent. I observed, moreover, at the walls of the vaults of those passages, which are flat, were of breadth as the passages, and that and, they rested upon the walls; if the stones there were cemented well enough together, this accurate and complete a manner, the ancient structures, especially some (p) who were remarkably strong, and this is a remarkable even in their public ways, and this is remarkably so than ordinary, in this day remaining of that at (q) distinguished by the name of the pyramids. (r) Egypt likewise affords an instance of the delicacy of the work in this particular, in the only one in the world, which is a wonder of the world, which is a monument; I mean, the inner passage, which people go up to the famous of that country; whereof I was who gave a particular description in my former travels. These stones, are of a prodigious bulk, are so arranged, or knit together, that the joints are not at all discernable, unless by a close eye; besides they are as fine as the most transparent looking-glass, of which I am speaking, are abundantly more perfect and artless.

In I came away from these subterranean caverns, I took the exact diameter of the breadth of the hill, at the top; and it was narrow. I found it narrower, but exactly faustone to the same. There is a great well towards the foot of the mountain; but, notwithstanding my innate fondness for water, I durst not approach near enough to it, for fear of falling down the side on't, for fear of to it; for, to all outward appearance, it might have proved of fatal

fatal consequence. There was no other aperture, or opening, as I could find, besides this. The towers, with which the walls of the building upon the hill are flanked, even in those places where they stand nearest, are between three score and ten and four score paces distant one from the other. This wall extends itself considerably lower, down about the mountain towards the east; where 'tis half a league at least in length, to the best of my knowledge and belief. We got down with much more ease than we climbed up; because, as we came back, we found out the right way. As we were going down, we saw the ruins of divers very spacious apartments between the wall below and the fortrefs above that was perfectly demolished, the stones whereof appeared only a small matter above the surface of the ground; there is no forming, however, any adequate idea of the bulk of the structure, but by the arcades above-mentioned. When, as we were returning, we arrived at the first wall, I drew the view (No. 40.) in the plate hereto annex-

Plate 40.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- (a) Persia, see p. 64. n. a.
- (b) Arabians, or Arabs, see p. 203. n. a.
- (c) Circassia, see p. 199. n. q.

(d) India (proper) the country first so denominated is situate between 66 and 92 degrees of east long. and between 7 and 40 degrees of north. lat. being bounded by Ufbeck Tartary, and Thibet on the north; by another part of Thibet, the kingdoms of Afem, Ava, and Pegu, on the east; the bay of Bengal, and the Indian ocean on the south, and by the same ocean, and Persia on the west; being about 200 miles in length, from north to south, and 1500 miles in breadth from east to west, where broadest, though the southern part of the peninsula is not 300 miles broad; all the countries within these limits being now subject or tributary to the Great Mogul. It is frequently called Indostan, a name supposed to be derived from the river Indus, on its western frontiers. It is also called Mogulistan, from the imperial family now upon the throne, who derive their pedigree from Tamerlane, a Mogul, or Mogul Tartar. It

ed, not far distant from a tower, that is tolerably whole, though near abundance of other ruins. Some historians have made the following remark, viz. that these ruins were a mixture of wood and stone; but I found no such thing there; and I am fully convinced, that the stones in those ruins are joined together with nothing more than cement. Tho' this fortress, according to tradition, was thus ruined and demolished by Tamerlane the Great; yet, by the best information that I could procure, I cannot find any just grounds for giving credit to the truth of so precarious a story. As we were on our return from the mountain to the town, we saw a Turk dancing upon a rope in an open field, who had a vast number of spectators round about him. Those who stood nearest to him gave what they thought proper to one of his companions, who was his collector in ordinary, whilst he amused the crowd to the best of his abilities; but he appeared to us to be no great equilibrist, or an adept in his profession.

was the emperor Aurengzebe, who made a conquest of Golconda, Visiapour, and all the southern kingdoms of India, about the year 1685.

The Europeans had very little intercourse with India, till the year 1498, when the Portuguese discovered the way thither by sea, round the Cape of Good Hope, and they enjoyed that traffic without a rival till the year 1600, when the English and Dutch put in for a share of it; and these three nations have had their forts and factories on the continent of India ever since; but the Dutch have driven both the others from the spice-islands, and monopolized that trade these hundred years past.

The produce of the continent of India, and what the Europeans import from thence, is chiefly chints, calicoes, muslins, some silk and pepper, and diamonds, which are purchased by most nations with silver; but the Dutch frequently barter spices for them, which makes the India trade doubly advantageous to them.

The northern part of India is a temperate, healthful climate; the southern countries are too hot, especially when the hot wind blows in April and May; but they are refreshed with breezes

THE TRAVELS OF

1703

breezes from the sea constantly about noon ; for in the night, and early in the morning, the wind sets off the shore, and blows on the shore the rest of the day. The periodical rains visit them in June, and continue till October, which is the season for planting and sowing their lands towards the south, where they have scarce any other grain but rice. In the northern countries, they have good wheat, and almost all manner of grain ; and in one port or other of the Mogul's dominions, every thing is produced that can make life desirable, except liberty ; for though the subjects that are at a distance from court live as easily as under most monarchies, yet the Mogul is an absolute prince, and can command their lives and fortunes at pleasure.

The Blacks inhabit the Southern part of India, and are a people but lately conquered; the complexion of those in the northern provinces is either white, or an olive; these are the governing part of the nation, and of the Mahometan religion; the rest are Pagans, and worship idols of various shapes; some very monstrous, part human, and part beast or fish; and there is scarce any living animal but what they adore, particularly the ox and the monkey.

The Mogul's forces are computed to amount to 300,000 horse; some have called them a million; besides the forces of the Rajas, or tributary princes, who are obliged to attend the Mogul with their respective troops. In the fair season, the Mogul usually takes the field, and makes a tour about part of his dominions; and all manner of tradesmen, merchants and mechanics, follow the camp; inasmuch that there are scarce any persons left in the great towns: there are markets of all kinds in the camp, as in the best regulated towns; and when the time of the rains approaches, they return into the towns again.

The Mogul's annual revenue is computed to amount to between 40 and 50 millions sterling, arising by the produce of the soil, (of which he is proprietor, as well as sovereign, and every one is obliged to pay such a rent as is required by his commissaries) by duties and customs on merchandize, by forfeitures and escheats; being heir to all his great officers, and by presents, which are expected from all his governments, and those who have a dependance on him; and lastly, by the produce of the diamond mines of Golconda, which is not inconsiderable.

(e) Media, the north east part of the modern Persia, in which the province of Adenbeizan, and some of Gilan, and Eyrac Agem were comprehended; the capital city whereof was Esbātāna, the present Tauris,

1703

(*f*) Gilan, east long. 48. lat. 47. a city of Persia in Asia, in the province of Gilan, situate 340 miles north of Ispahan, and 240 miles west of Aferabat.

(g) Hyrcania, the provinces of Persia, in Asia, which lie on the southern shore of the Caspian sea, formerly went under that name; and the Caspian was called the Hyrcanian sea.

(b) Caspian sea, see p. 66. n. q.

(i). Derbent, see p. 198. n. d.

(k) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.

(1) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(*m*) France, received its name from the Franks, a German people, who inhabited the banks of the rivers Maine and Saliñ, and made a conquest of this country, then called Gaul, in the fifth century.

Modern France is situate between 5 degrees well, and 7 degrees east lon. and between 43 degrees and 51 degrees north lat. being bounded by the English channel and the Auttrian Netherlands on the north; by Germany, Switzerland, Savoy, and Piedmont in Italy on the east; by the Mediterranean sea and the Pyrenean mountains, which separate it from Spain, on the south; and by the bay of Biscay on the west; being almost a square of 540 miles on each side; except that Britany makes it something irregular, by extending farther to the westward than any other province.

It was an exceeding populous country, till the numbers were lessened by persecution, wars, and famine. Their numbers, which were formerly computed to amount to nineteen millions, scarce exceed fifteen millions at present.

The air is the most temperate of any country in Europe; and the soil produces corn, wine, oil, and flax, in great abundance.

It is extremely well situated for a foreign trade, as it lies on the ocean, the English channel, and the Mediterranean sea, and is watered by a great many large and navigable rivers, particularly the Seyne, the Loyre, the Garonne, the Rhone, the Soane, and of late the Rhine, which for some hundreds of years now separates their dominions from Germany.

The stature of the natives is not large; but they are generally men of bright parts, and the most active and enterprising of any people in Europe; but so restless and impatient of ease, that they are constantly engaged in wars abroad, and law-suits at home; extremely devoted to
I
their

their price, though the
of us, and treats them as
sacred of themselves, that
others as heathens.
Anxious on their good-
faith, and unlimited p
ship to all they convic
mean nothing by it, and m
upon as a price of genit
have purified their crimi
ceremonies to us, that n
them.

Their manufactures of iron and lace, are vastly greater than those of any other country, viz. their wines, lace,

[illegible]

counts of the dukes and princes of the empire, and of all officers, committed to him. The other parliamentists taking cognizance of any such the crown, or the peers of the realm, or the commons of the realm, called an intendant, king, who seems to have a right of jurisdiction over the judicial process over the parliament.

The whole number of peers in all the greatness, among which is comprehended 1,500 able to pay the taille, or

only paid by those who hold by base tenure; and tradesmen; the nobility, clergy; and gentry, are exempted from this tax. The burgesses of Paris, and some other free cities also, are exempted from the land-tax.

There is another tax, called the taillon, payable by the same persons as the taille, which amounts to about a third part only of the former. There is another tax, called the aids, which arises from the customs and duties on all merchandise, except salt.

The gabelles, are the taxes arising by salt. The other taxes are the capitation, or poll-tax; the tenths of all estates, offices, and employments, the fiftieth penny, from which neither the nobility nor clergy are exempted; and the tenths and free-gifts of the clergy, who are allowed to tax themselves; but it is expected that they should pay as much as the laity at least; and lastly, the crown-lands, rents, fines and forfeitures, bring in a considerable revenue.

The kingdom is but one great farm to the crown. The whole produce of the country is in the king's power, if he thinks fit to demand it; though he chufes to take it in the accustomed way, that he may make no more mal-content than he cannot avoid; and were there never fo many, he has always armies on foot, fufficient to fuprefs any infurrections. In time of peace, he has frequently 200,000 men in pay; and in time of war, fometimes 400,000. Many of whom are foreigners; viz. Swifs, Germans, Scotch, Irifh, Swedes and Danes.

The protestants fought for their religion and liberty many years; and at length obtained a toleration, by a royal edict called the edict of Nantz; but this being repealed by Lewis XIV. Anno 1685, a cruel persecution ensued, which compelled some hundreds of thousands of them to quit the kingdom, who were entertained in protestant countries, to the unspeakable prejudice of this kingdom; for they did not only lose the most industrious part of the inhabitants, but the refugees set up the French manufactures in every country where they came, which very much lessened the demand for French merchandise.

The crown of France is hereditary; but by their

The whole number of parishes, contained in all the generality, amounts to 38,502, in which is comprehended 1,585,112 families, liable to pay the taille, or land tax, which is

The whole number of parishes, contained in all the generality, amounts to 38,502, in which is comprehended 1,585,112 families, liable to pay the taille, or land tax, which is

THE TRAVELS OF

1703

their salique law, no female is suffered to inherit; neither is their royal line of that duration as in England; for in the pedigree of their kings, we find, that there have been three families on the throne, *viz.* the Merovingian, the Carolinian, and the Caputine, which had no relation to one another; the second usurping on the first, and the third upon the second, which is the present reigning family.

The eldest son of France is always titled the Dauphin. The new conquests, or acquisitions, that France has made to her dominions the last hundred years, are those of Alsace and Lorraine, on the side of Germany; those of Artois, the Cambrésis, part of Flanders, Hainault and Luxembourg, on the side of the Netherlands; and Rouillon, antiently a part of Catalonia, on the side of Spain.

(*n*) Turcomania, the antient Armenia, is now a province of Asiatic Turkey, bounded by Persia on the east; by Diarbeck and Curdestan (that is, the antient Mesopotamia and Assyria) on the south; and by Natolia on the west and north. The capital city is Erzerum.

(*o*) Rome, see P. 108. n. 8.

(*p*) Naples, city, east long. 15. lat. 41. the capital of the kingdom of Naples, in Italy, situate 140 miles south east of Rome, and 15 degrees east of London; being seven miles in circumference within the walls, and as much more, if the suburbs are included, and contains about 300,000 inhabitants.

It stands on an eminence; rising gradually from the sea to a moderate height, on a fine bay of the sea of thirty miles diameter; and the islands that lie before it form a secure and commodious harbour.

On the east, there is a large plain, on the further side whereof is mount Vesuvius, and on the west a high hill, on which stands the castle of St. Elmo, and a Carthusian monastery, from whence we are entertained with the finest prospect in the world.

It is seldom cold here in winter; and in summer, the cool breezes from the mountains and the sea make the hottest part of it very tolerable; nor is the sea subject to storms; and they have so bold a shore, that large ships may lie close to the quays.

Corn, wine, and oil, are excellent here in their kind, and exceedingly plentiful; and the air is pure, serene and healthful.

The buildings are magnificent and elegant, and inhabited by people of distinction; nor

1703

can there be, in all respects, a more desirable situation, did not the eruptions of Vesuvius, and earthquakes, sometimes disturb their quiet, as well as the frequent revolutions observed in this kingdom; for it being so desirable a country, the neighbouring powers are perpetually contending for it: Germany, France, Spain, have alternately had the dominion of it. It seldom has the same sovereignty for forty years successively.

The dignified clergy, and nobility of this kingdom are very numerous; there are, 'tis said, 25 archbishops, 125 bishops, 300 princes, dukes, marquises, and earls. The clergy possess one third of the kingdom; the crown, the nobility, and gentry the rest; the peasants have scarce any thing they can call their own; they are subjects and vassals to their respective lords, manure their lands, plant their vine-yards, and olive-yards, and are allowed only a subsistence, sufficient to enable them to perform their daily drudgery, and receive justice in their lords courts, in cases that are not capital; inasmuch that, every lord, or gentleman, who is proprietor of the soil, is sovereign of the people, who live upon his estate.

Though they abound in silk; yet that manufacture is not great; they send most of it abroad unwrought; and all the merchandize and produce of this rich soil is carried abroad in foreign shipping, they having but few ships of their own; or, indeed, merchants, the proprietors of the lands selling the produce of their respective estates to foreigners.

Many of the natives being of Spanish extraction, follow the Spanish modes, and cloathe themselves in black, which makes the silk manufacture the less.

They have a numerous militia, the nobility and gentry holding their lands by military tenures; but these are little depended upon, and seldom called out, the king usually maintaining 15,000 regular troops in time of peace, and can raise twice that number in time of war. They had no men of war lately, but are beginning to build some; and they have a fleet of armed gallees.

The revenues of the crown are computed to amount to one million sterling per annum, which arise from a composition with the nobility and gentry for certain sums, in lieu of their personal services; from a duty on houses; and almost a general excise.

It was a tax upon fruits which the meaner people live on, that occasioned the memorable insurrection under Massinello; and it seems fruit

has been exempted from
fines; those who are most
are the Genoese and others
claim in this country; a
reason.

Naples had been governed
German viceroys, till Don
Spain's second son, was se-
by the united powers of H
Sardinia in the year 1734
obtained the crown by succe-
he must defend his posses-
obtain the affections of the
gentle administration.

The crown claims a por-
tion and gentry, and rai-
court think necessary; but
trying their proceedings to
the king has so powerful a
queen of Hungary.

The clergy are not taxed
the gift, which is proportion-
on the lay at least.

(17) Egypt, see P. 33.

(18) Via Appia, the Roman
any stronger influence of
wildness, grandeur, and magni-
public roads, or high-ways
and carried on to the very
extensive empire, some where
entire to this very day. The
(scarcely that the strength of
have absolutely depended u-
free intercourse and com-
the several parties who con-
first, and direct them to the
finite labour and incredible
roads throughout all Italy
fasts, erected thereon, at co-
buildings for lodging the pri-
and public carriages, and then
billed a free communication
and the provinces, but faciliti-
their armies, and the trans-
military train, whenever dis-
led upon them to take up ar-

In making these roads, the
too great for the Romans
et through, and levelled
valleys, drained morasses, rai-
these bridges over rivers.
times, rarely confined to
ways; they considered the
nature of them as a matter of

in all respects, a more desirable state than the empire of Vespasian, and sometimes disturb their quiet, as or it being so desirable a country, ruling powers are perpetually contending for it: Germany, France, Spain, have all the dominion of it. It follows the sovereignty for forty years since.

Secular clergy, and nobility of this country are very numerous; there are, in the kingdom, 105 bishops, 300 priors, monasteries, and convents. The clergy are one third of the kingdom; the nobility, and gentry the rest; the rest are the people. They are the same as they are in all other countries; they are subjects and vassals to their lords, manure their lands, plant their vineyards, and are allowed to trade, sufficient to enable them to live in daily idleness, and receive of their lords courts, in cases that are not so much that, every lord, or gentleman, who live upon his estate, is proprietor of the soil, is sovereign, and who live upon his estate, they are bound in silk, yet their money is great; they send most of it abroad; and all the merchandise and goods rich soil is carried abroad to foreign countries. They have but few ships of war, and indeed, merchants, the proprietors of the soil, filling the produce of their lands to foreigners.

Of the natives being of Spanish extraction, the Spanish modes, and themselves in black, which makes the country less desirable.

A numerous militia, the nobility holding their lands by military tenure, are little depended upon, and are out of the king usually maintaining a number of troops in time of peace, and that number in time of war. They are not so much as they are beginning to be; and they have a fleet of armed ships; the crown are computed to be one million sterling per annum, which is a composition with the nobility and certain lords, in lieu of their performance; from a duty on houses and almost every thing which the merchant pays upon, that occasioned the mercantile trade, and it seems that

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

has been exempted from taxes almost ever since; those who are most oppressed by taxes are the Genoese and other foreigners, whose estates lie in this country; and these are pretty numerous.

Naples had been governed by Spanish, or German vice-roys, till Don Carlos, the king of Spain's second son, was set upon the throne, by the united powers of France, Spain, and Sardinia, in the year 1734. And as that prince obtained the crown by force, by the like force he must defend his possession, unless he can obtain the affections of the people by a wife and gentle administration.

The crown claims a power of taxing the nobility and gentry, and raising what forces the court think necessary; but it is dangerous carrying these prerogatives too high, as long as the king has so powerful a competitor as the queen of Hungary.

The clergy are not taxed here; but grant a free-gift, which is proportionable to the taxes on the laity at least.

(7) Egypt, see p. 33. n. a.

(5) Via Appia, the Romans have not left us any stronger instances of their consummate wisdom, grandeur, and magnificence, than the public roads, or high-ways which they made, and carried on to the very extremity of their extensive empire, some whereof remain almost entire to this very day. The Roman magistrates (sensible that the strength and power of the state absolutely depended upon maintaining a free intercourse and correspondence between the several parties who composed it) were the first, and after them the emperors, who with infinite labour and incredible expence, made great roads throughout all Italy and its dependent states; erected thereon, at convenient distances, buildings for lodging the post-masters horses, and public carriages, and thereby not only established a free communication between Rome and the provinces, but facilitated the march of their armies, and the transportation of their military train, whenever choice or necessity called upon them to take up arms.

In making these roads there was no difficulty too great for the Romans to surmount; they cut through, and levelled mountains, filled up vallies, drained morasses, raised cause-ways, and threw bridges over rivers. Nor was their attention merely confined to the making these ways; they considered the repair and maintenance of them as a matter of the last importance

217

1703

to the state, and therefore appointed proper officers to superintend and manage them, whose titles and functions frequently occur in the ancient historians, and upon inscriptions.

The most considerable of these ways, called Viæ Regiæ, Militares, & Publicæ, began at a gilded column, or pillar, called Miliarium Aureum, & Columna Augusti, which was erected at the Forum, in Rome, below the temple of Saturn.

The three most famous were the Via Appia, Via Flaminia, and Via Æmilia. The most noble, however, in all respects, was the Via Appia, which is generally thought to have derived its name from one Appius, who was the author of it, and the very same ingenious gentleman who invented their Cloacæ, or common sewers.

This Via Appia (for to this alone we shall confine our present remarks) which was at first carried only from Rome to Capua, and afterwards continued as far as Brundisium, situated upon the Adriatic Gulf, is described in the ancient itineraries, and mentioned by Horace, in the elegant description which he gives us of his journey from Rome to Brundisium; as also, by several other of the ancient writers, as Cicero, Livy, Strabo, Appian, Procopius, &c. Some moderns likewise have treated of it; but none of them have examined it so fully, and with that accuracy and exactness as one Signior Pratili, who has taken an actual survey of it throughout its whole extent from Rome to Brundisium; and to his elaborate and judicious description of it, not long since published, we shall be entirely indebted for the following extract; not doubting but that the generality of our readers, (short and imperfect as it may be) will look upon it with an eye of indulgence.

Our author then, in the first place, observes, that the whole extent of this high-way was not made all at once. Appian Claudius, says he, who was Censor in the year of Rome 443, made that part which lies between Rome and Capua; and so expensive was even that first attempt, that he thereby perfectly exhausted the public treasure.

The Romans, however, having some time after that defeated the Samnites, and extended their frontiers, continued this road (expensive as it had been) as far as Beneventum, where a Roman colony was planted in the consulship of Appian Claudius Craffius, son of the Censor, and

K k k

1703

and in the year of Rome 485.

The Messapians, Tarrentines, and other people of that part of Italy, being afterwards, about the year 490, brought under subjection to the Romans, the work was once more resumed, and carried on as far as Brundisium, which then became a celebrated port for the common passage out of Italy into Greece and Asia, and was made a Roman colony in the year 510, during the consulship of Torquatus and Blætus.

Notwithstanding this high-way was originally fabricated with the utmost firmness and solidity; yet it was very considerably improved and beautified, in the year of Rome 631, by Caius Sempronius Gracchus, who repaired the military roads in Italy, and set up all along them military pillars, on which the distances from mile to mile were marked. Besides these ornaments, he placed several blocks of stone by the sides of the high-ways, for the repose of travellers, and to serve as steps to assist those who travelled on horse-back, in mounting and dismounting their horses.

Julius Cæsar was at great expence in maintaining this road, and actually undertook, and began to drain the marshes of Pomptina; which work was finished in the reign of Augustus. This prince considerably repaired that part of the road which lies near Capua.

The emperors Vespasian and Domitian were likewise at great pains upon the same account; and Nerva expended great sums in repairing it, as appears by inscriptions upon some of the military pillars, which have been found in the marshes of Pomptina.

The emperor Trajan completed the work, begun by his predecessors, continued this road as far as Brundisium, and repaved another public way, which lay between that place and Beneventum.

Caracalla repaired the Via Appia for the length of one and twenty miles towards Terracina and Fondi; another part of this way, lying between Liris and Sinuessa, was repaired in the reign of Maximianus Herculius.

And lastly, Theodoret, king of the Goths, caused nineteen miles in length of the canal (Decennoni) which ran along the Via Appia between Tré Ponti and Tarracina, to be repaired, in order to drain off the waters from the marshes of Pomptina, as we learn from an

ancient inscription, still preserved at Terracina.

That part of the Via Appia, says our author, which lies between Rome and Capua, appears to have been paved with large and flat stones, cut out, and jointed together, with amazing art and solidity. This pavement was raised in the middle, from whence it was sloped gradually to the sides; upon which were parapets of free-stone for the convenience of foot-passengers.

Tho' the breadth of this high-way was not equal, indeed, in all places; yet it was every where sufficient for two chariots to drive abreast. As, on the one hand, it no where exceeded five and thirty palms; so on the other it was in no place less than twenty-five. And its whole length, reckoned from Rome to Brundisium aforesaid, was 364 Roman miles, according to the following computation.

From Rome	Miles
To Aricia	16
To Appii Forum	26
Ad Medias	9
To Tarracina	10
To Fundi	14
To Formiæ	14
To Minturnæ	9
To Sinuessa	9
Ad Pontem Campanum	9
Ad Octavum	9
To Capua	8
To Beneventum	32
To Rubi, now Ruvo	107
To Bari	21
To Brundisium	71
Total from Rome to Brundisium	364 miles.

On this Appian way (besides the common structures above-mentioned for public service) there were several costly and magnificent tombs, or sepulchral monuments, and other superb decorations; such, as for instance, the Septizonium of Severus; the Dormitories or vaults of the family of Arria; the arch of Constantine the Great; the temples of Fortune and Mars; the tomb, or monument of Metella, the wife of Crassus; and those of Cecilia, Cornelia, Servilia, &c. &c. too tedious here to enumerate.

C H A P.

A succinct Account of the Vauls, as they are called, of the Persians. And the

ON the fourteenth of Samachin on horse attendants, besides running with a noted place, called that is to say, the Servian there are several very rich mans, or sepulchral vaults, with, that are very worthy the attention. We passed through several in our passage thither, habited for the most part of (as) Armenians, as we ad towards the towers above at about nine o'clock, & came to a little village situate on an eminence, (the) ridge ground, which abounded with, and are the pines and support of the inhabitants the parts adjacent.

There we were then built with stone, in which a great monument of a certain Shah Wazirpet. He was we were exceedingly informed of (the) Turkish, and Mohammedan, but as he was embraced their religion, he applied himself studies there amongst the he became one of the pials; we were told, here time after the end his waters, he had the heads of some in Samachin, who but been reduced to ashes, appeared amongst them.

tion, still preserved at Terracina, 1703
of the Via Appia, lays our author,
ween Rome and Capua, appears

pared with large and flat stones,
joined together, with amazing art
This pavement was raised in the
in whence it was sloped gradually
upon which were purveys of free-
convenience of horse-paigees.

breadth of this high-way was rec-
d, in all places; yet it was every
at for two chariots to drive a-
on the one hand, it no where ex-
and living palms; 10 on the other
place less than twenty-five. And
length, reckoned from Rome to
afore said, was 364 Roman miles,
the following computation.

	Miles
Ardea	10
Ardea Forum	20
Medus	9
Taracina	10
o Fundi	14
o Formie	14
o Minturnæ	9
Stabellæ	9
Pontem Campanum	9
Ostium	9
o Capua	8
o Beneventum	32
Rubi, near Rivo	107
Bari	21
Beneventum	71
in Rome to Beneventum	364 miles.

Aprian way (besides the common
ways above-mentioned for public
use were several costly and magnifi-
cent or sepulchral monuments, and o-
decorations; such, as for instance,
monium of Severus; the *Dormition*
the family of Alaria; the arch of
the Great; the temples of Fortuna
the tomb, or monument of Metella
of Crassus; and those of Cælia,
Servilia, &c. &c. see also here 10

C H A P.

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

219

C H A P. XXXIII.

A succinct Account of several antient Monuments, or remarkable Sepulchral Vaults, at Jediekobet, situate on the Mountains of Pjedrakoes; as also, of divers others at Pymarææ. An Account likewise of the barbarous and inhuman Murder of four Armenians by the Persians. And lastly a Review of the Persian Horse.

ON the fourteenth I set out from Samachi on horse-back, with two attendants, besides runners, in order to visit a noted place, called Jediekobet, that is to say, the Seven Towers, where there are several very remarkable monuments, or sepulchral vaults to be met with, that are very antient, and well worthy the attention of the curious. We passed through several small villages in our passage thither, which were inhabited for the most part, by the natives of (a) Armenia, as we advanced westward towards the towers above-mentioned; and at about nine o'clock that evening, we came to a little village called Kirkins, situate on an eminence, or fertile spot of rising-ground, which abounds with vineyards, and are the principal maintenance and support of the inhabitants there, and the parts adjacent.

Jediekobet, or the Seven Towers.

The monument of St. Sahac Wartapeet.

There we were shewed a small chapel, built with stone, in which was the sepulchral monument of a certain saint, named Sahac Wartapeet. He was, it seems, as we were credibly informed, by birth, a native of (b) Turkey, and by profession, a Mahomedan; but as he had for several years embraced their principles of religion, he applied himself so closely to his studies there amongst the Armenians, that he became one of their most favourite priests; we were told, moreover, that some time after his entrance into those holy orders, he had the misfortune to fall into the hands of some inhuman Mahomedan Turks, who burnt him alive, at Samachi; and that after his bones had been reduced to ashes, he rose again, and appeared amongst them.

There is another sepulchral vault upon the high-road, at about the distance of half a league from this hill, or mountain, whereon I found there were several characters inscribed; but as they were unintelligible to me, I begged the favour of having them explained. To which they replied, that I was mistaken, and that what I took for characters, were nothing more than different decorations. That monument of the last-mentioned saint, who lies interred upon the hill, is held there in high esteem. The inhabitants of the parts adjacent light up tapers there, on their solemn festivals, and regale themselves in as elegant a manner as they can, on one side, or at least within sight of his tomb. As I happened to arrive there on a Sunday, I found a multitude of people flocking round it, who, in a very courteous manner, gave me an invitation, to partake of what refreshments they had before them; but I begged to be excused, as I was very desirous of advancing forwards on my journey. This village, small as it is, contains about two hundred several families. In the center of the little chapel, wherein is the afore said monument, stands a small altar, which is encompassed by a small wall, on one side whereof there grows a spacious walnut-tree, where they seat themselves under its shade. Formerly there was a small mosch on the very same spot of ground, which was reduced to ruins, it seems, about five and thirty years since, through the violence of an earthquake; and so they substituted this little chapel in its room.

About half an hour after nine, we set out from this little village, and passed o-

The monument of St. Jediekobet.

2

ver

1703

over several fine hills in our way to Jediecombet, where we arrived between ten and eleven. There I met with the ancient tombs that I have before-mentioned, which are built with hard stone, and in a very substantial manner, and not inelegantly cemented. Most of them remained entire, and terminated in a pyramidal form. That which I examined first, and stood nearest to the mountain, was more lofty than the rest. The tower-wall, in regard to its thickness, is five palms, or thereabouts; the entrance into it about three broad, and six high. It is about twelve feet in diameter, and round within.

A fine tower.

It is encompassed with a fine wall, the front gate whereof is no less than fourteen foot and an half in breadth, and ten deep through the wicket, at which you enter. It is five palms in thickness, and about sixteen paces from one corner to the other; that is to say, threescore and four paces in circumference. As to the thickness of the wall itself, it is three palms or thereabouts. And the coping of it at top is an half oval, and bears some resemblance to a camel's back. There are five fine sepulchral monuments in this tower; three on one side of it, and two on the other, which are embellished with foliages, and other ornaments of the like nature. These monuments are three palms, in point of height, two in breadth, and seven in length; some more, but others less. From this, I went to the second Tower. At the front gate, in the enceint, or inclosure of the wall, I perceived there was an elevation of no less than three palms, an arcade of eight and an half in breadth at the bottom, of eleven and an half in depth, and in height about seven foot. Here there were three fine tombs only. This tower-wall is about forty four feet in length, and thirty three in breadth, and much about the same height, and, in all respects, indeed, similar to the former. The last of these structures, which is the lowest, and goes downward, is encompassed with a wall, which is no less than threescore and eleven foot in breadth, threescore and six feet in length, and nine

1703

in height. The front gate is fourteen foot and an half without, and twenty two in breadth. The arcade is eleven in height, and in depth fourteen. In the middle there is a wicket, which is two foot and an half in breadth, and in height five and an half. We went down there by three steps, and at the distance of about twelve paces only, we came to a building about eight and thirty foot in breadth, and eighteen in length, at the end whereof stood another, on the left-hand, which is six foot long and of the same breadth, whereon there is a tower. We went into this structure by a little door, no more than four foot four inches in height, and two and an half in breadth, and is correspondent with that in the front. The wall of it is but three foot thick; and having gone down two steps, we came into a quadrangular apartment which was encompassed with stone-benches about a foot and an half only in height, and much about the same in breadth. That room, or apartment, was ten feet in length, and eleven in breadth, and the vault twelve in height. On the right-hand, there is a door-way made through the wall above the bench, through which, by going only one step up, we came into a gloomy place, the vault whereof was lower than the former, notwithstanding its other dimensions were larger; for it was thirteen foot in length, and ten in breadth. From thence through another door directly over against the first, tho' somewhat smaller, we went up two steps, and came into an apartment that was ten feet in length, and the same in breadth. On this it is that the tower stands; which is hollow, as far as to the very point of the spire; and on the right of us, there were four small windows, two and two, one above the other; there we found several tapers sticking against the wall, and stones that were tumbled down, but nothing like a sepulchral monument appeared. There we dined, and there mingled our wine with some fine spring-water, which ran at a very small distance from, and directly opposite to this building. That spring is very antient; its water is most delightful, and

[illegible]

ward of these monuments, I was surprized to see vast piles of stones upon a fertile hill, where the soil did not seem in the least naturally inclined to be stony. From this circumstance I concluded, and I imagine upon very just grounds, that some town, or fortress at least, had formerly been erected there; notwithstanding there were no other traces of footsteps of any such structures. I was afterwards, however, informed by some people, of whom for the gratification of my curiosity I made the enquiry, that there had been a small one erected there, not far distant from the tombs; and, in all probability, they told me the truth; for otherwise it would be no easy matter to give a substantial reason for their being erected in these mountains. At a small distance from hence we discovered a fine spring; and, a little beyond it, some more monuments; amongst which there was one in particular of uncommon dimensions, though very much disfigured from the injury it had received through a long series of years. About half a league from thence, we went back once more through the village called Kirkins, inhabited for the most part by Armenians and Turks, and we reached the town near an hour before sunset; notwithstanding the wind blew so excessively hard, and the dust flew to that degree, that we could scarce see the way before us. The next day, however, there fell such a hasty and impetuous shower of rain, accompanied with thunder, that they were both perfectly dispersed.

The mourn-
tain of Pje-
drakoes.

An open monument.

About seven paces farther stood another monument or vault, consisting of a small circular chapel, which is, without about three

breadth: it is paved likewise, and is five feet five inches high. The latter lies at the distance of seventeen feet from the first, somewhat recessed, or cove, hewn out of the rock belonging to the mountain; an aperture, or entrance into it, is so placed that a person inclined to view it, is upon his belly to accomplish it. Before this grotto stands a tree, the trunk whereof are the names of persons cut out in very legible characters, and several monuments or tombs stand about it, between which and the sepulchral vaults, on the summit of the mountain, there is a wall still subsisting. The edifice or structure, that has since demolished. This hill, however, is encompassed by a deep. Some authors permit me to affirm that there is here a subterranean cavern or vault, into which there are several steps, and that in that place lies deposited the remains of a princess, the daughter of some king; however, though I own my mind is induced me to search after it, and myself disappointed, and my friends, and I am fully convinced nothing more than the little grotto mentioned; and into which we are so inquisitive as never to enter, to know whether the report was true or not: but here give me leave to say, the passage was so very narrow, I was obliged to undress myself before I entered, and I am fully convinced that the person who entered, was very seriously assured me, that the part of the personages who have been buried in these monuments, were buried in their robes and the lancelets for their robes and the lancelets; from whence it is evident that great numbers of pilgrims had their sepulchres as a mortification. At the foot of this mountain is a small village, and a spacious

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

223

1703

cious plain beyond it to the North-East, which is surrounded with hills and mountains; and to the North-West there are several other little villages, and the mountain called Kala-kulustahan. The town, which is visible at a distance, and the country all round about it, has a very good effect, and strikes the eye in a very agreeable manner. As we approached the town, we discovered a fine stone cistern or reservoir, the water whereof is as fine as chrystal, and very delicious. A little beyond that there is a spring, the waters whereof flow gradually away, and discharge themselves into a subterraneous canal towards the mountains; and, by another, flow into the city itself.

On the nineteenth, I made the proper preparations for sending my effects by the caravan, which I followed some few days after.

Pyramarae.

On the twentieth I went to the village called Pyramarae, where there are two particular monuments that are very curious, and worthy of inspection. In my passage thither, I met with an exceeding fine spring, and traversed several rivulets or brooks upon little stone bridges. At the distance of about two leagues from the city I saw one that appeared to me to be very antient, which consisted of three decayed arches, erected with large blocks of stone, under which ran a very clear stream. There were others likewise that I met with as I passed along, under which no water ran at all.

The city of Samachi makes a good figure enough, when surveyed upon the hills, whereon there are several burial-grounds, and large sepulchral vaults.

About noon I reached the place called Pyramarae, which is a pretty large village, built for the most part with stone and earth. It is near four leagues to the eastward of the town, in a spacious plain as one goes to the mountains on the left hand. There I saw the monument of Seid Ibrahim, a particular faint, whose name in this place and all the parts adjacent is held in profound veneration. The place where his remains are deposited has more the appearance of a fortrefs than a

The tomb of Seid Ibrahim.

1703

sepulchral vault only; and is surrounded with a wall, but a very piteous one indeed. Within we met with a stable, and there we put up our horses. I had not been there long before a menial servant approached me, and gave me a courteous invitation, by special order, to the apartment of his master, to whose care and conduct this place was particularly entrusted. This stranger received me in the most obliging manner, and asked me from whence I came, and what motives induced me to visit these solitary grounds? I told him ingenuously the truth, and that nothing but the gratification of my curiosity had tempted me to pay my visit to them. Whereupon he, with great humanity and good manners, offered his service voluntarily to wait on me, and shew me every thing he thought worthy of my attention.

Before this building there is a very spacious square, on the right hand of which as I went in, this officer has a large commodious apartment, the floor whereof was covered with a large, costly carpet. From thence I went on the left-hand, into the court-yard, which is spacious enough, and executed in a good taste; and, after that, into another, where were several monuments, on which there were Turkish inscriptions, and divers other embellishments. Then I came to the sepulchre of the faint himself, which is closely locked up with a wooden door, through which I went first into a small vault, where stood a coffin; and from thence I passed forwards into a pretty apartment enough, which receives light from three sides above, and is covered with carpets, striped stuffs, and mats: here I was obliged, in order not to daub the furniture, to pull off my shoes. From thence I passed through a little door on the right hand of the first vault, into three several apartments; in the first whereof were three coffins; five in the second, which lies on the right; and, in the center of the third, which lies on the left, the coffin of the faint himself, which was covered with a large, green cloth, in the nature of a pall. The portals of this edifice

THE TRAVELS OF

1703

edifice are threefold foot high, or thereabouts, and several fathom deep. I went up by twelve steps, each of one stone. The top is not vaulted, and the wall, in regard to its upper part, bears the resemblance of a fortress, having a kind of Guerite at each angle. This structure to the right is forty paces in length, and one and thirty in breadth. Over this monument, there is a small aperture, covered with a stone, and over the gate, there are divers inscriptions in the characters made use of by the (*c*) Arabs, hewn out of the stone, and others traced out in black upon the white walls.

At about the distance of twenty paces from this monument I went down fifteen steps that were vaulted, and after that, down ten others, contiguous thereto, tho' these last were not vaulted; from whence I went into a subterraneous cavern, which is thirty three paces long, and nine broad, and not only vaulted from one end to the other, but is thirty foot high and upwards. The stones belonging to this vault are fine, large, and artfully enough cemented; but the plaster with which they were once covered, by dint of time, was almost all fallen down to the ground. I imagine this subterraneous cavern was formerly intended for a Reservoir, or cistern, to hold water in; and whenever it rains hard, the water comes in still, by a subterraneous canal, which proceeds from the adjacent mountains, and runs thro' a proper hole made for that purpose in the second step. This subterraneous vault has at top, two vents or apertures, through which it receives some degree of light. At the entrance of this structure, there is a stone-wall, and at the distance of about twenty paces from it, there are twenty stone-troughs, which are appropriated to the watering of cattle. They are all put together, and each of them consists of one stone only, which is three foot and an half in length, and in breadth, two and an half, or somewhat better. Here are also several open wells, not only in the village, but in all the parts adjacent; many of them, however, are stopped up at their apertures.

'Tis highly probable, that, in former times, they were made use of as aqueducts; and we may very reasonably form that conjecture, because several of them do actually convey water under-ground, in order to be kept in these subterraneous caverns. This was a common practice amongst the ancients; and I have seen the same things at (*d*) Alexandria myself, and in the parts adjacent to the city of (*e*) Naples. The natives of (*f*) Media, likewise preserved their water after the same manner. The Persians (*g*) were highly delighted to see with what accuracy and attention I surveyed every place; I then returned my thanks to the courteous stranger, to whose care this monument was entrusted, and begged the favour of him to send some proper person along with me, in order to take a survey of the other: This request, he very readily granted, with all the good-manners and courtesy imaginable. In our passage thither, we rode over a mountain; but when we came to the eastward, we were under a necessity of dismounting by reason of its prodigious declivity; for we were frequently obliged to hold fast by the rocks, for fear of falling.

It is on this declivity, that the monument, or sepulchral vault of Tiribbaba, now stands. There we went down three steps into a square, of the same breadth with the edifice, which is no less than twenty eight foot in front, and looks upon the very steepest part of the mountain. The frontpiece of this building, is perfectly beautiful, and consists of large polished stones. There are three several windows, which penetrate into the wall, about three palms: that on the left is glazed in the middle, and has a stone-lattice, which is all of one piece, at least to outward appearance. To this, there are fastened several parti-coloured slips, or pieces of garments, like those above-mentioned. That window which is on the right-hand, consists of large stones, which are four palms and a half in breadth, and eight in height. After this, we went up three steps, in order to get to the portal, which is close shut with a wooden

1703

103 gate. From thence we went
figure apartment, with
miser on each side, and a
Below, it is not much ad-
of the foot from one to
The wall, as we went
rank, actually joins to the
left hand we went up the
which only is better than
by these we went up into
scented feet in length, and
with a walled roof about
feet high. Just over a
there is a flight of fifteen
of which is high, the first
the rest, for the most part
one three only, and about
thick. This flight of steps
in half in breadth, and
apartment, embellished w
niches, a large window
wooden lattice, with a
the room has three door
floor is covered with mat
had there are likewise t
openings: one wherever i
front in by a kind of win
of wrought iron, and th
lin of this, lines with a
telling door, which is but
however, and two foot b
that a man must sit
There is here likewise a
is kept out of the room
the apartment is crea
corner, against the inner
small stone balustrade, in
form, of which the chie
comes out. This is the
tain is reposed upon his
to their custom: this is
themselves, with this ad-
covered with a white ve
and in that posture to w
usually accustomed i
without the least interrup
and indulgence procure
heavenly kind leading v
ciple. This apartment f
is fourteen foot square, a
behlined, having two line
side of each inch to the
with a step that is rais

probable, that, in former times, made use of as aqueducts; and several of them do actually water underground, in order to their subterraneous caverns, a common practice amongst the ancients, and I have seen the same things at Alexandria myself, and in the parts the city of (e) Naples. The

(1) Media, likewise preserved

at the same manner. The

(2) were highly delighted to see

at accuracy and attention I fur-

every place; I then returned my

the courteous stranger, to whose

monument was entrusted, and

in favour of him to send some

on along with me, in order to

view of the other: This re-

very readily granted, with all

manners and courtesy imaginable,

thicker, we rode over a

; but when we came to the

we were under a necessity of di-

by reason of its prodigious de-

as we were frequently obliged to

by the rocks, for fear of falling.

in this declivity, that the mo-

in sepulchral vault of Trishibab,

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

is. There we went down three

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

gate. From thence we went into a small square apartment, with commodious niches on each side, and a small dome.

Below, it is not much above the extent of five foot from one side to the other. The wall, as we went in on the right-hand, actually joins to the rock. On the left hand we went up three steps, one of which only is higher than the other two; by these we went up into an apartment, fourteen feet in length, and ten in breadth, with a vaulted roof about six and thirty foot high. Just over against the door, there is a flight of fifteen steps; the first of which is high, the second broad; and the rest, for the most part, consisting of one stone only, and about thirteen inches thick. This flight of steps is two foot and an half in breadth, and leads up to an apartment, embellished with eight several niches, a large window in front, and a wooden lattice, with a dome over head: this room has three doors to it, and the floor is covered with mats. On the right-hand there are likewise two apertures, or openings; one whereof is a large niche, shut in by a kind of window, composed of wrought stone; and that other on the left of this, shuts with a well-wrought folding door, which is but four foot high, however, and two foot broad; inasmuch, that a man must stoop to enter in. There is here likewise a small grot which is hewn out of the rock, against which this sepulchral vault is erected; and in one corner, against the same rock, there is a small stone ballustrade, in a semicircular form, of which the other half naturally comes out. This is the place where the saint is reposed upon his knees, according to their custom: this is what they tell us themselves; with this addition, that he is covered with a white veil, dressed in grey, and in that posture to which he was most naturally accustomed in his life time, without the least alteration. This was an act of indulgence procured for him from heaven by faint Ibrahim, who was his disciple. This apartment from side to side is fourteen foot square, and is richly embellished, having two small pillars on one side of each niche to the right and left, with a step that is raised about two foot,

This, which is before the window in the front, is three foot deep, or thereabouts; and That where the faint is at rest, is somewhat more: the vault is much about one and twenty foot high. From thence we went up a flight of twelve steps, into another small apartment on the left-hand; and, on the right-hand, there are four or five decayed steps, and so small a door, that a man must crawl upon his belly, if he would get to the top of the building, which is covered with a lofty dome, around which one may go through three several passages amongst the rocks. The first is two foot and an half, the second two foot, and one before, where there is an aperture to the front. We then descended the mountain by a more commodious path than the first; and we went up another rising ground, directly opposite to the first, in order to see the other monument, but we were disappointed; for we met with nothing there but a bare wall, without the least footsteps or traces of any tomb or tombs, from whence that place derives its appellation. It is encompassed with a wretched square wall, from whence we had a sight of that fine monument, which we have been describing; and of which the reader will find a representation in the subsequent plate. On that side which I came by, I perceived there were several grottos, hewn out of the rock.

About four o'clock in the afternoon I went from Pyramaraes, and it was much about eight, when I arrived at Samachi. The Armenians the very next day entertained me in one of their gardens, which lay out of the city; where they dressed their provision amongst the trees, of which there were divers sorts; and, amongst the rest, some willows of a very extraordinary size, quince-trees, mulberry-trees, and others, to which we were strangers, and of which I shall take the opportunity to give a particular account in a more proper place.

As we were upon our return, the Armenians began to sing and divert themselves by the way, according to the custom of their native country, and even to drink bumpers to the beat of a drum; after which,

M m m

which, they went to visit some of their friends and acquaintance in the caravan-ferai, or inn, inasmuch, that they made it very late before they went home.

Now it happened, that four Armenians, who had all this time been left to take care of the houses, were all murdered in their sleep, by some Persians. Upon this, two Armenians, belonging to our caravan-ferai, made their complaints of this barbarous and inhuman action to a Persian lord, who made them a solemn promise, that the blood-thrifty villains should be punished according to their demerits, if happily they should ever be detected.

On the twenty-sixth, there was a review of some Persian horse, in the spacious court of the Khan's palace. This review had been made in part the evening before; and the rest was deferred to the next day.

This exercise was performed by three hundred troopers at a time, all completely accoutred, as in the field of battle. Some had not only lances, but bows and arrows; others had fire-arms; and others again had bows and arrows only. These last, indeed, had canes with a large button at the point, which they manage with surprizing dexterity and address. Under their vestments they had coats of mail and brassets; and little caps, or morions, as they call them, on their heads; with masks, or vizors. All of them were perfectly well-drest, according to the Persian mode; but more particularly the officers, whose vests were of gold or silver brocade. Some of these gentlemen had six or seven sumpter-horses; and there were private persons that had one; besides one, that the servant rode upon, who led him, and another servant that attended on foot. The Khan was seated at one end of the court,

upon an eminence, or seat higher than the rest, and the horse were in small divisions, at the other, in expectation to be called by name; upon which they advanced, upon the gallop, by two and two; sometimes three and three; and sometimes four, up to the kind of throne whereon the Khan was seated; and after they had been enrolled, they immediately filed off another way: as soon as the review was over, the trumpets sounded a retreat; and this was all done within the compass of two hours, and, doubtless, it was a shew, that was well worth seeing. Most of them went thro' several motions, or parts of their exercise, with a very peculiar grace; tho' there were some few, indeed, who were not altogether so exact, and so adroit as the others, either through want of experience in themselves, or through some deficiency in their horses. As to those who acquitted themselves with most honour and credit; they were all rewarded with some certain military prize, in the presence of the chief lords of the country, who waited upon the Khan; and in the presence likewise of whole crowds of spectators.

The pay of these troops is very considerable, and particularly that of the officers. Each private trooper has annually five or six hundred florins; and their pay is augmented in proportion to their merit, in times of public action: they have, moreover, frequently very handsome presents made them. The sons likewise of these cavaliers, have a certain pension, as such; but then indeed, they are indispensably obliged to furnish a man at their own expence, in times of war, in case they happen to be under age.

At this grand review there were several children on horseback that were under eight years of age; with an attendant on the side of them.

A review, of the Persian cavalry

The barbarous murderer of four Armenians by the Persians.

The pay of these troops

The Author departs of the River (a) N. Araxes, or Aras of Silk. And his Archdeil.

On that day, I took the road to join the should be set forwards by Mr fellow-traveller, one David, took another road, to call at some trading had some affairs to settle, their companions, who v (4) Armenia, promised to shortly.

In the mountains was to the town, I met w that were very fertile; springs and a few cottages by which I came up w which was set out before small distance from the Nizeti. On the next d take an airing, I went upon a high mountain, from wh ed into a fine, spacious were to cross over; and the foot of the mountain ed little springs of water, In the evening, one of t ing to the caravan, came know that they should be of day the next morning, over the mountains, I

minions, or set higher than the
the horse were in small division,
er, in expectation to be called
is upon which they advanced,
gallon by two and two; some-
ee and three; and sometimes four,
ve kind of throne whereon the
seated; and after they had been
they immediately fled off and
as soon as the review was over,
ees founded a retreat; and this
one within the compass of two
doubtless, it was a show that was
th seeing. Most of them went thro'
otions, or parts of their exercise,
very peculiar grace; tho' there
ere few, indeed, who were not
to excel, and to adorn as the
er through want of experience
ees, or through some deficiency
aces. As to those who acquired
ees with most honour and credit;
ere all rewarded with some certain
ces, in the presence of the chief
the country, who waited upon the
d in the presence likewise of
douts of spectators.

Every way of these troops is very con-
and particularly that of the
Each private trooper has annu-
or six hundred florins; and their
augmented in proportion to their
in times of public action: they have,
er, frequently very handsome pre-
ade them. The sons likewise of
allers, have a certain pension, as
it then indeed, they are indispen-
aged to furnish a man at their
ence, in times of war, in case they
o be under age.

is grand review there were several
a on horseback that were under
years of age; with an attendant or
le of them.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- (a) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g. (e) Naples, see p. 216. n. p.
(b) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e. (f) Media, see p. 214. n. e.
(c) Arabs, see p. 203. n. a. (g) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.
(d) Alexandria, see p. 35. n. d.

C H A P. XXXIV.

The Author departs from Samachi. A succinct Account of the Course of the River (a) Kur, otherwise called Cur or Cyrus, and the (b) Araxes, or Arras. The Methods made use of for the Winding off Silk. And lastly, the Author arrives at (c) Ardevil, or Ardebil.

The author
departs
from Sama-
chi.

ON that day, I took my leave, in or-
der to join the caravan, left it
should be set forwards before I got to it.
My fellow-traveller, one Jacob John de
David, took another road, indeed, in order
to call at some trading towns, where he
had some affairs to settle, and my two o-
ther companions, who were natives of
(d) Armenia, promised to follow me very
shortly.

In the mountains which lay southward
to the town, I met with some grounds,
that were very fertile; as also with some
springs, and a few cottages, or houses; and
by sun-set I came up with the caravan
which was set out before me, at some
small distance from the village called
Nogdi. On the next day, in order to
take an airing, I went upon the very top of
a high mountain, from whence I descend-
ed into a fine, spacious plain, which we
were to cross over; and I observed, that at
the foot of the mountain, there were seve-
ral little springs of water, as clear as crystal.
In the evening, one of the guides belong-
ing to the caravan, came to us, to let us
know, that they should be moving by break
of day the next morning. In our passage
over the mountains, I saw, at a village

called Langelus, what I had never seen
before, not only some pomegranate-trees,
but other fruit-trees, and a vine, which was
perfectly loaded with grapes; the stem
whereof was both short and thick, and not
much above an ell, in height from the
ground; a circumstance that I had never
observed before in all my travels. There
likewise I saw a plant that was in blossom,
from the roots whereof there proceeded
filaments, or shoots, of at least a fathom in
length; and which stretched along the sur-
face; the fruit of it at that time was per-
fectly green, and resembled our little
cucumbers. The colour of it, when it is
ripe, and in its full perfection, is a deep
purple without, and within a vermilion red.
A great number of them grew upon one
plant. I made a drawing of one of them,
that was loaded with its fruit; which by
some of the natives of (e) Turkey is called
Tje-beer, and by others, again, Kou-
rack. In the plate hereto annexed,
the reader will find it distinguished by the
letter (A.)

I found, in the same place, another fort
of plant, the fruit whereof was red, and had
small cods, or bladders. It grew much af-
ter the same manner as the former, with
great

1703

great numbers on one plant, which was, however, a foot and an half higher, if not more. This fruit is distinguished there by the name of *Doojsjandernage*, and is of the same size as those which are distinguished in the plate beforementioned by the letter B.

When we had travelled over the mountains of (*f*) Derbent, we descended into the fine plain, as above mentioned, which extends farther than the eye can reach; we found it all, however, perfectly parched up, by the intense heat of the sun, and the long preceding droughts. This desert plain is, by the inhabitants of the country distinguished by the name of *Kraegh*.

No sooner had we advanced to the end of the mountains, but we had a distant, though imperfect view of the river *Kur* or *Cur*. About ten in the morning, after we had made a progress of about two leagues and a half, we halted upon the plain, where we stayed, not only all that day, but the next likewise; and on both the weather proved very favourable and fair. There we met with *Turks* and (*g*) *Arabians* in huts, or cabbins, built with straw, who, in a friendly manner enough, supplied us with milk, melons, and such like provisions; but as there was no such thing as wood to be met with, we were reduced to the necessity of dressing our victuals by such fires as the dung of our camels would afford us. It is customary to halt in all such places where the best pasture can be procured for the cattle we have in our train. The most mortifying circumstance, however, is, that there is no water to be found, but what is most miserably foul; inasmuch, that it must be left for some considerable time to settle; perhaps an hour or two at least, if not more, which is a very melancholy case, when, in the midst of such sultry sunbeams, one is ready to perish with thirst; nor is it practicable to take a sufficient quantity along with one, on account of the prodigious number of bales, with which a caravan is for the generality encumbered; so that in such a case as ours, we were obliged to make a virtue of ne-

2

1703

cessity, and accept of an immediate supply of curdled milk, which those *Turks* and *Arabians* call *Touvert*, and put into a cloth-bag, through which the *Whey* immediately runs off. After that, in order to quench their thirst, they put water to their curds, which amongst the *Turks* is a common and almost daily practice; so that a man in distress is furnished at once both with meat and drink. It is kept with all the ease imaginable, and when mingled with a proper quantity of sugar, is palatable enough, and serves instead of cream. We did not get out of this large plain till the 30th instant in the evening; at which time we travelled to the southward, and traversed the plain. There we met with another caravan, and some *Turks* in their huts or cabins. By break of day we reached the village called *Sgawad*, which lies to the westward of the *Kur*, on a rising ground, on the banks whereof we thought proper to halt. This place, though a village only, is very extensive, and contains in it an almost countless number of delightful gardens, which abound with white mulberry-trees and melons. On the next day, I went about half a league to the confux of the *Kur* and the *Araxes*, two noted rivers, which are at this day distinguished by the names of the *Cyrus* and the *Arras*.

I observed, that here the *Arras* proceeded from the South, from whence it derives its source or fountain-head, in the mountains of *Algeron*, and the *Cyrus* from the North of *Tilivies*, where it runs by the side of the town that bears that name. When these two famous rivers have once united their waters together, they roll away towards the north-east, beyond *Sgawad*; and from thence they continue their course East, and run in a meandering passage till they empty their waters, or lose themselves in the (*b*) *Caspian* sea. As for the rest, 'tis no easy task to find out their various windings. I made a draught, in the best manner I could, of the place where these two rivers join, as the reader will see in the plate, No. 45. hereto annexed; in which place they part

The *Cyrus*
and the
Arras.

the country of *Mogan* from *Arras*, or *Araxes*, is distinguished by the letter B. We sent our bales over in several boats to the river; and we had halted; and our camels from over, which was time to accomplish. At that time, happened to several places, we could not the bottom, and about the sand-bank, on one side the water was very deep; the camels were dead, the camels were over them. The custom of a bridge of boats, when their lower, linked together, substantial, iron chain, river swells and widens, was not then ready.

There are two or three employed principally of reeds, where the inhabitants employed in washing off I went accordingly into to gratify my curiosity, that in the execution of it was but one person's aid time required. On the went in, there was a heated from within, a was a very capacious kettle, hot water, just ready to be costs of the worms were more, or person who was erecting off the silk, as I found on one side of the candlestick, heated the cots with a lamp for that purpose. I do not this little reed-cottage, about eight or nine paces, that was fixed to the side he turned with to the shore, much after the manner of a European turn a stone, which were two flicks of which there were two) towards the silk from

THE TRAVELS OF

1703
and brought him forwards along with them; and as the horse, which had thus casually thrown him, stood as still as a statue by his side, during the whole time that he lay upon the ground, he had the additional good fortune of having lost nothing; his fall, however, had enfeebled him to that degree, that it was with the utmost difficulty he kept the caravan in sight.

This part of the country, which is low, abounds with grafs, that is a foot or two high, and this is the beft and choicest pafture that can be procured for camels; for when they have that, they ftand in need of no other. This particular pafture is called *Poes* by the Armenians, but by the Turks *Voffiaen*. Notwithstanding this is fuch excellent provender for camels, and is tolerably agreeable to cows; yet no horfe will touch one morfel of it.

Pl. 47.

The remainder of our effects, as also our beasts of burthen, crossed the river on the third instant; but in this passage we had the misfortune to lose two of our camels. The horses swam over, as they were held fast with ropes by proper persons who were crossing in boats. In the afternoon we crossed it ourselves; and as I was now in the country of Mogan, I made a second draught there of the course of the river, and the country of Shirwan, as the reader will find it in the plate No. 47. hereto annexed.

The village, of which we have been speaking, is covered with trees to that degree, that it is a difficult matter to distinguish the houses. The day following we were joined by the two other guides of the caravan. In the interim, I went out to take a view of the two rivers on this side; but the banks were encumbered to that degree with brambles, reeds, and other lofty vegetables, that it was above an hour before I could reach the Arras; besides, as I had no-body but my servant to attend me in that expedition, we had not the good fortune to find out a beaten path; neither did we meet with any person that could direct us to one: however, at last, we did get a fight of the river, and

of some few old, weather-beaten cottages, or huts, which the inhabitants had perfectly abandoned. As an additional mortification, we were obstructed by a deep ditch; which obliged us to seek out for another way to bring us nearer to the river; but notwithstanding all our efforts, we could not, on account of the height and steepness of the banks, by any means accomplish our Ends. From the spot, however, on which we were, though not so near as we could have wished, we had a very distinct view of the two rivers; and I observed that the Arras, or Araxes, came a little higher from the south-west, and that it was much narrower there than the Kur; for at most, as well as I could form a judgment of the thing, it was not above forty or five and forty paces in breadth; whereas, when their streams are united, they are above one hundred: but more particularly, near the village called Sgawad, which lies in 39 degrees, 54 minutes of northern latitude. Though I imagined I should have met with a variety of game here; yet there was none at all as I could find. There is abundance of liquorice, however, to be met with in this place. By sunset, I got sight again of the caravan; and by break of day, we began to move after the camels, which had been gone some time before. We pursued our journey to the south-westward, and left the Arras to the right; and having advanced three leagues farther, we halted in a plain, where we saw a small lake, one part whereof goes round a little hill, and extends higher up into the country. This place is distinguished by the name of Celsan, and is not above half a league from that, where the Arras turns off to the right. When the water which proceeds from Arras is very high, great quantities of fish, but of tortoises in particular, are to be met with in this lake. We took several of these last, both in the water, and on the shore; some whereof were at least a foot in circumference. As soon as the sun was set, we moved forwards again; there were no less than six hundred camels, and three hundred horses in our caravan. In

Large
Tortoisesh

the night we travelled a which abounded with a or herb, that was excellent the inhabitants called *Yeh* precious a nature, that is much as touch it will if proves invariably fatal; is always taken to prevent hidden a definition. They be thought a mortifying enough; yet still there is a is, there cannot one drop of with for the long treacher progress. We spent it travelling this plan; and we halted at the side brook, which proceeds to the reef, and does itself, the higher up into the country about three years before, or governor of that country, during the summer, these plains, and in the had given orders to have about two leagues distant and but about five or six The water of it is tolerably though on account of the wild fish; but it is not enough, when it has had a little.

On one side of this is a small number of poor, made of mud, which I saw for about three years called by the Ishibian. there is not another village I met with a kind of Wags of some length, as was and exceedingly sweet, and them any fruit of that kind ever seen in any other place. The fact of it that of all others, but in this place, likewise they had fruit called Chabachi, a woman, I began to inquire of it, which whole lot of a fine and this Chabachi was also white. Water - melons.

new old, weather-beaten cottages, which the inhabitants had perfect-ly re-
ed. As an additional mortifi-
we were distracted by a deep
which obliged us to seek out for
way to bring us near to the ri-
notwithstanding all our efforts,
not, on account of the height and
of the banks, by any means ac-
our Ends. From the spot, how-
which we were, though not so
we could have wished, we had a
infr view of the two rivers; and
id that the Arras or Araxes came
er from the south-west, and that it
h narrower than the Kur;
ost, as well as I could form a
if the thing, it was not above
re and forty paces in breadth;
when their streams are united,
e above one hundred; but more
ity, near the village called Spawd,
es in 39 degrees, 54 minutes of
latitude. Though I imagined I
we met with a variety of game
there was none at all as I could
here is abundance of liquorice,
to be met with in this place. By
t fight again of the caravan; and
of day, we began to move after
as, which had been gone some
ore. We pursued our journey to
h-westward, and left the Arras to
t; and having advanced three
urther, we halted in a plain,
saw a small lake, one part
es round a little hill, and extends
into the country. This place
lled by the name of Cellan,
above half a league from that,
t Arras turns off to the right.
ne water which proceeds from
very high, great quantities of fish,
articles in particular, are to be met
this lake. We took several of
both in the water, and on the
me whetof were at least a foot
ference. As soon as the sun
we moved forwards again; there
less than five hundred camels, and
hundred horses in our caravan. In the

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

A ven-
mous plant,
called Jass-
sian,

the night we traversed a very flat country, which abounded, with a very lofty plant or herb, that was excessively bitter, by the inhabitants called Jassian, and of so poisonous a nature, that if cattle do but so much as touch it with their mouths, it proves inevitably fatal; but peculiar care is always taken to prevent them from so sudden a destruction. Though this must be thought a mortifying circumstance enough; yet still there is a worse; and that is, there is not one drop of water to be met with for the long stretch of a twelve hours progress. We spent the whole night in traversing this plain; and at break of day, we halted at the side of a rivulet, or brook, which proceeds from the Arras to the west, and loses itself, as it runs a little higher up into the country. It was but about three years before, that the Khan, or governor of that country, who generally, during the summer season, resides in these plains, and in the winter at Ardebil, had given orders to have it dug. 'Tis but about two leagues distant from the Arras, and but about five or six feet in breadth. The water of it is tolerably good to drink, though on account of the sand, it is somewhat foul; but it is palatable and fine enough, when it has had a proper time to settle.

On one side of this brook, there are a small number of poor houses and huts, made of rushes, which had been standing for about three years. This place is called by the Inhabitants Anhaer; and there is not another village near it. Here I met with a kind of Water-melon, that was of some length; as within very white, and exceedingly sweet, and quite different from any fruit of that kind which I had ever seen in any other country whatsoever. The seed of it is not black, like that of all others, but is of a chefnut colour, and very small.

In this place, likewise, I perceived that they had a fruit called Chamama, that is, the breast of a woman; because it bears a near resemblance to it, which is not only very wholesome but of a fine flavour. Though this Chamama is not altogether unlike the white Water-melons abovementioned;

Water-
melons
white and
sweet,

Their Cha-
mama, a
pleasant
fruit,

231

1703

yet 'tis more firm and substantial; and as to its colour and size, it nearly resembles a China orange. My fellow-traveller, the Armenian, assures me, that they grow likewise at Ipahan, and are deemed there a very valuable fruit; inasmuch, that gentlemen and ladies frequently carry them in their hands as an odoriferous nosegay. Some of them, indeed, are considerably smaller, and parti-coloured; that is to say, streaked with red, yellow, and green: tho' the seeds of some of these are all small and white; yet those of others are small indeed, but perfectly red. It is a very agreeable refreshment, and there is such plenty of them all over the country, that the purchase of one of them will not amount to above a penny at most. There are other melons, indeed, still cheaper, but then they have not that delicious flavour.

We proceeded on our journey in the evening about an hour before sun-set, steering our course to the south-eastward; and at about the distance of half a league from thence we traversed a small river, which was about five foot in breadth, and eighteen inches only in depth. Here, one of our horses, loaded with silk, fell down; but as to the rest of our cattle, they got safe over, without the least misfortune attending them. In the night, we passed over the heath, or plain, called Mokar; and on the seventh instant, about two in the morning, we entered upon some mountains, the sands whereof were as folioid, and as firm as gravel. When we had travelled till about an hour after sun-set, we halted in a plain, which was encompassed with hills and mountains, situate on the banks of a river, whose water was perfectly fine, and clear almost as chrysal, by the inhabitants called Bascharatshai, or Balaru, whose fountain head, or source, lies in the country of Talis, and from thence runs till it empties its waters into the Caspian Sea. At present, however, it cannot boast of its plenty of water, as it is supplied by two springs only from the mountains. The country all round about bears the same name as the river. There had been no caravans, for some considera-

ble

th high-lands, and watered by
at above-mentioned. As we
ely wet, we would fain have
es in the village; but as we
cabbins, or huts, to be in a very
ous condition, we chose rather
to our tents again for that
otwithstanding there are a great
those wretched houses in the
all, likewise, under the shelter
wide-spreading trees. So heavy,
was the rain, all that night, that
which before were standing on
d, were now floating on the wa-
he weather continued so bad as
our moving forward on our
e returned once more to the
then we were forced to change
twice, on account of our not
proper shelter from the rain;
ured down from those large aper-
which most of those cabbins have
inlets to the light. In a word,
duced to the necessity of drying
ivities by a fire, made of the
ws and camels.

eleventh instant, however, the
egan to favour us; and then we
r camels before us in the even-
bout three hours before day-
followed them with the wea-
ne enough, and with a glimpse of
ough we could not discern either
ier. About half an hour af-
we traversed the small river call-
; and in the progress of one
we were obliged to cross it
times over. After that we tra-
r several very high mountains,
were covered with snow, where
the weather exceedingly bleak
; notwithstanding there fell, at
time, a kind of mist or drizzling
ne next day, we reached the plains
near the village called Nardobe,
condists but of a few straggling
of the (s) Tartars. There
ained several very fine fowls for
ese pieces, and eggs for a peew
n. There likewise we procured
y good milk and butter. When
advanced about half a league
ence, we halted between the
moun-

mountains, in a fine flat, on the banks
of the little river called Siloof, the wa-
ters whereof are very palatable, and ex-
ceedingly clear. The hills and mountains
there are likewise very pleasant, and a-
bound with villages. About noon, the
weather began to be fair; the sun had
dispersed the clouds; and at midnight,
we proceeded once more on our journey
over hill and dale, with a fine moon-light,
almost as bright as day. The next morning
we halted on a kind of rising ground, at
about five leagues distance from the place
where we had spent the night, and at the
distance of about two leagues from Arde-
vil, where we had the prospect of several
high mountains, which were covered with
snow. About nine o'clock at night, as
we were favoured with a fine moon-light,

we pushed forwards. But our good guide,
the moon, too soon deserted us, and a
thick fog arose in her stead, which conti-
nued till the next morning; by which
misfortune we straggled out of our way.
We reached, however, the village called
Adgarneloe betimes in the morning; there
we passed over a bridge, consisting of six
arches, under one of which runs the river,
called Goeroetsjou, that is, the Dry River.
The caravan halted in this village about
ten, and we proceeded on our way towards
the city; where we dismounted at the
Armenian Caravanfera, or inn. The fog
continued till the 15th in the morning, at
which time it dispersed; and as we were
obliged to make some considerable stay at
Ardevil, I sent to the village for my bag-
gage.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Cur, Kur, or Cyrus, a river of Asia,
which rises in mount Caucasus, and running
south through Georgia, and the province of
Chirvan in Persia, unites its waters with the
river Arras, or Araxes, and continues its course
east to the Caspian sea.

(b) Arras or Araxes. See p. 199. n. r.

(c) Ardevil, or Ardebil, east long. 64. 20.
lat. 36. situate thirty miles east of Tauris, the
burying-place of some of the Persian kings.

(d) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(e) Turkey, see p. 203. n. t.

(f) Derbent, see p. 198. n. d.

(g) Arabia, see p. 208. n. a.

(h) Caspian sea, see p. 60. n. q.

(i) Media, see p. 214. n. e.

(k) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(l) Germany, see p. 204. n. g.

(m) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.

CHAP. XXXV.

*A particular Description of the pompous and magnificent Mausoleum,
or funeral Monument of Sefi, King of Persia. An Account of the
City, called Ardevil, or Ardebil. Another sumptuous Mausoleum,
near Kelgeran. The Author sets out from Ardevil, and arrives at
Sengael.*

AS I was exceedingly ambitious of
procuring a sight of the sumptuous
(a) mausoleum of Sefi in particular, and
of several other (b) funeral monuments of

the kings of Persia, who lie interred in the
city of Ardevil, I shall amuse my readers
with a particular description of that mag-
nificent sepulchre, before I enter upon any
account

O o o

The pomp-
ous monu-
ment of
Sefi.

234

T H E T R A V E L S O F

1703

account of the city itself. These sumptuous monuments then, are erected near the Meydoen, that is, a moderately spacious Square, so called by the inhabitants. The entrance into it is very wide, and erected in a very elegant manner, all vaulted over head, and the stones painted in a variety of colours. We went in by a large wooden-gate, and then came directly into a curious, long gallery; on the top of the walls whereof are divers niches, very accurately painted with blue, green, yellow, and white. At the farther end of this long, spacious gallery, we came to a door, that was plated over with silver, which, as soon as opened, admitted us into a grand, magnificent apartment, on the right-hand whereof there is a pompous salon, or hall, with a dome over head, without any columns, or pillars to support it, somewhat resembling that of the (*b*) Rotunda at (*c*) Rome, though not, indeed, of equal extent. The floor of this salon, which is directly opposite to the library and the chapel, is covered with fine carpets; and on the left-hand, over against the entrance to the dome, there is another very lofty apartment with large, glass-windows. From thence we moved forwards through another door, plated over with silver, and came into a court which was nearly quadrangular, and the wall thereof no less than eighteen foot in height. On every side there were three niches, each painted with a variety of very lively colours, embellished with foliages in sculpture, or carved work. On the right-hand of us, there were several funeral monuments with raised coffins in them; some whereof, in particular, were very curiously decorated; and others again, on the left of us, which were separated by a slight wall against that of Sefi; where, (as we were informed) lie the remains, or ashes of divers illustrious princes, descendants from the royal families of that country. There is one apartment, on the right, and another on the left of the above-mentioned court, each of which is raised three foot above the ground, and vaulted over head, in the form of a dome. In the front, they are parted by a wooden balustrade towards the court, in one of the

Several
monu-
ments.

1703

corners whereof, on the left-hand, there is a folding-door, which is not only plated over with silver, but has a chain, likewise, belonging to it all of massy silver. Here we were obliged to put off our shoes, before we presumed to enter in, or touch the ground-sil, which is composed of white-marble. All the other apartments have white-marble ground-sils, likewise; but then, they are covered with mats. Here we met with a considerable number of Persians, who were seated on stone-benches, both to the right-hand, and the left; for to these, it seems, is committed the whole trust and care of this superb-sepulchre; and to these, likewise, we were obliged to give an acknowledgement, in case we were inclined to proceed any farther: These attendants are not only so frank, and ingenuous, in your acts of benevolence, as to let you know their sentiments, in very intelligible terms; but are apt to turn the tables upon you, and make an exorbitant demand of five, or six times the sum. However, when they find they have disgusted their visitors so far, as to provoke them to put their shoes on their feet again, in order to return; then they begin to be more humble, and willing to submit the gratuity to their own option. When we had been admitted through this door, we came into a small place, that was vaulted in the manner of an half-dome: from thence, on the right-hand, we went through another door, which was embellished with a balustrade of gold, or at least, of silver, richly gilt, and came into a very stately and solemn apartment, in which there were, at proper distances, fixed such a number of gold, and silver lamps, all burning, each, of an ell at least in circumference, that there was no possibility of counting them. Here the floor was covered with rich carpets; and both on the right-hand and left, there were abundance of small reading-desks, with books, as large as our usual church Common-prayer-books upon them. This apartment is two and fifty-foot in length, but in breadth, indeed, but thirty-four. The mausoleum of Sefi stands conspicuous

at

at the upper-end of this is raised on three steps above the chambers, or lamp is, is all of the most rich and of an amazing circumference this, we saw a balustrade likewise, raised on sil, which, tho' not at only, which, is at least six thickets, is at least six inches in length (exclusive of the door) and near ten This was a folding-door, we went into a small circle the center whereof, stood monument of Sefi, composed of gold brocade, and covered over with a grain, of gold brocade, and covered over with a grain, gold rise at each corner. likewise, there are almost a bet of lamps; some made others of gold. This is ment is three foot high, round these several sepulchres, which are put candles, each of solid over the tomb of Sefi dome, covered over with side of it, another, which with purple and green flowers by glass. Tho' some are temporarily erected, in this place, that no layers as the king himself, is in at the golden door, in monument of Sefi; yet, they by experience. I only just slept in, without Go to be being fully profound vacation they

Before this, stood two

whereof was of an inch

kind it; that is to say, five

that of Sefi himself, that

direction; that of king T

of Pecheli, named Soli

was fixed alive by the (*e*)

of a son of king Tendi;

Arder. The lamps that

round these several sepulchres

lit up every night; b

tapes, which are put

candlesticks, each of solid

over the tomb of Sefi

dome, covered over with

side of it, another, which

with purple and green flowers

by glass. Tho' some are

temporarily erected, in

this place, that no layers

as the king himself, is

in at the golden door, in

monument of Sefi; yet,

they by experience. I

only just slept in, witho

Go to be being fully co

profound vacation they

whereof, on the left-hand, there is a door, which is not only plated with silver, but has a chain, likewise, to it all of massy silver. Here we are to put off our shoes, before we enter in, or touch the ground. It is composed of white-marble. Other apartments have white-bound-floors, likewise; but then, covered with mats. Here we see a considerable number of Persian carpets, were seated on stone-benches, the right-hand, and the left; for it seems, is committed the whole care of this superb-sepulchre, likewise, we were obliged to acknowledge, in case we were proceed any farther: These are not only so frank, and ingenuous, in your acts of benevolence, as to know their sentiments, in very plain terms; but are apt to turn the conversation on you, and make an exorbitant use of five, or six times the form, when they find they have discovered in you, as to provoke you to put their shoes on their feet again, so return; then they begin to be humble, and willing to submit to their own opinion. When we are admitted through this door, we go to a small place, that was vaulted in manner of an half-dome: from on the right-hand, we went into another door, which was enriched with a balustrade of gold, or at least, richly gilt, and came into a very and solemn apartment, in which were, at proper distances, a number of gold, and silver burning, each of an ell at least in circumference, that there was no possibility of counting them. Here the floor was covered with rich carpets; and both right-hand and left, there were rows of small reading-desks, with large as our usual church Communion-books upon them. This is a two and fifty-foot in length, breadth, indeed, but thirty-four in width, of Sefi stands conspicuous at

1703

at the upper-end of this grand room, and is raised on three steps above the floor; and the chandelier, or lamp that hangs over it, is all of the most refined, solid gold, and of an amazing circumference. Beyond this, we saw a balustrade, all of solid gold likewise, raised on one single step only, which, tho' not above an inch in thickness, is at least six feet and nine inches in length (exclusive of the fronton of the door) and near ten feet in height. This was a folding-door, through which we went into a small circular chappel, in the center whereof, stood the superb monument of Sefi, composed of marble, covered over with a grand, pompous pall, all of gold brocade, and crowned with a large gold vase at each corner. In this chappel, likewise, there are almost an infinite number of lamps; some made of silver, and others of gold. This sepulchral monument is three foot high, nine foot long, and four foot broad.

The monument of Sefi.

Other monuments.

Before this, stood two other tombs, one whereof was of an infant: and two behind it; that is to say, five in all; namely, that of Sefi himself; that of his son Fedredin; that of king Tzenid, and a son of Fedredin, named Soltan Arder, who was dead alive by the (e) Turks; another of a son of king Tzenid; and that of king Aider. The lamps that are thus fixed all round these several sepulchral tombs, are lit up every night; besides two large tapers, which are put into two large candlesticks, each of solid gold. Directly over the tomb of Sefi there is a small dome, covered over with gold, and on one side of it, another, which is incrustated with purple and green stones, all accurately glazed. Tho' some travellers have peremptorily asserted, in their accounts of this place, that no layman, not so much as the king himself, is permitted to enter in at the golden door, in order to see this monument of Sefi; yet, I know the contrary by experience. I must confess, I only just stepped in, without presuming to go too far, being fully convinced of the profound veneration they have for that

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

235

1703

sacred spot. Every step we made forwards, we found, required a fee, tho' we had paid pretty roundly at our first admittance. We were forced to put our hands, in short, into our purses at every new door. To do them justice, however, the attendants are very courteous, and communicative enough; they will answer as many questions, as ever you shall think proper to propose: and, so far were they from hurrying us, that they seemed highly delighted to find, that I pryed into every corner, and was so remarkably attentive to each individual curiosity that they shewed me.

At the entrance into this magnificent apartment, we found, that on the left-hand side, there were several small apartments, all fast locked up, wherein, as we were informed, there were divers other royal monuments inclosed; and (amongst those of many other kings and queens) is that of king Ishmael, the son of Aidel; that of king Tamar, the son of Ishmael; that of king Ishmael, the second, the son of Tamar; that of king Mohammed Khodebend, the son of Ishmael; that of Ishmael Mirsa; that of Hemsa Mifsa, and of the brothers of king Abbas, the son of Khodebend. These last mentioned monuments, it seems, have no decorations to strike the eye of any curious spectator.

Tombs of several kings.

As we went out of the grand salon, or hall, we turned on the right-hand into a passage that leads to the Kitchin, the door whereof, is, likewise, plated with silver. The kitchen itself, however, tho' very spacious, is by no means correspondent with the grandeur of its door. In the center of it there are two large wells; and in the wall, which is lofty enough, there are several nooks, or niches, for the reception of pots and kettles, and a great number of stores beneath. This is the place set apart for dressing the victuals of all such as are attendants, and entrusted with the care of the above described sepulchre. Here, likewise, they distribute what they call Peloe every night to some hundreds of poor people.

A nightly contribution to the poor.

My

THE TRAVELS OF

236

1703

My curiosity being thus fully gratified, I went back to the Meydoen, in order to take a survey of his majesty's gardens, each of which is separated from the other, by a wall, erected for that purpose, on one side of the sepulchral vaults above-mentioned. King Sefi formerly made that particular spot, it seems, his favourite place of abode, in a once pompous, and superb edifice, built all with stone, tho' at present, indeed, it is reduced to a heap of rubbish. There are here, however, not only two apartments still subsisting, with commodious chimneys in each, wherein some of the attendants peremptorily insist, that they were formerly part of the royal chamber, set apart for his majesty's own private use; but also some few others, and a small bagnio, or bath, but void of all decorations.

King Sefi's
gardens.

The first garden, which is of some considerable extent, is very irregular, and tho' shamefully neglected, it is plentifully stored with a great variety of fruits. However, there are no flowers, no plants to be met with, that deserve the least attention of the curious spectator: In various places, it is watered by several little springs, which run across it, both here and there.

As to the second garden, there is no structure at all in it; neither is it so spacious as the former. The trees, however, in this, are much more lofty than those in the first. In a word, both are so little worthy of a stranger's notice, that he could never form an idea of so mean a spot of ground being once a royal garden.

From thence, we went directly to amuse ourselves with our fishing-rods, in a small river that runs gently along from the adjacent mountains. There we met with an aqueduct, or conduit, for a commodious conveyance of a sufficient quantity of water to the palace. This aqueduct was composed of earth, and raised only some few feet from the ground. On the top, there was a gutter for the water to flow down; and below, through a kind of reservoir, erected on purpose for the conveyance of it into the town; where it serves for watering the gardens as occasion requires. At some distance from this water-house, or reser-

A conduit.

voir, the stream falls, like a cascade, with an impetuous torrent, into the small river just mentioned, and which rolls along through the whole country. Here we caught in all but three, or four small fish only, which I afterwards preserved in spirits.

The day following I set out on horse-back, at about half a league's distance from the town, in order to make a draught of the prospect thereof, as it appeared on that side. I took my stand accordingly on a hill, which was the only commodious place, indeed, from whence I could have a satisfactory view of it; for in every other part, the trees obstructed too much my sight; and to confess the truth, even on the very spot which I made choice of, the prospect I had was somewhat imperfect. Just at this juncture, a shower of rain began to fall down in so heavy a manner, that I lost my labour, and was obliged to make the best of my way home, without making the least progress in my intended survey.

In my return, I saw a house, with a water-mill adjoining to it for grinding of corn: The water that drives this mill, fell from the summit of the loftiest hills thereabouts, to the westward of the town, which hills are eternally covered, it seems, with snow, and the water flows down through a canal, raised of earth, for that particular purpose. This water flows, torrent-like, below the house, and extends itself over the campaign, flat country, to the south-east, where the conduit stands, which I have before-mentioned. These houses, have each a mill beneath, with two great mill-stones, which constantly turn on a piece of hollowed wood, where the corn, when ground, runs through a wooden pipe under the mill-stone, and the flower comes out on each side. The river runs hard by this house, under a large, lofty bridge, consisting of five arches; the lower part whereof is paved with large stones.

We shall now proceed to amuse our readers with an accurate, tho' compendious description of the city, which the inhabitants sometimes distinguish by the name

1703

name of (1) Ardesh,
which
This city is situated on the
the west and east of the province
in the ancient (2) Media
the (3) Caspian sea, and
town of (4) Tauris, or T
ings here are much more
those at (5) Samark, none
are computed at the very
The Brazas here likewise
and much more artfully
however, they have no
gold fillets, or in diam
assert they used to do in
as they do in other pla
are great numbers of mo
with domes; the chief
terable of which, is, that
Mazdi, or Mazdi, Ad
English, their Sunday M
It is situate on the ex
and within the walls, a
on a rising ground, it is
even at a considerable di
vided into several parts, in
is performed twice every
cipal division is moderate
culer, and covered with a
raised on a circular wall,
low, which rises from t
building, in much the
European steeple. In
mosch, there is a bason, a
is furnished with plenty o
falls from the adjacent hill
it is conveyed by pipes,
under-ground; and this
great refreshment to gre
persons who are religiousl
revert thither to perform t
There is not one, however
that can stand in any o
this. In this city, likew
veral bannins, that is, b
There are several streets
des; but then, there are
from it, then, there are
stand, where their
thy of water. As to th
they are all the same, and
ing appearance. There

CC

stream falls, like a cascade, with
ous torrent, into the small
mentioned, and which rolls
ugh the whole country. Here
in all but three, or four small
which I afterwards perceived

Following I let out on horse-
out half a league's distance from
in order to make a draught of
it thereof, as it appeared on that
took my stand accordingly on a
which was the only commodious
ded, from whence I could have
lory view of it; for in every other
trees obstructed too much my
id to confess the truth, even on
spot which I made choice of, the
had was somewhat imperfect.
is juncture, a shower of rain
all down in so heavy a manner,
At my labour, and was obliged to
e best of my way home, without
the least progress in my intended

return, I saw a house, with a
adjoining to it for grinding of
The water that drives this mill,
is the summit of the loftiest hills
is, to the westward of the town,
ills are eternally covered, it seems,
ow, and the water flows down
a canal, raised of earth, for that
lar purpose. This water flows,
like, below the house, and extends
or the campaign, flat country, to
o-east, where the conduit stands,
here before-mentioned. These
ave each a mill beneath, with
at mill-stones, which constantly
piece of hollowed wood, where
, when ground, runs through a
pipe under the mill-stone, and
wer comes out on each side. The
runs hard by this house, under a
lasy bridge, consisting of iron-arches;
water part whereof is paved with

ones.
shall now proceed to amuse our
with an accurate, tho' compen-
sation of the city, which the
description by the
sometimes distinguish the
name

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1703

The situ-
ation of
Ardevil,
or Ardebil.

name of (*f*) Ardevil, and Ardebil at
others.

This city is situate on the north of Per-
sia, and east of the province of Sherwan,
in the antient (*g*) Media, to the south of
the (*h*) Caspian sea, and to the east of the
town of (*i*) Tauris, or Tabris. The build-
ings here are much more magnificent than
those at (*k*) Samachi, notwithstanding they
are composed of the very same materials.
The Bazars here likewise, are much finer,
and much more artfully covered. Here,
however, they have no great dealings in
gold stuffs, or in diamonds, as some will
assert they used to do in former times, and
as they do in other places. Here there
are great numbers of moschs, embellished
with domes; the chief, or most confi-
derable of which, is, that called Mu-zyd,
Mu-zhit, or Maziit Adine, or in plain
English, their Sunday-Mosch.

Its chief
mosch, how
called.

It is situate on the east-side of the city,
and within the walls; and as it is erected
on a rising-ground, it is very conspicuous,
even at a considerable distance. It is di-
vided into several parts, in each of which
is performed divine service. The prin-
cipal division is moderately large and cir-
cular, and covered with a dome, which is
raised on a circular wall, tho' somewhat
low, which rises from the body of the
building, in much the same form as an
European steeple. In the front of this
mosch, there is a basin, or reservoir, which
is furnished with plenty of such water as
falls from the adjacent hills, from whence
it is conveyed by pipes, which are laid
under-ground; and this water proves a
great refreshment to great numbers of
persons who are religiously inclined, and
resort hither to perform their devotions.
There is not one, however, of all the rest,
that can stand in any competition with
this. In this city, likewise, there are se-
veral hamans, that is, bagnios, or baths.
There are several streets in the town, in-
deed; but then, there are only three or
four of them (where their principal shops
stand) that are any ways spacious, or wor-
thy of notice. As to the houses here,
they are all flat at top; and make a shock-
ing appearance. There are more cara-

237

1703

vaseras at Samachi than at this place.
The Indians, however, have three out
of the small number that there are
here.

As to the (*l*) Chinese, they have none
at all; and trade, indeed, droops here
very much. In divers parts of the town
there are plenty of lofty alder-trees, and
lindens; and the river runs on one side
of it. All the roads, likewise, leading
to, and from the town, abound with re-
gular rows of young trees, which, as they
had been but lately planted, must needs,
in the process of a few years, strike the
eye very agreeably, and have a good
effect. The most beautiful part of the
town is the Meydoen, or square, where
the sepulchral monument of Sefi stands,
as we have observed before. There are
several mean, paltry houses, both to the
right and left, which are inhabited only
by a pack of poor, beggarly mechanics.
Most of the houses, however, which are
not situate in the Bazars, notwithstanding
their mean, external appearance, have very
commodious gardens, abounding with all
sorts of fruit-trees; and in the suburbs,
or out-skirts of the town, where houses
stand straggling, and at a considerable dis-
tance from each other, there are large
spots of ground, that are full of trees.
From hence it is, that the town may,
with propriety enough, be said to be of
large extent; and, indeed, much larger
than Samachi; tho' it does not contain
near the number of houses. It is situate
in the center of a spacious plain, which
is at least, three leagues in extent, com-
puting from the two extremities, and en-
compassed by lofty mountains, the highest
of which is distinguished by the name of
Sevalau, or Sebelahu, and is everlastingly
covered with snow. This mountain stands
to the west, north-west of the town.
There is another, called Chilan, which
stands to the east, or south-east of the
town. There is a third at a place called
Sahand, and a fourth, distinguished by the
name of Alvand, which stands at but a
small distance from a place, called Hama-
dan, which is more lofty than either of the
other three. These are commonly called
P P P the

THE TRAVELS OF

1703
Four
mountains,
called the
Brothers

the Brothers, on account of the near resemblance, which they bear to each other.

In the mountains, that stand within a very small distance from the town, there are divers hot baths, which are in great repute with the inhabitants of those parts. One of them is not much above two leagues off, and a second about three; the others, indeed, are at a greater distance.

On my first arrival at this town, I could scarce walk along the streets, for the multitude of people that flocked about me; as my Dutch habit proved a perfect novelty to them. The same inconvenience I laboured under, when I took my survey of the sepulchral monument of Sefi; but there, indeed, the attendants were reduced to the necessity of using rough means with the mob, that hovered on the same account, all round about me. Neither was I perfectly free from a crowd of spectators, even at the caravanserai where I lodged. And one Persian, in particular, was so curious, as to offer a small sum of money to procure a sight of me.

Notwithstanding I was thus incommode-
ed, I drew a view of the town, from a
rising-ground, near the bridge, which I
mentioned some time ago, and which
stands on one side, to the south-west.
The reader will find a prospect of it, as
it is to be seen from without, in the plate
hereto annexed, and numbered 48. I
have distinguished the domes of the se-
pulchre of Sefi, by the letter A. There
are but three of the four to be seen; that
which is invisible from that place, as it
is smaller and lower, is covered with
gold. The great molch of Adnie is dis-
tinguished by the letter B, and the letter
C represents the bridge of eight arches,
which stands on the river that runs across
the plain. As the town is surrounded with
such abundance of lofty trees, there is no-
thing more to be seen. In the plate an-
nexed (No. 49.) I have given the reader
an exact representation of the bridge that
consists of five arches only.

On the 6th of October I went to the village called Kelgeran, which is some-

what more than half a league to the northward of the city; in order to go thither, I was obliged to pass by the sepulchral monument of Stfi, from whence the road is full of alder-trees, and lindens, on each side of a little river. This village is principally inhabited by the (*m*) Armenians, who have two churches here; but both are very small, and very dark.

As I went out of the town, I found there was a high-road, which was planted with trees on each side, and led directly to one of the king's gardens. This garden was inclosed with a large earth-wall only, and seemed to lie in as much disorder, and as much neglected as those above described. Notwithstanding this, there is plenty of good fruit in it; especially of apples, pears, and plums; the flowers, indeed, are very ordinary, and have no good qualities to recommend them. Over-against this, there is another garden, wherein stands an edifice, which tho' run to ruin and decay, has various apartments in it. At the entrance of this village, I saw the sepulchral monument of Seid Tzebrail, the father of Seid above-named; in which royal dormitory are deposited, likewise, the venerable ashes of Seid Sala,

1703

A royal
sepulchre

than half a league to the
of the city, in order to go th.
obliged to pass by the sepul-
ment of S. S. from whence the
of abbots, and layings, on
of a little river. The village is
inhabited by the Armeni-
are two churches here; but
small, and very dark.

at out of the town, I found
highway, which was planted
on each side, and led directly
the King's gardens. This gar-
was filled with a large earth-wall
seemed to lie in as much dis-
as much neglected as those
which. Notwithstanding this,
of good fruit in it; ap-
ples, pears, and plums; the
which, are very delicate, and
which qualities to recommend them.

in this, there is another garden,
which is an edifice, which this man
of S. S. has various quarters
the entrance of this edifice, I
found a monument of S. S.
the name of S. S. above it; and
the edifice are depicted,
the remains of S. S. and S. S.

and those of his grandson,
S. S. This monument
is a garden, surrounded, or inclosed
by a wall, and two large folding-
in the front, and the other
in the rear.

The latter comes out to the
the former is in the village.
The monument is quadrat-
ed, and is covered with
easily lofty, and cased with
There is a round tower on
it, tho' but low, which sup-
ports a dome, inclosed with gold
and silver decorations, surrounded with
On each side of the walls,
are six several windows, the highest
are exquisitely well wrought,
painted, and embellished like
and those underneath them,
on an iron-grate, and fluted
There are three small
within. These are three small
below the cornish, which are or-
namented with a rich variety of colours,
and

1703

and in the centre of the structure behind;
there is a wooden-gate, with a step to it.
Above this door, likewise, there is a deco-
ration in the form of a semi-vault, with
three small windows in it. This door, I
perceived, was fast locked; and, that in
the front is a very fine portal. As I could
see nobody to apply to for admittance, I
took a draught of it thro' the crevices of
the gate, as well as I could, a representa-
tion whereof the reader will find in plate
number 50. In the village, and near the
front of this structure, there is a basin,
perfectly even with the ground; which,
tho' but fourteen foot long, is sixteen
broad. There are six steps to the door
of this edifice; and, in order to go over
the groundfil of it, I was obliged to pull
off my shoes; in the same ceremonial
manner as I had done before at the monu-
ment of king Sefi; and most of the de-
votees kiss the sepulchre, when they pay
it a visit. When I was got into the first
apartment, which has a curious glass-win-
dow above, I found the floor was cover-
ed with carpets. At a door, directly op-
posite to the first, I had a view of this
sepulchre, which was raised six foot high,
and stood in the center of a very elegant
apartment. It was composed of wood,
indeed; but then, as they were pleased to
inform me, the enchasings were all of
solid gold. The pall that is spread over
it is of a rich brocade; and there are se-
veral silver, and golden-lamps, not only
before, but over the door. Notwithstand-
ing, I was not permitted to stir an inch
beyond the door, where the monument
stands erected; yet, I could see every
thing distinctly, and was as curious as I
could in making my observations.

An unhap-
py accident

Whilst I was thus busily employed in
taking this survey, my guide, who was an
Armenian, unfortunately happened to have
some angry words with the attendants on
the place; and from opprobrious lan-
guage they came, in short, to blows. At
this quarrel I was greatly concerned, and
used my utmost endeavours to compromise
the matter, and make them friends again,
if possible; in order to prevent the fatal
consequences, that sometimes attend the

1703

like disorders. I knew very well, the in-
habitants of this place were very vindic-
tive, as well as proud and imperious; and
that the governor of the province had
spent no less than forty years in bringing
them under due subjection; and before he
could accomplish it at last, he was re-
duced to the necessity of sending some
part of them away to (n) Isaphan. For-
merly they were so headstrong, brutish, and
outrageous, that whenever they thought
proper, they would take even wives away
from their husbands by force; neither
would they regard whom they sacrificed
to their rage and resentment, in case
they met but with the least opposition.
The merchants themselves, at that time,
were not safe, even in their caravanseras,
from the injuries and insults of those fi-
rage and untractable people. The Khan,
however, at present, has found out, it
seems, ways and means for giving a check
to their usual insolence, notwithstanding
he has no foot-guards, and only about
three hundred horse.

On the second instant, the effects be-
longing to the merchants were carried
to the village, called Adgaerndoe,
where the guide of the caravan dwelt,
who made us lose, through his contriv-
ance, or misconduct, the very finest part
of all the season. On the ninth, however,
he determined to set forwards; but as
there had fallen before such a prodigious
quantity of rain, he was under an abso-
lute necessity of postponing his departure
till the twelfth. Whilst I was here, several
Armenian priests made their applications to
me for my benevolence and free-gift of what
I thought proper, towards the erection of
a church, intended to be dedicated to
St. John, as soon as finished, and which
workmen were daily forwarding in an
adjacent village. Accordingly, I made them
a little present, which was gratefully enough
received, and wished them all the good
success that so laudable an undertaking
very justly deserved.

On the eleventh, I made the necessary
preparations for my departure, after a whole
month spent at Ardevil before-mentioned,
and sent my cargo to the caravan. On the
twelfth,

1703
twelfth, as I arose by day-break, I met with a great number of Persians, who, as they passed through the town, were all jovial and merry, on account of their safe return from (*o*) Mecca, where they had been a voluntary pilgrimage to the sacred mausoleum, or dormitory, of their great prophet Mohammed.

There it was, that the caravan began to set out in the afternoon; and as we faced to the southward, after we had crossed the plain, we got amongst some mountains, from whence we had the finest prospect imaginable, not only of the city, but of all the adjacent villages. Though every thing had a very good effect there; yet we were at too great distance to discern objects quite so distinctly as we could have wished. The caravan halted at a village, called Sardale, which is near three leagues from the city; but such a sudden fog, or mist, arose upon us, at our entrance on the mountains, that we had but a very imperfect view of them. The soil of the lands adjacent to this village, which is of a moderate extent, is very fertile, and abounds with corn, which we found laid up in heaps, on all sides.

We set out from hence, at three in the morning, and accomplished our passage over the mountains; and when we were got at some considerable distance from them; those which were the highest, appeared to the eye, as if their tops had touched the very clouds. Even there likewise, the soil is moderately fertile; and the peasants there, who are very numerous, were very busily employed in tilling the ground with buffaloes, and oxen. At nine, after having passed through several little, inconsiderable villages, we came to that called Koraming, which is pretty extensive, and abounds with large heaps of corn.

There we halted in the plain, by the side of a rivulet, or brook, which runs across it; and there we espied a prodigious flight of small birds; some snipes, and others thrushes; of which I shot a considerable number: I killed likewise two small young wild ducks. The lands that lie all round these villages abound with

The author
diverts
himself
with
fishing.

fruit-trees, as well as willows and alders. Here we waited for some of our companions, whom we had left behind; and in that interval I made a draught of the prospect, which the reader will find hereto annexed in plate 51.

Towards the evening, the fog fell heavy upon us again, and so continued till midnight; at which time we got amongst the mountains, but then, indeed, the moon favoured us, and shone serenely bright.

On the fifteenth, in the morning, we came to a village called Fartaba. By break of day on the sixteenth, we moved forwards among the mountains. My two friends, the Armenians, who had tarried behind, overtook us, and joined us before it was dark; and on the seventeenth, after we had journeyed over several rocks, we halted among the mountains. That day we overtook our camels, which had set out before us; and at about half a league distance from thence we had a full view of the famous mount (*p*) Taurus, by the inhabitants called Cafelufan.

It extends itself a great way up the country, and is distinguished by a great variety of names, according to the several places which it crosses; in the southern parts of (*q*) Asia minor, however, it retains its first and most proper appellation. Some historians, indeed, confound it with mount (*r*) Caucasus. We began to ascend this remarkable mountain by three in the morning. We found it prodigiously steep, and full of rocks, with large fissures, and such precipices, as were enough to strike the boldest heart with terror. And as the path-way, or road, is very narrow, and consequently very dangerous, we were obliged to dismount and walk on foot. Though the passage over it, for the generality, is accomplished in somewhat less than an hour; yet we were two hours at least in the completion of ours; as our caravan happened to be more numerous than usual. As we descended, we saw such precipices, as must doubtless be very shocking to such as travel this road in the night-time. When we got safe over this mountain, we came into a plain,

plain, which we found of
able extent, and which w
half, we then proceeded
another mountain, or st
hand of mount Taurus,
plate, divides itself into tw
which runs the river call
some, and Karp by other
It course, or stream, is
is waters, at various dist
among the rocks, like so
with a prodigious force,
springing in the well, and
the Caspian-sea.

Over this river king
stone bridge, ten pace
length no less than o
fifty. This bridge is mo
consists of six arches; th
wider than the rest.
experience, or openings
them, and a sort of a
between the other two
river runs thro' only o
except the waters are c
good their usual height
crossed over this bridge w
to wait till the caravan
sensible behind, those
my friends, the Armeni
opportunity to regale th
with or two of coffee;
part, I improved this
taking a draught of
annexed in plate LII.
When we were all w
the second mountain, c
(as we observed before
which is much hotter,
steeper than the former
greatly fatigued, howev
over the first, on foot;
here several times to re
cover our breath.
At last, indeed, wh
ter path, we all re-
the summit by break o

as well as willows and alders, waited for some of our company whom we had left behind; and at an interval I made a draught of the which the reader will find hereto in plate 51.

At this evening, the fog fell heavy again, and so continued till midnight, when we got through the fog, but then, indeed, the moon shone serenely bright.

At length, in the morning, we a village called Fataba. By day on the sixteenth, we moved among the mountains. My horse, the Armenians, who had behind, overtook us, and joined us as dark; and on the seventeenth, I journeyed over several rocks, among the mountains. That overtook our camels, which had before us; and at about half a distance from thence we had a full view of the famous mount (*h*) Taurus, the Armenians called *Caléulan*.

It is itself a great way up the mountain, and is distinguished by a great many names, according to the several which it crosses; in the southern part, it is called *Alia minor*, however, it is first and most proper appearance, indeed, confound some historians, indeed, confound mount (*r*) Caucasus. We began to ascend this remarkable mountain by the morning. We found it steep, and full of rocks, with precipices, as were the boldest heart with terror, as the path-way, or road, is very dangerous, and consequently very dangerous, and obliged to dismount and were obliged to dismount and cover our passage over the mountain. Though the passage over generally, is accomplished in it less than an hour; yet we were as at least in the completion of our caravan happened to be more than usual. As we descended, the precipices, as much doubtless, crossing to such as travel this mountain. When we got to the night-time, we came into this mountain, we came into

1703

plain, which we found of a very considerable extent, and which we crossed to the left, and then proceeded till we came to another mountain, or at least another branch of mount Taurus, which in this place, divides itself into two parts, between which runs the river called Kifilosan, by some, and Kurp by others.

Its course, or stream, is very rapid, and its waters, at various distances, fall down among the rocks, like so many cascades, with a prodigious force. It has its rise, or spring, in the west, and empties itself into the Caspian-sea.

Over this river king Tamar erected a stone-bridge, ten paces in breadth, and in length no less than one hundred and fifty. This bridge is moderately lofty, and consists of six arches; three whereof are wider than the rest. There are three apertures, or openings, between four of them, and a sort of a semi-circular tower between the other two. At present, the river runs thro' only one or two at most, except the waters are casually swelled beyond their usual height. When we had crossed over this bridge, we halted, in order to wait till the caravan, which was considerable behind, should overtake us: my friends, the Armenians, embraced this opportunity to regale themselves with a dish or two of coffee; but for my own part, I improved this short interval, by taking a draught of the prospect hereto annexed in plate LII.

When we were all joined, we ascended the second mountain, or the other branch (as we observed before) of the Taurus, which is much loftier, larger, and more steep than the former: as we had been greatly fatigued, however, in our passage over the first, on foot; we were obliged here several times to stop, in order to recover our breath.

At last, indeed, when we got into a better path, we all re-mounted, and gained the summit by break of day. Two hours

The river of Kifilosan

Pl. LII.
A fine prospect.

after us, the rest of the caravan-mounted their horses again; and by that time we had got about half a league farther, we came into a very fine, and well cultivated country.

By nine in the morning we reached the village called Kafiebeggeraffi; where we purchased grapes, for the first time, after the rate of four-pence per pound. All the road beyond mount Taurus, as well as the soil is extremely good.

From thence we had a view of another mountain, called Sawalan, which is much loftier than the former, and everlastingly covered with snow; but in order to rest, and refresh ourselves a little, we halted here a whole day.

On the twentieth instant, we set forwards about three in the morning, the weather favouring us exceedingly; and by about seven, we came to a rivulet, or brook, the waters whereof run down almost to the village called Jamkoela. There we met with some uncommon birds, called by the inhabitants Baeker-Kara. After that we passed through several villages, from whence we had a prospect of mount Taurus, at a considerable distance; and in much the same manner, as the reader will find it represented in Plate LIII.

On the twenty second we traversed a wide plain, which was bordered, on the left-hand, by several hills and mountains, where the inhabitants obliged us with better grapes than those we bought at first, and of a more exquisite flavour.

On the twenty third, we reached the town called Samgaël; and after we had passed through it, and left it behind us for some considerable time, we halted once more; and there we were furnished with several pomegranates, which proved exceedingly fine, moderately large, and of a most beautiful colour. There likewise we purchased, at a moderate price, some very fine grapes, and other refreshing fruits.

Q99

Occa-

The mountain of Sawalan.

Pl. LIII.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Mausoleum, a famous, marble sepulchre, built by Artemiſia, in honour of her husband Mausolus, king of Caria: it was thirty five cubits high, 44 foot about, and ſupported by thirty fix marble pillars. As this was accounted one of the ſeven wonders of the world, all other rich and magnificent ſepulchral monuments are diſtinguiſhed from thence by the name of a Mausoleum.

(b) Rotundo, at Rome, was a famous edifice there, ſo called, from its being built in a circular form both within and without.

(c) Rome, ſee p. 108. n. g.

(d) Perſia, ſee p. 64. n. o.

(e) Turkey, ſee p. 203. n. e.

(f) Ardevil, or Ardebil, ſee p. 233. n. e.

(g) Media, ſee p. 214. n. e.

(h) Caſpian-ſea, ſee p. 66. n. q.

(i) Tauris, or Taboris, eaſt long. 46. 30 lat. 38. 20, a city of Perſia in Aſia, in the province of Adirbeitzan, the ancient Ecbatana, the capital of Media. It is ſituated in a fine plain, ſurrounded with mountains, from whence there falls a rivulet, which runs through the city; lying 300 miles ſouth-eaſt of Erzerum, and 400 miles north of Iſpahan. The old city was 15 miles in circumference, and had walls which were 70 cubits high. The preſent town is about 5 miles in circuit, very populous, and a place of great trade. As it ſtands near the frontiers of Turkey, it has been often taken and retaken. The Turks ſurprized it during the

late civil wars in Perſia, and exerciſed their uſual barbarities on the inhabitants, killing an incredible number of them; but Kouli Kan has reduced it under the obedience of the Perſians again, and purſued the Turks into their own territories.

(k) Samachi, ſee a deſcription of it by the author in p. 209.

(l) China, ſee p. 66. n. t.

(m) Armenia, ſee p. 198. n. g.

(n) Iſpahan, ſee p. 109. n. w.

(o) Mecca, eaſt long. 43. 30, lat. 21. 20. the capital of the territory of Mecca, and of all Arabia Felix, in Aſia, and the place of Mahomet's nativity, ſituate thirty miles eaſt of Sidn, the port-town to it on the Red-ſea, 200 miles ſouth-eaſt of Medina. It is a large, well-built city, in the middle whereof ſtands the Kaaba, or houſe of God, which the Arabs believe was built by Abraham, and to which Mahomet obliged all his diſciples to go in pilgrimage, once in their lives. This temple is but 15 feet long, and 12 broad, and 30 feet high; and there is a large court about it, encompassed with a piazza, in which the pilgrims perform their devotions, ſeldom entering the Kaaba, which is too ſmall to admit many.

(p) Taurus, a mountain, which runs through the leſſer Aſia, from weſt to eaſt into Perſia.

(q) Aſia, ſee p. 127. n. x.

(r) Caucasus mount, ſee p. 198. n. k.

C H A P. XXXVI.

A Deſcription of the City, or Town called Samagel, and of the ſeveral Places that muſt be paſſed through in the Way to that Place. The Author arrives at the City called Com.

WE were detained here all the next day; in order to wait for the

Though

Though Samagel has only of a country village: it is very ſmall and well-built houſes, the country where ſituated, compoſed all ſides, inſeſs and ſtore ſides with earth and ſtones. The Brazz belongs to the ſame one, and well-worthy notice. That part of it where their principal ſhops, but in thoſe belonging to the city, ſeal large quantities of wool, is well-covered ſhops, is well-covered ſhops, there are ſhops. However, there are ſhops, parts of the town, with and a large number of embeſſed ſhops (as it is ſaid upon as their city is ſituated with a lively yet out glazed with a fine port one that is ſome what better to it, which the d) Tauris they had become much made uſe of as their place ſhops; but it is now run away. Tho' it ſeems, it is ſurely never it is pleaſantly enough plain, with high mountains weſtward. As there is clear water; at about half ane from thence, our proper to have there for as that abounded with weſt were well walled town north-eaſt part of the took the poſſeſſion of it, ſe in the place number he. The letter A, points above mentioned to be The letter B, renders inguined moſh, and large buildings, which is mentioned. I did not eſe in this place without there were no traces, I could form any adequate, tho, doubtleſs, but it is well known breeding condition. Therefore, the Great way, it is true, enters the Turks. There is

is in Perin, and exercised their
on the inhabitants, killing an
umber of them; but Kaul Kan
it under the obedience of the
in, and passed the Tula into their
es.

in, see a description of it by the
109.

see p. 65. n. 1.

in, see p. 198. n. 3.

see p. 109. n. m.

see Long. 42. 30. lat. 21. 22.
the territory of Mexico, and of all
in Asia, and the place of Mitho-
imate thirty miles east of Srin,
to it on the Red-Sea, 200 miles
Medina. It is a huge, well built
middle walled double the Kaaba,
Ded, which the Arabs believe was
built, and to which Mahomet o-
disputes to go in pilgrimages,
es. This temple is but 15 feet
road, and 30 feet high; and
count about it, surrounded with
in the pilgrims perform their
on entering the Kaaba, which is
out many.

mountain, which runs through
A, from west to east into Per-

see p. 127. n. e.

mount, see p. 198. n. 6.

VI.

goad, and of the second
Way to that Place. The

officers, who reside in the

Though

Though Samgael has the appearance only of a country village; there are several very lofty and well-built houses in it, (considering the country wherein it stands) some, indeed, composed all of earth, and others with earth and stone intermixed. The Bazar belonging to this town is a very fine one, and well-worthy of a stranger's notice. That part of it where they keep their principal shops, but more especially those belonging to the drapers, where they vend large quantities of cotton-stuffs and cloths, is well-covered and vaulted. However, there are shops, in divers other parts of the town, which are covered, and a large number of moschs, that are embellished with domes; and that which is looked upon as their principal, or chief, is painted with a lively green, and without glazed with a fine purple. There is one that is somewhat lofty, with a dome to it, which the (a) Turks, indeed, when they first became masters of the place, made use of as their place of public worship; but it is now run to ruin and decay. Tho' it is not, it is true, over spacious; yet it is pleasantly enough situated in a plain, with high mountains near it to the westward. As there is a stream of fine clear water; at about half a league distance from thence, our caravan thought proper to halt there for awhile, at a place that abounded with trees and gardens that were well walled round. I went to the north-east part of the town, and there took the prospect of it, as the reader will see in the plate number LIV annexed.

PL. LIV.

The letter A. points out the mosch above-mentioned to be run to ruins. The letter B. represents the most distinguished mosch, and the letter C. a large building, which is almost totally demolished. I did not observe any thing else in this place worthy my attention, as there were no traces, or footsteps, whereby I could form any adequate idea of its antiquity, tho', doubtless, it is antient; and tho' it is well known, that it was in a flourishing condition in the days of Tamerlane the Great; but it was afterwards, it is true, entirely demolished by the Turks. There is but one public inn,

or caravanserai, throughout the whole city. It is a moderately large one, however, composed of earth and clay, and the river called Saganthacy runs to the east of it, and from thence rolls its waters amongst the mountains. There it was that I took the prospect which the reader will find in the plate number LV. hereto annexed.

PL. LV.

This town is under the jurisdiction of a Daroega, that is, a Bailiff; and there, tho' you pay, indeed, the sum of thirty-pence for every horse-load of silk, or cloth; yet you are charged but with fifteen, for other commodities of less value. In the evening it began to rain apace; and continued so to do till about an hour before day-break.

On the twenty fifth we proceeded on our journey, and the road, indeed, was very fine; for the officers above-mentioned had agreed to meet us at the place where we proposed to halt that day, in order to receive their customary dues. We had a distant sight of several villages as we journeyed on, but halted at a place called Kurkjandy, which lies about three leagues distance, to the south-east of the town. In this little spot there is a branch of the (b) Taurus, which extends itself from north to south, towards (c) Curdistan; which is inhabited by a people called the Kurds, who though they reside in villages, yet they insist, that they have notwithstanding a fortress in the mountains called Keyder Byamber.

The town
of Sultania.

On the 26th we had a violent shower of rain, and traversed the plain in the very midst of it, journeying on towards the mountains; and by dawn of day we could discern a place called Sultania, which stood on our right, at about two leagues distance from the place where we had halted for some part of the night. This town is situated in a plain, near several mountains, which almost surround it, with that of Keyder before-mentioned on the right: as the guides, however, of our caravan had no business to transact there; and as there is no such thing as entering the town without paying some customary fees, we passed by it; but it was with abundance of re-

1703

Pl. LVI.

reluctance, on my own part. They told me, indeed, in order to soothe me, that they should halt at a place but a small distance from it; but finding, that they had no such real intention, I rode back towards the town, and halted at a commodious rising-ground near the east side of it, where I took the view of it, which the reader will find in the plate number LVI. hereto annexed.

There are four spacious moschs in it, the three principal whereof have large domes to them; and in one of them is the sepulchral monument of Sultan Mohammed Khodabend, who laid the foundations of it, as they pretend, about four hundred years ago: this (*d*) Mausoleum, they assured me, is very pompous and magnificent, and very beautifully built; and that the chapel belonging to it is decorated with gold and silver. The prospect of it from without has a very good effect.

A description of it.

There are neither gates nor walls to this town; and all the houses that are either in, or round about it, are built of earth, lime, and clay. There are eight or ten caravanseraias, however, in it, and some few bazars; but it must be confessed, they are not very considerable; neither can the place, with propriety, be termed a town of trade. Formerly, indeed, before it was demolished by Tamerlane, it was looked upon as one of the principal towns throughout the whole empire of (*e*) Persia. As to the palace, which was once the most superb and magnificent building in it, there are no foot-steps of it now to be seen. There are the ruins, indeed, of an antient stone-tower and gate, at about half a league's distance from the town; and these, it is highly probable, belonged to the old city, which is situate in thirty six degrees thirty minutes of northern latitude.

Remarkable birds.

It was two hours, if not more, before we could overtake the caravan, which had continued its regular progress; but at noon it halted, as well as we, at a village called Thais, the parts adjacent whereof abound with what the inhabitants call Baker-kaeraes, that is to say, birds, that

bear some near resemblance to our partridges, with this trivial distinction only, that they are somewhat larger, and their bellies and wings are of a whitish colour. These fly a considerable height, and in large flocks; but are seemingly fond of, and frequently seen hopping about such lands as are but newly manured. I had the good fortune to kill one of them; which proved a weighty one, was well fed, full of flesh, and when dressed, was a most delicious morsel.

We pursued our journey from hence two hours before day-break, and after a progress of five hours, we reached a town called Gromdore; a town that is very extensive, abounds with fine trees, and fine gardens, and is situate by the side of a gently purling stream. Some of its houses are pretty lofty, and worthy of a stranger's notice.

From hence we set out again much about the same hour as we did the day before, and journeyed over the same plain. The mountains that surround it, we observed, were at the distance of a league, or thereabouts, from one another. The adjacent grounds seemed to be well cultivated, and there were a great number of villages all round about the country. The Peasants there make little dams, or mounds of earth, in order to enclose the water; and there are several conduits or reservoirs of water, for the refreshment of the land as occasion offers. After that we passed through two little villages, the moschs whereof had somewhat over them like our steeples, which in this part of the country is, we can assure the reader, a sight something novel and uncommon. These moschs are very broad at bottom; but at the top terminate in the form of a spire. We were informed, that these were the sepulchral monuments of some particular saints, to whose memory these moschs were annexed.

About noon, we passed down a kind of hollow lane, which was encompassed, in a manner, by a kind of canal, or reservoir, about five or six feet in breadth, the water whereof overflowed its banks, in

two

1703

two places particularly, to wit, all the hills from north-west were all covered.

In this place we found it very fertile, and the soil was the finest of it, this is the smallest of it, surrounded with a mud belonging to a garden.

As we entered into it, we saw a large gate. The soil was very good, and all the adjacent parts were very fertile. The two villages you just now the moschs were, bear the same name, and the distance one from the other is about one league. Here the mountains terminated to us to do so, we made a progress of a league, and at three in the night we passed through a road, the hills and villages both of which and the last, from whence light appeared, we could see the mountains, which were at a distance of about one league. After that, we saw a river, no less than the little river no less than the

The weather was very fine, and we reached as far as a place where we all sheltered ourselves by no means uncommon. In this town there are several houses, but most of them are built on such a rising ground, at a distance from the river, that it is not to be deceived, and take it for granted, that it is surrounded with trees and gardens, almost with houses, and is very fertile.

In the Place, (No. 1) we found, the reader will find, that the weather was very fine.

The inhabitants of this place, we found, were all very fertile, and the soil was the finest of it, this is the smallest of it, surrounded with a mud belonging to a garden. As we entered into it, we saw a large gate. The soil was very good, and all the adjacent parts were very fertile. The two villages you just now the moschs were, bear the same name, and the distance one from the other is about one league. Here the mountains terminated to us to do so, we made a progress of a league, and at three in the night we passed through a road, the hills and villages both of which and the last, from whence light appeared, we could see the mountains, which were at a distance of about one league. After that, we saw a river, no less than the little river no less than the

is near resemble to our pa-
with this trivial distinction only
are somewhat larger, and their
d wings are of a whitish colour,
a considerable height, and in
s; but are seemingly fond of,
sently seen hopping about inch
re but newly mated. I had the
one to kill one of them; which
sightly one, was well fed, full of
when dead, was a most delicious

ended our journey from hence
before day-break, and after a
of five hours, we reached a town
more; a town that is very ex-
pounds with fine trees, and fine
and is situate by the side of a
of stream. Some of its houses
ity, and worthy of a stranger's

ence we let out again much
same hour as we did the day be-
journeyed over the same plain,
ians that surround it, we ob-
at the distance of a league,
is, from one another. The
ounds seemed to be well culti-
there were a great number of
und about the country. The
ere make little dams, or
earth, in order to enclose the
there are several conduits or
of water, for the refreshment of
occasion offers. After that we
ugh two little villages, the
reef had somewhat over them
les, which in this part of the
e can assure the reader, a
ng novel and uncommon,
as are very broad at bottom;
terminate in the form of a
were informed, that these
pudical monuments of some
inis, to whose memory this
e annexed.

as, we passed down a kind
e, which was encompassed,
by a kind of canal, or refer-
e or six feet in breadth, the
if overgrown its banks, in

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

245

1703

two places particularly, to that degree, that all the lands from north-west to south-east were all covered.

In this place we found two villages, one named Parlsheim, and the other Touoeksy; this is the smallest of the two, and is surrounded with a mud-wall, like one belonging to a garden.

As we entered into it, we passed through a large gate. The former is spacious enough, abounds with trees and gardens; and all the adjacent parts are extremely pleasant. The two villages, where we told you just now the moschs and steeples, as it were, bear the same name, and are in the same district, or division, tho' at a considerable distance one from the other. Here the mountains terminate, or at least seemed to us to do so. That very day we made a progress of at least five leagues; and at three in the morning, we passed through a road, that abounded with hills and villages both on the right-hand and the left, from whence, as soon as daylight appeared, we could plainly see some mountains, which were all covered with snow. After that, we crossed over one little river no less than three or four times. The weather was very favourable to us till we reached as far as a place called Gihara, where we all sheltered ourselves under the ruins of a low wall: which is a practice by no means uncommon in these parts. In this town there are at least five hundred houses, but most of them very low, and built on such a rising ground, that a traveller, at a distance might very easily be deceived, and take it for a fortress; it abounds with trees and gardens; but it is surrounded almost with houses that are absolutely uninhabited.

In the Plate, (No. 57.) hereto annexed, the reader will find a prospect of the place.

The inhabitants of this town are plentifully furnished with all sorts of provisions. We had as good meat, poultry, and fruit, as any one could wish to eat, and particularly some melons, of which I preserved some of the seed. There I shot a bird, which they call an Angoert; it resembled very much one of our ducks; but it is ca-

Pl. 57.

1703

pable of flying higher, and as it walks, it struts along with its head erected like an european cock, and naturally takes the water. The body of this bird is red; its neck is of a yellow hue, almost up to its head; it is white, however, all about its eyes to the bill, which is all black; as to its wings they are particoloured; that is to say, white, red, and black. No sooner had I shot it but my dog brought it to me alive.

In number 58, I have given the reader a prospect of a small village; and in Plate (No. 59.) he has a representation of the bird above described.

In this part of the country, there is plenty likewise of Cotton-trees, and in Plate, (No. 60.) I have given the reader a draught of one of its branches. The Pods, however, there represented, are in that condition, as they appear, when the fruit of it is not perfectly ripe; and one of the four the reader will perceive to be burst open, and full of cotton. Sometimes these pods are gathered, and sometimes again they fall of themselves, when the Pod is burst and beginning to decay. As to their colour, they are purple without, and when they burst, and shew themselves open, they have a very good effect by the white within.

Here we continued all the 30th day of the month, in order to give our horses proper rest. About noon (*f*), a Polish embassador passed by me in his way from (*g*) Ispahan to his own country. When I saw him, I was alone in pursuit of my game; however, as some of his retinue observed me to be in a German dress, they called out to me; but not regarding them, as taking it for granted they were Persians; two or three of them gave themselves the trouble to ride up to me, and informed me, in the Italian language, that they were (*h*) Europeans. Whilst I was thus accidentally engaged in discourse with them, the embassador himself passed by. They asked me, what news from Europe? Whereupon I informed them that it was near six months since I departed from (*i*) Moscow; and by consequence I could give them no satisfactory answer in that particular. They had spent the night in the very next vil-

R r r

lage

Pl. 58.

Pl. 59.

Cotton-trees.

1703

lage to that where we were, and desired me to recommend them to their friends at Isfahan, and promised to oblige me in the same manner as soon as they arrived at Moscow. After this curious interview they proceeded on their journey. Their company consisted of about thirty persons, who were all on horseback, and had with them three or four flags, or small standards; as to the camels that followed them, they were about two or three and twenty in number, and hard laden with their baggage.

Pl. 61.

About three in the morning, we pursued our journey, and having advanced somewhat better than four leagues, we came to a large village called Sakfawa, which like the former, we found abounding with trees. On the right-hand lay the ruins of a once large and magnificent structure; and on the left the remains of a capacious caravanserai, or inn, of which we have given our readers an exact representation in the Plate, (No. 61.) herunto annexed.

Here we were detained some time, in order to discharge the customary duties; and in the interim I amused myself with my gun in shooting at pigeons, and met with sport sufficient.

As we journeyed on, we passed by a place that abounded with fena-trees, which strike the eye in the most agreeable manner; and as I had never met with any of them before in all my travels, I was charmed with them; and for that reason shall expatiate upon them in a more proper place.

In the village called Frafangh, we met with plenty of pomegranates, which are a very palatable and refreshing kind of fruit, and cheap enough in reason. On our departure from hence we passed over a hill, leaving the plain on our left, in order to get into the high road to (k) Com.

On the right of the last mentioned village there is another road which leads to Sawa, where we ought to have gone for the payment of our duties; but as that would have proved at least a whole day's journey out of our way to Com; and as they are liable by that means to discharge three several imposts, whereas they are open to the pay-

1703

ment of one only by going the direct road to Com, this last, for the most part is made choice of by the caravan.

When we had travelled for full five hours, we halted in a plain, which lay between several hills near the village called Hengeran, where they may very justly boast of their bread, and from thence we proceeded to a place called Saranda.

There, for the first time, we regaled ourselves with the wine of Ardevil, which is white, and tho' of a fine flavour, and extremely palatable, is not allowed to be sold. This village is encompassed (as it were) with wells, which are supplied with water by a subterraneous aqueduct in the village.

On the fourth of November, we pursued our journey, and after a tedious stretch of near seven leagues, we reached a place called Angelawa, about one in the afternoon, where we rested ourselves for near two hours before the rest that belonged to the caravan; and this last mentioned village is no more than seven leagues distance at most from the city of Com aforesaid. This part likewise abounds with springs, or wells, which lie not above four or five paces one from the other; and the water that flows from them are conveyed under ground to the village. Persia, in short, abounds with such subterraneous conveyances, springs, or wells. Here there are numbers of ravens, of a wondrous bulk to be met with; but as the soil in these parts are impregnated with salt-petre, the water has, by consequence, a brackish taste.

Tho' our camels set out in the night some considerable time before us; yet the officers belonging to the customs at Sawa, having seized upon one of them, which was laden with two bales of cloth, on account of our not having passed by that village; and since this is under the self-same jurisdiction or dominion; we were compelled to turn back, and stay where we were till the sixth instant, from whence we set out before break of day. As in our progress, we came upon a small trench, or ditch, of which we were not in the least aware as it was dark, several of our horses fell in, and mine amongst the rest; but, by good fortune, they were soon got

out

out again, without any
after attending that occurred
About nine in the morning
the banks of the river ca
which flows from Sawa.
some places is very wide
to the south, in a plain
grounds. By accident it
got into a sandy plain
downs of loose sand, where
very dangerous. There at
behind these downs, betw
road that leads not onl
Com likewise. Having
mation, that the same
made a seizure of our ca
per as a second visit, we
rous resolution of detaching
events; but they never v
ever their inclination mi
the attempt.

By about eleven, we
rain that was very v
whereof I regretted what
to behind, a great vari
every kind. Tho' at a con
I drew a prospect of the
the mountain itself, which
head of the town; and
will find it hereto anne
The full bears a near r

Orig.

(c) Turkey, see p. 223.

(d) Taurus, mount, see p.

(1) Cordian, the ancient
of it in Asiatic Turkey, and
by having Turcomania, c
wards, and Eyraa Arabic,
lands, in which province
flood, on the eastern bank
opposite to Mouda, see p.

(4) Mouda, see p.

(5) Persia, see p. 64, 4.

only by going the direct road
is left, for the most part is
of by the caravan.

we had travelled for full five
hated in a plain, which lay be-
eral hills near the village called
where they may very jolly
in bread, and from thence we
a place called Saranda.

or the first time, we regaled
with the wine of Ardevil, which
and this of a fine flavour, and
palatable, is not allowed to be
is village is encompassed (as it
a wells, which are supplied with
a subterraneous aqueduct in the

with of November, we pursued
and after a tedious stretch of
leagues, we reached a place cal-
Sawa, about one in the afternoon,
relied ourselves for near two
ore the rest that belonged to the
ad this last mentioned village is
than seven leagues distance at
the city of Com afore said. This
te abounds with springs or wells,
not above four or five paces one
her; and the water that flows
are conveyed under ground to
Petia, in short, abounds with
eraneous conveyances, springs,
Here there are numbers of ra-
wondrous bulk to be met with;
soil in these parts are impreg-
lile-petre, the water has, by
a brackish taste.

camels set out in the night
terable time before us; yet the
going to the customs at Sawa,
ed upon one of them, which
with two bales of cloth, on ac-
our not having passed bright
and since this is under the self-
stitution or dominion; we were
to turn back, and then where
the sixth instant, from whence
before break of day. As in
s, we came upon a small trench,
which we were not in the least
it was dark, several of our horses
d mine amongst the rest; but,
fortune, they were soon got
out

out again, without any considerable dif-
after attending that occurrence.

About nine in the morning we reached
the banks of the river called Sawafiaey,
which flows from Sawa. This river in
some places is very wide, and runs away
to the south, in a plain between high
grounds. By accident we unguardedly
got into a sandy plain between some
downs of loose sand, where the passage is
very dangerous. There are very lofty hills
behind these downs, between which is the
road that leads not only to Sawa but to
Com likewise. Having had timely infor-
mation, that the same officers who had
made a seizure of our camels proposed to
pay us a second visit; we came to a vigo-
rous resolution of defending ourselves at all
events; but they never ventured, what-
ever their inclination might be to repeat
the attempt.

Remark-
able rocks.

By about eleven, we came to a moun-
tain that was very stony, the rocks
whereof represent what is very amazing
to behold, a great variety of objects of
every kind. Tho' at a considerable distance
I drew a prospect of them, together with
the mountain itself, which lay on the right-
hand of the town; and of this the reader
will find it hereto annexed in Plate 62.
The first bears a near resemblance to the

Pl. 62.

head and neck of an animal, and the rest
are equally marvellous to behold. In our
passage thither we went through a small
town, which abounded with houses in-
deed; but then they were all empty and
abandoned. It is highly probable, how-
ever, that the inhabitants were at that
time in tents in the fields, and feeding
their cattle.

At the entrance into the town there is
a large stone-bridge; on one side whereof
we saw a great number of tents pitched,
and persons of all ranks and conditions in
them, with horses near them, which were
tied one to the other. These people, as we
were informed, were upon a pilgrimage,
with intent to visit the sepulchral monu-
ments of some particular saints, and amongst
whom, (as was observable enough) there
were more women devotees than men.
Our passage through the town to the end
of the old walls, took us up at least half
an hour. There we pitched our tents a-
midst a parcel of ancient ruins. As the
rest of the caravan lay under an indispen-
sable necessity of crossing several narrow
bridges, which had retarded them, they
were at least two hours before they over-
took us. We halted here all the next
day, and the weather proved exceedingly
delightful.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

(b) Taurus, mount, see p. 242. n. p.

(c) Curdistan, the ancient Assyria, lies part
of it in Asiatic Turkey, and part of it in Per-
sia, having Turcomania, or Armenia, on the
north, and Eyraca Arabic, or Chaldæa, on the
south, in which province Nineveh anciently
stood, on the eastern bank of the river Tygris,
opposite to Mouful, see p. 242. n. e.

(d) Mausoleum, see p. 242. n. a.

(e) Persia, see p. 64. 4. n. o.

(f) Poland, see p. 63. n. n.

(g) Ispahan, see p. 109. n. m.

(h) Europe, see p. 127. n. dd.

(i) Moscow, see p. 23. n. e.

(k) Com. east long. 49. lat. 34. a city of Per-
sia in Asia, in the province of Eyreca Agem,
situate 100 miles north of Ispahan, is a large,
populous city; but has suffered pretty much in
the late civil wars, and those with Turkey.

(l) Ardevil, or Ardebil, see p. 233. n. e.

1703

them) that is to say, cisterns or reservoirs.

It has, moreover, four gates, and the like number of bazars, or market places; as also a meydoen, that is to say, a large public square, and several bagnios, or baths. There are likewise in and about the city a great number of moschs and chappels. Tho' on this side, indeed, there are no antiquities to be seen; yet there are on the other, where our caravan halted, which was within the enceint or inclosure of the old town, formerly distinguished by the name of Chonana, standing in (d) Media, which extended, as 'tis generally supposed, as far as Cachan, and to a mountain, which served as a boundary to it; a large extent of land, called Arak by the natives.

In this place, tho' at some distance from the wall, there is a circular pyramid, which is in circumference about seventy-eight paces, and in height forty-eight, furnished with four sloping walls which have no steps to them. The entrance, or door to this round building is stopped up with a large heap of rubbish. Each wall is about a fathom in thickness; and the descent, taken obliquely, is about one fathom and ahalf: from thence each of them fetches a prodigious slope, and sinks as deep into the ground, as it is above the surface, where the pyramid is both smooth and round. We could look into it, indeed, through some particular crannies, or fissures; but there is no possibility of getting into it; and what is somewhat extraordinary; this was done on purpose that there should be no admision. In short, it is most probable, that it had been formerly a grand sepulchral monument, and the reader may form an idea of it from the representation thereof hereto annexed in plate 63. On the right-hand of this pyramid, there are several other ruins, and amongst the rest, the remains of a chappel. Tho' the town-wall, which is greatly decayed, extends itself a great way beyond these ruins; yet there is no such thing as distinguishing any particular part of it. At the distance, however, of about three hundred paces from the pyramid, as we returned to the

Plate 63.

1703

city, there is some part of this wall tolerably whole, and flanked with round towers, which are greatly run to ruin and decay: there are ten of them in all, and each of them about forty feet in height; and at the bottom extremely thick and substantial. As the reader may plainly perceive by the representation of them in plate 64, if of these he will find the ruins of a gate added, which was five paces in depth, and as much in breadth. The wall likewise was of the same thickness. All the rest of the buildings are composed of earth, clay, and a great number of small stones, dried in the sun. I must freely confess, for my own part, I never saw any ancient structure of the like kind; but I am notwithstanding fully convinced, that these are the ruins of the old city; and what inclines me to think so, is, because the ancients make frequent mention of the like structures of earth dried in the sun; and a sort of lime, composed of clay. Then inspired penmen likewise observe, that those who were concerned in the erection of the tower of Babel made use of the same sort of earth instead of stone, and of clay in the room of lime. And the conclusion, in regard to this country, is the more natural; because the sun has here a prodigious power, and by consequence is capable of drying up earth to the nature or solidity of stone. I have a strong notion likewise, that there is chopped straw mingled with this earth in order to make it cement the better.

The very same method of building is practised there to this very day; and let a stranger travel all over (e) Persia, he will find large quantities of this earth thus dried in the sun as above-mentioned; as also abundance of clay, whetewith they make their lime. It must be acknowledged, however, that their houses make but a poor, despicable appearance, and are but of a short duration; neither do they ever concern themselves about the reparation of them, when they once begin to fall into decay.

From thence I took a tour to the north-west part of the city, where there are no rising grounds, and from that spot, I took

S f f

the

staff whereon a flag is generally hoisted, whenever there is a tournament appointed. This tilt-yard, or meydoen, is no less than seven hundred and seventy paces in length, and in breadth one hundred. As we went out of the gate on the right-hand, we had a sight of the royal garden, which is encompassed by a wall at least thirty foot high. This beautiful spot of ground is very spacious, and there is a fine canal, which is very regularly kept, that directly runs across it. It abounds with fine trees, and amongst the rest, a great number of pomegranate trees, all regularly ranged: there is a pleasure-house moreover belonging to it, which was erected by king Abbas the Great: there are four large gates to this wall, and two that are much smaller. From the first of them, which is near the town-gate, there is a passage into a spacious caravanfera, or inn, which is principally frequented by the natives of (*f*) India. It is very large, and exceedingly beautiful, being thirty-six paces, if not more, in depth, and seven in breadth. The roof of it is adorned with a dome, whereon, after the Italian mode, there is a lanthorn; and, on the side there are two arcades, from whence we saw the apartment. When we had walked across it, we came into a court that was full an hundred paces in length, and fourcore in breadth, encompassed by a structure or edifice two stories high, which on each side has fifteen arcades in length, and ten in breadth; and underneath there are several apartments, one over the other; and besides these, there are several small rooms, or more properly speaking, closets, which project, and have such a fine effect, that I must confess, I never saw any caravanfera that could stand fairly in competition with it. When we were got beyond this gate, we came to a second, which had a beautiful arcade; and as we found it open, I made bold to step into the garden, which abounded with trees, some smaller than others; of which, I presume, more than common care was taken: there was a third gate, which belonged to a very spacious, and very lofty structure above the garden-wall. From the fourth, we went into a wide court, which is com-

vered all round, in order to serve as a shelter for horses in bad weather. There is no admittance into the garden but through the two small gates. There is another, indeed, on the other side, but then it is neither so fine, nor so large as the first; it is encompassed, however, as well as that, with proper walls. Over against this caravanfera, or inn, there is a flight of fifty stone steps, and underneath them, a kind of cistern, or reservoir for water; the walls, and vault whereof are composed of small stones, which are joined together in a very workman-like and elegant manner. The town-gate is vaulted likewise, and is four-score paces in depth, and has a dome to it, in the same manner as the caravanfera, or inn. From thence we went into a curious bazar, which was neatly enough vaulted and plaistered, and full of tradesmens shops; such as confectioners, druggists, goldsmiths, farriers, brafiers, cooks, where all kinds of victuals are daily roasted and boiled; and pastry-cooks, bakers, fruiterers, and stalls for all sorts of herbs, &c. Each shop takes up a vault; and the whole is exceedingly neat, and very regularly built. This bazar, in the center whereof there is a mint, runs directly across the town from one gate to the other. Near this, there are divers others, but more especially one that has gates to it, which are shut up, in which there is nothing sold but wearing apparel, and all sorts of silks. There is another likewise principally set apart for the filk-dyers, where we saw some of the most delightful colours.

These bazars are all so well covered, that there is no danger of being incommoded, should it rain ever so hard; and there are customers for ever smoaking very soberly in the coffee-houses, of which there are great numbers. On one side of these bazars stand the caraveneras, into which you enter through a large gate that is vaulted; some of them are exceedingly fine, very spacious, and two stories high; with a flight of five or six steps before each apartment; there are abundance of these inns in the town, where they make such large quantities of silk, silver, and gold stuffs, that they frequently make use

Coffee-
houses.

Caravap
feras.

THE TRAVELS OF

1703

Public
squares.The
moths.

of seven bales of silk in a day; the weight whereof amounts to no less than one thousand five hundred and twelve pounds. The public squares here, which they call Meydoens, are but small; and there are several walls, like that in the royal gardens before-mentioned, in divers parts of the town. The moths here have, for the most part, such towers as may with propriety be termed lofty ones; but few of them have large domes, and those that have, have no manner of embellishments to recommend them. We have told you before, that there are seven gates to the city, two whereof are always kept shut, and several meydoens.

Here they have a great variety of flowers and fruits all the year round; and the latter are sooner ripe in this city than in any other parts of the kingdom; inasmuch, that here, there are melons, grapes, apricots, mulberries, pomegranates, cucumbers, and more particularly most delicious water-melons, to be purchased at a reasonable price even in the spring.

There are no less than three-score and ten aqueducts, (if we are not misinformed) through which water is conveyed into the town. There are, moreover, (according to the computation of the inhabitants) above one hundred and twenty bagnios, and an almost countless number of cisterns, or reservoirs for containing of water, which lie low, and therefore there are several steps made on purpose to go down to them. There are much the same number of mills here, and the number of houses amount at least to three thousand, which are divided into three several districts, or wards, in each of which there are one thousand; besides which, there are three-score several villages, which are dependent on, and under the jurisdiction of this single town.

There is a royal palace at Fien, where there is a fountain, or basin, made, as we were informed, in the reign of king Suliman, the water whereof proceeds from a lofty mountain, called Rochi'i Sahil, and is conveyed to Cachan by the aid and assistance of seven and twenty mills, which were erected in the reign of king Abbas. There is another fountain, which proceeds

1703

from a high hill called Demawend, the waters whereof flow down towards Kei and Thaharah; the people here call it the river of Dzadzzeriaan, which runs, and discharges the rest of its waters into (g) the Caspian sea. When we were got between Com and Cachan, we had a prospect of this mountain.

On the thirteenth, we departed from this city three hours before day-break, and crossed a sandy plain; on our left-hand, we had several small raised downs for several leagues together. We travelled six leagues that day; and having rested ourselves for some considerable time, we moved forwards about two in the morning, continuing still in the same plain, which was bordered on our right-hand with such mountains as were covered with snow. By dawn of day we arrived at the foot of that which was the loftiest of them all, and crossed a river amongst the rest, and afterwards another plain, at the end whereof there was a village, and several others, not far from it which lay between the hills. When we had proceeded on our journey seven leagues, we arrived at a village called Ghor, situate at about a league's distance from the small town of Nathans. This village is a most delightful place; and I have therefore annexed a prospect of it in Plate 67. As it stands on a rising ground, it looks at a distance much like a fortress. On the left-hand thereof stands a moitch, and an open plain, which extends itself farther than the eye can well reach.

From hence we set out two hours at least before day-break, and about seven we came to a large plain, where there were five or six villages, which lay by the side of each other, and two fine gardens; the last of which was encompassed by a substantial wall, in circumference about half a league. To this garden there was a dove-house, appertaining, of which we shall have somewhat particular to say in another place. On one side of this garden, there is a large house which appertains to the king, and a small village called Pad-shabath.

When we had traversed this plain, we got amongst a parcel of mountains; some where-

whereof were very lofty; as we could plainly perceive as we could plainly perceive. After we were got amongst the mountains, we travelled about seven leagues farther, and arrived at a place where we were obliged to encamp. There we crossed a river, and then a plain, which was all level ground, that was all level ground. We passed by two other the night; the former large, beautiful building, journeyed seven leagues to a village called Rik. I till there the next morning we were separated from it over several plowed land day we reached Ispahan rested and refreshed myself there, I made it my on one Mr. Katschen, who conducted and direction of lodging to our East-India

Plate 67

The royal
garden.

Orcus

(9) Com. p. 247, n. k.

(10) Cachan, Cahan, or Ruffa, bounded by the plain north; by Siberia on its west, which separates it from the south; and by the Caspian on the west.

(11) Ispahan, see p. 109.

(12) Media, see p. 214.

1703

high hill called Damerend, the
street lay down towards Kel
Isahan; the people here call it
if Dabizien, which runs, and
the rest of it was into ²/₃ the
sea. When we were going to
Cachan, we had a proposal of
tain.

thirteenth, we departed from this
ours before day-break, and cross-
plain; on our left-hand, we had
all raised down for several leagues

We travelled six leagues, and
I having rested ourselves for some
time, we moved forwards in
the morning, continuing till
we plain, which was bordered on
hand with high mountains as
ed with snow. By dawn of
arrived at the foot of that which
which of them all, and could a
through the rock and afterwards ap-
on, at the end whereof there was
and several others, not far from
ity between the hills. When

ceeded on our journey, seven
we arrived at a village called Shur,
about a league's distance from
town of Nakhans. This vil-
most delightful place; and I have
annexed a prospect of it in this
it stands on a rising ground, it
a distance much like a fortress.
left-hand thereof stands a moat,
reen plain, which extends itself
an the eye can well reach.

hence we set out two hours at
e day-break, and about seven
to a large plain, where there
or six villages, which lay by the
in other, and two fine gardens;
of which was encircled by a
wall, in circumference about
league. To this garden there was
house appearing, of which we
re somewhat particular to say in
place. On one side of this garden,
large house which appertains to
and a small village called Pak-

we had traversed this plain, we
sight a parcel of mountains, some
where-

whereof were very lofty; and their tops,
as we could plainly perceive, were all co-
vered with snow. After we had proceed-
ed about seven leagues farther, we came
to a caravanfera at a place called Sardaham,
where we were obliged to pay some custo-
mary dues. There we crossed a sort of tor-
rent, or land-flood, which falls with a violent
stream amongst the rocks; and the wa-
ters thereof, as they consist of nothing but
pure melted snow, are most delightful.
In Plate 66. we have annexed a prospect
of this caravanfera, and another, which
stands but at a small distance from it.
The former is a spacious edifice, built
with stone, about twenty feet in depth.
The entrance into it is vaulted, and there
is a step at the door, about three foot long.
There is near the latter a fine spring, tho'
'tis but small.

About one the next morning, we pur-
sued our journey as the moon shone exceed-
ingly bright: and when we had passed the
mountains, we got into a spacious, sandy
plain, that was all bordered with hills.
We passed by two other caravanferas in
the night; the former of which was a
large, beautiful building. After we had
journeyed seven leagues farther, we came
to a village called Riek, where we halted
till three the next morning. No sooner
were we departed from thence, but we rode
over several plowed lands, and by break of
day we reached Ispahan. After I had
rested and refreshed myself at a caravan-
fera there, I made it my business to wait
on one Mr. Kastelein, who had the whole
conduct and direction of the affairs be-
longing to our East-India company. At

The author
arrives at
Ispahan.

my first admission, I was received with all
the testimonies of the sincerest friendship;
and he assured me, that I might command
whatever service he could do me. After I
had tarried with him some considerable
time, he sent one of his servants to con-
duct me to one Mr. Owen, who was agent
there for the English East-India company,
from whom I met with a like courteous
reception. From thence I went to the
caravanfera called Jedde, in the meydoen,
or large square belonging to the palace.
This caravanfera, which is the property of
his majesty's mother, is the place where
all the merchants of Armenia have their
ware-houses, and keep their respective
shops. And as it is the principal inn in
all the whole city, and the most commo-
diously situated, I took up my lodging
there, through our director's recommenda-
tion, for whom they testified a particular
regard; and there I continued my quarters
till my departure from the city. His ma-
jesty happened at that time to be abroad,
and taking his diversion in the country with
his concubines, or ladies of pleasure. After
I had rode almost all over the city, and over
Julfa, which is the district, or peculiar
quarters of the Armenians, I paid my re-
spects to some of my particular friends and
acquaintance, who were all natives of
(i) Europe, but most of them of (k)
France, and of the ecclesiastical order;
who received me with all the complaisance
imaginable, and soon after returned my
visit. The very next day, Mr. Kastelein,
our director, invited me to dinner, and in
the afternoon carried me with him out of
town.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Com. p. 247. n. k.

(e) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(b) Cachan, Casan, or Kasan, a province of
Russia, bounded by the province of Permia on
the north; by Siberia on the east; by the river
Wolga, which separates it from Novogorod,
on the south; and by the province of Mos-
cow proper on the west.

(f) India proper, see p. 213. n. d.

(g) Caspian sea, see p. 66. n. q.

(h) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(i) Europe, see p. 127. n. dd.

(c) Ispahan, see p. 109. n. m.

(k) France, see p. 214. n. m.

(d) Media, see p. 214. n. e.

T t t

C H A P.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

A Sea-Lizard, and divers other Curiosities. A very extraordinary Monument, with two Columns, which when one is shook, the other trembles likewise by the same Impulse. The King returns to (a) Isfahan, with a numerous Retinue. The customary Compliments on New-Year's-Day paid by the Author and his Friends to Mr. Kastelein, the Director of the Dutch East-India Company. A succinct Account of a remarkable Fast observed throughout the Kingdom of (b) Persia.

The character of the Dutch directors lady,

As the weather proved exceedingly fine, we took a tour through the whole city of Isfahan, in order to have a transient view of all its most remarkable curiosities; the principal whereof is (as the natives call it) their Chaherbaeg, that is to say, their fine alley, or grand walk, and the next to it is that spot of ground, which is set apart for the Internment of the (c) Armenians and (d) Europeans, of which we propose to give our readers a particular description in a more proper place. We set out of town in great form, as it is the custom of the country. Mr. Kastelein appeared first in person, with at least a dozen couriers, who were preceded by two interpreters. After him came his deputy, or second, who was the person that I followed, and all the rest of our company two and two, according to their respective stations. Tho' there were twenty-six of us in all, twelve whereof went on horseback; yet our director, for the generality, had more attendants in the life-time of his consort, who died about six months before our arrival at Isfahan, and had been interred in a very pompous and magnificent manner, under a rich sepulchral monument, which was open on every side. Her name was Sarah Jacoba Six de Chandelier; a descendant of an illustrious family in (e) France; and as to her character, she was universally admired for her good sense and polite conversation.

In the evening, as we came back, we met with two couriers in the fine walk above-mentioned, with lights in their hands some-

transfused, purchase them; with a view only to make those to whom they make

what like our flambeaus, composed of large balls of cloth, well soaked in oil, and fixed in a sort of an iron socket, fastened to the end of a long staff, with a circular copper-plate all tinned within, much like a saucer, for the reception of such oil as occasionally dropt from the balls. Tho' it was light enough in all conscience without them; yet this is a customary ceremony amongst such of the Persians as are of high birth and distinction. In this formal manner we rode through the city; and being perfectly satisfied with my little, agreeable tour, I tarried for some time at Mr. Kastelein's, in order to sup with him, and was entertained accordingly in the most elegant manner.

The next day he made me a present of a sea-lizard, which was both dry and whole, and much of the same form and bulk of a

The sea-lizard.

common lizard. This fish is frequently caught, or rather taken in the Persian gulph, and the natives, who look upon it as a dainty dish, call it the Sock-anikaer: They assured me, that it was an animal, the flesh whereof was hot in the third degree; and when 'tis duly dried, they pound it to a powder, and intermix with it pearl, amber, saffron, and opium. When the ingredients are thus made up, 'tis a fine cordial, and a most specific restorative for a broken constitution: They are made up for the most part in pills; and few swallow more than one of them at a time. These pills are very seldom, if ever, exposed to public sale; since none but merchants, and such as have affairs at court to

transact,

Mr. Kastelein, moreover with four feet of some little animals, which had been for in a lump of amber-gravel, pounds weight, which he had purchased, in order to sell, which, afterwards he and embelished with fancies, he made a present of to the King, as a memorial monument of his Mohammed. From whence usually conclude, that an sea-gun, that hinders, the stone, and exposed to violent agitation of its war valuable gun is seldom in eastern parts, and in the I had a bird likewise left, brought me, which an European bird, only in fashers, very nearly resembling; the fact of it were taken, and divided into it, but of it was long and thin, the shell of it is by it able. The reader will find tion of it in Numb. 7c. On the 23d instant, we in form to the village of there at about a league's distance, in order to take a view of the sepulchral monument To the Sect's particular attention, (as we are situated were entailed the waters spring, who was one of the

A very extraordinary Mo. is *Shok*, the *Shir* resembles *turns* to (*q*) *Ispahan*, with *ments* on *New-Year's-Day* *Kastelein*, the *Director* of *Account* of a remarkable *Peria*.

re our flambens, composed of *cloth*, well soaked in oil, and *of an iron socket*, fastened to a long staff, with a circular cop- all times within, much like this- the reception of such oil as occu- pt from the balls. Two it was light in all conscience without them; a customary ceremony amongst the *Perians* as one of high birth tion. In this formal manner we through the city; and being actually with my little, agreeable tour, I or some time at Mr. Kastelein's, to sup with him, and was enter- accordingly in the most elegant man-

next day he made me a present of a *q*, which was both dry and whole, *h of the same form and bulk* of a lizard. This fish is frequently or rather taken in the Persian of the natives, who look upon it as a dish, call it the *Shok-an-lar*. I asked me, that it was an animal, *whereof* was hot in the third de- *id* when 'tis dily dried, then it is to a powder, and intermixt with *amber, saffron, and opium*. When *redients* are thus made up, 'tis a *cial, and a most specific* restorative *sten condition*. They are made *most part in pills*, and few (but *e than one* of them at a time, *ills* are very seldom, if ever, ex- *public life*, since none but mar- and such as have affairs at court to

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

transact, purchase them; and that too with a view only to make interest with those to whom they make their applica-

tions. They have here likewise another fish, which the natives call *Sjir-ma-jie*, or *Shirmash*, that is to say, the Milk-fish, which nature has beautifully adorned with a vast variety of lively colours. The greatest part of its belly is yellow, its fins are of a vermilion red, and the rest of its body of a sky-coloured green. The flesh of it is very luscious, and almost as white as snow. The reader will find a representation of it in Plate 69. hereto annex-

ed. Mr. Kastelein, moreover, obliged me with four feet of some little birds, or other animals, which had been found at *Ispahan*, in a lump of amber-grease, of above thirty pounds weight, which the king himself had purchased, in order to melt into a ball, which, afterwards being set in gold, and embellished with several precious stones, he made a present of to the sepulchral monument of his great prophet Mohammed. From whence we may naturally conclude, that amber-grease is a sea-gum, that hardens, when thrown on the shore, and exposed to the air by any violent agitation of its waves. This very valuable gum is seldom found but in the eastern parts, and in the (*f*) Indies.

I had a bird likewise called a *Paes-jeleh*, brought me, which was much like an European duck, only its head, bill, and feathers, very nearly resembled those of a crow: the feet of it were broad at bottom, and divided into three parts; the body of it was long, and tho' never so well dressed, the flesh of it is by no means palatable. The reader will find a representation of it in Numb. 70.

On the 23d instant, we went once more in form to the village of *Kaladoen*, which stands at about a league's distance from the city, in order to take a view of the magnificent sepulchral monument of *Abdulla*. To this Saint's particular care and inspection, (as we are assured by the natives) were entrusted the waters of *Emoen Ofsjeyn*, who was one of the twelve disciples,

at least, if not of the apostles, as some pretend, of their great prophet. This monument, which is erected between four walls, and fronted with small stones, is composed of a grey marble, embellished with several (*g*) Arabian characters, and surrounded with lamps made of copper, lined with tin. We went up to it by a flight of fifteen steps, each a foot high, and a little above them another flight of the same number, which led to a square plat-form of two and thirty feet every way; and on the front thereof there are two columns of small stones; some of which are of an azure colour. The base is five feet in circumference. The door to it is but small, and the winding stair-case to it consists but of fifteen steps. It was higher in all probability formerly; for they have suffered greatly, it is evident enough by the inclemency of the weather. The stair-case within is so narrow, that I was obliged to undress myself, tho' but of a middling stature, in order to get up to the top, as I did, and looked round about me. What, however, is something very remarkable and extraordinary, is this, that when one of the columns is shaken by any violent motion of the body, the other, tho' at a considerable distance, trembles at the same time through the same impulse. This I found to be true in fact, indeed; but I was perfectly at a loss either to comprehend how it should be, or account for the cause of such a sympathetic tremor. Whilst I was taking a draught of this (*h*) *Mausoleum*, a lad of twelve years of age, or thereabouts only, and somewhat crooked withal, climbed up on the outside of one of the columns, and went up to the top of it; when there, he went round it, and descended without holding by any thing whatsoever, but such of the small stones of the building where the mortar was dropt out; nor did he hazard his neck with any other view than merely to amuse us.

Some small matter before sun-set we returned to the city, when it began to freeze all on a sudden to that violent degree, that the water which I had in my room was instantly congealed, notwithstanding it was perfectly warm at noon; and in the night there

The milk-fish.

Amber-grease, the nature of it.

The remarkable bird.

Plate 70.

The monument of Abdulla.

The intricacy of a little lad.

me night.

1703 }

sent me and his whole family to the very spot which I had pitched upon for taking a prospect of the city, in order to have an uninterrupted sight of his majesty, who was to pass by that very place. We drest ourselves accordingly to the best advantage we could, and our horses were very neatly caparioned, in which article the Persians are remarkably curious. We waited at least a whole hour at the Armenian burial-ground above-mentioned; but soon afterwards a great number of horsemen made their appearance; and the king's baggage, or equipages, were carried upon mules. Six elephants had been sent out some time before, in order to meet his majesty; four of which stopt in the chaire-baëg, but the rest went on. About half an hour before sun-set the king himself appeared, accompanied by the principal lords belonging to the court, and followed by a prodigious crowd of people. He rode at the head of them upon a fine chefnut-horse, and passed by us near a small river, where we had posted ourselves on horseback in order to wait for his coming. We saluted his majesty in the most respectful manner, and he fixed his eyes very wishfully

order to wait for his coming. We saluted his majesty in the most respectful manner, and he fixed his eyes very wishfully upon us. As the river which he was obliged to go over was but narrow, most of his attendants forded it; for great numbers, who were ambitious of getting upon the bridge, fell off. We, in order to avoid that danger, turned off towards Jalsa, but brought night home with us.

It is almost incredible to think what a multitude of people attend this prince on any public occasion ; a stranger would think he saw an army before him. And the number of his camels is equally amazing ; and for my own part, I must own I never saw so many at one view in my whole life before. Besides these numerous attendants, there was a prodigious crowd of spectators, not only on foot, but on horseback likewise, in the alley or chahar-baeg before-mentioned. The king, in order to get to his palace, went thro' one of his gardens, preceded by two leopards, which always go with him when he takes the royal diversion of hunting, and divers falcons. His concubines came to town the

On our first Christmas-day with the Giffins—day which we spent and on the 15th, we paid made of the three convalescents in the suburbs.

Two days after that, a company's house, we found which had made its appearance times, but nobody could was taken at last; however, till.

At the same time they pond, wherein they catch fish, which are European countries; far more, as they call them, *sil-fish*, which is marked red, as if a net was thrown over it, or milk-fish, *yü-mai-yü*, or milk-fish, which is marked with scales, the back whereof is a livid belly white. These are fishes for the most part small fish only, that had no when notice of by several make any crevice in river. Inactively. This several others, I prefer wine. All of them, however, cularly when fried, are taffed.

On the fifth day about thirty of us went compliments of the feast the custom of the country, who not only made finger with him, who most elegant manner, a free-meat, and other that were served up he As the (1) English generally or other formerly could not make one and, however, and in his house, together with being, the resident girl, came, and spent the That table after was a gemmer, had been a great and not only known to,

d his whole family to the very
I had pitched upon for taking
if the city, in order to have an
ed sight of his majesty, who
by that very place. We drest
accordingly to the best advantage
and our horses were very neat-
ned, in which article the Per-
markably curious. We wait-
a whole hour at the Armenian
and above-mentioned; but soon
a great number of horsemen
their appearance; and the king's
or equipages, were carried upon
Six elephants had been sent out
before, in order to meet his ma-
r of which *stopt in the chie-*
he rest went on. About half
fore sun-set the king himself
accompanied by the principal
going to the court, and followed
pious crowd of people. He rode at
of them upon a fine cheste horse,
it by us near a small river, where
ited ourselves on horseback in
wait for his coming. We salut-
ely in the most respectful man-
he fixed his eyes very willingly
As the river which he was obli-
over was but narrow, most of this
looked it; for great numbers,
re ambitious of getting upon the
fell off. We, in order to avoid
ger, turned off towards Julia, but
night home with us.
it is incredible to think what a
of people attend this prince on
occasion; a stranger would
an army before him. And
er of his camels is equally amaz-
for my own part, I must own
aw so many at one view in my
life before. Besides these num-
endants, there was a prodigious
in spectators, not only on foot, but on
like wise, in the alley or char-
king, in or-
re-mentioned. The king, in or-
to his palace, went thro' one of
ers, preceded by two leopards,
ways go with him when he takes
diversion of hunting, and divers
His concubines came to join the

C O R N E L I U S L E B R U N .

257

1703

the very same night.

On the 14th of December, we spent the Christmas-day with Mr. Kastelein, and on the 15th, we paid our visit to the monks of the three convents which stand in the suburbs.

Two days after that, as we were at the company's house, we saw a white crow, which had made its appearance there several times, but nobody could shoot it. It was taken at last, however, in his majesty's toils.

Remark-
able fishes.

At the same time they dragged a small pond, wherein they caught four different sorts of fish, which are unknown in our European countries; namely, the Ghaer-maji, as they call them, that is to say, the afs-fish, which is marked in such a manner, as if a net was thrown over him; the sjir-ma-ji, or milk-fish, which is all spotted with scales; the saraep, a fish, the back whereof is a lively green, and its belly white. 'Tis remarkable, that it swims for the most part on the surface of the water. The fourth fort consisted of one small fish only, that had not, as had been taken notice of by several, in the least made any encrease in its bulk for two years successively. This, together with several others, I preserved in spirits of wine. All of them, however, more particularly when fried, are extremely well tasted.

1704.
January 1.
New-year's
day.

On the first day of January, 1704, about thirty of us went to pay the usual compliments of the season, according to the custom of the country, to Mr. Kastelein, who not only made us dine, but stay supper with him, who entertained us in a most elegant manner, exclusive of the sweet-meats, and other little refreshments that were served up between the meals. As the (/) English agent was by some casualty or other somewhat indisposed, he could not make one amongst us. His second, however, and the principal officers of his house, together with Father Antonio Desiro, the resident from (m) Portugal, came, and spent the evening with us. That ecclesiastic was a gentleman of great merit, had seen a great part of the world; and not only knew it, but how to live in

it too with credit and reputation. There were likewise several Armenian merchants amongst us. However, this entertainment, elegant as it was, was nothing in comparison of those which he used to make before the decease of his late dearly beloved consort; and there were but four chambers, once fired off in the morning, to give notice of this grand festival; whereas it was customary, in all the preceding years, to discharge several, and at divers times in the day, on that joyful occasion. This single signal, however, brought abundance of people from Julia, and the parts adjacent. As my eyes were attentive to every curious incident, I observed one particular lighted taper, which was near six feet in length, and in circumference proportionable, widely different from any thing that I had ever seen of the like nature before; with agreeable decorations from the top to the bottom, all in a singular high taste. It stood upon a spacious dish, in order that the wax, which might casually drop from it, might not anyways incommode it, and it gave a surprising light. All that night and the preceding day, the rain poured down to that degree, that the roads were almost impassable, which, at that season of the year, is looked upon there as somewhat very uncommon. On the sixth instant, however, which was Twelfth-day, the weather proved very fine once more. Some few days after that, we were entertained by the British agent, much after the same manner as we had been on New-year's day by our own director; with this addition, however, that his chambers were discharged at every health; there was likewise a kind of concert of music in the Persian taste. About sun-set, there came a native of (n) Georgia, who by profession was a dancer, and attempted, indeed, to amuse the company with some feats of activity; he turned out, however, but a bungling performer; one of his company, as a farther amusement, was swaddled up to that degree, in a white sheet, that no part of him was visible but his arms, in imitation of two children, one personating a boy, and the other a girl. Tho' he was extended on the floor, like one that was dead; yet he

U u u

made

An extra-
ordinary
taper.An enter-
tainment
given the
author and
his friends
by the Bri-
tish agent.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1701

language; others for the improvement of painting, sculpture, and architecture; others for the exercise and improvement of all mechanic arts and manufactures; such as tapestry, Mosaic work, wrought plate, works of iron, steel, copper, brass, embroidery, &c. The chief manufactures of this city are those of gold and silver stuffs, wrought silks, velvet, gold and silver lace, ribbons, tapestry, linnen, and glass. There are, according to a late French writer, 22,000 houses in Paris, many of which are seven stories high, and almost a family in every story; 52 parishes, 134 monasteries, of which 56 are inhabited by friars, and 78 by nuns; 979 streets; 14,000 coaches; and upwards of 700,000 souls.

(q) Cyprus, the island of, see p. 109. n. 1.

(s) Sulphur, or brimstone, a flat, unctuous mineral substance, fusible, and inflammable by fire; but not capable of being mixed with water.

(u) Holland, see p. 76. n. c.

XX

(w) Gorn-

1704

(w) Gomron, or Gombron, east long. 55. 30. lat. 27. 30. the greatest sea-port town in Persia, situate in the province of Fars, or Farsistan, on the strait, at the entrance of the gulph of Persia, opposite to the isle of Ormus, on the ruin whereof this town rose; and the English assisting the Persians in taking the isle of Ormus from the Portuguese, then one of the greatest marts in the east, the government allowed the English some extraordinary privileges, and half the customs of the port; and till very lately a great sum in lieu of them. It stands about 30 miles north east of the Arabian coast, and about 300 miles south-east of Shiras. Beside the native Persians, it is inhabited by English, Dutch, Portuguese, Arabs, Jews, Armenians, Indians, Banians, and several other nations, of which the Armenians and Banians are much the greatest traders. It is an unhealthful place, which occasions most of the inhabitants to remove into the country during the hot season, the winter being the time for traffic. The gains that are made by the English East-India company, in carrying the merchandise of the Armenians,

CHAP. XXXIX.

The Solemnity observed by the (a) Armenians, when they baptize their crosses. The innate Antipathy which is very remarkable in Nules to Bears. The grand Festival, called the Gaddernabia, and that of the solar Year; both observed by the (b) Persians. Other royal and magnificent Feasts. The manner of preserving the Stalks or Suckers of Rhubarb, and their medicinal Qualities. The Solemnization of the grand Festival, called the Bairam-kerbat, or Abraham's Sacrifice.

The Armenian ceremony of baptizing their crosses.

THIS solemnity was opened with a proper lesson, accompanied with hymns and masses, even till break of day; at which time, their priests, tho' before dressed in black, (the bishop only excepted, who performed the office) put on their rich vestments of gold brocade; and the bishop likewise then covered his head with a mitre, which was richly embellished with pearls and precious stones. He held, moreover, a crozier, or pastoral staff, of a moderate size, in his right-hand, which, tho' adorned as richly as his mitre, was covered over with a very fine white, embroidered handkerchief; he held another likewise in his

1704

Moors, Banians, &c. from Gombron to Surat, is one great branch of the company's profit; they seldom send a ship from Gombron to Surat, but she is as deep loaded as she can swim, with their effects, besides passengers, and a vast quantity of treasure on board; sometimes of the value of two or three hundred thousand pounds.

(x) Julfa, or Julpha (old) east long. 46. lat. 49. once the capital of Armenia, now in ruins, the inhabitants being transplanted to Ispahan, within a mile of which city, they have a town called New Julpha, by some looked upon as a suburb to Ispahan. Here they are encouraged and assisted by the Persians to carry on a foreign trade with all the country of Asia, and are the most considerable merchants in the world. They suffer them also to profess the christian religion; they have several churches in New Julpha, and come the nearest to the Greek church of any denomination of christians.

(y) Russia, or Muscovy, see P. 7. n. c.

left-hand; but that, indeed, was not near so pompous, or so richly decorated as the former. The assembly of the priesthood, on this solemn occasion, were in number about four and twenty, who went out from the church, in a regular procession, and in their rich habiliments, to another place, directly fronting the church, which was very lofty, and finely decorated, where over head hung two bells. Here they had a large copper basin, or cistern, which was full of water, on one side whereof they read, and sung for the compass of a whole hour, or better; after which, the bishop, in a very solemn manner, dipped his cro-

ser three times successively, after which the proper altar was aspersed with a large quantity of oil, and then they threw into the water a religious operation. The ecclesiastics, however, ed, instantaneously ran to the water, and washed their faces, and with the water, as did with the water, as did of the Armenian lady as early near it: such too with hollow cries filled sanctified water. The was observed, not only churches, but even a runs near (y) Julpha, proper here to inform the religious ceremony must ed till his majesty's permission in form; and so Kalaher, or Armen takes care to petition before-hand. Wherever a special messenger to two hundred ducats, usually paid by them for licence; but on the receipt, sends them a procession from any infidel, or ing from the populace; tion, in time, is indistinct since there are vast (d) Turks and Persians, rioting, through about the procession. On the day, the crowd was so great that the bishop would not have gone through the the guards cleared the by violence and compulsion, who, together with ecclesiastics, religious content belonging to the bet. This convent, church, consists of great cells, or apartments, which to be except a few of the but to hold a book desk, before which they sit upon the floor. The and well taken care of

...is, &c. from Gombron to Smyr,
...branch of the company's profit;
...sailed a ship from Gombron to Su-
...is as deep loaded as the can swim,
...s, besides passengers, and a vast
...treasure on board. Sometimes of the
...0 or three hundred thousand pounds.

or Julpha (old) east long 46.
the capital of Armenia, now in
...habitants being transplanted to li-
...in a mile of which city, they have a
New Julpha, by some looked up-
...word to Isphahan. Here they are cr-
...and assisted by the Persians to carry
...in trade with all the country of Asia,
...most considerable merchants in the
...they suffer them also to protect the
...gion; they have several churches
...in, and come the nearest to the
...all of any denomination of Chris-

...ia, or Miskovy, see p. 7. n. 6.

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

X.

...ens, when they baptize their
...y remarkable in Mules to
...ermobia, and boat of the floor
...Order royal and magnificent
...Order of Rukubath,
...ization of the grand Festival,
...nerjee.

...but that, indeed, was not near
...us, or so richly decorated as the
...The assembly of the priesthood,
...solemn occasion, were in number
...over and twenty, who went out
...the church, in a regular procession,
...their rich habitments, to another
...directly fronting the church, which
...by lofty and finely decorated, where
...ad hung two bells. Here they
...copper basin or cistern, which
...of water, on one side whereof they
...a long for the compals of a whole
...better; after which, the bishop,
...ry solemn manner, dipped his cro-
...fier

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

1704

fier three times successively into the basin; after that, the proper attendant brought him a large vase, or cup of oil, which he very formally threw into the water; and with that last religious operation the solemnity closed. The ecclesiastics, however, who had assisted, instantaneously ran to the cistern, thus blessed, and washed their hands and faces with the water; as did likewise all such of the Armenian laity as could get sufficiently near it: such too as were furnished with hollow canes filled them with this sanctified water. The same solemnity was observed, not only in divers other churches, but even at a rivulet, which runs near (c) Julpha. However, it is proper here to inform the reader, that this religious ceremony must never be attempted till his majesty's permission is first obtained in form; and for that reason, the Kalantaer, or Armenian burgo-master, takes care to petition for some few days before-hand. Whereupon the king sends a special messenger to make a demand of two hundred ducats, which sum is annually paid by them for this act of indulgence; but on the receipt thereof his majesty sends them a proper guard to protect them from any insults, or riotous proceedings from the populace; and this precaution, 'tis true, is indispensably necessary, since there are vast multitudes both of (d) Turks and Persians, who, through curiosity, throng about them, in order to see the procession. On this day, in particular, the crowd was so great, that the bishop himself would not have been able to have gone through the ceremony, had not the guards cleared the way before him, by violence and compulsion. There were seven bishops present on this solemn occasion, who, together with some other inferior ecclesiastics, reside in the episcopal convent belonging to the church of Annabaet. This convent, which surrounds the church, consists of great numbers of small cells, or apartments, where there is nothing to be seen except a few niches, of no manner of use but to hold a book or two, and a small desk, before which they seldom stand, but sit upon the floor. The walls are white, and well taken care of; and what light

263

1704

they have comes in on one side by two or three small windows, which are well glazed. The refectuary, or common-hall, may properly enough be called a long one, and is furnished with a pulpit, wherein some chapters are read by a proper assistant for that purpose, whilst the others are refreshing themselves at dinner. The chappel, from top to bottom is painted, and abounds with the representations of divers scripture-histories; but all of them are executed in a very artless and inelegant manner. Tho' their bishops are obliged to lead single lives, yet their priests may marry whenever they think convenient. The Armenians have two patriarchs, or arch-bishops; one resides here, and the other at Ectünasın, that is to say, the three churches near mount (e) Ararat, which lies at the distance of about three leagues from the city (f) Erivan.

On this occasion we happened to be eyewitnesses of a very remarkable combat between two mules, and a large, black hog, which the former, through their innate aversion to all bears in general, had inevitably torn to pieces, had not a timely aid and assistance luckily intervened. Mr. Kastelein, our governor, accounted, in a very rational manner, for this sudden and unexpected occurrence. This battle, said he, proceeded from the innate aversion which those creatures had to the black hog, from the too near resemblance that he bore to a bear. He assured us, that on his letting one of his mules loose one day upon a bear, by way of experiment, the latter was torn into pieces with the utmost fury and resentment in a few minutes. From this known antipathy it is, that the guides to every caravan, when they are apprehensive of any bears approaching them in their passage, which frequently attack their horses, set their unloaded mules directly upon them, who fly, like lions on their prey. At that very juncture, there happened to be a bear-ward making a shew of one he had tamed, and trained up to play tricks, not far from the Chiaerbaeg, and a young Persian came riding near him by meer accident on a mule which, in an instant, on his scenting the bear, flew open mouth at him, and

The innate antipathy of mules to all creatures resembling bears.

THE TRAVELS OF

1704

and obliged his master to call out loudly for assistance; but no one would venture to run to his relief. The mule, through the eager pursuit of his detested antagonist, threw his rider, who tho' not actually killed, was sorely bruised, and felt for some considerable time the ill effects of his fall; the bear, however, at last forced his way through a cavity, or hole, for shelter, where the mule could follow him no farther. This occurrence seemed to us, indeed, somewhat more surprising than ordinary; since we had no idea of this innate antipathy in mules; neither can I recollect, that I have ever read any thing in history of the Romans producing those animals, when tamed, into their public shews; from whence I concluded, I presume naturally enough, that the mules of this country differ from those that are bred any where else, in regard to this innate aversion.

The anniversary fast on account of the decease of their great prophet Ali.

On the twenty-ninth instant, every shop, throughout the whole city of Ispahan, was as close shut up as ours on a Sunday, in commemoration of the decease of their great prophet Ali.

In the beginning of February, the heat began to be so intense, that several plants on a sudden, as it were, began to make their appearance.

Much about the same time, the agent from (g) England, accompanied by father Antonio Desfiro, and several others of his intimate friends, and acquaintance, came to pay their respects to Mr. Kastelein, who entertained them all in a very elegant manner both at dinner and supper; inasmuch, that the company did not break up till day-light began to appear. Such visits, however, were customary enough, as our director and that agent were very intimate friends; and as both had always a numerous retinue, those testimonies of respect were always paid in a grand and pompous manner.

The conclusion of the Persian fast.

On the 6th of February, the Persians, with pleasure, beheld the face of the new moon; at that instant, their long and solemn fast was over, and they proclaimed their joy the whole night long by a kind of concert of music.

1704

The next day they solemnized the festival of it, according to custom, after the same joyful manner, and his majesty that day made a grand entertainment at court, to which most of the foreign ministers were formally invited.

The festival of Gaddernabie.

On the 8th was another grand festival, called the Gaddernabie, which is solemnized by his majesty alone; on which, according to custom, he gives audience to all his counsellors of state.

At the same time, both their wives and daughters repaired with them to the palace; where his majesty detained such of them as he best approved of for several days and nights successively; which is looked upon as a peculiar honour, and such an act of indulgence as the ladies are not a little proud of. During the time, there were great rejoicings, and fine fire-works played off before the palace-gate.

A flower.

A remarkable flower.

A pleasant liquor distilled from it.

On the 10th, it is customary, for the courtiers to make their voluntary presents to his majesty, consisting principally of wax-works, artfully wrought up in the form of houses, gardens, fine flowers, or fruits. On that day the wind arose, and blew at north-west, in a most impetuous manner; and prevails there, it seems, annually for some considerable time. This violent northerly wind is distinguished by the name of Baad-biedmusk, or Bed-mus-wint, from a remarkable flower which always blows, at this particular season, on a sort of willow, from a bud that is not much larger than one of our small nuts. As small as it is, however, it is very odorous. The natives frequently distil from this fine-flavoured flower, a very delicious liquor, not unlike therbet, or lemonade, when well sweetened, with double refined sugar; but much stronger, and much more wholesome. This liquor is kept in bottles all the year round. This flower likewise is frequently dried by the ladies, and the powder of it scattered about their fine linnen, in order to give them an agreeable scent. Great quantities of it, in short, are brought to market by people that reside in the parts adjacent. As I never observed any such buds on our European willows, I have given the reader a representation,

1704
it appears at this season
with its leaves, which
till the month of April
which cause these parties
ings, for the most part
wards the end of the moon
the weather is not only
heat of the sun is very in
On the first day of May
rial smart flowers of ra
wind immediately anim
ably cold; the weather
variable, and continues
beginning of April.

On Friday, being the
the Persians solemnized
of the solar year. Their
ket-pieces, strike the eye
able manner by candle-lights
shops in general are pre
those more especially c
confessors, which h
fect. There is plenty o
visions likewise in the co
are sent about all the tw
an uncommon custom,
saw passed in any other
sever. However, natu
a provision, the shops
of all their stocks, it
concourse of strangers,
all parts to Ispahan on
tion.

As our master of the
sun, and well known at
painted him betwixt in the
palace, where his highness
make a grand entertainm
cupid loads that were in
table much about ten o
again in less than an hour
visions were served up i
dishes; in which the P
difference principally con
of which there was at le
in number, was covered;
happens to be more comp
of dishes is frequently dou
Most of the guests, who
to this banquet, were on
kind of turban, embell

it day they solemnized the festi-
according to custom, after the
manner, and his majesty that
grand entertainment at court,
most of the foreign ministers
thally invited.

Shi was another grand festival,
Gadernabie, which is solemn-
mately alone; on which, ac-
cording to custom, he gives audience to
ambassadors of state.

At the same time, both their wives and
children repaired with them to the pa-
lance where his majesty detained such of
the best approved of his several
nights successively; which is
on as a peculiar honour, and such
diligence as the ladies are not a
little of. During the time, there
are rejoicings, and fine fireworks
are set off before the palace-gate.

The 10th, it is customary, for the
to make their voluntary presents
variously, consisting principally of
silk, actually wrought up in the
silk, garters, fine towers, or
silk, on that day the wind rose, and
a stormy wind, in a most impetuous
and prevails there, it seems, an-
some considerable time. This
wind is distinguished by
of Bad-biedmulk, or Bad-mul-
a remarkable flower which al-

A flower
at this time.

At this particular season, on
willow, from a bud that is not
larger than one of our small nuts.

A flower
at this time.

The natives frequently distil
a very de-

luscious-flavoured flower, a very de-
licious, not unlike sherbet, or le-
mon, when well sweetened, with double
sugar; but much stronger, and much
more agreeable. This liquor is kept in
small bottles. This flower

is frequently dried by the ladies, and
scattered about their fine
clothes, in order to give them an agreeable
scent. In short, we

see great quantities of it, in short, we
see great quantities of it, in short, we
see great quantities of it, in short, we
see great quantities of it, in short, we

As I never obser-
ved any European mil-
lions adjacent.
such buds on our European mil-
lions given the reader a repen-
tation,

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

1704 ~~~~~
tation of two different branches; one as
it appears at this season; and the other
with its leaves, which never shoot out
till the month of April. The winds,
which cause these particular trees to blow
thus, for the most part, continue till to-
wards the end of the month; during which,
the weather is not only very fine, but the
heat of the sun is very intense.

On the first day of March we had seve-
ral smart showers of rain; and a strong
wind immediately arising, it was remark-
ably cold; the weather, in short, proved
variable, and continued so to be till the
beginning of April.

On Friday, being the 20th of March,
the Persians solemnized the grand festival
of the solar year. Their bazars, or mar-
ket-places, strike the eye in a very agree-
able manner by candle-light; since all the
shops in general are prettily decorated, but
those more especially of the fruiterers and
confectioners, which have a charming ef-
fect. There is plenty of all sorts of pro-
visions likewise in the cooks-shops, which
are sent about all the town over, which is
an uncommon custom, and what I never
saw practised in any other country what-
soever. However, notwithstanding such
a profusion, the shops are soon stript
of all their stocks, through the vast
concourse of strangers, who resort from
all parts to Ispahan on this solemn occa-
sion.

As our master of the horse was a Per-
sian, and well known at court, I accom-
panied him betimes in the morning to the
palace, where his majesty intended to
make a grand entertainment. The prin-
cipal lords that were invited sat down to
table much about ten o'clock; and rose
again in less than an hour. All the provi-
sions were served up in gold and silver
dishes; in which the Persian king's mag-
nificence principally consists. Each dish,
of which there was at least two hundred
in number, was covered; and when there
happens to be more company, the quantity
of dishes is frequently doubled.

Most of the guests, who were invited
to this banquet, wore on that occasion a
kind of turban, embellished with rich

pearls and precious stones; this turban,
they call Tha-cits-timaer: some, indeed,
were adorned with the feathers of a heron,
which are very beautiful in their kind, and
very graceful. As soon as they are out of
the grand salon, or hall, where the enter-
tainment is made, they pull off these rich
turbans, and put on those which they
wear daily on their heads, and which are
carried before them by their respective do-
mestics.

During the time that this festival lasts,
these courtiers make a very splendid ap-
pearance, but more particularly on this
day, when all in general are dressed in new
attire. At a small distance from the hall
where his majesty gave the entertainment,
there were a dozen of his sumpter-horses
very richly caparisoned; their saddles and
housings, were set with costly pearls and
precious stones, and their bridles, all of
massy gold. They were fastened to hal-
ters made of silk, which trailed upon the
ground; but particular care was taken that
no one should tread upon them. Tho'
seven of the twelve horses were white
ones; yet one part of their bodies, their
tails, and their feet were all painted over
with either a bright red, or a yellow like
an orange. I could not procure a sight of
these beautiful creatures, till I put my
hand in my purse, and bribed their re-
spective grooms. A rich, large carpet was
spread near the place where they stood,
whereon was seated a gentleman, to whose
care they were more immediately entrusted;
and on one side of him lay a golden
hammer with which they were shod; and
a trough of the same metal. I could not,
however, by a bribe, or any other interest
whatever, procure admittance into the sa-
lon, where the entertainment was made;
and was obliged to sit down contented
with a commodious seat for seeing every
thing that passed by.

During this festival, there are grand
presents customarily made to his majesty,
not only by the grantees of the court, but
by the bassas and governors likewise of
particular places: these presents generally
consist either of some rich commodities,
purves of gold, fine horses, camels, or
mules,
Y y y

The grand-
deur and
magnifi-
cence of the
Persians.

Grand pre-
sents made
by the gran-
dees to his
majesty on
this festival.

THE TRAVELS OF

266

1704

mules, which are carried to him separately by such citizens, as are employed by his majesty's exprels orders for that particular purpose. At the same time, these officers carry all round the grand square belonging to the palace ten or a dozen vessels full of straw, which are hung at the end of some certain long poles, in commemoration of a conquest which they had formerly obtained over the Aetbec (*b*) Tartars: after they have made this declaration, they lead a certain number of horses, all covered over with silk, but without any saddles, into the court belonging to the place. As for my own part, I thought the finest sight of all was, the vast number of grandees who walked across the court in their return from the entertainment, amidst a large throng of spectators.

During the whole course of this festival likewise, which is continued for several days successively, little presents of eggs are made by one grandee to another; and even the Maer-sejeldae is obliged to wait on his majesty, with some of them embellished with gold and silver, and painted in a very elegant manner. And these particular presents are held in great estimation amongst them.

On the 23d instant, we solemnized the grand festival of Easter at Mr. Kasselein's, our director's, and the very next day the English agent, with a numerous retinue, came to congratulate him on that joyful occasion. He met accordingly with a very courteous and friendly reception, and it was full late before he departed. On the 25th, several other visits were paid us; by which means, in short, we spent the remainder of the month, imperceptibly as it were, in innocent mirth and social congratulations.

About the beginning of April, our director received a present of some young asparagus from a particular friend, which was at that time such a novelty, that they had not then been brought to market, or, at least, threecore of them could not be purchased under a score of florins. This asparagus is always excellently dear in this early part of the season, and few care to be at the charge, unless they purchase them

1704

Stalks or suckers of rhubarb.

Their qualities.

with a view of presenting them to some persons of distinction, whose favour and interest they would willingly procure. We had, moreover, some shoots, or suckers of rhubarb presented to us preserved in the gravy of lamb, as another novelty worthy of our acceptance. They are very refreshing, and of a laxative nature, and at this time of the year, highly esteemed, and are a most delicious flavour. Their leaves are curled; and as to their colour, they are green, yellow, and somewhat inclining to the red; but their stalks are of a yellowish white. Some of them, indeed, are of a fine red, and two or three inches thick. As to their length, they are generally about a foot, or a foot and a half, and the tender part of the best of them is only fit to eat. As soon as they begin to shoot up, they are covered, like asparagus, close up with earth, and by that means they are soon brought to perfection. They are cultivated, as favourite plants, for his majesty's table, in the parts adjacent to the city called (*i*) Laet, or Lahor, the governor, whereof is indispensably obliged to make his majesty a present of a considerable quantity of these shoots. The leaf of this plant is two or three fathom in circumference; and the root likewise as well as the leaf, is like that of the common rhubarb; but it has not equal strength with that which grows in the country of Ulbek, between (*k*) China and (*l*) Moscow. The Persians eat the tender part of these suckers raw, with salt and pepper, in the same manner as the natives of (*m*) Italy do the suckers of artichokes; the taste whereof, tho' hot and biting, is very palatable and pleasant. The syrup, which is sometimes made of them is very refreshing. My curiosity induced me to make a draught of this plant and its root; and I have casually met with some leaves of it, which have been a foot and a half in length, and others still longer. The root of this which I have here delineated had four slips, or shoots, which were grey and mottled. It was sent me, by way of present, and as a curiosity from the city of Sulpha; where it had stood, in a proper bed, for nineteen years successively till the time I had it.

1

On

1704

On one side of the P. others, that I have seen, when the leaf is advanced, called the advanced, but by the design, but by the Fockle-fockle. Son ple, and at other times it is, for the generally a cucumber, tho' the large again. It is when cut into broth butter, or, in short, whatever. The first bears it, is transplanted, and by that young, and by that is manifestly improved, particularly, viz. yellow; and tho', for a but about a foot and ground, it has several which frequently be earth through the which hangs upon a find in plate 75. a 1 of these plants, as all before described. The hand are distinguishable The root thereof by the last mentioned plant fockle by the letter C On the 7th of this fell such an impression, accompanied with hail, vered the face of the withstanding it was in the same time within was such an occurrence heard of for many years the remainder of the proved very tempestuous certain.

On the 15th instant, nized their grand festival of Abraham. Our well apprized of my the particular orders here, and two others made to wait on me the pie intended for it that religious custom, fore, and immediately

of presenting them to some
 tion, whole favour and in-
 could willingly procure. We
 er, some shoots, or suckers of
 lected to us preserved in the
 and, as another remedy worthy
 stance. They are very refresh-
 a laxative nature, and at this
 year, highly esteemed, and of
 ous flavour. Their leaves are
 as to their colour, they are
 and somewhat inclining to
 out their stalks are of a yellowish
 some of them, indeed, are of a
 and two or three inches thick.
 length, they are generally about
 foot and a half, and the tender
 part of them is only fit to eat.
 they begin to shoot up, they
 like asparagus, close up with
 by that means they are soon
 to perfection. They are culti-
 favourite plants, for his majesty's
 the parts adjacent to the city cal-
 aer, or Lahor, the governor
 indifferently obliged to make
 a present of a considerable
 of their shoots. The last of this
 or three fathom in circumfer-
 the root likewise as well as the
 re that of the common rhubarb;
 is not equal strength with that
 grows in the country of Uluck, be-
 China and (?) Morocco. The
 eat the tender part of these root-
 with salt and pepper, in the same
 the natives of (he) Italy do the
 artichokes; the taste whereof,
 and biting, is very palatable and
 The syrup, which is some-
 de of them is very refreshing.
 duty induced me to make a draught
 plant and its root; and I have ex-
 met with some leaves of it, which
 are a foot and a half in length, and
 The root of this which
 were delineated had four slips, or
 which were grey and mottled. It
 me, by way of present, and as a
 from the city of Julpha; where
 stood in a proper bed, for nineteen
 accurately till the time I had it.
 On

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1704

On one side of the plant, the reader will observe, that I have drawn a particular fruit, when the season is somewhat farther advanced, called by the Persians, Badsjoen, but by the (n) Europeans, Foeckje-fockiese. Sometimes it is of a purple, and at other times of a white colour. It is, for the generality, about the size of a cucumber, tho' there are some full as large again. It eats extremely pleasant, when cut into broth, or when fried in butter, or, in short, dressed in any other way whatsoever. The shrub, or plant, that bears it, is transplanted whilst it is very young, and by that means the fruit of it is manifestly improved. Its blossoms are parti-coloured, viz. white, purple, and yellow; and tho' for the most part, it shoots but about a foot and an half above the ground, it has several small branches, which frequently bow down to the very earth through the weight of the fruit which hangs upon them: the reader will find in plate 73. a representation of one of these shrubs; as also of the other plant before described. The leaves of the rhubarb are distinguished by the letter A. The root thereof by the letter B. And the last mentioned plant, called the Foeckje-fockiese by the letter C.

Plate 73.

On the 7th of this instant April, there fell such an impetuous shower of rain, accompanied with hail, near Julpha, as covered the face of the whole country, notwithstanding it was scarcely discerned at the same time within the city itself, which was such an occurrence as had not been heard of for many years before. During all the remainder of the month, the weather proved very tempestuous, rainy, and uncertain.

On the 15th instant, the Persians solemnized their grand festival, by them called Bairam-korbat, that is to say, the sacrifice of Abraham. Our director, who was well apprized of my inquisitive temper, gave particular orders to his master of the horse, and two others of his inferior domestics, to wait on me on horseback, to the place intended for the solemnization of that religious custom. On the Eve before, and immediately after sun-set, the

267

1704

king's music had been heard to play, which continued till the very same hour the next morning, without the least intermission, as his majesty's band is very numerous, and one part relieved the other at certain stated hours.

At seven in the morning, I made the best of my way to the Chiaer-baeg, where his majesty was to pass, as he went across his royal gardens; and, in about half an hour's time at farthest, he appeared at the head of a long train of grandees, to the number of two hundred, if not more, all dressed, in the most elegant manner, with the richest turbans on their heads, of which we have given the reader a sufficient description some time before. I planted myself, about the mid-way, as near as I could, where his majesty was to pass; and after I had gratified my curiosity with a full view of him, and his numerous train, I set spurs to my horse, and galloped away to the place called the Babarock, that is, to the Persian burial-ground, and the very spot whereon the ceremony was to be performed; which was half a league distance at least, if not more, from the city. The whole ceremony consisted of nothing more than the bare sacrifice of one male camel, without spot or blemish; for otherwise it would be impure, and unfit for that religious service. The Daroega, that is the bailiff of the city, or else his majesty himself, gives the first fatal blow with a long sharp-pointed lance; and when thus deeply wounded, he is instantly dispatched by several fabres and knives, in the hands of such persons as are appointed for that solemn purpose: when thus perfectly sacrificed, they cut him up in sundry pieces, which are distributed amongst the several officers belonging to each division or district of the city; and as all parties concerned are ambitious of receiving their full dividend, or share, disorders on that account frequently arise, and prove fatal, as it happened on this very day; for I saw several laid breathless on the ground in the height of their quarrel and contention. For all of them repair to this public sacrifice armed either with fabres or clubs; and there is always such a concourse of persons

1704

persons on horseback, that there is no possibility of stirring one way or the other. For my own part, I had the good fortune to move off the premises one of the first, and returned directly to the Chiaer-Bag, in order to see the multitude of spectators on their return into the city. At length when the fray was all over, and each party had secured as good a share of the sacrifice as possibly he could get; the whole multitude returned in triumph; each officer at the head of those belonging to his own peculiar district jumping and dancing; some waving their sabres, and others their bludgeons over their heads, with loud acclamations, and abundance of what we commonly call rough music. The first slice that is cut off from this spotless sacrifice is devoted to his majesty's service, which is conveyed to the palace on the point of a long spear. As for the rest, the return was made regular enough, not only without any noise or confusion, but with all the testimonies of the most perfect satisfaction. In the first place, the king's guards made their appearance, and after them came his majesty himself on horseback, under a large parasol (as they call it) that is, a kind of umbrella, to screen him from the too intense heat of the sun. After him, came a long train of the grandees, or lords belonging to the court; followed by twelve of the king's sumpter-horses, all richly caparisoned, and four majestic elephants. In all, there were no less, according to the nearest computation that could be made, than one hundred thousand persons of all ranks and degrees present at this solemnity; some on foot, some on horse-back, and prodigious numbers on the tops of their houses. I was the only European, that appeared dressed in my own country mode. As soon as the king drew near, the way was presently cleared for him by dint of cudgel; inasmuch, that there were several horse-men that were drove into the water; some on foot, who got most heartily drubbed; and as for my own part, I found myself prodigiously fatigued, notwithstanding the whole ceremony was over by eleven in the morning, if not before; and notwithstanding the whole mul-

2

1704

titude had crossed the town in form, and made their return in proper order. Previous to the carrying this religious ceremony into actual execution, the poor innocent, spotless camel, was led for ten days successively, covered with thorns, and other emblems of mortification, and preceded by attendants, with lances, axes, and a variety of other warlike weapons to denote his intended death and approaching execution.

On that day, there are no less than fifty thousand sheep all slaughtered, dressed, and eaten up in the city of Ispahan; and most of those who had the good fortune to procure a slice of the camel, took care to dress it with their mutton: however, there were some few, indeed, more religiously inclined than the rest, who hoarded up what they had got as a sacred relic, and kept it all the year round. It must be owned, it is true, that there are ten or twelve thousand sheep slaughtered every day throughout the year for the supply of their several markets; and that all persons, of what rank or degree soever, rich or poor, lie under an indispensable obligation to eat mutton on this solemn day. Some few days before the day of sacrifice, I met with such droves of sheep, that I could scarce get clear of them. The inhabitants of this city, moreover, consume an almost incredible number of lambs, not above five and twenty days old at most. This consumption commences in November, and lasts till the latter end of May, but more especially amongst the people of taste and distinction. The price of each of these lambs is for the generality, seven, eight, or nine morood-jies (as they call their coin) seven whereof are of about a crown value of our money; but the largest weight of any of them does not exceed twelve pounds. They are looked upon as the choicest viands throughout all Persia, especially amongst the richer sort, who seldom, if ever, eat any beef, or buffaloes; for notwithstanding large quantities of both, 'tis true, are brought to market; yet those provisions are for the most part purchased by none but their mechanics, and the other lower class of their people.

Some

1704

Some few days after ramay had been solemnized, my above described animal both himself a sight of a large number, mingling a cross the river, had swollen extremely the rains that had fallen few days before.

On the 23d instant, another festival, which dies, on which (as the prophet Mohammed, people, that Ali, or should be his immediate knowledge him as such.

This was translated Arabia the happy, or Shoonahier, from whom this festival is derived by the Persians only; tion of it to any of the days is looked upon as a

About this time the flood, and there were fell down towards the month, that they not on horses, but totally with. This misfortune, however, he wondered at; since in this country is still as the houses are all really impossible to keep the fall of any impetuous As soon as the month ever, came on, the were change for the better; a the country with our d intention to follow the co but the banks of it had by means of the prece

Ouzon

(b) Armenia, see p. 198.

(c) Persia, see p. 64, n. o.

(d) India, or India, see

(e) Turkey, see p. 202.

passed the town in form, and turn in proper order. Prevailing this religious ceremonial execution, the poor infests camel, was led for ten miles, covered with thorns, and adorned with mortification, and attendants, with lances, axes, and other warlike weapons to headed death and approaching

ay, there are no less than fifty sheep all slaughtered, dressed, and the city of Isfahan, and most of the good fortune to produce if the camel, took care to dismount: however, there were indeed, more religiously inclined, who boarded up what was a sacred relic, and kept it round. It must be owned, it is there are ten or twelve thousand slaughtered every day throughout the city for the supply of their several families, of what they see fatter, rich or poor, lie under a penible obligation to eat mutton. Some few days of sacrifice, I met with such sheep, that I could scarce get them. The inhabitants of this country, consume an almost incredible number of lambs, not above five and six old at most. This consumption is in November, and lasts all the month of May, but more especially in the people of taste and distinction. Each of these lambs is for the most part, seven, eight, or nine months old at their sale (seven months is the common value of our mutton, the largest weight of any of the kind does not exceed twelve pounds, and is looked upon as the choicest viands throughout all Persia, especially among the richer sort, who seldom, if ever, eat any beef or mutton; for not only large quantities of both, but also brought to market; yet those are for the most part purchased by the mechanics, and the other is of their people.

Some

CORNELIUS ALE BRUN.

1704

Some few days after this religious ceremony had been solemnized in the manner above described, his majesty went with his concubines into the country, and amused both himself and them with the sight of a large number of elephants swimming a-crofs the river, the waters whereof had swollen excessively high, by reason of the rains that had fallen very heavy some few days before.

On the 23d instant, the Persians held another festival, which they call Aidikadier, on which (as they assert) their grand prophet Mohammed, declared to the people, that Ali, or Hali, the prophet, should be his immediate successor, and laid his positive injunctions on them to acknowledge him as such.

This was transacted (as they say) in Arabia the happy, near the village of Shomhadier, from whence the name of this festival is derived, which is observed by the Persians only; since the bare mention of it to any of the other Mahomedans is looked upon as a gross affront.

About this time the trees began to shoot; and there were such heavy rains fell down towards the conclusion of this month, that they not only damaged some houses, but totally washed away others. This misfortune, however, is not much to be wondered at; since the mason's work in this country is just like a sponge; and as the houses are all flat at top, it is morally impossible to keep them dry upon the fall of any impetuous showers.

As soon as the month of May, however, came on, the weather began to change for the better; and I went into the country with our director, with an intention to follow the course of the river; but the banks of it had been so overflowed, by means of the preceding heavy rains,

(a) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(b) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(c) Julia, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. x.

(d) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

269

1704

that we were indispensably obliged to strike a-crofs the country, by a road, which in two hours time, led us to the pleasure-house, or rural-seat, called Goferon, which is situate, eastward of the city, on the river of Zenderoe. To this pleasure-house there is a good garden, in which there is great plenty of fena, and fruit-trees; and several that have been sent by the East-India company have halted here, not only on their arrival, but at their departure from Isfahan. There are several good apartments, it is true, in this house; but many of them begin to run to ruin and decay. The parts adjacent, however, are exceedingly pleasant. In this garden there are four several fena-trees, at a small distance from each other, which cover a pavilion, where there is a small flight of steps in order to get into it. These trees are very short; yet their trunks are very thick, and two of the four are no less than 16 feet in circumference. The Persians look upon them with more than common regard on account of their antiquity, and peremptorily insist, that Tamerlane the Great once reposed himself under the shadow of their wide-spreading branches.

We were in hopes of meeting with some game here; but as the rain began to fall heavy all on a sudden, we thought it most advisable to return to Julpha directly, without the least farther delay; which accordingly we did, and staid there till night came upon us. The weather proved very precarious the next day; and I was unfortunately seized with an intermitting fever. Tho' I had only some few fits of it; yet they were very severe, and weakened me to that degree, that I felt the ill effects of them till the beginning of the month of June.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(e) Atarat, the ancient name for the mount Caucasus, between the Euxine and Caspian seas, where Noah's ark rested.

(f) Erivan, east long. 45 lat. 40. 6. a city of Persia, on the frontiers of Turkey, in Asia, in the province of Chirvan, situate 180 miles east of

Z z z

1704 of Erzerun, and 160 miles north-west of Taurus.

(g) England, see p. 91. n. f.

(h) Tartary, see p. 18. n. i.

(i) Laer, or Lahor, capital of the province of Lahor, east long. 75. lat. 33. is situate on the river Ravione, on the streams which form the river Indus 300 miles north-west of Delli, and 800 miles north of Surat. It is a large beautiful city; once the seat of the empire; but the palaces are running to ruin since the removal of the court. It is now the frontier of the Mogul's country against Persia, Kouli Kan, or the Sha Nadir, having added the province of Affock, and all the provinces of India on the west-side of the Indus to the Persian empire. At this city ends that magnificent walk of shady trees which runs from the city of Agra to this place, being upwards of 600 miles, a plantation of great use as well as grandeur in so hot a climate, since these trees are a shelter to travellers from the scorching sun.

(k) China, see p. 66. n. t.

(l) Moscow, or Russia, see p. 7. n. c.

(m) Italy, is situate between 7 and 19 degrees of east-long. and between 38 and 47 degrees of north-lat. bounded by Switzerland and the Alps, which separate it from Germany on the north; by the gulph of Venice on the east; by the Mediterranean sea on the south; and by the same sea and the Alps, which separate it

from France on the west; and if we include Savoy, which lies, indeed, on the West-side of the Alps, between Italy and France, we must extend it a degree farther west. This is usually described, however, with Italy, as it is contiguous to Piedmont, and has the same sovereign, being a province of the king of Sardinia's dominions. Italy is said to resemble a boot, and is in length from the north-west to the south-east 600 miles and upwards; the breadth is very unequal in the north, which may be called the boot-top, it is 400 miles broad from east to west. In the calf of the leg, or middle, it is about 120 broad, and towards the fourth, about the instep, 80 miles broad, and comprehends the following countries, or sub-divisions. 1. In the north of Italy are the duchies of Savoy, Piedmont, and part of Monterrat, subject to the king of Sardinia; the territory of Genoa, subject to the Genoese; the duchies of Milan, Mantua, and the rest of the duchy of Monterrat, subject to the house of Austria; the Duchy of Modena, subject to its own duke; and the large territories of Venice, subject to that republic. 2. In the middle of Italy are the duchy of Tuscany, now subject to the emperor of Germany; the pope's dominions, which almost surround Tuscany, and the State of Lucca. 3. In the south division is the kingdom of Naples, subject to the king of the two Sicilies.

(n) Europe, see p. 127. n. del.

(o) Ispahan, see p. 109. n. m.

(p) Arabia, see p. 203. n. a.

CHAP. XL.

An accurate, tho' compendious Description of (a) Ispahan, and of all such Beauties, both in Art and Nature, as are to be met with in that extensive City, and the Parts adjacent, and which we flatter ourselves are well-worthy the Attention of the Curious.

1704. A prospect of the city from without.
TH O' Ispahan is a very extensive city, provided the suburbs are included; yet it makes but a poor appearance from without, in regard either to the moschs, towers, or stately edifices that are therein erected; and the reason, in fact, is, be-

cause in the Summer-season 'tis perfectly concealed, as it were, and over-shaded with great numbers of lofty trees. And as this is the real cause, I was determined to wait till the Winter came on, before I drew a prospect of it; and even then, I could make but

1703 but an imperfect sketch of the most populous of cities, and other ever-green lofty, and so thick they are at all times a sight to the eye.

All the buildings that general are of a grey colour, or pistons, there is a wall, indeed, city from the suburbs possibility of distinguishing the division, as the he and close together. A let, great impediment inclined to take a draw the city, and the more a level, or plain; insum I was obliged to ramble from the place, in few rising-ground for the whence I had not only Ispahan, which is situated of the town, the city, dages, and the numerous stand round about it, b gardens, which take up ground, and the lofty n that surround them.

That mountain which them all, and by the r lofty, is at least a league stance to the southward one side of it, there is an or pleasure-house, which ed by king Suliman, his father, in which there are of very fine and magnifi from whence we had a only of the city and the about it, but likewise of all sorts of trees, and a K ceeding from a torrent o hardly falling from the a This rural palace is c men, that is to say, th Suliman, and when I there, a great number of very busy in making the rations. The reader will nered a representation of to me from the box, of th

the west; and if we include
as, indeed, on the West side of
an Italy and France, we must
see further west. This is usually
ever, with Italy, as it is con-
mon, and has the same fore-
province of the king of Sardinia;
Italy is said to resemble a
length from the north-west to
600 miles and upwards; the
unequal in the north, which
to the base, it is 400 miles
east to west. In the east of the
le, it is about 120 broad, and to-
with, about the width, 80 miles
comprehends the following coun-
divisions. 1. In the north of Italy
es of Savoy, Piedmont, and part
subject to the king of Sardinia;
Genoa, subject to the Genoese;
Milan, Mantua, and the rest of
Monferrat, subject to the house
the Duchy of Modena, subject to
s, and the large territories of Ve-
to that republic. 2. In the middle
the duchy of Tuscany, now subject
or of Germany; the pope's domi-
almost surround Tuscany, and the
ca. 3. In the south division is the
Naples, subject to the king of the

1704

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

1703

but an imperfect sketch of it, on account
of the vast profusion of palm-trees, cypres-
trees, and other ever-greens, which are so
very lofty, and so thick of leaves, that
they are at all times and seasons most de-
lightful to the eye.

All the buildings throughout this city in
general are of a grey colour, and have ter-
races, or plat-forms over them. Tho'
there is a wall, indeed, that divides the
city from the suburbs; yet there is no
possibility of distinguishing it, or perceiving
the division, as the houses stand so thick
and close together. All these are, doubt-
less, great impediments to a person that is
inclined to take a draught or prospect of
the city, and the more so, as 'tis built on
a level, or plain; inasmuch that, in short,
I was obliged to ramble a whole league
from the place, in search after a proper
rising-ground for that purpose; from
whence I had not only a full view of (b)
Julpha, which is situate on the other side
of the town, the city, with all its appen-
dages, and the numerous little villages that
stand round about it, but of all the fine
gardens, which take up a vast extent of
ground, and the lofty mountains likewise
that surround them.

The moun-
tain called
Koe-foffa.

That mountain which lies the nearest of
them all, and by the natives called Koe-
foffa, is at least a league and an half's di-
stance to the southward from the city. On
one side of it, there stands a royal mansion,
or pleasure-house, which was first erect-
ed by king Suliman, his present majesty's
father, in which there are a great number
of very fine and magnificent apartments;
from whence we had a full prospect, not
only of the city and the country all round
about it, but likewise of a fine nursery of
all sorts of trees, and a kind of cascade pro-
ceeding from a torrent of water that is con-
stantly falling from the adjacent mountains.
This rural palace is called Tagte Sulle-
moen, that is to say, the throne of king
Sulliman, and when I happened to be
there a great number of workmen were
very busy in making the necessary prepa-
rations. The reader will find I have an-
nexed a representation of it, as it appeared
to me from the foot of the hill. There are

A royal
pleasure-
house called
Tagte-sul-
lemoen.

of all such
as I observed before, that is near
five and twenty leagues from east to west.
It is likewise six leagues in breadth and up-
wards. One may say, without any great
impropriety, that it is boundless, particu-
larly to the eastward; as is also the road to
Shiras, whereon I met with divers fine vil-
lages, and delightful gardens. And tho' I
travelled at least six leagues eastward, I
could perceive no boundaries or limits.

This city has no less than ten several
gates, which stand all open, and without
any proper officers to guard them. In or-
der to take a tour all round the place, I
went to the gate called Haslan-abaet, from
a person of that name, and of high birth
and distinction, who began first to erect a
range of houses on that side. From thence
I went to another gate called Derwas-
cykaroen, that is to say, the gate of the
deaf; that part of the city having been
formerly inhabited by such principally as
laboured under that infirmity and misfor-
tune. I left this gate on the left-hand, in
order to take a view of the bazars, which
are at a quarter of a league's distance, at
least, from the former. The gate called
Seydack-moedjoen is at much about the
same distance, and on the east-side of the
city, where there is a double wall; the
outermost whereof is very low, and be-
yond it, there are no houses, and nothing
to be seen but a few monuments, or tomb-
stones. From this I went to another gate
called Shooebarn, which stands to the west-
ward; from whence, at about the same
distance, I saw that called Togh-shie.
The canal, which runs round one part of
the city to the westward, and as far as the
gate called Karoen, rises, that is, has its
spring from this place. From thence I
went about a quarter of a league, and saw
the gate called Darideft, and at an equal
distance from that called Darwasynow,
that is to say, the New-gate. From thence
I went to the gate called Darwarfy Lam-
boen, and then to that called Doulet, or
the gate of Prosperity, which is that of
the Chiaer-baeg. The tenth is called
Hadshie,

The gates
of Ispahan.

271

1704

THE TRAVELS OF

1704

Hadshie, which stands near the kitchen-gate of the royal palace. As soon as I had gotten round again to the gate before-mentioned called Haffian-aboet, from whence I set out, I pulled out my watch, and found I had been full two hours and an half in taking this tour. They are all of them composed of earth only, and have no out-works to defend them; nay, the very folding-doors to them are perfectly clumsy, and secured only by a few iron-plates.

This city (within the walls) is divided into two and twenty principal partitions, or wards; seventeen whereof are distinguished by the name of Mameth-olla-hie, or Namet-holladers, and the five others are called Heiderrie: they bear a near resemblance to those called the Nicoloti, and the Castellani in the city of (c) Venice.

Each of the above-mentioned seventeen partitions, or wards of the first division, have distinct appellations; the first is known by the name of Bagact, that is, the ward of gardens; so called, because in the reign of king Abbas the first, it contained gardens, and nothing else. The second is called Kerron, that is, the ward of the deaf; the third Daeh-bettin, that is, the division of the house of Melons; the fourth is called Sey-id Agmed-joen, from one of their celebrated doctors; the fifth Letvez, but from whence it derives that name I could never learn; the sixth is called Bafier-Agues, that is to say, the Duck-market; the seventh Shaet-soi Kotba; that is, the cross way of Kotba; the eighth Setoen-senhierie, so called from an illustrious prince of that name; the ninth Namo-ahg, the signification whereof is the three incompatibles; the tenth Shoebare, but why so called I am at a loss to determine; the eleventh is distinguished by the name of Derre-Rabba-Kafim; that is to say, the ward, or division of the father Kafim; the twelfth is called Goude-Matfoek-beek, but why I know not; the thirteenth Golbaet, that is, abounding with fine flowers; the fourteenth is called Meydoeh-miet, that is, the division or ward of Mier-square; or the square of one of their doctors known by that name; the fifteenth Niema-wort; the signification whereof I know not; the sixteenth is

called Derre-koek, that is, the spot, or place of pleasure; what the name of the seventeenth is I do not remember; the four that follow belong to the ward or district of the Heyderries; the first of these is distinguished by the name of Maleynow, that is to say, the new part; the second is called Derredelt, that is, the abandoned part; the third Hoelcynja, that is, the ward or partition of the ecclesiastics; and the last is known by the name of Togt-shie, that is to say, the keeper of the poultry.

The principal parts of the same general divisions without the walls are four only in number; the first is distinguished by the name of Abbas Abaet, from Abbas the Great, who was its founder. This division, of all the out-parts is the most considerable; for none but persons of distinction inhabit this district; neither is there any difference made between this ward and those within the walls: this ward is situate to the westward; the second bears the name of Siems-Abact, so called from the founder of it; the third Bied-abact, and the fourth Thie-roen. Besides these, there are two others belonging to the ward or district called Namet-olla-hie; the former is called Sheigh-joellus-sibenna, that is to say, old Joseph's mansion. It is sometimes, however, distinguished by the district or ward of Sheig-sebbennaes; and sometimes again by that of Telwaellon.

Under these districts, or wards, several small sub-divisions are comprehended, which have their several and peculiar denominations. These two great divisions are forever at variance; forever incompatible, and disagreeing with each other. This opposition, however, is most conspicuous on their days set apart for processions; their most solemn festivals, and in such places as are of public resort. And as both are inveterate and perverse; there are great tumults and disorders for the generality on these public occasions; and their enmity, in short, to each other frequently runs so high, that numbers are sometimes left breathless on the spot; but of this we shall take farther notice in another place. The rise of this implacable emulation, envy, or malice, proceeded first, as I am informed,

1704

from two ancient villages, situate in each other, or lodged in the Heiderries, the Namet-olla-hie, names been assumed, and by extending parties are distinguished. This city was formerly called Ispahan, or Afghahan, though more than an oval thing till the reign of king Ooms, abandoned Callat made Ispahan his new town. The principal cause, or change in his name, was the situation of the former town, which became the metropolis of the Persian empire. It is situate in the north, and in the northern part, and in the northern degrees and 45 minutes.

This country in general by the name of Persia, and toward kingdom or empire, compassed by the gulf of Persia, (2) Callat, (3) Tawary, the country, or Moghul, or Moghul, the gulf of Persia, (4) Callat, and (5) Turkey.

His majesty's palace here is situate in the quarters of a large in the city, there are six several gates, and principal of which is that is the gate of Ali, and is distinguished by the name of Kapele, that is, the gate, both of them open down, or large square, which is the gate of the northward. The third is Kapele, that is to say, the gate of the kitchen, because of what nature or kind served up to his majesty through that gate; and the fourth is Kapele, the gate to the gardens of the place. Thro' this no one is permitted to pass, but the majesty himself, and his ministers, or gardeners of his excepted. The gate leads

look, that is the spot, or the
 ure; what the name of the
 I do not remember; the
 on belong to the ward or di-
 Heyderies; the first of these
 ed by the name of Milenow,
 is the new part; the second
 redest, that is, the abandoned
 Hociscypia, that is, the ward
 of the ecclesiastics; and the
 on by the name of Tog-ah-
 y, the keeper of the poultry.
 cipal parts of the same general
 about the walls are but only in
 the first is distinguished by the
 Abbas Abset, from Abbas the
 was its founder. This dis-
 e out-parts is the most con-
 or none but persons of distin-
 this district; neither is there
 once made between this ward and

1704

from two ancient villages, that stood con-
 tiguous to each other, one of which be-
 longed to the Heideries, and the other to
 the Namet-olla-lue, names that have since
 been assumed, and by which the two
 contending parties are distinguished.

This city was formerly called Hispa-
 han, Ispahan, or Aspahan; and was no-
 thing more than an ordinary town, or vil-
 lage, till the reign of king Abbas the Great,
 who, when he had overcome Laer and
 Ormus, abandoned Casbin and Sultania,
 and made Ispahan his favourite place of a-
 bode. The principal cause of this altera-
 tion, or change in his residence, was the
 advantageous situation of the latter, which
 now became the metropolitan city, and
 the favourite seat of the monarchs of *(d)*
 Persia. It is situate in the province of
 Irak, which is part of the ancient *(e)* Par-
 thia, and in the northern latitude of 32
 degrees and 45 minutes.

Persia.

This country in general is distinguished
 by the name of Persia, which is a great
 and renowned kingdom of *(f)* Asia, en-
 compassed by the *(g)* Caspian sea, Zaga-
 thay, *(h)* Tartary, the empire of the *(i)*
 Mongulians, or Moguls, the India sea,
 the gulph of Persia, *(k)* Arabia the de-
 sart, and *(l)* Turkey.

His majesty's palace here is about three
 quarters of a league in circumference; and
 there are six several gates to it; the first
 and principal of which is called Ali-Kapie,
 that is, the gate of Ali, or Hali; the se-
 cond is distinguished by the name of Ha-
 ram-Kapessie, that is, the gate of the Sera-
 glia; both of them open into the Mey-
 doen, or large square, which stands to the
 northward. The third is called Moerbag-
 Kapessie, that is to say, the gate belonging
 to the kitchen; because all the provisions,
 of what nature or kind soever, which are
 served up to his majesty's table, is carried
 through that gate; and the fourth is cal-
 led Ghandag-Kapessie, that is, the gate or
 entrance to the gardens belonging to the
 palace. Thro' this no one must presume
 to pass, his majesty himself, and his Ka-
 patters, as they are called, that is his eu-
 nuchs, or guardians of his concubines, only
 excepted. This gate leads into the Chiact-

The king's
palace.

the king's
 palace.

that of Tuvelkon.
 these districts, or wards, several
 divisions are comprehended,
 e their several and peculiar de-
 s. These two great divisions
 at variance; forces of incompe-
 disagreeing with each other.
 sition, however, is most conspi-
 what days set apart for processions;
 at solemn festivals, and in such pla-
 e of public resort. And as there
 re and perverse; there are great
 and disorders for the generally on
 lic occasions; and their enmity,
 o each other frequently runs to
 at numbers are sometimes left
 on the spot; but of this we shall
 ner notice in another place. The
 is implacable emulation, envy, or
 proceeded first, as I am informed,
 from

273

baeg. The fifth gate is called Ghajat-
 ganna Kapessie, that is, the taylors-gate;
 because all those of that profession, who
 are in his majesty's service have their resi-
 dence there; the sixth and last gate is cal-
 led Ghanna Kapessie; that is, the secretary's
 gate; these two last lead into the northern
 part of the city. The greatest part of the
 Persian grandees go through those gates into
 the palace, when they have an audience of
 his majesty; but more especially through
 the two first.

The cita-
del.

The citadel, called the Tabaroek, is
 near half a league in circumference, and
 extends, in regard to the length of it, quite
 into the city, eastward; and meets with
 the wall thereof southward. The wall
 is lofty enough, but composed of mud
 only; and is flanked with a set of towers,
 that make a very mean appearance, tho'
 there are cannons indeed, mounted upon
 them; but then they are of little or no use;
 since they durst not discharge them for
 fear of throwing down the wall, which is
 run to ruin and decay; so far, that there
 are large crevices to be met with in divers
 parts of it, that any person may see quite
 through it. Tho' strangers are not per-
 mitted to enter into it; yet I am fully per-
 suaded, that the reason of such prohibition
 is, in fact; because it is in a more wretched
 condition within, than it appears without;
 it is a spacious place, however, and has
 some few conveniences within belonging
 to it.

As to what I have farther to say with
 respect to the rest of the city, I shall give
 the reader my free thoughts thereon, when
 I shall have closed my description of it; in
 order that what I have still to add in this
 place, may be more readily and clearly
 understood.

Now here, then, follows the descrip-
 tion of it just as the reader will find it re-
 presented in the plate annexed (No. 74.)
 and as it appears from the prospect taken
 from the southward. The figure (1.) directs
 the reader's eye to a mountain: the figure
 (2.) denotes the new royal garden, which
 I saw when it was but just begun; it is of
 a very considerable extent. Figure (3.)
 distinguishes the river called Zenderoe.

4 A

(4.)

Plate 74.

1704

1704

(4.) Points to the house of one of the principal (*m*) Armenian merchants of Julpha. (5.) Directs the eye to the Dominican church in the same town. (6.) Points to the church of St. John the evangelist, which belongs to the Armenians. (7.) To the Episcopal church, or cathedral of the same people, which has a small tower belonging to it. (8.) Denotes the church in the market. (9.) The church of St. Mary; all this in Julpha. (10.) Is a representation of the bridge, called Allawerdikhan. (11.) The Muzyt, that is, the royal mosch. (12.) The mosch, called the Torfolla, from one of their doctors. (13.) The Menare-Kanbrinfie, which is a lofty stone tower. (14.) The Kella-Menacr, that is, the pillar of beasts heads. (15.) The Tabaroek, or the citadel. (16.) The Hazaar-Sherip, or the grand royal garden. (17 and 18.) Point out the principal monuments, or sepulchres of the Persians, and their burial-ground called the Babaroek. (19.) The place, or ground set apart for the interment of the christians. (20.) Directs the eye to the royal river. (21.) To the mountains of Choreo, which are in part covered over with snow. And (22.) Points out the village, called Taliffa.

The Meydoen, or grand square.

The Meydoen, or grand square, which is one of the principal beauties of the whole city, is a market-place, no less than seven hundred and ten paces in length, from east to west; and in breadth, from north to south, two hundred and ten. It stands to the southward of the royal palace, and to the northward of the Nacher-chone, that is to say, the particular structure erected for his majesty's band of music. This building consists of two lofty galleries, distinct from each other, and between them stands the imperial gate, which is a curious piece of architecture, very lofty, and built strong with fine stones. Thro' this gate I went into the Bazars. There is a representation upon it of the remarkable engagement between king Abbas, and the Usbec Tartars. It is a painting, not a sculpture, and executed by a Persian artist. There is a clock over it that strikes the hours; which is the only one to be

1704

met with throughout the whole kingdom of Persia; and on the same side there is a pavilion of the machines belonging to the clock, which gives motion to some wooden puppets in a wheel; a wretched piece of machinery, which any European operator would look on with an eye of disdain. A little farther to the eastward I came to the mosch called Shig-lotf-olla, from one of their doctors of that name; who is re-gifted amongst the number of their saints. This is one of the best in the whole city, and is decorated with a fine dome, covered on the out-side with parti-coloured stones, incrustated with gold. It has a pyramid likewise, on which there are three golden balls. The front door opens into the grand square, and there is a flight to it of several steps. It is built in a circular form, and about forty paces in circumference, as the person assured me whom I employed to give me the exact dimensions of it; for a christian must not presume, on any pretence whatever, to enter into that sacred place.

The royal mosch.

The royal mosch, called Shah-mazyt, stands on the western-side of this grand square, and is deemed the principal of all the moschs throughout the whole city of Ispahan. This has a dome to it, like the former, and two doors in the front, with a pillar on each side. These columns run considerably higher than the mosch itself; the whole of parti-coloured stone, together with an incrustation of gold, which has a fine effect, and strikes the eye in the most delightful manner. There are several Persian characters in white all round about, and the dome has two pillars. This mosch is of a circular form as well as the others, and is eighty-five paces in circumference. In the court directly over against the entrance, there is a fine cistern, or fountain; and it must be allowed, that these two moschs are the greatest decorations that the Meydoen, or grand square can boast of. At about two hundred and sixty-six paces from this last mosch stands the gate, called Ali-kapie; and the whole square, indeed, is surrounded with lofty edifices, and with porticoes or piazzas full of shops and artificers. Those which

1704

are in his majesty's confidence; and the principal figure is (besides the figure, where all the are exposed to fall prey, they pick up all fully as they can, and bind them, who goes the night with his dog elms that are planted over most of the building is continually thronged rains and degrees, by such people of distinction to attend the court. frequently seen great doctors, and their men from, tho' they sell no and do nothing more crowd with idle, noisy which they are tolerably labour by their number of these mountebanks monkeys, which play tricks to attract the for there is no nation in heaven, so fond of wit as the Persians are; for in coffee-houses, bazars, a public resort, swarmed with Pandogs, and quack-doctors. In the center of this market-place, there is a lum, set apart for the and on the summit, or for the most part is affixed, generally consists of a good thing of the like nature contend for it, are obliged to throw away their art than keep their feet in one, however, but per and such as are dejected admitted to these markets that gains the prize, go back, and then put it u testimony of his conquest shall. He usually, more a compliment of some of more or less value, according he has for the victor

throughout the whole kingdom
and on the same side there is a

the machines belonging to the
gives motion to some wooden
a wheel; a wretched piece of
which any European operator
k on with an eye of disdain.
After to the eastward I came to
called *Shig-lof-olla*, from one
ors of that name; who is re-
against the number of their *kins*.
of the best in the whole city,
orned with a fine dome, covered
side with parti-coloured domes,
with gold. It has a pyramid
in which there are three golden
e front door opens into the
s, and there is a flight to it of
It is built in a circular form,
every piece in circumference, as
assured me whom I employed
the exact dimensions of it; for
must not presume, on any pre-
never, to enter into that sacred

al moich, called *Shah-marzi*,
the western-side of this grand
it is deemed the principal of all
throughout the whole city of
This has a dome to it, like the
at two doors in the front, with a
each side. These columns run
ably higher than the moich itself;
e of parti-coloured stone, rep-
an incrustation of gold, which
effect, and strikes the eye in the
tural manner. There are sev-
characters in white all round a-
he dome has two pillars. This
f a circular form as well as the
it is eighty-five paces in circum-
In the court directly over against
ence, there is a fine stream, or
; and it must be allowed, that
to moichs are the *greatest decora-*
of. At about two hundred
ix paces from this last moich
gate, called *Ali-kapie*; and the
are, indeed, is surrounded with
are, and with porticoes or *pierras*
Thos moich
are
2

CORNELIUSLEBRUN.

1704

are in his majesty's service, are on the court-side: and the much greater part of the square is (besides all this) taken up with tents, where all kinds of merchandize are exposed to sale; at night, however, they pack up all their goods as carefully as they can, and leave a watch behind them, who goes his stated rounds in the night with his dog by his side. The elms that are planted here cast a shade over most of the buildings; and the place is continually thronged by people of all ranks and degrees; but more particularly by such people of distinction as are obliged to attend the court. Here likewise are frequently seen great numbers of quack-doctors, and their merry-andrews, or buffoons, tho' they sell no medicines at all, and do nothing more than amuse the crowd with idle, nonsensical stories, for which they are tolerably well paid for their labour by their numerous spectators. Some of these mountebanks have their apes and monkeys, which play a thousand antic tricks, to attract the mob about them; for there is no nation under the copes of heaven, so fond of trifles, and buffoonery, as the Persians are; for which reason, their coffee-houses, bazars, and other places of public resort, swarm with these idle jack-puddings, and quack-doctors.

Their tour-
nament.

In the center of this large square, or market-place, there is a large and lofty column, set apart for their public diversions; and on the summit, or top of it, the prize for the most part is affixed, which for the generality consists of a golden cup, or something of the like nature. The parties, that contend for it, are obliged to ride by it full speed, and, on a sudden turn of the body, to throw away their arrows or darts, and then stop their steeds in a moment. No one, however, but persons of distinction, and such as are dextrous sword-men are admitted to these martial amusements. He that gains the prize, grasps it fast in his hand, and then puts it upon his head, as a testimony of his conquest and superior skill. His majesty, moreover, makes him a compliment of some present or other, of more or less value, according to the regard he has for the victor. The customary

275

1704

present, however, is a golden quiver full of arrows. These martial amusements, indeed, have been practised but seldom, since his present majesty's accession to the throne, his taste, or inclination, leading him quite another way; which is widely distant from that of his predecessors, under whom this column was erected, and these tilts or tournaments encouraged.

In former times, the quality never failed of having a tournament, on the festival, called *Nowroes*, that is to say, the new solar year; a solemnity observed with the utmost strictness by the ancient kings of Persia; and, according to the annals, or registers of this country, even so far back as the days of king *Darius*.

On these solemn occasions, they always pulled down, and removed the numerous tents that generally stand here; and plowed the ground with oxen for twenty days, without intermission, before the festival commenced. The king was then seated on a kind of theatre or throne, which they call *Talael*, over the gate of *Ali-kapie*, which is very lofty, and the architecture thereof is executed in a masterly manner.

When the races were over, there came on the stage, a set of wrestlers and rope-dancers; and after that, they had battles both of bulls and rams. On these days of public rejoicings, they had jugglers likewise; but his present majesty detests such operators, as his spiritual guides have intimated to him, that the toleration of such magic-tricks are not only immoral, but shamefully wicked and prophane; neither will he admit of any female dancers or courtisans, tho' they met with great encouragement from his predecessors.

A descrip-
tion of the
Meydoen.
Plate 75.

In the plate hereto annexed, and number (75) the reader will find an exact representation of the *Meydoen*, or the grand market-place. This first prospect was taken from one side of the edifice before-mentioned to be set apart for his majesty's band of music. The letter (A) points out the *Talael*, or theatre, which stands over the gate called *Ali-kapie*. (B) *Dislinguishes*

1704

guishes the royal mosch. (C) That other, called Shig-lost-alla. (D) Denotes the *Wagius-foi-aet*, that is to say, the pavilion of machines. There likewise are represented, not only the tents, but the column, or pillar for races. The second view, represented in plate (76,) was taken from the east, not far distant from the royal mosch. The letter (A) there points out the Talaal, Ali-kapic. (B) The mosch, called Shig-lost-olla. (C) The pavilion of machines. (D) The house, or buildings, for his majesty's band of music. (E) The gate, called the *Derre-harram*, that is, the Seraglio-gate, of which but little is seen. There the column or pillar stands in the middle of the grand square. All along the portico, or piazza, belonging to the palace, there runs, on each side, a ballustrade of painted wood, which contains no less than one hundred and nineteen pieces of small cannon; but then the carriages of them are most wretchedly out of repair; particularly in regard to the wheels. There is a canal by these pieces of cannon, which were brought from (*n*) Ormus, in the reign of king Abbas, who, by the aid and assistance of the natives of (*o*) England, himself master of that island.

The gate of Ali-kapie is the entrance to the palace, which is a curious piece of architecture, and ten paces in breadth. It is more, however, in depth, with a lofty arcade, or vault, with curious niches on the sides of the wall. When I was got through it, I could see some lofty stone-walls, between which I got to the buildings and the garden. The gate, called the Haram, resembles this very much : it was erected whilst I was resident here, and was gilt in the front. The very first time I was at court, during the absence of his majesty and his concubines, I went through a gallery between these walls ; and the entrance of it appeared to me to be very magnificent, and truly royal. From thence I went to the new Seraglio for the reception of the concubines, which abounds with small, magnificent apartments, the walls whereof were white without, and painted with flowers. At the end of this building, there is a large, and exceedingly neat

apartment on the right-hand, encompassed with chambers, which at that time were not perfectly finished, but were getting in forwardness, by a great number of workmen. From thence I went into the hall, called the Fiel-seton, that is, the forty columns, in which his majesty, for the most part, gives his audience to foreign ministers; twenty of these columns, or pillars, are composed of wood; but then they

A magnificent building.

vests, and embellished
fluffy and floral floor-
brackets, and divers other
fashionably and divers other
allure of the new Seraglio
majesty pays annually
hundred tomans, each
the value of forty florins
the flocks about the M
the market-place, and the
wife, contribute towards
bare all the income of
does that belong to it
from king Abbas the
His majesty is pecuni-
fic, and keeps a great
that purveyed at the palace
cooks, and

Their principal influence
Karam, which bears a
to the tongue; some
are five inches in cir-
cumference, and about
three, and in length, 4
inches; moreover they
fry of making use of the
call the Koo, which is
depth are hot and upward
five inches in circumference
more, however, is very
in times of war only
as heat it ride upon ca-
firmament is called the
draw very nearly rectum
have likewise what the
which is a small bundle of
fat, or the trumper.
over, an inflament, more
fishbones, but then fire
and that which is most in-
mon, the which is a skin
have also an inflament
which nearly reforms
They have, moreover
of fishes, and the most
which is a flat copper
day like, and make a
have, in short, besides a
ther inflaming, the u-
wholly unknown in any
tongue.

it the right-hand, encompassed by numbers, which at that time

perfectly finished, but were get-

tered, by a great number of

From thence I went into the

the Fieldesten, that is, the

us, in which his majesty, for

it, gives his audience to such

any of these columns or pil-

posed of wood; but then they

and gilt: this hall is very

and the walls of it are painted

of-coloured blue, embellished

es and flowers. Here I saw,

some figures of European persons

in, in habits, like the natives of

at others, indebted in a fine

ner. I saw likewise eight

is, or pillars, in the back part

ture, four on a side, and four

a apartment which was back.

re this last-mentioned apartment

court-yard, full of fern-trees, and

er against it another, much smal-

of which stands the Seraglio,

both, a fine basin, or im-

it with large bones; and the

is paved with the very same sort

This hall-paved is one hundred

are paces in length, and four and

breath. From thence I was

into another court, and after

great building, where there was

uncommon dimensions, exceed-

as well as lofty, with large

the windows, which fell from

quite down to the door. My

ded me to throw up one of

ances, by which I perceived that

abounded with looking-glasses,

embellished with fine pillars, or

composed of wood, indeed, but

painted and gilt. This is the most

of all the whole palace; and

ewhile his majesty gives audience

es to foreign ministers. Before this

is several fine basins or fountains,

canal for watering the trees be-

the garden: this palace has several

and divers gardens distinct from

er. Here likewise I saw several

those galleries; which were co-

vered,

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

vered, and embellished with niches on the sides, and several stone-benches, about three foot high; and divers other apartments, exclusive of the new Seraglio, for which his majesty pays annually the sum of three hundred tomans, each toman being about the value of forty florins, Dutch money: all the shops about the Maydoen, or grand market-place, and the Chiaer-baeg likewise, contribute towards it; but the clergy have all the income or revenue of the gardens that belong to it, by a special grant from king Abbas the first.

His majesty is peculiarly fond of music, and keeps a great number of hands for that purpose at the place, called the Nach-rochone.

Their principal instruments are first the Karama, which bears a near resemblance to the trumpet; some of these Karamas are five inches in circumference at the mouth-end; and about four foot at the other; and in length, about seven foot six inches: in so much that, there is no possibility of making use of them without a proper rest. These give a very extraordinary, pleasing sound. The next instrument they call the Koes, which is a large drum, in depth five foot and upwards, and nine foot nine inches in circumference. This instrument, however, is very seldom, if ever used, in times of war only excepted, and such as beat it ride upon camels; the third instrument is called the Hool, which is a drum very nearly resembling ours. They have likewise what they call the Nagora, which is a small kettle-drum, and the na-fier, or the trumpet. They have moreover, an instrument, much like our harp-fichords; but their favourite instrument, and that which is most in use, is their kamon-she, which is a kind of violin. They have also an instrument, called the Scorna, which nearly resembles our hautboys. They have, moreover, a great variety of flutes, and the morgnie, or harp, which is a flat copper bason, on which they strike, and make a great noise. They have, in short, besides all these, divers other instruments, the use of which are wholly unknown in any parts of (q) Europe.

277

1704

The principal exercises, or diversions of the Persians.

The exercises, that are principally practised by the natives of Persia, are riding, and darting what they call the Ainer, that is to say, the cane; shooting with bows and arrows, and fowling. They smooke pretty much, and are free in conversation, by way of relaxation. They are great admirers likewise of the tedious game of chess, and play at it too extremely well.

Having now said all that we think needful in regard to the Meydoen, or market-place, we shall proceed to give our readers a perfect idea of the Chiaer-baag, that is to say, the fine walk, or alley of Isfahan, which is one of the chief ornaments that capital can boast of. The term may with propriety, however, be construed likewise the four gardens. In order to go to it, I went through the gate, called Daer-wasey-doulet, that is the gate of prosperity, erected by king Abbas the great, situate to the south. That prince gave express orders to some of his counsellors of state, that they should erect such and such houses, at their own private expences, at the entrance into those gardens, all along this fine alley. One of these grandees or lords, whose name was Gemthe-Ali-Kan, erected, in pursuance of these orders, a magnificent structure, or building, in the form of a tower, over against one of the walks that runs along the river. The rest followed his example, and each strove to out-do his neighbour, by embellishing it with fine stone buildings, and amongst the rest, with a pavilion at the entrance; from whence his majesty, on his coming out of the gardens, might see all their magnificent buildings.

As I passed by these gardens, I saw (at about the distance of two hundred and fifty paces from the city-gate) two edifices directly over against each other, with great gates, which lead into the gardens; and in the middle, or centre of this fine walk, there is a large octagon bason; there are two other edifices likewise, resembling these, at the distance of three hundred and thirty-eight paces from thence, with a quadrangular bason; and when I had gotten about an hundred and seventy paces farther, I came to a cross-way, which extended as far as to

4 B

the

THE TRAVELS OF

1704

the walls of the gardens. This cross-way abounds with benches, wooden chairs, and tables, and here in an evening I have seen great numbers of Persians smoking their pipes, and drinking their coffee: here the ground has a declivity, where there are trees with wide-spreading branches, which afford the finest shade that can possibly be

between the wall of the garden and these trees, is paved with large brick ; and the canal, that crosses the Chiaer-baag, is lined with the same materials. On the sides of these trees, which are all regularly planted, at the distance of about ten foot only from one another, there is an aqueduct contrived to water them.

1704 }

conceived; and accordingly, it is almost always prodigiously thronged, both with gentlemen on foot, and others on horseback; who amuse themselves there with running off races, and other exercises of various kinds. When I had gone some considerable way farther, I came to a large fountains, which belonged to one of these gardens; and proceeding a little farther, I came to two other buildings, where people retire to smoke; and after I had walked a little farther, I came to another cross-way, where I saw two buildings, much like the former, and between them a square bason; here likewise I saw several persons smoking their pipes, and drinking of coffee; and here likewise were deposited a great number of bucklers, bows and arrows, which belonged to the Mamet-holladers, and the Hey-derries, of whom we have made mention before. At some considerable distance from hence, I saw another octogon bason, abutting on a way, which is traversed by a fine river, on each side whereof are planted a prodigious number of fountains. The high road extends above two hundred paces beyond this, all along the palace, and the royal garden, where there is a sort of menagerie, or place for learning how to ride the great horse. About four-score paces from hence, stands the famous bridge of Alla-werdi-Khan, so called from the name of its founder. The road near it is no less than one thousand seven hundred and fifty one paces in length, and three-score and eight in breadth; embellished on each side with fine fountains, which were planted in the reign of king Abbas the great, that is to say, above one hundred years ago. That part where these trees are planted is five paces in breadth; and is raised a foot and an half, at least, above the way, or road itself, which is very sandy. This way, thus raised, which runs

The bridge, call

The bridge, called Alla-verdi-Khan, which is situate on the river of Zenderoet, is five hundred and forty paces in length, and seventeen in breadth, and erected with large stones. It has three and thirty arches; some whereof stand on sand; which, in this place, is extremely hard, and the water, when it is high, runs under them. On this bridge, there are no less than ninety three several niches, some whereof are open, but others stopped up; and each end is flanked with four towers. There are parapet-walls, composed of bricks, with holes throughout the whole length from one end to the other; inasmuch that I had here one of the finest prospects I have ever beheld; with several very neat summer-houses upon it, at each end. At the distance of about four hundred and sixteen paces from this bridge, there is a kind of cascade, or water-fall, received by a basin, which is threescore paces long, and forty broad. Near this water-fall, there are eleven large stone steps, which are in a wretched and ruinous condition; and at no great distance from them, is a large road, some trees, and a slope-way, which afterwards becomes perfectly plain and level. At some small distance from hence, I came to two other pleasure-houses, and after that, to twelve more, two and two, at an almost equal distance, one from the other, quite to the end of this fine walk or alley, which is of the same breadth in all places, and is bounded by his majesty's great garden, which extends as far as here, from the above-mentioned cascade. On each side, there are one hundred and forty-five senna-trees, with some mulberry-trees between them; and from the extremity of the bridge to the end of the alley, it is two thousand and forty-five paces; to which, when the length of the bridge itself is added, which is five hundred and

forty

A famous
bridge.

[illegible]

wall of the garden and the side of the garden with large brick; and the other side of the Chier-bag is lined with materials. On the sides of which are all regularly planted, trees of about ten foot only from the ground, there is an aqueduct continuing them.

The second prospect, which I have here annexed, is the prospect of the Chiaer-bag itself, near the bridge, which the reader will find in plate, (Numb. 78.) the letter (A.) points out the king's garden, (B.) the bridge. (C.) The house, where they wash the bodies of their dead. (D.) The river. And (E.) distinguishes the mountains, called Koe-soffa. The other buildings are represented to the right and left, in the very same manner as they stand in the Chiaer-bag.

The second
representation.

Plate No.
78.

The third prospect, which I took was from the bridge, on that side where the garden-gate is; and there stands the tower for collecting the wind for the refreshment of the lodgings in the Summer-season, by the virtue of some particular pipes which come out from the roof, and convey the air into the several apartments. There likewise are to be seen the fountains and the walks which lead towards the building, which stands on the left-side of the city gate, and to the right of the wall belonging to the palace-gardens. This view the reader will find in plate (79.)

The third
representation.

The fourth prospect, which was taken from the other end of the bridge, and shews the way, or road, beyond it; together with the building on both sides; as also, the cascade, or water-fall, and the bafon, and the way which leads to the end of the building belonging to his majesty's great garden, the reader will find in plate (Numb. 80.)

Plate 79.

The fourth
representation.

The fifth prospect, which was taken from the other end, and included in plate 81, shews the front of the building belonging

Plate 80.
The fifth
representation.

longing

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1704

forty paces, and the way on this side, which is one thousand seven hundred and sixty one, the total will amount to four thousand three hundred and thirty-six paces. This fine and pompous alley abuts (as we have hinted before) on his majesty's great garden, where there is a magnificent building, painted like the rest without, and decorated with festoons of foliage and flowers. The entrance into the garden is exceedingly pleasant; the middle walk is embellished with a fine canal, which has a sloping fall, and jets of water. This garden is very spacious, and abounds, not only with fine walks, but with great numbers of fruit-trees, which, tho' they charm the eye, and have a fine effect, might be greatly improved by some other decorations. It is two thousand two hundred and eighty paces long from north to south; and from east to west one thousand six hundred and forty-five broad. It is distinguished by the name of Hafaen-sheriop, that is to say, the garden of a thousand paces. Here I saw several very lofty towers, but composed of earth, which are made use of as dove-coats, the dung whereof is a very proper manure for their melon-beds.

A representation
of the Chiaer-
bag.
Plate 77.

The reader will find the first representation of the Chiaer-bag, which was taken from the west, in plate (Numb. 77.) I took the draught of it by the side of the river called Zenderot, or Zajandoroet, which has its fountain-head from four large springs, or wells, called Chert-zefine, Æ, that is to say, the source of springs. This place stands in mountains, which are five days to the westward of Ispahan. There are some people who allow it to spring from two several places; the first whereof is only three from this capital city, in a village, called Dambina; and the second, where I have already said it rises; as for the rest, it loses its waters three days to the eastward of Ispahan, in a marsh-ground which is called Gou-honie. In this prospect, or view, every article therein contained is distinguished by figures; for instance, number (1.) directs the eye to the gardens, which run along the fine walk or alley belonging to the Chiaer-bag; to-

279

1704

gether with the way, or road, that leads to the bridge. Figure (2.) points out the bridge, called Alla-werdie-Khan. (3.) Shews that particular building which was erected in the reign of king Sefi, in order to be the residence, or place of abode of a holy Dervis, who had been sent for from (r) India, but refused to come. Figure (4.) directs the reader to the house, where they wash the bodies of such as are dead. (5.) Points out the building that belongs to the Chiaer-bag. (6.) The edifice, called Gem-shilalli-Khan. (7.) A dove-house. And (8.) the river called Zenderoet.

The second
representation.

Plate No.
78.

The third prospect, which I took was from the bridge, on that side where the garden-gate is; and there stands the tower for collecting the wind for the refreshment of the lodgings in the Summer-season, by the virtue of some particular pipes which come out from the roof, and convey the air into the several apartments. There likewise are to be seen the fountains and the walks which lead towards the building, which stands on the left-side of the city gate, and to the right of the wall belonging to the palace-gardens. This view the reader will find in plate (79.)

The third
representation.

The fourth prospect, which was taken from the other end of the bridge, and shews the way, or road, beyond it; together with the building on both sides; as also, the cascade, or water-fall, and the bafon, and the way which leads to the end of the building belonging to his majesty's great garden, the reader will find in plate (Numb. 80.)

Plate 79.

The fourth
representation.

The fifth prospect, which was taken from the other end, and included in plate 81, shews the front of the building be-

Plate 80.
The fifth
representation.

longing

detached. And (4) the river
 174
 There is nothing can
 see the eye in a more delightful
 174
 in the prospect to the eastward
 in a commodious situation on
 and, in a fine evening, the eye
 entertained with the view of an
 174
 the number of persons of both
 of all ranks and degrees in life,
 174
 refreshing walks on the banks
 174
 more especially near the Cal-
 in the charming way, which
 174
 the arches of the bridge, since
 174
 back, others on foot, and others
 174
 sucking their pipes, and drinking
 174
 e, which are ready prepared by
 174
 for the accommodation of all
 174
 are inclined to indulge them-
 174
 the present moment. The
 174
 of the river, and extends itself as far
 174
 westward of this bridge, so that
 174
 a large extent of ground in
 174
 there is a magnificent har-
 174
 174
 built with stone, near
 174
 of the river; where there is,
 174
 another bridge, with a rail, or
 174
 in the room or head of a para-
 174
 islands directly over against a
 174
 in order to go into it, people
 174
 to cross the bridge, which has
 174
 arches. There was some time
 174
 more magnificent edifice erected
 174
 above the fore-mentioned har-
 174
 as casually burnt down to the
 174
 the preceding Summer, whilst
 174
 was peculiarly present. On
 174
 this structure, there is a curious
 174
 it is to say, a kind of gallery or
 174
 are, which lies perfectly open on
 174
 where the king gives audiences
 174
 to his foreign ministers; and be-
 174
 there is another grand and pri-
 174
 which is no less than forty
 174
 long, and three and thirty in
 174
 length, and is thirty-
 174
 and the tiled, and is thirty-
 174
 by forty-two. There are two
 174
 out, each of which is two foot
 174
 in the center there
 174
 it in height; in the center there
 174
 about eight paces by
 174
 the basin, about eight paces by
 174
 going somewhat further, I came
 174
 which was raised three foot
 174
 but

1704 but without any steps to it; and another
 much like it, as I passed along a little
 farther, on the side of the walls belonging
 to the building from whence I went into
 the apartments; and here likewise was a
 balcon, four paces by fix. On the walls,
 there are six several portraits, in proper ni-
 ches, as large as the life: these are of
 gentlemen and ladies; four of whom
 are dressed, after the Spanish mode, and
 each holds a glass of wine in the right-
 hand gracefully extended. Here, like-
 wise, I saw two portraits of ladies, paint-
 ed on the two walls, at but a small di-
 stance from each other: one in a modern
 Spanish dress, and the other in a habit in
 taste, perhaps a century ago. The pain-
 ter, however, was, in my opinion, no ar-
 tist, or artist in his profession. As to
 the rest, it is all gilt from top to bottom,
 and embellished with flowers, foliages,
 and animals of divers kinds. It is, more-
 over, decorated with twenty columns, or pil-
 lars, painted much after the same manner,
 in a variety of colours, that strike the eye
 agreeably enough, and have a pretty good
 effect. I have obliged my readers with a
 representation of them in plate (83.) where
 the letter (A.) distinguishes the talael; the
 letter (B.) points out the haram, or fera-
 glio; (C.) the bridge; and (D.) the
 river.

Plate 83.

When his majesty is present, he stops the
 current of the river by dykes, composed of
 timber, in the canals, or openings of the
 bridge, called Haffan-Abaet, in order to
 convey the water to one side of the talael;

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- (a) Ispahan, see p. 109. n. m.
 (b) Julfa, or Julpha, see p. 26. n. x.
 (c) Venice (the city of) east long. 13. lat.
 45. 40. the capital of the Dogado, or duchy of
 Venice, and of all the Venetian dominions, is
 situate 220 miles north of Rome, 150 east of
 Milan, and 250 east of Turin, standing in the
 Lagunes, five miles from the continent; these
 Lagunes are supposed to have been marshy
 grounds, which the sea has encroached upon,
 leaving a great number of little islands, or spots

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

281

at a small distance from which there are a
 few trivial pleasure-boats, in which, he
 amuses himself with his concubines in
 rowing them round about it.

A fine pros-
pect.

As I happened to be in a lofty Summer-
 house in the garden, from that commo-
 dious situation, I was tempted to draw a
 prospect of the bridge belonging to the
 Chiaer-baeg. The reader will find it here
 annexed in plate (84.) The seraglio is
 distinguished by the letter (A.) The bridge
 which stands opposite to the garden on the
 other side by (B.) That of the Chiaer-
 baeg itself by (C.) And the river, and
 another bridge at a greater distance
 from the city, by the letter (D.) This
 bridge last mentioned is known by the
 name of Sharefton, and has not only ten ar-
 ches, but a large edifice on one side of it,
 which passengers must go through, in or-
 der to cross it. The prospect here on all
 sides is perfectly charming; and the river,
 which winds here all round about it, is
 full of rocks.

Plate 84.

I have but one observation more to
 add, and that is; that at the distance of
 about five days journey to the south-west of
 the city of Ispahan, there is the source, or
 fountain-head of the river called Aeb-
 chieran, to be met with on a lofty flat
 mountain; the water whereof is the best
 I ever tasted. This river produces abun-
 dantly of fish of various kinds; but is most
 remarkable for its fine trouts. Its waters
 empty themselves into the river (s) Eu-
 phrates.

of earth above the water, on which the fisher-
 men of Padua built their huts; but when the
 Goths invaded Italy, in the fifth century, feve-
 ral considerable families of Padua and Aquileia
 retired hither, to secure themselves from an ene-
 my they could not resist, and laid the founda-
 tion of this great city upon seventy-two of these
 little islands, 'tis said, at first; but Venice
 stands upon a much greater number at this day,
 and is so happily situated, that no army can
 approach it by land, nor any hostile fleet by sea;
 the avenues to these islands being so exceed-
 ingly difficult, that they have not thought it
 necessary

1704

necessary to enclose the city with a wall; nor has any power attempted to besiege it since it was founded, which is now twelve hundred years, and upwards. Nothing can appear more beautiful than this town does: as we approach it either from the continent or the sea, we behold this fine city, with its numerous palaces and lofty towers, rising out of the waters, as it were, washed by the flood on every side, nothing intervening to obstruct the sight. The circumference of the city is about six miles, and the inhabitants are computed to be near two hundred thousand. The canals are so numerous, that you may go to any part of the town by water; and there are four hundred and fifty bridges over them; the principal bridge, called the Rialto, lying over the grand canal, composed of one arch, (which makes one third of a circle) ninety foot wide. None of the bridges but this have rails.

There are not quays on the sides of all the canals where people can walk; for sometimes the canal fills the whole street from one side to the other.

The piazza of St. Mark, 'tis said, is not to be paralleled for the magnificence of its buildings; and the houses upon the grand canal are most of them elegant palaces, with marble fronts, adorned with pillars of the several orders of architecture. Their rooms are usually hung with gilt leather, or tapetstry, and their bedsteads are of iron, which secures them against vermin, so troublesome in London. But these advantages are attended with some great inconveniencies. They have no good cellars for their wines; all their water is bad, but what is brought from the continent; and their canals, in the heat of Summer, create very offensive smells.

The sovereign power is lodged in the nobility. There are about fifteen hundred noblemen at present, who constitute their grand council, or assembly of the states, and are styled noble Venetians, whose honours descend to their posterity.

The doge, or duke of Venice, is clothed in royal robes, and has the honours of a sovereign prince paid him; but has very little share in the government. As the legislative power is lodged in the great council, there are several other councils to whom the administration of the government is committed; and there is one council, or state-inquisition; which has a power of imprisoning, and putting to death the greatest nobleman, even the doge himself, if they apprehend him to be dangerous to the state, and that without bringing him to an open trial, or giving him an opportunity of making his defence. And tho' the noblemen of the city of Ve-

nice, are vested with very great powers and privileges; yet the ancient nobility on the continent have scarce any; nor are they respected at all at Venice for the titles they bear of marquisses, counts, &c. These the Venetians endeavour to depreis, and even to extirpate, as the Dutch do those of Holland.

The annual revenues of the Republic are computed to be one million two hundred thousand pounds sterling, and their forces may amount to twenty-four thousand by land. They can equip a fleet of thirty men of war, one hundred gallies, and ten galliasses, as 'tis said; but they seldom engage the Turks at sea, without foreign assistance. A noble Venetian is always generalissimo at sea; but they make choice of some foreign general for the land-service, who is attended by several senators, without whose concurrence he can transact nothing; and they chuse to employ Swiss, Germans, and other foreign troops in their wars, rather than their own subjects; but they desire to be at peace with all their neighbours, if possible; not only because they apprehend themselves weaker, but war hurts their traffic; which is their chief support, tho' it was much greater formerly, when they brought the merchandize of Asia from Alexandria, and distributed it to all the countries in Europe. Still the manufactures and produce of their country furnish them with merchandize to traffic with. They make wrought silks of various kinds, brocades, gold, and silver stuffs, and damask, as well as velvets. They export wine, oil, fruit, Venetian steel, copper, glass, essences, turpentine, &c. And the goods, which they purchase in Turkey are taken off by the Germans.

As to their religion, it is that of the Roman catholic; but it can scarce be called popery, as the pope has so little authority at Venice. Their church has two patriarchs; the one of Aquileia, and the other of Venice; and these are subject entirely to the temporal power.

The republic of Venice is as arbitrary in ecclesiastical causes, as the states of Holland. The pope is looked upon but as a temporal prince at Venice, and their patriarchs are little more than cyphers. And tho' they have a kind of inquisition, that court can put none of their decrees into execution, without the leave of the state. The Venetians are neither governed by priests, or monks; men of such professions, indeed, may enjoy the diversion of masquerading, during the carnival; they may keep concubines, sing upon the stage, and take what liberties they please, in case they interfere not with the government; and the nuns of Venice have not a much better reputation than their clergy. Their patriarch

1704

was about to restrain their liberties, and began with the houses; but they told him, it was their custom, who had made churches, who had made convents, and like most convents; and he set to his regulations; and he required the patriarch

(a) Persia, see p. 64. n. 4.

(b) Persia, a country of the east, situate almost in the centre of Asia.

(c) Asia, see p. 127. n.

(d) Caspian sea, see p.

(e) Turkey, see p. 16.

(f) Mongolia, or Mogor.

(g) Arabia, see p. 205.

(h) Turkey, see p. 203.

(i) Armenia, see p. 11.

(j) Omsk, call long.

stand at the entrance of the Asia, situate opposite to constant, 120 miles back 300 back-east of Japan, the river runs in circumference together, possible it, it was true in the whole world center of trade between Here the fine spaces, as of the salt were laid up, bound to the rest of the Portugal built one of it in all Asia, but some time years ago, the Dutch ships of trade of their last master Portugal, by the assistance pulled the Portuguese from the English East India company great advantages in the Portugal to share the revenue on that side, with the last civil war, received thousand pounds per annum. As to the island of Ordesney thing but fish, call, two inches deep up earth, and the hills appear they were covered with drop of fish water on it preferred in others, in the The Portuguese, said to

1704

worth the working. They import more silver from them than all the world besides. But with all these advantages, Spain is poor, and but thinly peopled; for which several reasons are assigned; as first, the celibacy of the clergy, and the locking up so many of both sexes in monasteries. 2. The expulsion of so many hundred thousand Moors and Jews, as they did about three hundred years ago. 3. The wars they carried on with most of the powers of Europe, as well as Africa and America, for two hundred years. 4. The draining of their country every year of so many men to supply their American plantations; where none but native Spaniards are admitted to the chief offices and commands. And 5. their poverty may, in a great measure, be ascribed to their pride and indolence; none of them scarce submitting to laborious employments, since the wealth of America flowed in upon them; but their neighbours, the French, attend them in the quality of servants, and even manage their husbandry, and manufactures in several provinces. The Spaniards also export great part of the produce of their country unwrought, purchasing the silk, woollen, and linen manufactures of other nations, to supply their plantations; or rather, they act as factors for the French, Italians, English, and Dutch, in the disposal of their manufactures; and at the return of the galleons, pay the proprietors with the treasure they import from the West-Indies.

The king of Spain's dominions are the largest that are possessed by any one monarch; so extensive, that, as one of his predecessors boasted, the sun never sets upon them all. Besides his territories in Europe, he possesses the best part of America; a fine, rich country, the provinces whereof lie contiguous, and extends six thousand miles and upwards in length from north to south. He is sovereign also of those rich, and numerous islands south-east of the coast of China, in Asia, called the Philippines, from whence he imports all the rich merchandize of the east; and in Africa he is master of Ceuta, Oran, and several other places of consequence on that coast.

The king of Spain is an absolute prince; for tho' every province almost was governed by its peculiar laws about three hundred years ago, which could not be repeated or suspended, but by the consent of the states; nor could the king raise taxes without their concurrence; yet they have now lost their privileges; or rather, their great men bartered them away, and sold themselves and their posterity to the crown; and now the cortes, or states, which consist of the nobility, clergy, and representatives of the com-

1704

mons, only meet to confirm, and record the decrees of the court, which will compel their concurrence, if they should refuse it. The crown descends to the eldest son of the king; and if there be no sons, to the females, according to their seniority; and the reigning prince, seems to have a power of devising it, to what branch of the royal family he pleases, if he has no issue; at least the title of the late king Philip, duke of Anjou, depended on the will of his predecessor, and he enjoyed it accordingly, notwithstanding the royal family of France had relinquished their claim to that crown by solemn treaties. The king of Spain is never crowned, like other sovereigns, but the cortes, or states assemble, and recognize his title, at his accession; which is all the ceremony used on his advancement to the throne.

Spain is naturally well defended, being surrounded by the sea, and the Pyrenean mountains; however, the king has of late kept up a standing army of 40,000 men, when he was in full peace, and probably he has three times that number in arms, when he is at war. This prince also has very much improved his navy, being able to fit out a considerable fleet of men of war, tho' he has so much occasion for them in distant parts of the world, that we have scarce ever seen more than thirty men of war in one fleet; but thus much we have seen to our cost, that they fight much better than we expected, and are not that contemptible enemy they were some few years ago. The royal revenue also has been improved since they have had a French prince upon the throne; for so much was disposed of formerly to unnecessary officers, that it is said, not more than five millions per annum sterling came into the king's treasury; but how much the public revenues are advanced, is not easy to calculate.

As to the religion of the country, the Spaniards are the most bigotted papists in Europe; and the inquisition no where exercises its authority with greater tyranny.

(g) Europe, see p. 127. n. *dd*.

(r) India, (proper) see p. 213. n. *d*.

(s) Euphrates, the finest river of Turkey, in Asia, has two sources to the northward of the city of Erzerum, in Turcomania, in 40 degrees odd minutes north lat. which streams unite three days journey below that city, where it will carry small vessels, but the rocky channel renders the navigation difficult. It runs at first from east to west, through the province of Turcomania, or Armenia, but then meeting with

mount

1704
mount Taurus, turns to the
ing Armenia from Nisibis
course south-east, divides Syria
at Aleppo. It afterwards
province of Egypt, Arabia
being united its waters with

XXXXXXXXXX

Concerning the Kings

1704
THERE is no man
out the known
trary and despotic than
dom of (a) Persia. The
how is his law; he rules
control, in all articles,
ters of faith; for he it
seems any of their el
As to the lives and esta
of his subjects, however
guished, he can dispense
pleasure.

1704
It is requisite, that
one, who was born in in
is perpetually guarded by
tho' by white ones
brought up, without th
advantage of a liberal
the four walls of it;
of confinement. He
is instructed in any eff
importance. He is kep
get to every occurrence
at home or abroad. He
very justly be compar
hangs its drooping head
gripping condition, with
of the sun to give it life
When he arrives, in
age, a court-tutor is a
the black eunuchs, to i
ing, writing, and the p
ples of the Mahomed
teach all the ceremoni
his pronunciation; the dail
lutions, and the method
both in poetry and faith
incumbent on this two

meet to confirm, and record the 1774
the court, which will compel their
if they should refuse it. The
to the eldest son of the king;
be no sons, to the females, accord-
seniority; and the reigning prince,
ve a power of devoting it to what
re royal family he pleases, if he has
least the title of the late king Philip,
on, depended on the will of his
and he enjoyed it accordingly, not-
g the royal family of France had re-
claim to that crown by Orléans
The king of Spain is never crowned,
overseigns, but the coronet, or tiara
and recognize his title, at his acce-
is all the ceremony used on his ac-
to the throne.

usually well defended, being sur-
the sea, and the Persian moun-
tains, the king has of late kept up
army of 40,000 men, when he was
s, and probably he has three times
er an arms, when he is at war. This
has very much improved his army,
to fit out a considerable fleet of men
he has in much occasion for them
of the world, that we have scarce
are than thirty men of war in one
thus much we have seen to our cost,
out much better than we expected,
that a contemptible enemy they were
ars ago. The royal revenue also
approved since they have had a French
in the throne, for so much was dis-
somerly to unnecessary officers, that
not more than five millions per an-
g came into the king's treasury;
which the public revenues are advan-
greatly to calculate.

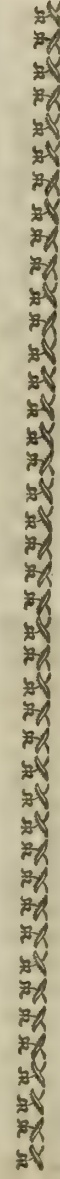
region of the country, the Spa-
most bigoted people in Europe;
fiction no where excels is autho-
eater tyranny.
see p. 127, A. d.
is, (proper) see p. 213, n. d.
the small river of Turkey, in
brates, the small river of Turkey, in
no courses to the northward of the
um, in Turcomania, in 40 degrees
is north lat. which streams unite
journey below that city, where it
small valleys, but the rocky channel
navigation difficult. It runs a great
to walk through the province of Tur-
or Armenia, but then meeting with
mount

CORNELIUS DE BRUN.

285

1704 mount Taurus, turns to the southward, divid-
ing Armenia from Natolia, and continuing its
course south-east, divides Syria from Diarbeck,
or Assyria. It afterwards passes through the
province of Eyraca Arabic, or Chaldea, and
having united its waters with the Tigris, runs

1704 on south-east to the city of Bassora, fifty miles
below which it falls into the gulph of Persia.
The country, now called Diarbeck, is almost
encompassed by the rivers Euphrates and Ti-
gris, and was the ancient Mesopotamia, or Pa-
dan-Aram.



CHAP. XLI.

Concerning the Kings of Persia, their State-Affairs, and the respective Officers of the Crown.

The Persian
govern-
ment ab-
solute and
despotic.

THERE is no monarchy, through-
out the known world, more arbi-
trary and despotic than that of the king-
dom of (a) Persia. The king's will al-
one is his law; he rules perfectly without
controul, in all articles, except in mat-
ters of faith; for he durst not alter, it
seems, any of their established doctrines.
As to the lives and estates, indeed, of any
of his subjects, however dignified or distin-
guished, he can dispose of them at his
pleasure.

The educa-
tion of the
Persian
kings.

It is requisite, that the king shall be
one, who was born in the Seraglio, which
is perpetually guarded by black eunuchs,
tho' by white ones without: he is
brought up, without the least benefit or
advantage of a liberal education, within
the four walls of it, in an absolute state
of confinement. He neither knows, nor
is instructed in any affairs of moment, or
importance. He is kept a perfect stran-
ger to every occurrence of weight, either
at home or abroad. He may, in short,
very justly be compared to a plant, that
hangs its drooping head, and is in a lan-
guishing condition, without one single ray
of the sun to give it life or vigour.

When he arrives, indeed, at a certain
age, a court-tutor is assigned him out of
the black eunuchs, to instruct him in read-
ing, writing, and the grounds and princi-
ples of the Mahomedan religion: he is
taught all the ceremonies that relate to
his purification; the daily practice of ab-
lutions; and the method he is to observe
both in prayer and fasting. 'Tis a duty
incumbent on this tutor of his, to instil

into him a reverential awe of their great
prophet, and his twelve Imans, or apo-
stles, to fill his head with all their mira-
culous operations, and to inspire him with
an inveterate aversion to the Mahomedan
Turks, and to the great Mogul, whom
the Persians not only detest, but load with
the most bitter curses, imagining that such
imprecations are meritorious, and looked
upon, in the eye of heaven, as an accept-
able service. This prince, however, is
industriously kept ignorant of what is
transacting either in his own, or foreign
courts; and so far is he from being en-
couraged in the study or practice of any
one single virtue; that, in order to prevent
him from making any useful reflections,
or any improvement in his mind, he is left
from his infancy, in the hands of the fair
sex, and indulged, in short, in every sen-
sual enjoyment his heart can wish. His
tutor, not contented with thus shamefully
gratifying him in all his vicious inclina-
tions, and corrupting his morals, counte-
nances and encourages him moreover, in
the odious practice of chewing opium, and
drinking what they call Koekenar, that is,
the pernicious juice of poppeys, into
which is infused amber, and such other in-
gredients, as have a natural tendency to
the provocation of lust; and tho' enchant-
ing and delusive for a time, sink him at
length into an absolute and perfect state
of insensibility. This, in short, is his
whole course of life, be it longer or shorter,
to the day of his father's decease. When
that revolution happens, indeed, he is in-
stantly removed from the Haram or sera-
glio,

him, and direct his thoughts; 1704
 ers of both kinds being retain-
 for that particular purpose. If
 these answer the ends proposed,
 a bull, or ram-biting, or, in
 the diversion or another, that shall
 fancy. When these sports, or
 are thus exhibited, his majesty
 from the Talei, which is over
 called the Ali-kapie, which
 greatest square that belongs to the
 Now any amusements of this na-
 for the most part, more engaging
 table to a young prince, who is
 and unexperienced than concerns
 which are often very intricate and

At last, when he finds these
 it and inipid, he withdraws in-
 sible, in quest of new pleasures;
 any affairs of importance have
 solid to be taken into considera-
 are of course postponed to an-
 : inasmuch that, this prime-mi-
 nis, is under an indispensable obli-
 attend twice a-day at least, at
 f his majesty's apartments, in
 embrace every favourable oppor-
 opening matter to him, or rather

into the consideration of such
 re most requisite to be dispatch-
 his must be done too, at such times
 he is no ways disconcerted, but in
 good humour; for was the mini-
 at other wise, and abruptly to make
 negotiations about business, it is very prob-
 ly, highly probable, that he would
 majesty's heavy displeasure, not-
 ing the happiness and welfare of
 re empire then lay at stake, and
 on an immediate consultation.
 h reason, he very seldom, if ever,
 attending his majesty, when he
 reclaimable to go abroad: for at such
 ns, he sometimes finds his majesty in-
 to listen to any reasonable propo-
 all other respects, there is no inter-
 room to his pleasures; the greatest
 that are to be met with through-
 all Georgia and (c) Armenia are
 for his service, and conducted
 length. And when his majesty
 makes

CORNELIUS ALEBRUN.

287

1704

makes any of those excursions, perhaps for
 some leagues round about, he turns out all
 the male-inhabitants out of their houses,
 wherever he comes, that he may have a
 free and uninterrupted liberty, either of
 hunting, fishing, or amusing himself, as
 his inclination leads him, with their wives
 or daughters. The present regent wholly
 addict's himself to drinking, and indulges
 himself so far therein, that he will some-
 times sit whole days and nights successively
 over his bottle. And in this manner these
 Persian princes dream away, as it were,
 the first years of their reign, without the
 least regard either to the prosperity of the
 state, or their own honour; and the gran-
 dees belonging to the court embrace every
 opportunity that offers, with the utmost
 eagerness, by that means, to enrich them-
 selves, and advance their friends and rela-
 tions, through their interest, to the most
 important employments.

Their insatiable thirst
 after riches.

The governors of the respective provin-
 ces follow the example of the grandees,
 and enrich themselves by all kinds of ra-
 pine and oppression; nay, they are such
 extortioners, that they will sometimes
 make bold with the revenues of the crown
 itself; and as they suffer the grandees to
 partake privately of their plunder, they
 are connived at by those who are the fa-
 vourites at court, and his majesty's more
 immediate attendants. And those illegal
 and clandestine practices are constantly car-
 ried on with impunity, till the prince on
 the throne makes choice of some able and
 experienced minister, in order to stop the
 torrent of such violent proceedings, and
 make a reformation. Upon such a pru-
 dent choice, he begins to open his eyes,
 and take a survey of his state-affairs (as far
 as nature has been indulgent, and blest
 him with discretion) but through the
 force of ill habits, he frequently relapses
 into his original course of indolence, ease,
 and insensibility, and indulges his former
 vicious inclinations without controul. At
 length, indeed, by that time he is advanced
 to the age of between thirty and forty, he
 seems to rouse out of his long lethargy, to
 shew some tokens of reflections, to employ
 his thoughts on the most weighty concerns

1704

of the empire, and to entertain an idea of
 their importance, in proportion to that de-
 gree of judgment with which providence
 has thought fit to invest him. In conse-
 quence of such serious considerations, he
 applies his mind to the immediate refor-
 mation of such practices as he overlooked
 in his younger years, but at present is con-
 vinced were shamefully oppressive, and pro-
 vides for the health and prosperity of his
 subjects. It too often happens, however,
 that such prudent measures are taken too
 late; death intervenes, and puts a stop to
 all his paternal and indulgent intentions;
 and the state sinks once more into its pris-
 tine state of misery, and groans under the
 weight of tyranny and oppression.

Its prime-
 minister;
 his several
 titles.

The prime-minister of this powerful
 and extensive empire is distinguished, (as
 we have already observed) by the name, or
 title of Attamaed-doulet, that is to say, the
 protector, or the head, and principal sup-
 porter of the whole empire. He is called,
 moreover, the Viser-azem, that is to say,
 the kingdom's high-steward; since he sup-
 ports and upholds almost the whole weight
 of the kingdom.

This minister, who has always more
 business on his hands than is in his power
 to execute, is exposed to a thousand very
 shocking and unhappy accidents, and is
 obliged to be perpetually on his watch,
 lest he should be supplanted by those who
 are his competitors, and look with an eye
 of envy on his happy situation; or lest he
 should fall into disgrace, and lose that good
 opinion which his master had conceived of
 his conduct. Accordingly, he makes it
 his principal, or chief study to please him,
 and get the ascendancy over his mind, and
 to avoid all such words or actions as may
 give him the least umbrage of jealousy or
 suspicion. 'Tis, with this view, that he is
 forever guilty of the most fulsome flattery,
 extolling his master, not only above all other
 earthly princes, but rendering him the just
 object of his subjects adoration: he artfully,
 in short, throws a thick veil over his eyes,
 in order to keep him in perfect ignorance
 and blindness, and render him thereby al-
 together insensible of the ill state and ruin-
 ous condition of his national affairs. He

takes

1704

takes particular care to conceal from him all such occurrences as are disagreeable, and disadvantageous to him and his subjects, or at least, to mention them in the most tender manner; and, on the other hand, to aggrandize, and expatiate on every piece of news that has the least tendency towards the decrease of his glory, and the suppression of his enemies. By these partial proceedings it is, that this prime-minister is enabled to aggrandize his family, and advance his favourite friends to the highest offices, or employments in the kingdom. Nor does this artful politician ever fail of finding out ways and means for the ruin and disgrace of some, as well as the promotion of others; and this is no difficult task at all, since there is not a grandee, possessed of an high and lucrative post, but is guilty himself, in some degree, of clandestine practices. He has, moreover, a thousand favourable opportunities of serving those who are attached to his interest, and who make him privately a partaker in the profits of the outrages which they commit. He likewise can send them, when he sees proper, royal robes, by the officers of his household, who never fail of receiving some rich present on those public occasions, which serve them instead of wages, or at least, greatly to advance such salaries as are but low. The governors, not only of provinces, but of cities likewise, are very solicitous of procuring such tokens of public honour, tho' they purchase them sometimes at a high rate, by private fees; since, by that means, those who are under their jurisdiction, are over-awed, and durst not complain of their oppressive measures, when they find they are such favourites at court, as to obtain such public badges of honour and respect. It is after this manner, that their Atmaed-doulet, or prime-minister, is in perpetual agitation for the maintenance and support of himself and his family; to pull down some, and raise up others, according as he is influenced by love and affection, or by aversion, or contempt. However, notwithstanding all his artifices and precautions, he is seldom, if ever, easy in his mind, (as we have hinted before) since he

2

cannot be perfectly well assured of the fidelity of any one person whomsoever, even of those who have the strongest ties of gratitude to be true to their trust: nay, these last too often prove the foremost to hasten his ruin and destruction; especially, when they find his situation is precarious, and he has met with some preceding shock.

Infidelity and ingratitude are two vices that have gained such an ascendancy over all the Persians in general, that even children will presume to cut off the ears, or disface their very parents; nay, they will stretch their inhumanity and impiety to so high a pitch, that they will murder them, without the least remorse, in case they have but his majesty's orders for that purpose; and that with no other view, than being substituted in the posts of which they were possessed; an act of barbarity, that is too often, and too shamefully practiced by those impious wretches. In short, as the fortune of his prime-minister is entirely dependant on the humour, or caprice of his fickle master, who obeys the dictates of his passions, without the least controul, however inconsistent with right or reason, he is frequently a perfect stranger to his own downfall, tho' it's actually carried into execution the very next day. Tho' this prime-minister, durante beneplacito, is the greatest subject in the whole empire; yet, at the same time (as we have hinted before) he is absolutely one of the most abject slaves in life; he has not one moment's peace of mind, and is ever under the most fearful apprehensions of losing his royal master's grace and favour: 'tis he that must answer for all the calamities and troubles that attend the state; and it is not in his power to stop the mouths of all mal-contents.

The officer, next in dignity to this Atmaed-doulet, or prime-minister, is distinguished by the title of Koerfse-badhe, that is, general of the curds, who are a body of troops, selected from among the natives of (d) Turcomania, or original Tartars, an ancient race of intrepid soldiers, who live under tents in the country by themselves, and are all shepherds by profession: that tho' these troops are dispersed

all

1704

The Infidelity and ingratitude of the Persians.

all over Persia; yet they no others: they are a their weapons of war are bows and arrows.

The next grand officer is Agale, that is to say, Georgians, and other are armed with bows and arrows; and are an old form; and are an old which was first erected in 1704. The rest in order.

The Timgchi-agal, general of the body of are collected out of it amongst the strongest, and out of the common people in the field on horseback on foot. This order of is established by Abbas the Great. These three generals were under the command call their Sepah-badhe, flayed, or fixed chief: n are under a Sezer only, commander, appointed for such expedition; after charged, and then reward.

Their next officer in zir, as they call him, is head toward, or chief, majesty's household, to to whose care the kin cularly entrusted.

The next in order is the Merdabier-badhe, that is to say, their grand man.

The next to him is life, that is to say, the hostile.

Among the principal must be reckoned, is called the Dyan-badhe, or chief of the who passes final sentence both criminal and civil petty cases as are but quence, which are referred called the Deyra, of it ever they happen. Their next officer in

erely well assured of the fate of
one person whomsoever, even
to have the strongest ties of gra-
titude to their trust: nay, these
en prove the foremost to hasten
and destruction; especially, when
his situation is precarious, and
t with some preceding block.

and ingratitude are two vices
which such an ascendancy over
others in general, that even chil-
dren are prone to cut off the ears, or de-
stroy the parents; nay, they will
their inhumanity and impiety to
a pitch, that they will murder
without the least remorse, in case
but his master's orders be that
and that with no other view,
substituted in the place of which
possessed; an act of barbarity,
so often, and too humbly per-
formed by those impious wretches. In short,
the whole of his prime-minister is en-
tirely dependent on the humour, or ca-
price of his master, who obeys the
his passion, without the least
however inconsistent with right
he is frequently a perfect fero-
cious animal, who it is actually
own down, to execution the very next day.

to execution the very next day.
a prime-minister, during the
the greatest subject in the whole
yet, at the same time (as we have
before) he is absolutely one of the
most cruel slaves in life; he has not one
peace of mind, and is ever under
fearful apprehensions of losing
his master's grace and favour: his
most anxious for all the calamities
that attend the state; and it
his power to stop the mouths of
contents.

next in dignity to this Al-
minister, or prime-minister, is the
by the title of Koerile-baie,
general of the cuds, who are a
troops, selected from among the
Turcomans, or original Tur-
comans, a race of intrepid soldiers,
under tents in the country by
es, and are all shepherds by pro-
fession: these troops are dispersed
all

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

289

1704 all over Persia; yet they are mingled with
no others: they are all horsemen, and
their weapons of war are no more than
bows and arrows.

The next grand officer is their Coular-
Agasie, that is to say, the general of the
Georgians, and other white slaves, who
are armed with bows and arrows, like the
former; and are an order of soldiers,
which was first erected by Abbas the
Great. The rest in order are as follow.

The Tufingchi-agasi, that is to say, the
general of the body of musqueteers, who
are collected out of the country from a-
mongst the strongest, and the most labori-
ous of the common people. Tho' these serve
in the field on horseback; yet they fight
on foot. This order of soldiery was like-
wise established by Abbas the Great.

These three generals, in former times,
were under the command of one whom they
call their Sepha-falaer, that is to say, their
flated, or fixed chief: now, however, they
are under a Seraer only, that is, a chief, or
commander, appointed for any one parti-
cular expedition; after which he is dis-
charged, and then rewarded for his extra-
service.

Their great
master of
the house-
hold.

Their next officer in rank is their Na-
zir, as they call him, that is to say, the
head steward, or chief, not only of his
majesty's household, but of those likewise,
to whose care the king's guests are parti-
cularly entrusted.

Their great
hunt-man.

The next in order after the Nazir, is
the Mierfichac-bashé, as they call him,
that is to say, their grand, or chief hunt-
man.

Their chief
master of
the horse.

The next to him is their Mirachor-ba-
shé, that is to say, the chief master of the
horse.

Their head,
or chief of
the council
of justice.

Among the principal officers of state
must be reckoned, likewise, those who
are called the Divan-beggi, that is to say,
the head, or chief of the council of justice,
who passes final sentence, in all causes,
both criminal and civil, except in such
petty causes as are but of small conse-
quence, which are referred to the officer,
called the Deroga, of the place where-
ever they happen.

Their next officer in rank is called the

Master of
the ac-
counts and
finances.

the Muslashe-elmenalik, that is to say, ma-
ster of the accounts and finances, where
there is an office erected for the registering,
not only of the Persian troops, but of some
certain officers likewise, and such govern-
ments as the Begler-begs, the Khans, and
Sultans, are in possession of for the mainte-
nance and support of their dignity and
household; but as a recompence, or com-
pensation for such grants, they are under
an indispensable obligation, to keep up a
certain number of troops on foot; and to
pay such a certain sum as should be an-
nually imposed upon them: the prince,
moreover, reserves one part of these royal-
ties to his own use.

Their chief,
or head of
the cham-
bers of ac-
counts.

The next officer in rank is their Muslo-
fie, as they call him, that is to say, their
chief of the chambers of accounts of such
lordships as particularly belong to the king,
and those revenues which are peculiarly
appropriated for the maintenance and sup-
port of the court.

Their regi-
ster of
events.

Their next officer is called the Vacka-
nuvies, that is to say, the register of all
public events, who keeps a diary of what-
ever occurs throughout the kingdom, and
in all the provinces round about.

Their heads
or princi-
pals of the
king's phy-
sicians.

Their heads, or principals of his majesty's
physicians, by them called the Numeshum-
bashés, are still in great repute with their
master; these, indeed, in former times,
had, in a great measure, the regulation of
the prince's conduct, but at present their
authority is trivial, and they have very
little, if any influence over him.

All these officers have a right and title
to sit in the royal palace. The head, or
principal of those who lay no claim to
that particular privilege, is called their
Shik-agasi-bashé, that is to say, the prin-
cipal, or chief of the porters, or grand ma-
ster of the court. 'Tis this officer's pecu-
liar province to inspect the palace, and re-
gulate the rank and order of his majesty's
household. This grand inspector carries
in his hand for the generality a golden
staff, embellished with diamonds, and
watches every motion, as it were, of his
majesty, in order to know in a moment his
will and pleasure. Wherever he is perfo-
rmed, there he executes the king's
orders

THE TRAVELS OF

1704

orders himself; but where matters are to be executed at any considerable distance, in that case, he employs his Yafools, as they call them, that is to say, his messengers, or ushers. This officer likewise acts in the capacity of a master of the ceremonies; for 'tis he who conducts all foreign ministers into his majesty's presence, by supporting them under the arm, and afterwards conducting them to the place appointed for their sitting, provided they are to be honoured with that act of indulgence.

Their
chamber-
lain.

Neither this officer, nor the chamberlain, called their Megter, has the right or privilege of sitting in the palace. This chamberlain wears a purse by his side, in which he has several fine handkerchiefs, a watch, divers antidotes, and a great-variety of soporiferous herbs for his majesty's use. The cloaths which the king for the generality puts on is entrusted to the care of this officer, who attends him when he dresses; and seldom any one, that is not an eunuch, is admitted to this post; and the reason is, because he frequently attends his majesty when he goes to the Haram, or se-raglio, which reflects a singular honour upon him, and commands respect.

Their Beg-
lerbegs, or
grandees.

We must not here omit their Beglerbegs, as they are called, that is to say, their grandees, or lords of lords, each of whom is a governor of some great province, or country belonging to the state. These superior lords have, for the generality, their Khans and Soltans under them, and sink the major part of the revenues of their respective provinces, retaining only a handsome present, or compliment to be made his majesty at proper seasons. They are indispensably obliged, however, as we have hinted before, to support and maintain a certain number of troops for his majesty's service on all occasions. Tho' they owe, indeed, an allegiance to his majesty; yet, in all other respects, they act as petty sovereigns in their respective provinces. Of these governors, there are about fifteen or sixteen in different parts of the empire; and so considerable is one of these posts, that the person who stands possessed of it, is invested with an

order in the royal palace before the grand huntsman, and immediately after the chief of the musqueteers on the one hand, and the grand-master of the household on the other.

Tho' the Khans and Soltans, who (as we have already observed) are subaltern officers to these grandees; yet they are governors of provinces as well as they; and there is but a trivial difference between the two former. They take care likewise to sink the revenues of the land that lies in their particular districts or departments. These inferior governors, like the Beglerbegs, are obliged to maintain a certain number of troops for his majesty's service, when required; and some of them, indeed, are dependent on their Beglerbegs, or grandees.

Their Dervais.

Those officers, who are called Dervais, are the governors of such particular countries, as are distinguished by the title of his majesty's domain, which are appropriated for the maintenance and support, not only of the court, but of some certain troops likewise; and these have the care and inspection of the annual revenues, or produce arising from those countries. They have, moreover, certain salaries allowed them out of those revenues; and they make presents, and pay their compliments occasionally to his majesty like the rest.

Their Derogab.

Besides these grandees, and inferior governors of provinces, there are governors likewise of particular forts and cities, who are dignified and distinguished by the name and title of Derogas. Those who are invested with this post in large cities, such, for instance, as Ispahan, or any other of equal note, have much the same authority and trust as those who in France bear the title and character of Lieutenans civil et criminel. When these carry their office into execution, they are absolutely impartial; for they shew no more respect to one than another, but punish all delinquents alike, and keep the fines for their own use.

Their officers, called the Calentars, are the chiefs, or heads of the populace, that is to say, the principal magistrates in little towns and country villages: their authority,

1704

substantly, however, extend but the common-people more particularly at special times, properly speaking of the populace, and before their courts of justice province of justice, and adjust the taxation, extraordinary, on the execution of which their serious consideration poverty of the respective remit the money, to the officers appointed to receive collections.

These magistrates in under them, called their is to say, masters of punishment districts, who act according to their receive; in the same manner as their collect those who live under inspection, and collect them according to their villages, exercise the very authority as the Calentars larger, and in towns, called Regies, that is to say, officers, who a

ders, that is to say, collectors, that is to say, on all kinds of merchandise in their respective more consequence and those last above-mentioned keeps an exact account and sends a copy of it calls, his inspectors, who directly into his public farms, so respectively reprinted for the court's collection, or what we call them, Custom-house salaries, but no they collect. Former annual; but the duties set out for seven or eight and sometimes for a from hence they levy four thousand Tomans at least a million of

Their Calentars or heads of the common-people.

the royal palace before the grand vizier, and immediately after the chief officers on the one hand, and the master of the household on the

the Khans and Shans, who (as already observed) are noblemen of these grandees; yet they are governors as well as they; and a vital difference between the two. They take care likewise to revenues of the land that lies in particular districts or departments. Superior governors, like the Beglar, are obliged to maintain a certain number of troops for his majesty's service; and some of them, independent on their Beglarships,

officers, who are called Derwishes, the governors of such particular countries are distinguished by the title of vizier's domain, which are appropriated to his maintenance and support, not to the court, but of some certain province; and these have the execution of the annual revenues, or the disposal of those countries. They are, however, certain salaries allowed of those revenues; and they are, and pay their compliments to his majesty like the rest.

These grandees, and inferior governors, are of provinces, there are governors of particular forts and cities, who are distinguished by the name of *Derogars*. Those who are in this post in large cities, such as Ispahan, or any other of the same name, have much the same authority as those who in France bear the character of Lieutenants civil and criminal. When these carry out execution, they are obliged to do so for they have no more respect to another, but punish all delinquents, and keep the lines for their

officers, called the Calentars, or heads of the populace, the principal magistrates in the country villages; their authority,

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1704

authority, however, extends over none but the common-people in cities, and more particularly at Ispahan. These magistrates, properly speaking, are protectors of the populace, and plead their causes before their courts of justice. 'Tis the peculiar province of these officers to settle and adjust the taxations, both ordinary and extraordinary, on the common-people; in the execution of which, they take into their serious consideration the abilities, or poverty of the respective inhabitants, and remit the money, so raised, to the proper officers appointed to receive those public collections.

Their Ked-chodas.

These magistrates have certain officers under them, called their Ked-chodas, that is to say, masters of parishes, or the inferior districts, who act according to the instructions they receive; and in much the same manner as their chiefs do, they protect those who live under their care and inspection, and collect the money due from them according to their respective taxations.

The principals, or magistrates of small villages, exercise the very same power and authority as the Calentars, in such as are larger, and in towns. These officers are called Ragies, that is to say, regents.

These officers, who are called Shabanders, that is to say, collectors of the duties on all kinds of merchandize or commodities in their sea-ports, are magistrates of more consequence and importance than those last above-mentioned. Each of these keeps an exact account of what he collects, and sends a copy of it to the Mustoficassa, his inspector, who enters it immediately into his public register; and the sums, so respectively received, are appropriated for the court's subsistence. These collectors, or what we may with propriety call them, Custom-house officers, have stated salaries, but no part of the monies they collect. Formerly their office was annual; but the duties at present are farmed out for seven or eight years together, and sometimes for a longer term; and from hence they levy no less than twenty four thousand Tomans per annum, that is at least a million of French livres, and

Their Shabanders.

291

sometimes they advance it to twenty-eight.

The next officer of moment is their Meliktuziziaer, that is to say, the chief of their merchants, who bears that title, by virtue of his passing a final determination on all such mercantile proceedings as are brought before him; this officer has, likewise, the inspection, not only of the weavers, but of the taylor's belonging to the court. Tho' he acts, indeed, under the Nazir; yet the provision of the cloathing, and such other articles of the like nature, as are for his majesty's own use, are all entrusted to his care. He is supervisor also, or inspector-general of all those who are empowered to dispose of the silks, and other manufactures which belong to his majesty in foreign parts.

After this head, or chief of the merchants, we must introduce their Raachadaers, as they are called, that is to say, the surveyors of their roads. These officers farm a certain compass of their highways, and, by virtue of such purchase, receive a certain duty on all such wares or commodities, as pass within their particular districts, of which they keep an exact account; and these duties are entitled their Raagdarie. These farmers are under an indispensable obligation, at all proper times, not only to repair their roads, or high-ways, but to secure all passengers, who pay them toll, from being robbed, and to make good all such effects as they shall be casually plundered of within their respective divisions, according to their valuation, or prime cost, in case the delinquents cannot, within a reasonable time, be brought to justice. However, in such cases, where a discovery of effects lost is duely made, they deliver only two thirds thereof to the proprietor, and reserve the remainder for their own use. These officers are, likewise, for the reasons above-mentioned, bound to maintain and provide, at their own expence, a certain number of watchmen, properly armed, to patrol in the night-time, and in times of danger, in order to prevent all insults and disorders, and, if possible, to detect all free-booters, and bring them to condign punishment.

Their Raachadaers, or surveyors of the highways.

Their Meliktuziziaer, or chief of their merchants.

1704

1704

punishment. This regulation, it must be allowed, is a very important one; but woe-ful experience demonstrates, that, through the neglect thereof, the traveller is too often utterly ruined and undone.

Their Koetewael, or governors of their castles.

Besides all the officers above-mentioned, the Persians have certain governors in their great castles, and other fortresses throughout the kingdom, as for instance, the governor of (*e*) Ormus, Candelar, &c. who are called in their language, Koetewael. The power, however, of these officers is for the most part limited; and they have their dependence on those, who are governors of the particular province, where-in such castles are respectively erected.

The term Koetewael, signifies the head, or chief of the watch, who patrols the streets, accompanied by his subaltern officers, during the night-time, in order to prevent all clandestine proceedings, robberies, or murders, and to secure those, who are actual delinquents, or suspected to be parties concerned. The officer, at Isfahan, and several other cities in Persia, is distinguished by the name of Aghdaas.

Their Muktefih, or inspector of the markets.

Their next officer of note is by them called their Muktefih, that is to say, the inspector-general of their markets; whose peculiar province it is to regulate the price of their provisions, or, indeed, of any other commodities or wares, brought thither in order to be exposed to public sale. 'Tis his business likewise to examine and pry into their weights and measures, and to punish those who by clandestine practices defraud their neighbours by making use of false ones, and such as are under the standard.—No sooner has this officer settled and adjusted the price of provisions, and other commodities, for the day, (for this is a daily duty incumbent on him) he carries an exact inventory, or catalogue of them, sealed up, to the palace-gate; and there the ordinary, or common accounts are entirely regulated according to his valuation.

Then Mehemander-bashi, or guest-keeper to the king.

Nor must we forget to make mention of another officer, called their Mehemander-bashi, that is to say, the chief, or principal of those to whose care and conduct his majesty's guests are from time to time en-

1704

trusted. This officer, with propriety enough, may be stiled a master of the ceremonies; for it is his duty and province to go out of town, in order to receive such as act in the capacity of ambassadors from foreign princes or as envoys; or, in short, as strangers of quality, and distinction. He is to take particular care that they are treated with due respect, and want for no necessaries that they can in reason be supplied with. As to other matters, it is left to the discretion of foreign ministers, whether Christian or Mahomedan, without favour or affection, (since both are treated at the Persian court on an equal footing) to send for whatever they stand in immediate need of, to his majesty's store-house; or to receive (as they judge most convenient) the value thereof in ready money once a week.

'Tis this officer's business likewise to carry their messages to his majesty, and his ministers, and to usher them into his majesty's presence, whenever they are admitted to have an audience. He is, moreover, obliged to pay them visits from time to time, to converse with them, and sift out of them, as far as he can within the bounds of decency, the principal aim and intention of their arrival; and for what reasons they take up their residence at court; in order to enable him to give as satisfactory account as he can to his majesty's ministers of state: but when there happens to come an ambassador either from the (*f*) Port, or from the king of Indostan, or any other Mahomedan powers of illustrious birth and character, they send likewise one of the grandees belonging to the kingdom, to wait on them, as a Maitre d'hotel is sent in (*g*) France, that is to say, a Guest-keeper; and such grandee is to acquit himself of all the functions, or duties of the Mehemander-bashi, with respect to other ministers.

Besides all the preceding officers, there is another of no small consideration, called their Mammur-bashi, that is to say, the chief, or principal surveyor of his majesty's buildings. 'Tis the peculiar province of this officer, to fix a price upon most of such houses as are exposed to public sale, in order to prevent (as much as possible)

file of but few roads; and, in
with so much precaution, with
of profound wisdom and sanc-
ters, as is perfectly rapturous

their habits, they are white, and
anels or goat hair; they wear
ge turbans, which make them
and meagre; they affect an ex-
implicity, when they appear
and have no other attendant

Their
bus,

erwan, who walks with a book
behind them; they move, for
part, slowly along and keep their
as it were, upon the ground,
in deep contemplation. They
are molks almost daily, where

be long prayers, with a seeming
devotion, and frequently with-
private corner, where they
the younger sort; and some-
deliver very pathetic discourses
their audience. By such flanti-

gents as these, it is, that they
sents of the unthinking popu-
like even the king himself
terror, that he would, on no
e guilty of practising the least in-

in their religion, for fear of in-
to be present at any royal ai-
they have the privilege of living
small distance from the gentle-

sword.

pointment of the nobility, who
court, is widely distant, it is true,
; they are extremely courteous
alliant; and affect a freedom,
very engaging; but when they
grand hypocrites as the former; nor
not the least sincerity in all their
; their tongues betray their hearts.
note themselves entirely to their
their habits, their equipages,
y grand and magnificent; and
vely fond are they of enriching
es, that without a very valuable
present, no favour whatever can
be

The hypo-
crisy of
these court-
iers.

of of learn-
ing.

ing.

CORNELIUS SCLEBRUN.

be procured from them. In all other ref-
pects, indeed, they are affable, and good-
natured enough. They will cringe and
creep however in the most servile manner,
to those from whom they hope to receive
any favours; and in case they have any
competitors, who endeavour to obstruct
their solicitations they are very malicious;
and when it happens they find themselves
successful, they treat those who opposed
them with the utmost inhumanity; em-
brace every opportunity of blasting their
reputations, and casting a veil over those
good qualities of which they know them-
to be possessed; and, in short, never sit
down contented, till they have found out
some secret devices, that shall infallibly
ruin and destroy them. On the other
hand, they are guilty of the most fulsome
flattery towards such as stand possessed of
the most important employments, and are
the favourites of fortune. To these they
will ascribe a thousand perfections, that
they know, in their consciences they ne-
ver were possessed of; but in case any of
these should in process of time happen to
fall into disgrace, they will then insult
over their misfortunes, and treat them
with as much indignity, as before they had
done with the most abject adulations. In
a word, so unhappy is a courtier in disgrace,
that those who stand deepest in his debt
for favours formerly received, shall fre-
quently be seen his most implacable ene-
mies, and be the foremost in bringing a-
bout his total ruin and destruction.

Their men
of of learn-
ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

ing.

to whom they have even an aversion,
wherever they meet them; but then a-
gain, the very moment their backs are
turned, they will vilify and reproach
them. Hypocrisy, in short, is their dar-
ling vice; and such is their vanity and
self-conceit, that they will blow their own
trumpets, and be very lavish in their en-
comiums on their own extraordinary me-
rit; notwithstanding all this, they are to
all outward appearance, very sanctified and
devout, and seem to look down with an
eye of contempt, on the vanity of all sub-
lunary enjoyments. Tho' they are for-
ever expatiating in public on the joys that
are more lasting and permanent in ano-
ther world; yet in private, they will gra-
tify their sensual appetites without con-
troul. These Persian hypocrites, more-
over, entertain an utter aversion, not only
to all who are professors of christianity in
(1) Europe; but to all others who differ
from them in any important articles of
their faith; nor would there be any safety
for them in this country, if the laws of
nations did not keep these infidels under
some tolerable restraint.

Usury very
prevalent
amongst
the Per-
sians.

The shameful practice of usury prevails
in this country more than in any other
part of the world through which I have
travelled. Tho' it must be acknowledged,
that there are some honest, sincere, and
virtuous men amongst them; we dare
venture to assert, that, for the generality,
the Persians are the most ungrateful
wretches under the sun, and can be guilty
of the most enormous crimes without a
blush. Persia, like the European states,
consists of three orders. The first, of the
nobility, and gentlemen of the sword; the
second, of the men of the robe; and the
third and last of merchants and mecha-
nics.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

a province of Asiatic Turkey. Its capital city is
Erzerum.

(e) Ormus, see 283. n. b.

(f) Isfahan, see p. 109. n. m.

(g)

(a) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.

(b) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.

(c) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(d) Turcomania, the antient Armenia, is now

1704

(g) Porto, or the Port, the city of Constantinople, frequently called so, by way of eminence, being one of the finest harbours in Europe, and the metropolis of the Turkish empire.

1704

(b) France, see p. 214. n. m.
(i) Europe, see p. 117, n. dd.

C-H A P. XLII.

A succinct Account of the Ceremonies observed at the Interment of any King of (a) Persia. A Character of the King then regent. When the Author arrived at (b) Ispahan or Spahawn. His Majesty's Portrait, or Picture; and the agreeable Habits, or Dresses, of the Persians of both Sexes.

Notwithstanding it is an established custom, to conceal the decease of a Persian king till his immediate successor is firmly seated upon his throne; yet no sooner had Suliman, the father of his present majesty, departed this life, but the melancholy news was spread far and wide almost instantaneously, through the indication of his chief, or first physician.

The death
of King Suliman.

That prince died on the 29th day of July in the year 1694, in the 48th year of his age, after he had reigned near 30 years.

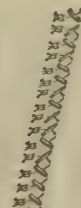
No sooner was the report confirmed, but the officers belonging to the crown, and the grandees, or principal nobility of the kingdom, immediately possessed themselves of the palace; and took all the care they possibly could to secure peace and tranquility within the court. No people of any rank or distinction were to be met with in the open streets; and all the shops in general throughout the city of Ispahan were close shut up.

His funeral.

On the first of August his majesty's corpse was laid on a wheel-machine, which was covered all over with a most pompous and magnificent pall of gold cloth, and conveyed from the palace to a chappel, at about a league's distance from Ispahan, and from thence to Com, in order to its being deposited in the sepulchre of his royal predecessors. All the grandees of the kingdom, attended the deceased on foot, one of the officers belonging to the

crown, by name Mieris-taher, and a dignified ecclesiastic only excepted, who, through the infirmities of old age, were permitted to ride on horseback. These grandees, or lords, were followed by the gentlemen of the robe, and the penmen, who chanted a most doleful ditty as they moved solemnly along. A large body of soldiers succeeded these, who attended his majesty's remains to the chappel, with their flambeaux, which smoked indeed, tho' they gave no light. All those who had attended the corpse so far, having first rent their garments, returned homewards, and left a sufficient number of their friends and relations to attend the body to the sepulchre above-mentioned in the dead of the night.

The guards of the palace were directly doubled, in order to prevent any tumult or disturbance, which might casually arise on so public an occasion, especially in a city so populous as Ispahan, and so crowded with inhabitants of various nations. In the interim, the crown-officers gave express orders to their most judicious Astrologer, as is the constant custom of the country, to inform them of the most propitious, or favourable moment for the inauguration, or installment of the new king; being fully persuaded, that by such a proper consultation, his majesty would make no attempts to injure, or oppress his subjects; especially on his first accession to the throne. There was not a single drum or trumpet to be heard



at the Internment of any
ing then regent. When the
His Majesty's Portrait,
veller, of the Persians of both

name Mirza-taher, and a sig-
nificant only excepted, who,
infirmities of old age, were
to ride on horseback. These
or lords, were followed by the
of the robe, and the pennon,
ted a most doleful dirge as they
emery along. A large body of
ceded these, who attended his
remains to the chapel, with
breaux, which smoked in-
they gave no light. All those
tended the corte so far, having
their garments, returned home-
d left a sufficient number of
rads and relations to attend the
the sepulchre above-mentioned in

of the night.

ards of the palace were directly
in order to prevent any tumult or
which might casually arise on
occasion, especially in a city
as Isfahan, and so crowded
itants of various nations. In the
the crown-officers gave express
their most judicious Abbages,
constant custom of the country,
a them of the most populous or
le moment for the inauguration,
ment of the new king, being fully
ment of a proper consulta-
that by such a proper consulta-
Majesty would make no attempt
oppressed his subjects; especially
a accession to the throne. These
a single drum or trumpet to be
heard

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1704

heard, or any other noise whatever, that might in the least interrupt the solemnity of their public mourning, till their Magi, or wife men had made their declaration, which was postponed to the 6th day of August on which the critical moment was unanimously settled and adjusted. — This was the happy time appointed for the new king's solemn coronation, that is to say, the eldest son of the deceased Suliman.

The coronation of the new King.

This successor, upon the expiration of his father, was instantaneously removed from the Seraglio, and locked up in another apartment appointed for his reception, where he was closely confined till his accession to the throne, where all the grantees belonging to the court attended round about him, in order to throw themselves prostrate at his feet. Upon this all the houses and shops throughout the city were instantly opened, which, till then, had been closely shut up; and there were bonfires in every street, and grand illuminations in every window; with divers other demonstrations of public joy.

The new king, who, by the Persians is styled their Soltan-hoffein, sent, on the next day after his coronation, royal robes to all the grantees and lords of the court, who, till then, wore no other garments than those they had torn before; and upon the reception of these presents, the mourning for the deceased was at once all over. After this, not only the drums and trumpets, but every other instrument of music was heard in almost every corner; and these public rejoicings continued, according to custom, without any intermission, for forty days successively.

His majesty, at his accession to the throne, was about four and twenty years of age, of but a moderate stature, though well made; and the features of his face were perfectly manly and handsome. I had so many opportunities of viewing him with attention, during my residence at Isfahan, that the idea of him being firmly imprinted in my mind, I was enabled to draw his picture, in which attempt I was generally allowed to have hit the true likeness, and to have succeeded beyond their expectations. Though his majesty was,

His picture drawn by the author.

297

1704

when I saw him first, in a summer dress; yet I chose, upon mature deliberation, to delineate him in his winter-robcs, which are much more magnificent, and give him, in my opinion, a more graceful and majestic air.

He may with ease be distinguished, by virtue of the large, and immensely valuable jewel in his turban, which is embellished, moreover, with three feathers, plucked from the wing of a black heron; as the reader will find by turning his eye on the Plate (85) hereto annexed.

This young prince takes such a peculiar delight in building; that, upon a modest computation, he is reckoned to have expended, within the compass of ten years, no less than four or five millions of money; notwithstanding the costs and charges attending his fine gardens, and all his houses of pleasure are no ways included in the account. When he has an inclination to erect any new edifice, his will is made publicly known by sound of trumpet, that such as are attached to his interest may attend, and contribute towards the completion of the intended building. Upon this general summons, artificers of all sorts flock to court from all parts, in order to offer their service, through loyalty, without any expectation, or hopes of reward; nor do the grantees, or lords of the court, ever fail of sending other workmen at their own expence.

Such inhabitants, as are natives of (d) Armenia, are indispensably obliged to pay in their contributions, likewise; and to my own certain knowledge, they raised no less than three hundred tomans, that is to say, near one hundred and twenty thousand livres, towards one single garden, that was completed during my residence at Isfahan.

Notwithstanding this taste of his for building; he is so addicted to venery, and indulges himself to that degree, in the gratification of every unruly and inordinate passion, that he is perfectly regardless of his state-affairs, and the welfare of his subjects; and thro' his vicious example, there is but little justice administered throughout all his extensive dominions. Licentiousness reigns in every part; and

His other follies.

it serve him any longer. Upon
resumption, as it was termed,
he was immediately depol'd, and by his
superior orders closely confined
the next day to his own apartment
chamber. In the interim, however,
were so languine and tedious
that they had proved the
for his restoration. Accord-
all congratulated him upon
his recovery, but he was so far
from being them, as they expected, his
acknowledgments, that he re-
fused to accept of any services, and
declared that he desired to serve
a prince; and actually per-
formed that unalterable resolution to his

grandee, by name Mouli-
giani, an Armenian by birth,
whose grandfather had embraced
the Christian faith, drew a more severe
lesson upon himself than the for-
mer. In the year 1704, whilst I was resi-
ding at Constantinople, for discovering his ambi-
tion, and speaking without
reserve to his noblemen, who had been
in some of the most important
offices of the kingdom, and particularly
in the province of Tauris before men-
tioned, he had been general of his
army. Circumstances as well as Georgian
war on some private occasion to
him, where his majesty asked him
at that conjuncture, could
he not go to court, and commanded him
to remain at his government
in order to make the least ex-
cuse, and from thence to repair,
on the most expedition, to Elenabad,
the head of his army, and there-
after to direct against the Tur-
kish who had invaded that province,
that he was very sorry that he
could not go. Upon this he told
him that he was very sorry that he
could not go with those
possibilities comply with those
for he had been fully con-
vinced that his grandees and other
at his residence at court, did not
then relating that he had
come them, or as persons that
had

had any sincere regard either for his
majesty himself, or the welfare of his sub-
jects; and that he was well assured, that
their whole aim and design in prevailing
no his majesty to send him on that errand,
was no other, than to ruin and destroy
him; and that therefore, in case it was
absolutely necessary that he should fall a
sacrifice to the malice and resentment of
his enemies, he had rather submit to the
will of fate, and dye at once, than to
fall ingloriously after his departure. This
he spoke so openly, and after such an
unguarded manner, and confirmed the
truth of what he asserted by such strong
and convincing arguments, that he ex-
asperated his majesty so far, that proper
officers were sent to his apartments on the
sixth of September then following in order
to secure him; and accordingly they ex-
ecuted their commission with the utmost
rigour; for they first bound him, and
then carried him publicly through the
streets upon a mule to the place appointed
for his confinement, and clapped their
signet on all his effects: however, not-
withstanding all this insult and disgrace, he
was in a few days afterwards discharged,
on the milder condition of his voluntarily
confining himself in his own house.

Many other instances might be pro-
duced of the foibles, and want of dis-
cretion in this unhappy prince, who, by his
rash, and arbitrary proceedings, exposes
himself so far to the contempt of all his
subjects; that scarce any of them scruple to
declare, in the most open manner, they
have nothing of a king, but the bare name.
And it may, with justice, indeed, and good
reason be said, that no country, where a
child, or an illiterate prince sets on the
throne, can possibly be happy. The
younger brother of this weak prince, who
has an apartment in the palace, and is a
man of sense, and intrinsic merit, when
he hears of his majesty's daily acts of in-
discretion, cries out (as I am credibly in-
formed) I cannot conceive what my bro-
ther does with the crown. And one day
after his majesty had sent him a bottle of
wine, the young prince returned it back
with an air of contempt, saying, he did

not stand in want of a little liquor. Now
to these who are ignorant of the customs
and maxims of the Persians, those matters,
so widely distant from the methods ob-
served in other countries, may appear
strange, and will scarcely be believed. I
shall mention but one foible more of this
unhappy prince, and that is, tho' he is ad-
dicted to gaming, if he loses but a trifle,
he begs of the party who won it, to take
no notice of his loss to the Nazir, who is
the officer appointed to pay him.

In order, however, to cast a veil over the
other foibles of this illiterate prince, we
will enter on another topic, and close this
chapter with a succinct account of the
various habits which are worn by the Per-
sians of both sexes. But here we must
make one general observation, in the first
place; namely, that their habits are all
much shorter than those worn by the
Turks, and each is different, in proportion
to their respective stations, or degrees in
life. The habit, for instance, of the gentle-
men of the sword bears no resemblance to
that which is worn by those of the robe;
and the dresses are equally various in regard
to their comforts. There is, moreover, a
very visible difference in the habits of their
virgins, from those who are settled in the
conjugal state. As to the dresses of their
men of the robe, the reader will have a
clear idea of it by casting his eye on the
plate (No. 86) hereto annexed. The tur-
bant, likewise, or the mandiel, as they
call it, which they wear on their heads is
greatly varied. Some wear them of one
colour; others of another; according as
their taste or fancy directs them: some are
striped; others are wrought with gold and
silver: others again, are as white as snow:
those which are worn by their ecclesiastics
are by much the largest, indeed; yet they
are exceedingly neat, and plaited in the
most accurate manner. Their dresses, in
short, throughout, is very grand and mag-
nificent, and their vestments are for the
generality, flowered; but these rich gar-
ments, according to my fancy, become
their ladies much better than themselves.
And to speak my sentiments freely, and
without reserve, I think the dresses of a Turk
is

The various
habits, or
dresses of
the Persians
grandees.

THE TRAVELS OF

1704

is much more modest, much better understood, and gives him a more manly and majestic air. The Persians, in all other respects, never vary their fashions, and still preserve that air of grandeur which was prevalent in the days of king Alexander. Their nobility, or other persons of high rank and distinction, very seldom, if ever walk, but ride on horse-back, with their running-footmen on one side of them. And these are so frequently mimicked by gentlemen of lower rank, and lesser fortune, that they are forced to run deep in debt, in order to indulge themselves in such acts of splendor, and extravagance; but then it must be allowed that they seldom think of discharging them, unless they find themselves compelled. Their *grandeurs*, and such as roll in riches, decorate their horses' bridles with massy gold; and others in much lower circumstance copy after them in proportion. They have their callion (as they call it) that is to say, their pipe carried constantly after them; which, with more propriety of expression, may be termed, their bottle of water, through which they draw the smoke of their tobacco. This callion is embellished with gold, and makes a very neat appearance. Such as are of a lower rank or class adorn them only with silver, indeed; but then they have them carried after them in the same pompous manner as the former. The bridle of our director's horse was a golden one, and his callion was embellished with the same precious metal: His deputy's likewise was the same; and so, in short, were the bridles of all such as frequent the court; where they are only looked upon in proportion to the grand figure they can make.

The drefs of the ladies, however, (as I hinted before) feems, to my thinking, much more agreeable. The comforts of their robe-men, wear a bandage on their foreheads molt richly deckt all over with pearls and precious ftones : This bandage, for the molt part, is four fingers in breadth ; and goes but half way round the head. On the other hand, the comforts of fuch as are counfellors of fiate wear their bandages all round, in the manner of a crown, which they call their

The various habits, or dresses of their court ladies.

1704

bonfire: This is frequently decorated with a plumage, plucked from the wing of a black heron, and several bunches of flowers with golden leaves. To this bandage, or crown, they add a jewel, which falls on the forehead; and is fastened by a string of pearl which comes under their chin; and as to their hair it hangs down their backs in ringlets. These ladies, likewise, wear a white veil, embroidered with gold, which falls over their shoulders. They have, moreover, their necklaces of pearls and precious stones, together with rich chains of gold, which fall down to their very girdles, with a small box of perfume. Their upper garment is generally either a gold or silver brocade; sometimes, indeed, it is perfectly plain: And under this, they wear a vest, which falls down below the girdle. Their shifts are made of taffaty, or some other fine silk, embroidered with gold. They wear drawers, likewise, and under-petticoats made in the loom; as also buskins, which come up about four or five inches above the ankle; these too are made of velvet embroidered, or some other more costly stuff. Their slippers are made either of green or red flagreen which is painted; and the heel is raised of the same colour, lined, and embellished with little flowers. Their girdles, which are about two or three inches broad, are adorned with pearls and precious stones; and upon their breasts they wear a variety of rich ribbons, which fall down as low as their girdles. The reader will find one of these fine ladies dressed in all her gaiety, in order to pay a visit, in the plate (No. 87.) hereunto annexed. In winter, they wear over all this, a gown, lined with a cotton-cloth, which falls down about a foot below their girdles; and when it is excessively cold, indeed, they wear a gown of silver or gold brocade, lined with fable, or some fur of the like nature. When they appear in the streets, they are covered from head to foot with a white veil; inasmuch, that nothing of their face is seen except their eyes, as the reader may see in the plate before-mentioned. This veil, for the generality, is all of one piece. They wear bracelets, like
wife,

COR

704
wife, of precious stones
and their fingers are perf

things.
The ladies of but a minute
inferior to these, dress
in proportion to the
husbands; and the wives
and men of the sword,
something of the like
cloaths, which have a
and strike the eye in the
manner.

To the dresses of the gentlemen and ladies, his of those they call to say, his majesty's power in the capacity of

Occasio

- (a) Persia, see p. 64
- (b) Indian, or Siam
- (c) Com. see p. 247, n.
- (d) Armenia, see p. 19
- (e) Georgia, in Asia, &c.
- (f) Tunis, or Tabris, &c.

*The grand Famine
ration of the De
and Fatima, the
the Natives of (*
Arrival of an
(d) Ottoman P

ON the sixth day commenced the pump, which was in their great St. Hoffman station, or mourning room they called the new moon. All the fear in deep mourning

1704 This is frequently decorated with a page, plucked from the wing of a butterfly, and several bunches of golden leaves. To this banner, they add a jewel, which is forehead; and is fastened by a pearl which comes under their

as to their hair it hangs down in ringlets. These ladies like a white veil, embroidered with gold, which falls over their shoulders. Moreover, their necklaces of precious stones, together with a pair of gold, which fall down to the knees, with a small box of gold or silver brocade; sometimes, it is particularly plain: And they wear a veil, which falls to the knees. Their dresses are of many, or some other fine stuff, and with gold. They wear diamonds, and under-petticoats made of silk; as also baskins, which come to the knee or five inches above the knee, and are made of velvet embroidered with pearls and precious stones; and upon their breasts they wear a variety of rich ribbons, which fall down as their girdles. The reader

one of these fine ladies dress in order to pay a visit, in

(No. 89.) hereto annexed. In

they wear over all this, a gown, which is a cotton-cloth, which falls to the feet below their girdles, and is extremely cold; indeed, they

of silver or gold brocade, which is of the like

table, or some fur of the like

When they appear in the streets, they are covered from head to foot with a

inasmuch, that nothing of their eyes, as the

seen except their eyes, as the

see in the plate before-men-

tion will, for the generality, is all

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

They wear bracelets, like

1704 wife, of precious stones upon their arms; and their fingers are perfectly loaded with rings.

The ladies of but a middling station and inferior to these, dress themselves richly, in proportion to the substance of their husbands; and the wives of the nobility, and men of the sword, wear a silk net or something of the like nature over their cloaths, which have a charming effect, and strike the eye in the most agreeable manner.

To the dresses of the abovementioned gentlemen and ladies, I shall add the habits of those they call their yafools, that is to say, his majesty's porters, who act likewise in the capacity of gentlemen-ushers.

The habits or dresses of their yafools, or porters who belong to the court.

1704 These yafools wear mustaches, like the nobility, and a beard upon their chins which extends even to their ears; and nobody's turbants are so lofty as theirs. Some of this class, or order, wear beards after the Turkish manner. The reader will find one of these delineated in the plate (No. 88.) hereto annexed.

In (No. 89.) he will have likewise the representation of a male black slave, who was an attendant on our director, with a large poignard of a particular form, stuck in his girdle, and a long staff in his hand: As also of a female domestic of his, of the same complexion, with her tea-equipage in her hand, if he will but cast his eye on the plate 90 hitherto likewise annexed.

The portraits of two slaves.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- (a) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.
- (b) Isfahan, or Spahawn, see p. 109. n. m.
- (c) Com. see p. 247. n. k.
- (d) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.
- (e) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.
- (f) Tauris, or Tabris, see p. 242. n. i.
- (g) Media, see p. 214. n. e.
- (h) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.
- (i) Circassia, see p. 199. n. q.
- (k) Masanderan, a province of Persia, usually comprehended in Gilan, the antient Hyrcania, situate on the south coast of the Caspian sea.

CHAP. XLIII.

The grand Funeral Solemnity ordained by the (a) Persians for the Commemoration of the Decease of their favourite Saint Hussein, the Son of Ali and Fatima, the sole Daughter of Mohammed. The Manner in which the Natives of (b) Armenia receive their Friends at (c) Julpha. The Arrival of an Envoy or Ambassador from the Grand Vicer of the (d) Ottoman Port.

ON the sixth day of May the Persians commenced their grand funeral pomp, which was instituted in honour of their great St. Hussein; and their lamentation, or mourning begins on the moment they discern the least glimpse of the new moon. All the city in general appear in deep mourning, and all the testi-

The Persians days of mourning.

monies of public sorrow are expressed for the death of so venerable and so righteous a man, which happened (according to tradition) in the year 1027, at which time Mohammed was indispensably obliged to fly from (e) Mecca to (f) Medina Talmabi, which (according to their calculation) was no less than one thousand one hundred and

4 H

eighteen

1704

eighteen years ago, in order to screen himself from the resentment and persecution of his foes.

The history
of St. Husein.

This most venerable saint lost his life in (*g*) Arabia Deserta, as he was taking his flight accompanied by seventy-two of his disciples, or followers, near a certain place called Kierbilla, where his monument is erected, and to which the Persians, who look upon him as their true, or head Imam, resort from all parts, both far and near, in order to pay him the tribute of their more than common veneration and esteem. And it must be allowed, that king Abbas the Great acknowledged frankly, and with a kind of secret pride, that he was a descendant of that illustrious family; the natives of (*h*) Turkey, however, think he is no ways entitled to that honour.

The manner of their
mourning
for him.

This public mourning, or general lamentation is continued for ten days successively, without the least intermission. The populace make their appearance in the open streets, in small bands or companies, of about ten or a dozen of them, in the most piteous plight, being, at least, half naked; and as an addition to their seeming sorrow, they blacken their faces all over, and look like a pack of our common chimney-sweepers in (*i*) Holland. They make, in short, a most hideous figure; and affecting a very morified air, they chant their most doleful ditties to the sound of certain castagnets, such as we have before-mentioned to have been played upon by female dancers in some other countries. The martyrdom of this their darling saint is represented by persons well furnished with arms, and by an image of him, which is not only very large, but hollow, and put into motion by some person within, appointed for that purpose, and who is not over-artfully concealed; for his legs are visible enough to the most incurious eye. The parties concerned in this pious droll, farce, or piece of mummery, as it may properly enough be termed, seldom fail of receiving some petty gratuity, or reward from the spectators, which consists, however, of but some small pieces of silver, of no great

1704

value. There are some of them, indeed, now and then, who are more bountiful and beneficent, in proportion to the high veneration they conceive of his personal merit. As for the rest, during these uninterrupted days of sorrow and lamentation, they preach openly in the streets, both morning and evening; but more especially in such parts of the city, where there are cross-ways and such other places of most resort, which they inclose with tapestry, and cover with their carpets. They decorate likewise the walls of the city with bucklers, and other warlike arms of various denominations, and the pulpits at these times, are raised five or six steps at least, for the accommodation of those who constitute the audience on these solemn occasions. These orators, thus mounted in their rostrum, take care to have some manuscripts in their hands, on which they frequently cast their eye, whilst they are expatiating on the important and marvellous actions of this their saint. An inferior preacher, who stands some few steps only lower than the former, harangues the populace, in his turn, with his eulogies of Husein, which he chants with as loud and distinct a voice, as one of our European parish-clerks. The respective places, set apart for these public acts of devotion, are for the generality, full of seats, or benches; and as my curiosity inclined me to become one of their auditors, I was soon accompanied thither by some of my friends. No sooner were they sensible of our intention, but they furnished us, very courteously, with commodious seats; and this they did with the more alacrity and readiness, as they professed a more than common value and regard for our director, who was universally beloved at (*k*) Ispahan. I listened with a seeming attention for near half an hour; and I could plainly discover, that what was at that time delivered by their orator, had such a strong influence over the passions of their auditors, that most of them appeared dissolved in tears. At the corner of the wall where my friends and myself were seated, a large figure had been planted, which was tolerably coun-

1704

terrible, and well the
wre personated one O
a murderer of Husein.

her burnt at night,
the city. In several
these parricides, or se
them, are delivered like
of the night, upon certain
for those particular pur
on which they hang a
lamps, but in so awkward
manner, that the wind
pens to be a brisk game,
in four of them out di
spectators of this night
are not to be numbered.

On the Sunday follow
nized the grand festival o
our directors, to whose
two bands, or small co
hals, all much of the
all very smartly dress
before him and his com
cotton, on that occa
had small sticks, or wand
which they struck one
during the dance whic
raced music only, that
singing of two or three
their overseers. The
threw their arms aban
over their heads, with
city, and assumed suc
and attitudes, as prov
taining.

Another band more
former, proposed to hav
in order further to am
met unexpectedly with
hanging to some other d
who obstructed them i
close attack, in which
come, besides they w
the court that night.
But to return to our
subject. The solemn
ping, or public mourn
cially in a grand proc
exhibited the very next
had an undisturbed
pected to be at a st

There are some of them, indeed, who are more bountiful than, in proportion to the high they conceive of his person, is for the rest, during these unhappy days of sorrow and lamentation, which openly in the streets, both at evening; but more especially at the city, where there are many and such other places of it, which they incline with and cover with their carpets, to make likewise the walls of the bucklers, and other wall-like various denominations, and the these times, are raised five or ten feet, for the accommodation to constitute the audience on a occasions. These craves, and in their volum, take care to make mandraps in their hands, they frequently cast their eyes, as are expatiating on the important actions of this their inferior preacher, who stands some way lower than the former, but the populace, in his turn, with of Hussein, which he claims and distinct a voice, as one of the European parish-clerics. The places, set apart for these public devotion, are for the general of seats, or benches; and as they inclined me to become one of them, I was soon accompanied by one of my friends. No sooner was the first of our intention, but we found us, very courteously, with us seats; and this they did with alacrity and readiness, as they more than common value and our director, who was unwearied at the Lipshan. I listened with attention for near half an hour, and I could plainly discover, that at that time delivered by their such a strong influence over the audience, that most of their auditors, that most of them dissolved in tears. At the end of the discourse, my friends and I, who were seated, a large figure had been seen, which was tolerably con-

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

303

1704

terfeited, and well stuffed with straw, who personated one Omar, the assassin, or murderer of Hussein, whom the populace burnt at night, in divers parts of the city. In several considerable places, these panegyrics, or sermons as they call them, are delivered likewise in the dead of the night, upon certain theatres, erected for those particular purposes, with laths, on which they hang above a thousand lamps, but in so awkward and careless a manner, that the wind, in case there happens to be a brisk gale, blows three parts in four of them out directly. As to the spectators of this night pageantry, they are not to be numbered.

A dance of young lads.

On the Sunday following, we solemnized the grand festival of Whitsuntide, at our directors, to whose apartments came two bands, or small companies of young lads, all much of the same stature, and all very smartly dressed in order to dance before him and his company, according to custom, on that occasion. These lads had small sticks, or wands, in their hands, which they struck one against another, during the dance which was exhibited to vocal music only, that is to say, to the singing of two or three men, who were their overseers. These young dancers threw their arms almost every moment over their heads, with the utmost velocity, and assumed such a variety of airs and attitudes, as proved perfectly entertaining.

Another band more numerous than the former, proposed to have followed them, in order farther to amuse us; but they met unexpectedly with a strange band, belonging to some other district, or division, who obstructed them in their design by a close attack; inasmuch that they could not come; besides they were obliged to attend the court that night.

But to return to our more melancholy subject. The solemnity of this funeral pomp, or public mourning consisted principally in a grand procession, which was exhibited the very next day; of which I had an uninterrupted sight, as I happened to be at a shop-keepers house

in the Bazar, or market-place, when it passed by the door.

This grand procession was opened by some few officers on horse-back who belonged to the Deroga; and these were followed by a set of fingers, who had each of them a taper in his hand; and each was dressed either in black, or purple, conformable to the nature of the solemnity, and the doleful lamentations that were made; some of these were half naked; and others carried a black standard which was furled up. After them went three camels; on the first rode two lads more than half naked; on the second rode three one behind the other, and on the third, the image of a woman, covered up close, with a little lad. After them came five camels more, on each of which were seven or eight other little boys, who were almost naked likewise, and seated in cages, composed of lath, and these were followed by two ensigns. Then appeared a chariot with an open coffin, in which was contained a dead corpse; after that went a second, which was covered with white, and accompanied by fingers: and a third after the two former, laden with incense, having two men and four little lads in it; each having a book in his hand, and a small table before him. This last chariot was encompassed with a parcel of tinned lamps, or what at least appeared to me to be such, and followed by a large standard which was furled up, and twelve soldiers duly armed; each having a helmet on his head; these were followed by two little lads whimsically dressed up, with feathers and bells. After these boys, went a young prisoner on horse-back, accompanied by no less than one and twenty others, sixteen whereof were chained, and five, indeed, only pinioned. When these prisoners had passed by, there came a fourth chariot, all covered with sand, out of which appeared six heads all in a bloody condition; but no bodies to be seen; information that one might imagine that they had been cut off. In this chariot there were two persons dressed. In a fifth which immediately followed, was carried the body of Hussein himself, represented by

1704

A succinct account of the grand procession.

on horse-back pierced through
This person was all over
to be a stranger; and to all
appearance perfectly faint, and
drop on the ground. After him
appeared, covered all over with
attended by fingers and damp-
seemed to conduct it in triumph;
them were carried three lances,
which was embellished with
feathers. Then followed a horse,
in bows and arrows, a turban and
standard; and five horses more af-
laden with bucklers, bows and
and three jewels, on the points
appeared a band. And to close
melancholy procession, came a
richly caparioned, whereon
three pair of pigeons. This
however, was not in its proper

had been an eye-witness of all
exactly though pompous show, I
on a good-natured account the
interpretation of this mystic
In the first place, he told me
white-doves which I had observed
the chariot, represented those,
reality, sat upon the body of
soon after he was murdered; and
the same white-doves, all inured
s blood flew away to Medina
the sister of St. Hussein lived, who,
the first sight of them, was fully
of his untimely end; for the
it seems, before-hand.—He
one farther, that the chariot
we coffin attended by the two
who had each of them a book
represented the two sons of
whose names were Ali-akbar,
Eskbar, who, as they tell you,
th slain with arrows.—That the
man, pierced through with arrows,
nded to represent the latter.—That
covered with blood was that of
the chariot with
himself; and the persons dressed
by which sat two persons dressed
the children.—That the
the point of the javelins
the point of the javelins
of war which the Christians
the Persian Mahomedans
were

C O R N E L I U S L E B R U N .

305

wore, in former days, upon their stand-
ards, and that the five fingers on that hand
represented Mohammed, Ali Fatima, the
daughter of Mohammed, Ali the wife,
Hussein and Hussein the Saint: so that it is
evident each part of this long, pompous,
melancholy procession has reference to
some circumstance or other relating to the
murder of Hussein, and his seventy two
disciples or followers, who were slain
with him, and afterwards canonized as
well as himself, for martyrs by the
Persians.

It is very surprising, that those persons,
whose heads, arms and legs, appear openly
in the several chariots above-described,
should, for the many hours this mournful
solemnity lasted, be able to act their parts
so naturally, and seem as lifeless as perfect
statues. Most of the heads, moreover,
had long beards, and their necks appeared
to be so squeezed, that one would really
imagine the head to be actually severed
from the body; and what is still more sur-
prising, their very eyes seemed to be fixed
in their heads, and without the least visible
motion.

In order, however, to their acting this
part of insensibility in so natural a manner,
I have been informed, that on this melan-
choly occasion, the parties concerned are
obliged to swallow down a certain quan-
tity of a particular liquor, which intoxicates
them to that degree, that they are totally
deprived of their senses for the time be-
ing. And there is no room for imposi-
tion in this particular; for I could visibly
distinguish the head of wax (whereof there
was but one) from all the rest: And it
must be allowed, moreover, that the Per-
sians are peculiarly artful in these panto-
mical representations.

The next morning we went to the
same place, by break of day, in order to
be spectators of the remainder of this
grand and solemn procession; but his ma-
jesty did not come till two hours after we
were seated.

This second days solemnity, was a kind
of parade of the two districts, or divisions
of the city, who carried divers ornaments
suitable to the mournful purpose in pro-

The parade
of the two
districts of
the city.

cession. In the first place, there appeared,
in the same manner, as the day before,
a small number of the deroga's officers on
horse-back, followed by several young
fellows armed with staves, and crying out,
as they skipped and danced along, O,
Hussein! Hussein! After these came a
band of instrumental music, with some
drums, followed by the citizens of divers
wards: the first company appeared armed
with drawn sabres, and shields; and those
who followed, with staves very elegantly
painted. All in general were very neatly
dressed in velvet vestments, with rich
sashes, and fine turbants; and all marched
in exact order: all the visible difference
between them consisted wholly in the
grandeur and magnificence of one dress
from another. One particular party of
these citizens, who were nearly of the
same rank and degree in regard to sub-
stance, had prepared for themselves a very
pretty machine, or resting place, not much
unlike a common coach, which was a-
dorned with looking-glasses, hung with
sabres, poniards and other arms; some
mounted with gold, and others with silver,
which had a very good effect, and struck
the eye in a charming manner. There
were others, however, which were still
loftier than this, and had no coverings or
tops to them, were open within, and de-
corated with a greater number of glasses.
The greatest and most considerable of
these several companies goes on before the
rest; there were no less than five of these
resting-places, or machines, like coaches
as we hinted before, exclusive of that
which was erected between two buildings
at the Chiaer-baeg. This was embellished
throughout with, or more properly speaking,
composed of looking-glasses, in the form of
an altar, with folding-doors, which when
thrown open displayed all the decorations
within; this was a very lofty machine; and
as soon as his majesty appeared at the
building which belongs to his second
garden, in which there is a long gallery,
one of their doctors or preachers mounts
the rostrum. This altar, or resting-place,
was kept standing for three or four days
successively. It consisted of divers pieces,
which

1704

which were made to fit, and were put together on the spot; for it would have been a fruitless attempt, to have aimed at moving the whole at once through the city-gates.

Another
procession.

This grand procession was succeeded by another that commenced, or opened with some standards, and a great number of horses; some whereof had their heads adorned with large plumes of white feathers, and others were very richly decorated, and laden with fine vestments, fabres, shields, and a variety of other warlike weapons. Some again were drest even with turbants, plumes larger than the former, and other pompous decorations. These horse were followed by a large band of singers, musicians, and dancers, these last waved certain flags over their heads, as they danced along: others carried pikes, which were embellished with tufts and ribbons. The procession appeared afterwards as it did the day before. The parties concerned therein frequently halted; and as they sung threw straw that had been chopped small, all over their heads, crying out at the same time O, Hussein! Hussein! some of the train carried a drawn sabre in one hand, and a shield, or buckler, in the other; the rest had staves at least ten feet in length, which were very neatly painted and richly gilt. Though these seemed to breathe nothing but vengeance and destructive war; yet the Deroga, who was personally present, accompanied by above a thousand horse-men, takes particular care, that nobody shall fall to blows; for he posts his officers, in order to prevent all tumults and disturbances, at proper distances; some in the van; some in the center: and others again in the rear of their grand procession. He plants others likewise in the way, through which they are to pass; and the several districts are obliged to advance gradually one after the other. In short, he takes all the care imaginable, to prevent riots and disorders; and all quarrels and contentions that might possibly arise, in respect to rank or degree in the march, where the passes are narrow; and soldiers with fire-arms are posted, at proper distances, for that particular purpose.

And it is highly requisite, indeed, that such precautions should be taken; since the Persians entertain a firm notion, that all such as should lose their lives on such solemn occasions, go directly to Paradise, without any intermediate state. And, for that reason, in case any murders happen to be committed at such public seasons, there is no enquiry made after the delinquents; and those, therefore, who owe their neighbours a secret grudge, and want an opportunity to satiate their revenge, very seldom, if ever, fail of taking the advantage of these solemn processions, much after the same manner, as the natives of (*) Italy do their public carnivals.

From hence it is, that such as are wise and wary, and are under no indispensable obligation to attend the procession, keep close at home, for the most part, during the last days of the solemnity; but more especially those, who are known to be Turkish Mohammedans; for they are professed enemies to Hussein, and the friends of Omar, whom the Persians perfectly abhor. They bear not that implacable malice against any other nations, not even against the natives of (m) India, who are Heathens; for to these they say nothing to affront them.

On this public occasion, however, there is a prodigious concourse of people, not only of inhabitants of the city, but strangers whose curiosity leads them to become spectators. At this juncture indeed, it happened, there were no tumults or disorders arose; no casual transactions that created the least trouble or confusion, which was somewhat extraordinary and remarkable, if we consider the implacable hatred that subsists between the two opposite parties, who have no mercy on each other whenever it is their fortune to meet together.

On the nineteenth instant I set out with some friends to take a view of the Christian burial-ground where we tarried till break of day; and from thence went to his majesty's new-garden, which is very spacious, and encompassed with an earthen-wall. We there saw several fish-ponds which were nearly finished, and a curious nursery of

1704

A voluminous
caligraphical
notion.

1704

young trees, roses, and
ing with flowers, but the
the common sort.

From thence we went
one Mr. Said's count-
demand (as we have
interpreter to our com-
and entertained us in
manner, notwithstanding
fifty of us in number.
his garden, which were
candles, made a very b-
The next day we paid
our director's friends;
part from thence in de-
and return no more
leave of the principal M.
of the parish, and a
mean there who were nat-
We had near fifty of it
which took us up the
manner of
go where you will, i-
contests, and all n-
pleasing sweet-meats,
you in little pretty re-
elegantly painted, and
all kinds of flowers, of
in general have been
ing food. After that
and rose-water brought
they perfume the w-
taste especial care was
with a calson to s
bedrums, as they call
pleasant, hot liquors;
over, you are enterta-
fruits, and such other
son affords. As for v-
they bring you out the

A new gar-
den belong-
ing to the
king.

Oca

- (a) Pells, see p. 64.
- (b) Armeni, see p.
- (c) Julia, or Japhia,
- (d) Port (Oronani) p.
- (e) Mees, see p. 24.
- (f) Medina Taimbi

young

highly requisite, indeed, that
 tions should be taken; since
 entertain a firm notion, that
 should lose their lives on such
 tions, go directly to Paradise,
 y intermediate state. And, for
 in case any murders happen to
 ed at such public lectures, there
 is made after the delinquents;
 verfore, who owe their negl-
 et and gudge, and want an op-
 to satiate their revenge, very tel-
 er, full of taking the advantage
 e own processions, much after the
 er, as the natives of (f) India do
 e carnivals.

ence it is, that such as are wise
 and are under no indispensable
 to attend the procession, keep
 aw, for the most part, during
 s of the solemnity; but more
 those, who are known to be
 Mohammedans; for they are pro-
 ies to Hussein, and the friends
 whom the Persians perfectly
 very bear not that impious
 must any other nations, not even
 natives of (m) India, who are
 for to these they say nothing to

n.
 public occasion, however, there
 gious concourse of people, not
 habitants of the city, but strangers
 riously leads them to become
 At this juncture indeed, it hap-
 ere were no tumults or disorders
 cal transactions that created
 ble or confusion, which was
 extraordinary and remarkable, if
 er the implacable hatred that
 wren the two opposite parties,
 re no mercy on each other
 it is their fortune to meet to-

A very
 the nineteenth instant I set out with
 nds to take a view of the Christian
 und where we waited till break of
 from thence went to his majesty's
 en, which is very spacious, and
 ed with an earthen-wall. We
 several fish-ponds which were
 nished, and a curious nursery of
 young

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

young trees, roses, and parterres, abound-
 ing with flowers, but such only as were of
 the common sort.

From thence we went to Julpha, to
 one Mr. Sahid's country-seat. This gen-
 tleman (as we have hinted before) was
 interpreter to our company. He received
 and entertained us in the most friendly
 manner, notwithstanding there were near
 fifty of us in number. All the walks in
 his garden, which were illuminated with
 candles, made a very beautiful appearance.
 The next day we paid visits to several of
 our director's friends; for he was to de-
 part from thence in about a month's time,
 and return no more. There he took
 leave of the principal Armenian merchants,
 of the patriarch, and most of the gentle-
 men there who were natives of (n) Europe.
 We had near fifty of these visits to make,
 which took us up three whole days; for
 go where you will, you are treated with
 conferves, and all manner of the most
 pleasing sweet-meats, which are brought
 you in little pretty wooden boxes, very
 elegantly painted, and embellished with
 all kinds of flowers, of which the Persians
 in general have been at all times exceed-
 ingly fond. After that you have incense
 and rose-water brought you, with which
 they perfume the whole room. They
 take especial care moreover, to furnish you
 with a callion to smoke with, coffee,
 bedmus, as they call it, and divers other
 pleasant, hot liquors; and after dinner is
 over, you are entertained with plenty of
 fruits, and such other dainties as the sea-
 son affords. As for the Christians there,
 they bring you out their brandy, and other

The Persian
 manner of
 receiving
 their friends
 upon a visit.

strong liquors in the morning, and wine
 in plenty of various kinds in the after-
 noon. Infomuch that, one visit only
 must of necessity take up at least an
 hour.

Having paid all our visits in form, we
 returned to Ispahan, where we were in-
 formed, that an envoy, or ambassador from
 the Grand Visier of the Ottoman Port
 was arrived the day before, but, as it were
 incog, not having above half a dozen
 domestics in his retinue: that it was con-
 jectured, the principal part of his errand
 was to demand of his majesty, a free pas-
 sage for the march of some Turkish forces,
 which the Grand Signior was determined
 to send into (o) Georgia, where the inha-
 bitants, for several years then last past, had
 peremptorily refused to pay the customary
 subsidies, which the natives of that country
 are indispensably obliged to remit to the
 Port. The Grand Signior, has frequently
 sent a number of Turkish forces on that
 occasion; but they have met with no small
 obstructions from the Georgians, in some
 particular defiles and narrow passes, where
 they knew perfectly well that they should
 meet them. These the Turks distinguish
 by the name of Bassa-'tjoegs, that is to say,
 bare-heads; because they wear nothing to
 cover their heads but a small cap which is
 open at the crown, through which they
 thrust some tresses of their hair in order to
 keep it on as tight as may be. They di-
 stinguish by the same appellation likewise,
 all the country which they inhabit, that is
 to say, all the lands that are situate between
 Turkey and Gurgistan.

The arrival
 of a Turkish
 envoy.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- (a) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.
- (b) Armenia, see p. 298. n. g.
- (c) Julfa, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. x.
- (d) Port (Ottoman) see p. 196. n. g.
- (e) Mecca, see p. 242. n. o.
- (f) Medina Talmabi, east long. 40. 35. lat. roof

24. 30. a city of Arabia Deserta, situate 200
 miles north-west of Mecca, called the city of
 the Prophet. For here Mahomet was received,
 and protected by the inhabitants, when he was
 driven from Mecca; and here he was first in-
 vested with regal power; and here is a magni-
 ficent mosch, or temple, in which is Mahomet's
 tomb, surrounded by a silver grate, or palisade;
 but the story of his coffin being hung up to the

1704

roof by a loadstone is a vulgar error. On Mahomet's flight from Mecca to this city, the Mahometan Era commences, viz. the 16th of July A. D. 622.

- (g) Arabia Deserta, see p. 203. n. a.
 (h) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.
 (i) Holland, see p. 76. n. e.

- (k) Ispahan, or Spahawn, see p. 109. n. m.
 (l) Italy, see p. 210. n. m.
 (m) India (Proper) see p. 213. n. d.
 (n) Europe, see p. 127. n. dd.
 (e) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.

CHAP. XLIV.

A succinct Account of the Paintings in Persia. The Customs observed there, in regard to Births, Marriages, Deaths, and Burials. The current Coins of the Country. A vast Consumption of Sugar in the City of Ispahan only.

I Had some thoughts of amusing my readers in this chapter with a short view of the religion as by law established in (a) Persia; but upon mature consideration, as divers travellers have expatiated before me on that topic, I imagined the attempt would be needless, if not impertinent; since it could only be a repetition of what is already universally known. I shall content my self therefore with this one transient observation thereon; namely, that it bears a very near affinity to the religion professed all over (b) Turkey; with this remarkable exception, that the Turks look on all kinds of paintings as abominations; and the Persians, on the other hand, are passionately fond of them, and deem those, which are judiciously executed, very valuable furniture for their parlours, or halls; especially such as represent fine horses, hunting matches, all kinds of birds and beasts; or a great variety of the choicest flowers; and with these (as we have hinted before) they embellish the walls of almost every apartment they are posselt of.

Nay, they have professed painters among them; and there were two great masters of that art, in his majesty's service, whilst I was resident at (c) Ispahan. My curiosity led me to pay one of them a visit; who received me very courteously; and upon a

Persian
Painters.

critical review of his various performances, I found he was a greater proficient, than I thought he was. His operations, indeed, consisted chiefly of birds in disemper; that is to say, his colours were mixed with some glewy substances, only, and not with oil: however, they were elegantly neat.

It is true, he had very little knowledge of what we call lights and shades; but then the Persians in general have no idea at all of them; from whence it naturally follows, that their most accurate paintings are imperfect.

This gentleman, whilst I was with him, was very busy in copying, for the use of his majesty, a book of the most curious flowers, which had been printed in (d) Holland; and as to the colouring of them, I perceived that he was indebted to the judgment of an ecclesiastic, who had formerly been a practitioner in (e) Italy: and it must be allowed that no country can boast of finer colours than the Persians. I perceived, that he was possessed of a small quantity of lake, that had been brought from Holland. The Persians make ultramarine themselves; and it is doubtless, the finest blue that can possibly be purchased; for they have the stone in their own country, or at least they are

1704

plied with it, by the painter. There are some persons who make it their particular care to come with a particular stone, and to embellish it; and to embellish it, which are made in the whereon they draw a beetle, birds, and flowers, their ornaments, as the and then paint them names.

Persons of distinguished names have all their valuable by bound, and embellish in various dresses, and in fish and flowers of all kinds and each in the finest possibly be conceived. books, indeed, that are pictures, and are in the the houses of the Har which they are extremely as are immensely rich and apt to indulge themselves pleasure, without content of these intricate pictures I paid, not long before from Ispahan, to a gentleman at court, the were very heavy, and thing to recommend, obliquity, and their value in gold and silver, a colours.

Though the Persians are yet they are so naturally even their ministers of ple to purchase such a possessed of them, unless their hands as a bit favour.

A little before my there came an able and to court from (g) G European artist had resided at (h) Rome, where he had painted many pictures that could be compared with the works of the most

Their ignorance of lights and shades.

Their colouring is not perfectly true.

in, or Spalding, see p. 103, n. m.
see p. 210, n. m.

(Proper) see p. 212, n. d.

see p. 127, n. d.

in Asia, see p. 107, s. d.



V.

Persia. *The Customs of Persia, Death, and Burial, and the*
Preparation of Sugar in the

view of his various performances, he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

he had very little knowledge of the art of painting; but he was a greater proficient, than I was. His operations, indeed, consisted of birds in chamber, their colours were mixed with a substance, and, and not, however, they were elegantly

1704

plied with it, by the painters of (*f*) Armenia. There are some painters in Persia, who make it their principal employ to stain canes with a particular gum, which strikes the eye well, and has a very pretty effect; and to embellish their standishes, which are made in the form of boxes, whereon they draw a great variety of beasts, birds, and flowers; or else such other ornaments, as their fancy directs, and then paint them with the utmost neatness.

Persons of distinction there, likewise have all their valuable books very elegantly bound, and embellished with a great variety of figures; some of men and women in various dresses, others of birds, beasts, fish and flowers of all sorts in miniature; and each in the finest colours that can possibly be conceived. They have some books, indeed, that abound with immodest pictures, and are fit only to be viewed by the ladies of the Haram, or seraglio, of which they are extremely fond; for such as are immensely rich amongst them, are apt to indulge themselves in every lawless pleasure, without controul. I met with one of these lucious posture-books, in a visit I paid, not long before my departure from Ispahan, to a grandee, and a great favourite at court; the drawings, however, were very heavy, and artless, and had nothing to recommend them, but their obscenity, and their various embellishments in gold and silver, and the most lively colours.

Though the Persians are highly delighted with rich trifles of this immodest stamp; yet they are so naturally avaritious, that even their ministers of state, would scruple to purchase such a toy, and are seldom possessed of them, unless they get them into their hands as a bribe for some expected favour.

A little before my arrival at Ispahan, there came an able and experienced painter to court from (*g*) Germany. As this European artist had resided for several years at (*b*) Rome, where he had all the opportunities that could be desired for studying the works of the most celebrated Italian

Their books neatly bound, and accurately embellished

The Persians avaritious to excess.

The adventure of a German painter.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

309

1704

masters, he was employed to paint some curious history-piece, but what the subject in particular was, indeed, I cannot at present recollect. The picture, however, at last, was universally approved of, both by his majesty, and the connoisseurs at court, and exposed accordingly to public view in the palace, as a finished piece. But neither his majesty, nor any one of the admirers of this most excellent performance, ever thought of the operator, or made him the compliment of the least trifle for the immense pains he took in the completion of it. And, indeed, that artist, be his profession what it will, or the place of his nativity where it will, that travels into Persia, with a view of raising his fortune by his skill in any particular science whatsoever, will find his expectations most shamefully balked, and be soon convinced to his cost, that he had entertained a too favourable opinion of the natives of the country.

The sciences, in short, are there either egregiously neglected, or absolutely unknown; and there are but very few instances to be produced, where the Persian monarchs have had either any taste for them, themselves, or the least generosity or inclination to encourage those that have. Generosity, in a word, is an absolute stranger in Persia.

In the year 1652, we had a glaring instance of this royal weakness, in respect to one Mr. Cuneus, who was a counsellor in ordinary, in the service of the Dutch East-India Company, who sent him to the Persian court in order to negotiate an affair there of the last importance. Amongst other presents, which they sent by him to the then Persian king; there was one very valuable picture, in which were represented a great number of warriors, or Heroes, all properly equipped, on horse-back. As the Persians are extravagantly fond of fine horses, the company naturally imagined, that this picture of theirs would meet with a very favourable reception at court; but his majesty, instead of accepting it as a rich and valuable present, asked, with coldness and indifference, what was the purchase of it. Mr. Cuneus, the agent,

4 K

ima-

The adventure of an agent from the Dutch East India company.

1704 imagining it would be improper to sat a price upon it equal to its intrinsic value, appraised it (if we may be allowed the expression) far beneath its worth; whereupon his majesty determined to have it, and gave him his own price.

To these two instances several others of the like kind might with ease be produced; but we shall reserve them to another opportunity, and at present shall treat of their customs, with respect to their births, marriages, deaths and burials.

Customs at births. As soon as a child (whether male or female) is about four days old, they send for one of their ecclesiastics, to whom the parents declare the name they have determined to give him; and then the priest, with abundance of solemnity, blows it three times successively into the infant's ear; and then, after the performance, of a ceremony or two more, the solemnity is over, and the parents devote the remainder of the day to innocent mirth, and the entertainment of their friends on the joyful occasion.

The circumstance of their children.

It is not customary amongst the Persians to circumcise their children till they are about seven or eight years of age; and sometimes older, according to the humour or caprice of the parents, and never on the eighth day, as is the general custom amongst the Jews. After the operation, thus long deferred, they entertain their friends in the most elegant manner, in proportion to their substance; and testify all the outward joy imaginable on so happy an occasion of having a child of theirs admitted a member of their Moslems, that is to say, of their true believers, according to the law of their great prophet Moham-med, as it stands recorded in their Koran, or as it is otherwise called their Al-Koran.

The customs observed at their weddings.

As to the customs observed at their weddings; when a man is inclined to take a wife, he never makes his applications to his mistress, the object of his wishes, but to her parents, or relations: and when the terms are settled and adjusted, they send for one of their ecclesiastics; who asks the intended bridegroom, whether he will take

the woman to be his wife? To which, when he has answered in the affirmative, he then turns to the intended bride, and proposes the same question to her; and when she has answered yes, as the former had; the parson, or ecclesiastic, immediately sits down, and draws up the marriage-articles himself; for the Persians have no notary-publics; by virtue of which settlement, the bridegroom assigns over a certain sum of money to proper trustees for the use of his wife, who, by this marriage-contract, when duly signed by her husband, stands forever legally possessed of this dower; even tho' her husband should, in process of time, think proper to leave her; an indulgence that the custom of the country on occasion admits of: and in case of his decease, his heirs are indispensably obliged to pay the sum agreed on, together with one eighth of his personal estate. moreover, in case the woman should die first, and leave any issue behind her, the husband, provided he thinks proper to marry again, and has issue by that second venter, is obliged to give the first wife's children their mother's dower, and an equal proportion of his own substance, which is to be divided amongst them all, share and share alike.

When a Christian, or any other person, who is not of the Persian persuasion, becomes a proselyte, and embraces the articles of their faith, he inherits not only all the fortune which his father stood possessed of, but that of all his relations too, exclusive of all others, who have not proved apostates like himself. And if it should happen, that two Christians should renounce their own religion, and embrace the Persian faith, at one and the same time, the next heir of the two enjoys alone the fortune of his Christian relations who die unconverted.

The Persians, by their law, may take as many concubines as they please, or at least, as many as they can keep; and whenever they think proper to dismiss any one of them, the female thus discharged, must have no commerce (according to their law) with any other man, till after the expiration of forty days; for fear she should

1704

prove with child. As children of such concubines are legally entitled to a share of the father's estate, the other children.

When the parents of a woman, who is to be married, have given her a portion as they think proper, and the day is fixed, by a writing drawn up by a witness, to be presented to any ecclesiastic, to be read, and then to be signed by the parties, and thereupon to be read to any share with them in what is to be done.

When the portion is given, all her death goods, all her dress, and such of her other effects as she is to have, are put upon a table, and covered by proper persons, who carry them to the bride's chamber. This is done, a large quantity of candles being frequently enough, he is to be seen, which is more or less plentiful, according to the condition of the parties. The ceremony is accompanied by the hands more or less, however, is not permitted to enter the room till after the night is over, and on the proper apartment in the house pitched upon, and named, as the procession when the night is over, enter this apartment, the woman follows in. Their grandees sit down with wives, and daughters, waited on by their slaves, and their wives, the wife of Khans, were near enough to that of their conduct. At the table by themselves, is others customarily at

to be his wife? To which, answered in the affirmative, is to the intended bride, and same question to her; and is answered yes, as the former action, or ecclesiastical, immediately, and draws up the marriage himself, for the Persians by public; by virtue of which the bridegroom assigns over a of money to proper trustees of his wife, who, by this marriage, when duly signed by her hands forever legally possess of even tho' her husband should, if time, think proper to leave the evidence that the custom of the nation admits of; and in case his heirs are independently by the law agreed on, to the eighth of his personal estate, in case the woman should die leave any issue behind her, she provided he thinks proper to and his issue by that second wedded to give the said wife's mother's dower, and an portion of his own inheritance, be divided amongst them all, are alike.

Christian, or any other person, of the Persian persuasion, to dissolve, and embraces the wife, he inherits not only all which his father stood possessed of at that of all his relations, or of all others, who have not professed like himself. And if it then, that two Christians should their own religion, and embrace faith, at one and the same next heir of the two enjoys alone of his Christian relations who converted.

The Persians, by their law, may take concubines, by their pleasure, or at concubines as they please, and when as they can keep, and when they think proper to dismiss any one the female thus discharged, must be remarried (according to their law) till after the expiration of forty days; for fear she should prove

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1704

prove with child. As for the rest, all the children of such concubines are looked upon as legitimate issue, and by consequence, are legally entitled to a proportionate share of the father's substance with the other children.

The dower of their maidens.

When the parents of a maiden give her away in marriage, they bestow on her such a portion as they think most proper and convenient; and the daughter engages herself, by a writing drawn up for that particular purpose, to lay no claim from thenceforward to any effects that they shall happen to leave behind them, whereof she acknowledges she has received her part or share; and thereby disclaims all right or title to any share with her brothers or sisters in what is to be their sole property hereafter.

When this portion is paid to the bridegroom, all her cloaths in general, and as much of her other effects as conveniently may be, are put upon horses, and the remainder is conveyed from her parents house by proper persons employed for that purpose; who carry along with them, likewise, a large quantity of conserves, and other dainties. This ceremony, may, with propriety enough, be termed a procession, which is more or less pompous and magnificent, according to the rank and distinction of the parties concerned; and is always accompanied by a band of music, be the hands more or less. This ceremony however, is not performed till some few days after the nuptials have been consummated; and, on this joyful occasion, a proper apartment in the husband's house is first pitched upon, and elegantly illuminated, as the procession is always made when the night is far spent. The men enter this apartment first, and the women follow them in due form.

Their grandees likewise provide themselves with wives, who are for the most part, waited on by the husband's concubines; and these wives are honoured with the title of Khanas, which bears a very near affinity to that of Khan, assumed by their comforts. At their meals, they sit at table by themselves, and are waited on as others customarily are, by their husband's

311

1704

concubines.

The children of both, however, are equally legitimate, and are equal partakers in their father's fortune; and whenever it happens that one of these concubines is safely delivered of a child, whether male or female, it is very observable, that the lawful wife is over-joyed on that happy occasion, in consideration that her comfort's honour is greatly advanced by that production, who, when he has an inclination to favour her with his company, in the first place, sends one of his eunuchs to her apartment, for each has a separate one, with express orders for her to bathe and purify herself, which orders she very readily and punctually obeys, and then dresses herself to the best advantage for the reception of her lord. These concubines eat in common together; but no other company is admitted to join them.

The king takes to himself as many wives as he thinks proper; and makes his choice of them, for the most part, out of the maidens who are natives either of Georgia or (k) Armenia, or such other Christian maidens as he approves of most. There is a perfect equality between all these royal comforts; and the first son that is born of either of them is immediate heir to the crown, without the least regard to the happy lady who is his mother: nor does this important circumstance give her the least preeminence over the other comforts.

Whenever this prince takes the least disgust to any one of his royal comforts, and it is his will and pleasure to turn her out of the seraglio; in case she has had no child by him, he marries her to whomsoever he sees convenient, and frequently to some private person of no rank or quality at all.

I shall now proceed to the customs which are observed by the Persians at their respective deaths, and the days of their interment.

In about three or four hours after the decease, either of a man or woman, a Mola, as they call their ecclesiastics, is sent for, who runs through a certain number of prayers, and performs some other offices of his

The funerals of the Persians.

1704

re, at the same time, that the
its left-side, with the head
the east and the feet to the
th the face always turned to-
epolchre, or tomb of their
et Mohammed. After these
they erect a vault of earth, or
body, and fill up the grave,
place a head-stone, or erect
and very often a dome over
deceased was a person of high
distinction.

his majesty himself will
remains with a royal imperial-
is afterwards looked upon as
from thenceforth approached
their veneration. Some of
if monuments are erected in
temple, with five or six doors
which are all gilded, and have
effect.

Perfian money, the greatest
its current silver coin, is that
call their *Hussien-deen*,
a piece of the value of ten
that is to say, of eight-pence,
mooey. They have likewise a
by them *Deezies* or a piece
only of five of their Mamo-
er called *Penzazje*, of half the
if the former; they have still
es, called their *Abbitres*, the
of is no more than of two Ma-
id others again of one, where-
two sorts, which were coined
it *majesty's predecessors*; and
Mamoedjies-laviesé, there
of this last-mentioned coin
country, because there are no
who think it worth their while
y, or send it into foreign parts.
in short, over all his majesty's
for foreign commodities as well
n manufactures, nor is any o-
made use of. They have,
coin, which they call their
is one *mooey* or half part only
je. His majesty causes but
any, to be coined of the two
yone-mentioned, and then only
ce of the poor, and that only
at

at some certain times of the year. These
last are likewise so very scarce, that they
are seldom to be seen any where, but in
the hands of the curious; because there is
some trivial difference in their value and
weight from the Mamoedjies, and the
Zaejies, which are coined at present. The
true reason whereof is this; namely, that
these three last coins were reduced to a just
standard in the years 1684 and 1685.
The officers of the mint, however, have
diminished the value of them, out of their
insatiable thirst after riches, to which the
indolence and neglect of the government
contributed not a little. Nor had the
grievance been ever remedied at all, if the
people, who murmured at it, had not
made their complaints to the ministers at
court, who, in order to make them easy,
and prevent any public tumults, broke
several of those officers, and substituted o-
thers in their room, who rectified what
had been done amiss by their predecessors;
nor can this step be wondered at, since
they were discharged, without any
punishment annexed, for their misdeamea-
nors. These coins are not current at all
in the way of trade, in which nothing will
pass but their Mamoedjies-havaise, a coin
that was stamp'd under the antient kings.
As this is the case, the merchants look out
for them as diligently as possible, and will
sometimes give one, two, or three; nay
sometimes even six per cent. for them
beyond their intrinsic value; inasmuch
that, they carry on a prodigious trade with
this coin, which is hoarded up by the
tradesmen, as soon as ever it appears in pub-
lic, who send it away directly to (1) Surat,
where they find it turns to a much

1704

better account than if they purchased
ducats.

The Persians have likewise two sorts
of copper coin, the largest whereof, and
that which is one tenth part of a Ma-
moedje is round; the smaller, which is
long, is worth no more than the twenty
fifth part of a Mamoedje.

There is but very little gold coin, if
any, to be met with throughout all
Persia. I have seen, however, some
ducats there, but then they are very scarce
and very light.

All the wares or commodities that are
brought from (m) Gomron, or Gombron,
and the money sent thither by bills of
exchange, are negotiated by Banians, or
Indian brokers, and the money is car-
ried to the (n) East-Indies all in ducats.

The king of Persia is, by contract, ob-
liged to deliver every year to our Dutch
East-India company, one hundred bales of
silks; each bale to contain four hundred
and eight pounds, Dutch weight; a-
mounting in the whole to four thousand
eight hundred weight.

And the company, by way of return,
send no less than twelve hundred chests of
sugar to Ispahan; each chest containing
one hundred and fifty pounds weight,
in the whole eighteen hundred thou-
sand pounds weight; all which is con-
sumed in that last-mentioned city only.

As soon as the over-seer and other infe-
rior officers have received the aforesaid
silks, they sort it, and make it up in lesser
bales, which they send to Gomron be-
fore-mentioned upon horses; and from
thence ship it off to (o) Batavia.

A great
trade car-
ried on be-
tween the
king of Per-
sia and the
Dutch East-
India com-
pany.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- (a) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.
(b) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.
(c) Ispahan, see p. 109. n. m.
(d) Holland, see p. 76. n. c.
(e) Italy, see p. 210. n. m.
(f) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.
(g) Germany, see p. 204. n. g.
(h) Rome, see p. 108. n. g.
(i) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.
(k) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

4 L.

(1) Su-

1704

(1) Surat, east long. 72. 20. lat. 21. 30. a city, and port town of the hither India, in Asia, in the province of Guzurat, or Cambaya, situate on the river Tapte, ten miles east of the Indian Sea, 160 miles north of Bombay, and as many south of Cambaya City, being defended only by a slight wall, and some antique forts, and is about three miles in circumference, but very populous, and vastly rich. The English, French and Dutch have their factors here, and trade very largely: but the Moors, Armenians, Banians, Arabs, and Jews, are much greater merchants. The English president lives in the state of a prince; has his coaches, palanquins, and led-horses, richly equipped; and when he goes abroad has his guards, and a numerous retinue; the Europeans finding it necessary for their officers and servants to make a grand appearance among the eastern people. The president is usually governor of Bombay, and of all the English settlements upon the western coasts of India, and has almost as much respect paid him as the governor of Surat.

The Mogul gives his trading subjects all imaginable encouragement, as well as those foreign merchants who resort to his ports, tho' he be an absolute prince; but the Dutch are best used, and pay the least customs, for, if his officers demand more than they think fit to pay, they have a fleet of men of war in India, with which

1704

they block up his ports, and compel the government to submit to their terms.

(m) Gornon, or Gornbron, see p. 262. n. 22.

(n) India (proper) see p. 213. n. d.

(o) Batavia, east longitude 106. south latitude 6. the capital of all the Dutch colonies and settlements in India, and an excellent harbour, situate on the north-east part of the island of Java, south-east of the island of Sumatra, and south west of Borneo. It is a most beautiful city, built with white stone, and canals, planted with ever-greens, run through their principal streets. The inhabitants are a mixture of many nations, whom the Dutch have removed from other oriental islands, and a large colony of the Chinese, many thousands of whom were lately massacred, and their wealth seized by the Dutch, who are so powerful both in ships of war and land forces at Batavia, that they command all the Indian Seas, and put what terms they please upon the powers of Asia, whose countries lie in those seas, and on the European merchants that traffic thither, which is evident from their monopolizing all the fine spices in the east.

C H A P. XLV.

A short Description of some of the most remarkable Birds in (a) Persia; as also of some of its various Productions, namely, its Trees, Fruits, Plants, and Flowers; with the current Price of its Provisions, of which there is Plenty; concluding with a succinct Account of a particular Drug there, or Kind of Gum, distinguished by the name of Mummy, which is very valuable, and unknown to many even of the Natives themselves.

HAVING expatiated as far as I thought proper on the various customs peculiar to this country in the preceding chapter; I shall proceed in this to entertain the reader with a succinct account of its various productions; and accordingly, I shall begin with a description of those particular birds of which I have given distinct representations in plate

Persian
birds.

Pl. 91.

(No 91) hereto annexed. That which is distinguished by the capital (A) is by the natives called the angert.

tion before in the course of my travels: as I painted this, however, from the life, I found upon examination, a material difference in this from those before treated of; for this had a black collar about the neck of

1704

of it, and its wings any of the species I ever

These birds which a capital (B) are turtle-doves, have a black in

former, have a black in their necks, and for their necks, Engert by the natives, Engert is to say, turtle-doves about their necks, distinguished by the letter simple Engert; and is distinguished by the letter is to say, the Engert which we have distinguished (E) are called by the Engert, which seldom are till the corn begins they build their nests in the most secret places, and to some more countries natural history. C are no less than five

for. In the Plate (No. the bird has I have a capital (A) is a species has streaks both of its neck: this bird resides in the mountains.

That distinguished by the capital (A) is a species called an Alla-farger, turtle. The mark that is spotted with called there Mah-gi-tion is this; because it lies from the banks, as that called quently does. The two other Mah-gi-tion small birds, and are beak; the feathers an orange colour, because they are small with, but on fact water side. The distinguished by the letter green, but its neck (F) shows a bird that intermix with white yellow. It is called is to say, the wood

**Their turtle
dove.**

Pl. 93,
Their Lack-
er-kara.

Pl. 92.

Pl. 94.

Pl. 95.

Their trees.

The fence-
tree.

met

ference only, that the leaves somewhat shorter, and are added to this, that they are their roundness. I have ditte fruit of this tree by the let-ter resembles, in some measure, cat, and is full of small ex-As to the taste of it, it is as rice. The cooks there make their sauces; and when it is frequently pounded to powder, with rock-meat. Their Apo-ecwies make use of it, and rose-water, in order to make and gums; for it is looked excellent preservative against

174

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

The leaves

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

317

1704

1704

Those that part with their stones readily are called Sheft-aloe; the others are distinguished by the name of Hoe-loe; some of these are, covered with a blue like plumbs; others again are much like apricots; but the small ones are for the most part of a yellowish hue.

The apricots.

They have ten or a dozen sorts of their apricots; each of which has a name peculiar to itself; but in general they are called Zarda-loe.

As to cherries, this country does not abound with them; they have some few, however, which are like those in (*f*) Spain; and the rest like black morellas; the former are distinguished by the name of Gielas; and the latter are called the Aloe-baloe.

Their figs.

As to their grapes, they have ten or a dozen sorts of them; which are called, in general, their Angoer; notwithstanding each sort has a name peculiar to itself.

Their cherries.

Their grapes.

As to their colours, some sorts are blue, others white; and as to their form or shape, some are long and others round. All of them, however, are very large. Some again are very luscious, and have stones in them and others no stone at all. Some sorts have bunches the grapes whereof are of various sizes; some large and some small, quite different from any I ever met with in my travels before. Great quantities of these are dried annually, and then converted into comfits; thus prepared they close them up in little earthen pots, and send them to Batavia and the parts adjacent.

The quinces and pears.

The method they observe in the potting them is this; in the first place they are very curious in their choice of the finest fruit; then they put them in a neat stone-jar, and cover them with rose leaves; after that, they cover the mouth of the pot with substantial paper, or thin leather, in so close a manner, that no air can gain admission; when they have proceeded thus far, they let them stand untouched for some days; after which they break the neck of the jar, or vessel, and take away the rose-leaves; and separate the grapes; which when sufficiently dry, they put them into a fresh jar, and then send them to such markets either far or near as they see most convenient. The rose-leaves are spread over them with no other view than to give them an agreeable flavour: but in the removal of them particular care is always taken that none are left behind, for fear they should in time have a bad effect on

The plumbs.

the

The quinces.

They have quince-trees, moreover, of three different sorts, the fruit whereof is exceedingly agreeable, and eaten, as apples or pears. These the natives call their De-bée. They are for the most part very large, and as proper for preserving, as to be eaten directly from the tree. They have likewise walnuts and small nuts in abundance.

The pome-granates.

They have plenty likewise of pome-granate-trees, the fruit whereof is very delicious and refreshing. Some of these trees, however, bear no fruit at all, and produce a large red flower only, not much unlike a poppy. Some of these trees have their leaves streaked with white, and make a beautiful appearance; others again are per-

1704

the fruit. At the same time that they send these their potted grapes away to foreign parts, they export their almonds and pistachio-nuts to the (i) Indies, from whence they receive sweet-meats and other dainties in exchange.

The plants and roots.

There is as great a profusion of plants and roots in Persia, as there is of their fruits.

The hand-melons.

They have no less than five and twenty different sorts of melons; they are called, indeed, Garbie-sa, in general, notwithstanding each has a name peculiar to itself. They are all, however, excellent in their kind. Some are so large, as to weigh twenty pounds apiece; which all the year round are kept up, in such cool and close places, but more especially in the summer-time, as that the rays of the sun can have no influence over them. And for that purpose they take care to have a sufficient quantity of snow by them, which they have the art of condensing into ice for the refreshment of their wines. These large melons are called Garbie-sai-belgence. The first melons that make their appearance are for the most part perfectly white; and though more wholesome than the rest yet they are but little regarded as they are unpalatable and insipid.

The water-melons.

They have plenty, moreover, of water-melons. There are no less than four or five sorts of these; some white and others red; the name by which they are distinguished is the Hindoon.

Their citrus.

They abound, likewise, with what they call their small citrus; some whereof are streaked with green and black, and strike the eye agreeably enough; others again are marbled with a variety of colours; and are much of the size of a china orange. The reader will find that I have given him in the Plate (100) hereto annexed, an exact representation of this last fruit; together with some sorts of their peaches; and another fruit in particular, which they call Chamanna; that is to say, of the form of a woman's breast; and as to its colour of a lively red. I have preferred the stone or seed of this fruit, and a bunch of those particular grapes, which I before hinted

were uncommon; and not all on a size, though on one and the same stalk.

1704

The various productions of their kitchen garden.

Persia produces likewise, in great plenty, all sorts of carrots, beet-roots, and parsnips, radishes, horse-radish, turnips, topinambers, muskrooms, and colly-flowers of an extraordinary bulk; some whereof will weigh between twelve and fourteen pounds apiece; they have favoys also and asparagus, artichokes, celery, leeks, onions, shallots, water-creases, dragon-wort, parley, chervil, mint, coriander, anniseed, fennel, purslane, marjoram, sage, borage, cabbage-lettice, and succory; as also roman lettice, which has a long leaf, and is eaten by the Persians, as apples, in the hand; this root in particular is exceedingly sweet, and perfectly agreeable to the taste; neither is there the least want either of rue or spinage.

I shall now proceed to a succinct account of their flowers. This country produces tulips and carnations in abundance; but then they are not to be boasted of for their beauty. The Persians have likewise their lillies, their tube-roses, the narcissus, and several sorts of jonquils, their hyacinth, the marvel of (k) Peru, the mallow, the sun-flower, the musk-flower, violets and marigolds; most of which, as their own are but very indifferent, are brought to Persia, from (l) Europe. They have moreover, the flowers of saffron, of all sorts; tho' the finest come from (m) Masanderan. notwithstanding both white and red roses are very common there; yet they make large quantities of rose water, which are sent away to India, and other foreign parts. Notwithstanding such exportation their home-consumption of it is very considerable; for the Persians are great admirers of perfumes; and never fail to sprinkle their guests, at any public entertainment with this sweet-scented innocent liquors, as it leaves no stain behind it.

They have also two sorts of jessamine. The best bears a near resemblance to the same flower in (n) Italy with respect to form; but then there is a wide difference in point of smell. The other is more common,

mon, and runs up for height; but it seems to me with more affection Nothing can strike the greedy manner.

Besides all that has named, Persia abounds with fowls, and particularly of poultry both variety of poultry both

There you may purchase six-pence, a pullet for partridge for a shilling. some are not much bigger than a pigeon. A wild one bought for about six pence, and other 1 Their capons are excellent and indeed few purchase have an intention to make to any much respected

They have snipes a wife in plenty; leveret teal, cranes, wood-pigeons, quail, and partridge of all red. These taken either by the hawk

Though the Persians get every kind of deer enough. You may buy about three half-pence Persians of any fiddlers all that is killed is sold and sold there am The price of mutton much the same, in the as the winter approach In this country there are wolves and foxes; but small.

Their bread, and part, is sold for about pound, and their barley may be purchased at is commonly about The Persians, as the their horses with barley wheat, however, in does before it is ripe sprinkled it over with it about the streets as commodity.

1704

mon, and runs up some trees to a great height; but it seems to embrace the fenatree with more affection than any other. Nothing can strike the eye in a more agreeable manner.

Provisions
in plenty.

Besides all that has been hitherto mentioned, Persia abounds with all the necessaries of life, and particularly with a great variety of poultry both wild and tame. There you may purchase a fine fat hen for six-pence, a pullet for four-pence, and a partridge for a shilling. Of these indeed, some are not much bigger than a quail, or a pigeon. A wild duck there may be bought for about seven-pence or eight-pence, and other fowl in proportion. Their capons are excessively fat, and scarce; and indeed few purchase them, unless they have an intention to make presents of them to any much respected friend.

They have snipes and woodcocks likewise in plenty; several sorts of wild ducks, teal, cranes, wood-pigeons, turtles, larks, thrushes, and partridges, the heads whereof are all red. These last are only to be taken either by the hawk, or to be shot flying.

Though the Persians abound in cattle yet every kind of deer is scarce and costly enough. You may buy good beef for about three half-pence a pound; but as few Persians of any substance will eat it, almost all that is killed is carried to (o) Julpha, and sold there amongst the Christians. The price of mutton and goats flesh is much the same, in the summer season; but as the winter approaches it grows dearer. In this country there are abundance of wolves and foxes; but then they are very small.

Their bread, and wheat, for the most part, is sold for about three farthings a pound, and their barley, if not winnowed, may be purchased cheaper. Rice, indeed, is commonly about two pence a pound. The Persians, as they have no oats, feed their horses with barley; they have Spanish wheat, however, in plenty, which they dress before it is ripe; and after they have sprinkled it over with salt water, they cry it about the streets as common as any other commodity.

3

1704

The butter, which they make use of in their sauces, &c. is generally sold after the rate of a florin for two pounds; but their fresh butter, indeed, which is exceedingly good, will bear a better price.

Their oil.

The oil, which is used there generally for the same purposes, is made of the seed of what they call the Kousjae, and bears a near resemblance to our european olive oil; but the smell of it, indeed, is much stronger. The price is usually about five farthings a pound. They have another sort, however, extracted from the seed which they call the Kousjit, which is, doubtless, much better; but then 'tis double the price.

Maize-feed, which by the East-Indians is called Kajang, is much in vogue, and frequently made use of in their sauces; Persia produces, moreover, great plenty of red and white beans; but then they are small, and bear some resemblance to those in Turkey, as also of white and grey peas, small black beans with which they feed their horses, and green peas of the growth of Europe.

Wood in this country is very scarce and very dear. You cannot purchase twelve pounds of it only, under four-pence or five-pence; and coals in proportion bear the same heavy price.

Their firing
is scarce and
dear.

For which reason, the poorer sort of the inhabitants make use of the dung of their camels, horses, cows, &c. when well dried, for their firing, instead of wood, or coals: nay the Armenian merchants themselves at Julpha make use of the same expedient; for otherwise their firing would be more expensive than their victuals. As to their turf, indeed, or camels dung, it is reasonable enough; for they can have two thousand weight of it for about thirty-pence. This camel's dung is chiefly made use of for heating their ovens, in which they bake most of their meat in this country, which is attended with very little trouble and but a small expence. The general use that is made of this camel's dung, and all other turf of the like nature, contributes not a little to the cleanliness of their high-ways, or common-roads, which are sure to be cleaned from all such kind

Make use of
camel dung
&c. instead
of coals or
wood.

1704

of filth not only for the purpose of firing as above-mentioned, but for the cultivation likewise of their lands. Nay some of the poorer sort will apply human ordure to the same use.

Their root
called rug-
nas.

They have a particular root, called rugnas, which I had almost forgot to mention. This is the same which the Indians call Solyman-doffyn, and this they find in the province of Shirwan, and in the parts adjacent to the city of (*p*) Tauris, or Tabris.

They carry on a great trade to the Indies with this single commodity, where one year with another, they send no less than three hundred packs of it, each pack containing one hundred and fifty pounds weight and upwards. Twelve pounds of it, bare weight, which they call the Man-sha, is for the most part, worth twelve Mamoejies, which is equivalent to five florins or two rixdollars.

Their or-
piment.

They send likewise, to the Indies from Tauris before-mentioned, and from (*q*) Casbin, or Calwin, one year with another, seven or eight hundred hampers of what they call Zernig, that is to say orpiment, or auripigmentum. Each of these hampers contain about one hundred and fifty pounds weight, or better; and each pound, according to its degree of goodness, is worth from three quarters of a crown to three half crowns. This orpiment is much used by the Persian painters; but it is appropriated, however, to divers other purposes. They send great quantities of it, likewise, if I am not mistaken, into Turkey.

Moreover, this country produces a very precious drug, to which some of the Persians themselves are perfect strangers. It is a sort of gum, which they call mummy, and find it in some certain ruins and grotts near the city of Laer, or Lahor. It is soft, and as black as pitch; but has a much more agreeable smell, and drops from the rocks. That which affords the best is locked and sealed up: and no one except the governor of the city himself, and some few of the grandees are permitted to go in, and collect a part of it for the king's use, And as all of them together do not collect above eight or ten ounces of it throughout

the year, it must of course be a very scarce and valuable commodity.

This gum is a sovereign specific where any bone happens to be broken; and such is its secret virtue, as I have been assured by adepts in medicine, that though a man's bones should be ever so unfortunately bruised or even broken, it will give the patient relief in the compass only of four and twenty hours. For this purpose they melt a little pile of this gum, about the bigness of a pea in a spoon, and mix it up with butter. This the patient is ordered to take inwardly, in the first place, and then to apply the same quantity, or rather more to the part affected, or in proportion, according as the case requires: and for a broken leg, they use splints, and then bind it tight about with a linnen roller.

The discovery of this very valuable medicine is ascribed to a sportsman, who had broken the leg of a stag, which notwithstanding made its escape. This sportsman, as the story is related, returning to the chace the very next day, shot, as he imagined, at another stag, but was much surprised, when he found it was the identical creature whose leg he had broken the day before; and more so, when he perceived that the wound was almost cured.

This report being industriously spread abroad, the suddenness of the cure was at once ascribed to the virtue of this mummy, as the affair was transacted near the spot where this healing elixir drops. Many experiments on other wounds was made afterwards with this gum, and had always the desired effect, which was sufficient doubtless to establish its reputation.

The Persians find another sort of this gum in the province of Lorestan, which answers the same happy end, indeed, but then its virtue is not so conspicuous, nor is the wound so suddenly healed. The difference between these two sort of gums is known immediately by putting a small quantity of each on a red hot coal: the smoke of the former has a very pleasant smell, whereas that of the latter favours greatly of pitch: the most convincing proof, however, is procured by breaking the leg of a fowl, and then by making an

1704

immediate application. This is easily
bone directed. This is easily
quently been made. In
mummy, or gum, is with
property of his mummy
produce of it is to w
easy to be procured,
purchased.

Thole, however, into
previous commodity is en

Orcas

(d) Pella, see p. 64.

(e) Turky, see p. 203.

(f) Cyprus, (the island)

(g) Maran, or Spahin

(h) Holland, see p. 7.

(i) Spain, see p. 283.

(j) France, see p. 214.

(k) Barania, see p. 314.

(l) India, (proper) see

(k) Pers, formerly a part
a province of Spain in so
between Italy and Egypt
long, and between the ex
degrees of south lat. bet
miles in length, from nor
two hundred to five hundred
Popayan on the north, to
Andes, or Cordillera, w
the country of the Amaz
the falls by Chilly, and La
and by the Pacific Ocean
capital city now is L
The land next the sea is
mountains, beyond which
barney, are still higher,
tides, are the highest in
The land near the sea is
barney, except from
they have the streams from
beyond, also, are generally
the hills are very extensive,
ing almost all variety of

fruit of course be a very scarce commodity.

is a foreign specific where it is to be broken; and such virtue, as I have been assured medicine, that though a man's blood be ever so unwholesome when broken, it will give the patient the compass only of four and

For this purpose they melt this gum, about the bigness of a spoon, and mix it up with is the patient is ordered to take the first place, and then to apply quantity, or rather more to be added, or in proportion, according to the patient's condition, and for a broken splint, and then bind it right in a roller.

any of this very valuable medicine to a sportsman, who had a leg of a stag, which notwithstanding its escape. This sportsman, it is related, returning to the city next day, shot, as he imagined, a stag, but was much surprised to find it was the identical one he had broken the day before, when he perceived it was almost cured.

It being indolently spread a suddenness of the cure was at first attributed to the virtue of this mummy; was translated near the spot where the stag was made a wound, and had always this gum, which was sufficient to heal it, which was sufficient to heal it.

It is a very valuable medicine, and is found another sort of this province of Lorestan, which is a very happy end, indeed, but it is not so conspicuous, nor is it so suddenly healed. The difference between these two sorts of gums is immediately by putting a small piece of red hot coal: the former has a very pleasant taste that of the latter favours which: the most convincing proof, is procured by breaking an egg, and then by making an

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

321

1704

immediate application of the gum above directed. This experiment has frequently been made. In a word, as this mummy, or gum, is wholly and solely the property of his majesty, and as the produce of it is so very small, it is not easy to be procured, much less to be purchased.

Those, however, into whose hands this precious commodity is entrusted, do some-

times send a small quantity of it privately to a prime-minister, or so; by way of present.

That of Lorestan may with less difficulty be procured; as there are larger quantities of it in that province; and I flatter myself, if I am not greatly deceived, that I have some of the former as well as the latter.

1704

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Persia, see p. 64. n. e.

(b) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

(c) Cyprus, (the island of) see p. 109. n. l.

(d) Ispahan, or Spahawn, see p. 109. n. m.

(e) Holland, see p. 76. n. e.

(f) Spain, see p. 283. n. p.

(g) France, see p. 214. n. m.

(h) Batavia, see p. 314. n. o.

(i) India, (proper) see p. 213. n. d.

(k) Peru, formerly a powerful empire, now a province of Spain in south America, is situate between sixty and eighty one degrees of west long. and between the equator and twenty five degrees of south lat. being near two thousand miles in length, from north to south, and from two hundred to five hundred broad; bounded by Popayan on the north, by the mountains of Andes, or Cordilleras, which separate it from the country of the Amazons and Paraguay, on the east; by Chili, and LaPlacenta on the south; and by the Pacific Ocean on the west. The capital city now is Lima, formerly Culco. The land next the sea is high; the sierras, or mountains, beyond which, run parallel to the former, are still higher, and the Andes, beyond these, are the highest mountains in the world. The land near the sea is, for the most part, a barren desert, except some valleys, into which they turn the streams from the hills; the hills beyond, also, are generally barren; but between the hills are very extensive, fruitful valleys, yielding almost all manner of grain and fruits; and

the weather temperate. The mountains of the Andes are cold, being covered with snow the greatest part of the year.

The sea, which borders on Peru, is called the South Sea, but more properly the Pacific Ocean, from the constant serene weather on this coast from four degrees south lat. to twenty five. Nor is there ever any rain on this coast, or the sea near it, unless within four or five degrees of the line, where they have always rain, when the sun is vertical, as in other parts of the globe near the line: on the sierras, or hills, distant from the sea-side, the rains fall when the sun is vertical also; and on the cordilleros, or high mountains, farthest from the sea, it rains or snows, two thirds of the year. Their vintage is in the fair season, and their vines thrive best in those valleys near the sea, where there is little or no rain, and which are watered by rivulets that fall from the hills, and are collected by the husbandman, and turned into his fields and gardens. Near the equator there grow cedars, cotton-trees, cocots, sugar-canes, palms, and a great deal of good timber; but very few forest-trees in any other part of Peru. The most valuable tree the natives have, is that which furnishes them with Kingina, or peruvian bark; and this grows chiefly in the province of Quito, on the mountains, near the city of Quito, about five degrees south of the Equator, and is of the size of a cherry-tree, bearing a long, reddish flower, from whence arises a pod with a kernel like an almond; but the fruit does not seem to have the like virtues as the bark: they have trees, also, that afford this kind of bark in Potosi, in one and twenty degrees south lat. Maiz, or Indian corn, was their principal food; and of this also they made drink; but the Spaniards have introduced wheat and barley, which thrive very well here; and their vineyards, which they have planted, yield plenty of grapes, where they can be watered; but

4 N

1704

but the country is so hot and dry, that the soil will produce no grapes where it is not watered. They have ripe grapes whenever they please, where they have an opportunity of watering them, by turning rivulets into their grounds; they make excellent wines, which cannot be done in any other country between the Tropics. The Spaniards have planted almost all the fruits which grow in old Spain; and these thrive very well here, as well as rice, and the produce of the kitchen-garden. A great many excellent balms, gums and drugs, also are found here, and particularly that, called the balsam of Peru. But what the Spaniards value this country for most, is the prodigious treasures of gold and silver they have drawn from thence for two hundred years past: from the mountain of Potosi alone, which lies in twenty two degrees of south lat. there was drawn two thousand millions of pieces of eight, the first forty years they were wrought; there are also rich mines of quicksilver in Peru, and some precious stones; particularly emeralds, and turquoises. As to animals, there were not in Peru, or any part of America, any horses, cows, elephants, camels, asses, mules, sheep or hogs; and but one poor species of cur-dogs, before the Spaniards arrived; but they have since carried over all manner of European animals almost, which are exceedingly multiplied: but they had a breed of animals, which the natives call pacos, and guanacas, and the Spaniards peruvian sheep; because they bore some resemblance to our European sheep, but larger, and used to carry burdens, having no other beasts of burden; their flesh also is very good meat. They had another beast called vicunas, which the Spaniards named goats, because they were something like our goats; but they have no horns, and are swifter than deer; they had also red and fallow deer, and some few lions, bears and tigers; but neither so large, or so fierce as those of Europe; and there were great numbers of monkeys; but they had neither cats nor rats,

1704

though the last have multiplied so much since the Spaniards came over, that they sometimes destroy their crops of grain in Peru, as they do in the island of St. Helena; nor were there any tame fowls or poultry here, till they were imported. They had all manner of wild fowl almost, and a great variety of birds, particularly parrots, and a fowl called a crowder, so large, that they measured fifteen or sixteen feet, with their wings extended: these would kill and devour cattle, and sometimes children of ten or eleven years of age; but there are few of these fowls.

The Peruvians were idolaters, and worshipped the sun chiefly; but the Spaniards have compelled them to turn Christians, and profess another kind of idolatry, on pain of the inquisition; many thousands of them were murdered by the Spaniards, after their arrival, on pretence of their infidelity, and refusing to submit to the pope, or the king of Spain; but, in reality, to become masters of their treasure, and usurp the dominion of the country, where to this day the Spaniards oppress and tyrannize, not only over those that are descended from the Indians, but the Criollo, who are descended from the Spaniards themselves.

(1) Europe, see p. 127. n. *dd.*

(m) Masanderan, see p. 301. n. *k.*

(l) Italy, see p. 210. n. *m.*

(o) Julpha, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. *x.*

(p) Tauris, or Tabris, see p. 242. n. *i.*

(q) Casbin, or Calwin, east long. 48. lat. 36. a city of the province of Eyrac Agem in Persia, in Asia, situate 180 miles north of Ispahan:

(r) Laer, or Lahor, see p. 210. n. *i.*

CHAP.

1704

*A Persian Account
of the Manners
and Customs of the
Great Mogul, as
far as they relate
to the History of
the Country, and
the Affairs of the
Court.*

THE town, or
near (a) Ispahan
several parts, or districts
cultivated into the old
former, which is d
name of Seeg-za, is in
feudal merchants,
ed, that their ances
from very remote parts
frontiers of (b) Tur
king Abbas the Gre
prince assigned over to
them for their better m
port.

They tell us likewise
who were the antient
after, settled there
some particular stran
still speak more large
of these our travels.

New Julpha is line
subdivided into divers
division is that cal
Koer, which is still
principal employ is
edifices and sepulch
second is principally
and artificers in th
fians, tho' there are
(3) France amongst
called Telf, or Sam
trict belongs to the
habited partly by me
merchants. The fo
which is full of peo

It have multiplied so much since came over, that they sometimes tops of grain in Peru, as they do St. Helena, nor were there any poultry here, till they were imported; had all manner of wild fowl great variety of birds, particularly a fowl called a coucou, so large, as it would fifteen or sixteen men, with a spear, and sometimes children of ten or at age, but there are few of these

Indians were idolaters, and worshipped chiefly; but the Spaniards have them to turn Christians, and profess a kind of idolatry, on pain of the Indians, thousands of them were murdered, after their arrival, on the charge of idolatry, and refusing to obey the king of Spain; but, in some matters of their trade, and religion of the country, where to Spaniards oppress and tyrannize, those that are descended from the the Circuli, who are descended

themselves.

See p. 107. n. d.

See p. 307. n. d.

See p. 210. n. w.

See p. 262. n. d.

See p. 242. n. d.

See p. 48. lat. 36°, or Calvin, east long. 48. lat. 36°, province of Eyrac-Agen in Per-

See 180 miles north of Ispahan.

See p. 210. n. d.

CHAP. XLVI.

A succinct Account of the Town, or Suburb of (a) Julpha. Of the Habits, or Dress, of the Natives of (b) Armenia. Of the Customs observed by them at Births, Marriages and Burials. Of their peculiar Way of Life, and the Manners in which they educate their Children. Of the Natives of (c) Europe, who reside in the City. And lastly, of such Ministers as attend at the Court of (d) Persia, in the Name of their Christian Masters, for the Transaction of their public Affairs.

THE town, or suburb of Julpha, near (e) Ispahan, is divided into several parts, or districts; but more particularly into the old and new colony: the former, which is distinguished by the name of Soeg-ga, is inhabited by the most substantial merchants; and we are informed, that their ancestors resorted thither from very remote parts, and even from the frontiers of (f) Turkey, in the reign of king Abbas the Great; and that that prince assigned over some certain lands to them for their better maintenance and support.

They tell us likewise, that the Gowres, who were the ancient disciples of Zoroaster, settled there also, together with some particular strangers, of whom we shall speak more largely in the prosecution of these our travels.

New Julpha is situate higher up, and subdivided into divers districts. The first division is that called Gaif-rabaet, or Koets, which is full of stone-cutters, whose principal employ is the erection of stone edifices and sepulchral monuments. The second is principally inhabited by weavers, and artificers in stuffs; most of them Persians, tho' there are some few natives of (g) France amongst them. The third is called Toest, or Samsha-baet. This district belongs to the old colony, and is inhabited partly by mechanics, and partly by merchants. The fourth is called Eriwan, which is full of people in low and necessi-

tous circumstances. The fifth, sixth, and seventh are called Nagt-siewaen, Siachsa-baen, and Kasket-sie. These three likewise are full of the same low class of people, and are distinguished by no other names than those of the several districts to which they particularly belong.

Old Julpha is of much larger extent than all the other districts put together, and contains about two thousand families; some of which are exceedingly rich, and others very substantial merchants.

These have their own Kalantaer, as they call him, that is, their burgo-master, or chief magistrate, and others, whom they call Betgoedaes, that is to say, heads, or chief superintendants over their respective districts, who act as judges, and pass final sentence in all common causes; but such cases as are of great importance are referred for the decision either of his majesty himself, or some of his council of state; and after their final sentence, indeed, they are carried into execution by the before mentioned Kalantaer, and heads of the districts.

Old Julpha is the right and property of his majesty's grand-mother, whom they distinguish by the name of Nawasb-ali, which is a title that the king frequently confers on persons of high birth and distinction: all the other districts, however, above particularly taken notice of, are under the jurisdiction of their Nagasb-bashi,

1704

as they call him, that is to say, the head, or principal of the king's painters. These have notwithstanding their respective chiefs, and were formerly governed by a Kalantaer.

The principal buildings in Julpha.

The first district of Julpha, which stands to the southward, consists only of one large street, which is principally inhabited by such as are called Guebres, that is to say, such as had within three years then last past embraced the Mahomedan religion. The wives of these profelytes, according to antient custom, go bare-faced, or without veils. I never had any right, or adequate idea of these people till after my return from (b) India; and for that reason, I shall postpone my account of them to that time.

The principal buildings in Julpha are the churches, and the name of the first, or head of them is called Anna-baet, that is to say, the church of the bishop. Of this we shall give the reader our particular sentiments, when we come to treat of their custom, called the baptism of the cross. The second is that called Surpa-kroof, that is, the church of St. James. This has a fine dome, and abounds (as that of the bishop's does) with paintings, representing some of the most remarkable transactions recorded in sacred history. On the right-hand, there are some vacant places, and the women there are divided from the men. The third, which is larger than either of those before-mentioned, is called Surpon-tomafa, that is to say, the church of St. Thomas. This is of a considerable length, and is supported on each side by three square columns, or pillars. All the walls of this church are perfectly white, and there is not one piece of painting in it. The dome of it is very low, and in order to go up to the altar, there are three steps on each side. Besides these three, there are about eleven others; but then they are much smaller, and have fewer decorations. There are about thirteen or fourteen in new Julpha likewise; but those too are small, and nothing in them worthy the attention of the curious.

There are some very fine houses in old Julpha, which are inhabited by some of

1704

the most substantial amongst the Armenian merchants. That, however, which makes the most conspicuous figure, is called there the Hodshe-minozes; the grand salon, or hall whereof is all elegantly gilt, and painted with a great variety of flowers and other embellishments; and furnished likewise with a great number of costly pier-glasses. The cieling thereof is vaulted, and divided into four several compartments. In the center of each partition, there is a golden star, intermingled with divers very lively colours, and the walls are incrufted with slips of marble about three feet in height. At each end of this grand salon, there are regular niches, which are filled with festoons, intermixed with foliage, or leaves, which have a very good effect, and strike the eye in the most agreeable manner that can possibly be conceived. Through the front-gate; which leads to this range of fine houses, you come into a spacious court; in the center whereof there is a fine circular paterre, and another exactly of the same form, behind the fine house last-mentioned, with a very handsome structure, in which are several commodious apartments for the reception of the ladies, according to the custom of the country.

When I had fully gratified my curiosity with taking an accurate survey of this first grand house, the gentleman, who was possessed of it, having first entertained me in the most elegant manner, I went to examine all that was curious and remarkable in the house of the Kalantaer, or burgo-master Hogzaas, as they call him, otherwise Lucas, which I found to be in all respects as large and commodious, but not so elegantly neat as the former. From thence I went to the house called Arijet-aga, before which there was a spacious garden. This house likewise was very large, and full of fine apartments. The next that I took a survey of was the house called Hodshe-saffraes. This likewise was a very fine structure, and had a large garden before it like the other. All the walls of this house were painted, with a great variety of figures interspersed as big as the life. There was a Turkish man in particular and a Turkish woman,

1704

and other figures of men and women in (?) Spain; and some of them were of the stature of the giants, which was flat, there from whence there is supposed that eyes are supposed the Great, which Abbas the Great, who frequently to amuse himself The next house I went to was the house of Hodshe-eghmaet, which was as elegantly decorated as the former; this has a very fine view into the street that looks into the spacious windows, and the two next houses. The two next houses were in the name of Hodshe-Murad, were in the same manner. Some of the elegant marble fountains either in their best appearance, or in their door.

All these several houses, and very carefully, each room were covered and the chairs in the cushions of gold and blue, and the front-gate of most of them were very small, and to prevent the Persians from coming in, they had their grandeur and their principal streets covered with fine sugar-gall planted on each side.

The Armenians, in their dress, differ but very little from the Persians, and must be acknowledged to be not altogether so neat as the Persians, but they are not indolgent in their Persian mode, nor will they slipper.

As to such of the ladies of distinction as were, like the Persians, upon their forehead, and precious stones, and they were a golden bracelet, which is about the breadth, and down

Essential among the Armenians
That, however, which makes
spacious figure, is called *terce*

1704

minors; the grand salon, or
it is all elegantly gilt, and
with a great variety of flowers and
ornaments; and furnished like
great number of costly per-
e ceiling thereof is vaulted,
into four several compartments.
as of each partition, there is
war, intermingled with divers
colours, and the walls are in-
a slips of marble about three
bit. At each end of this grand
are regular niches, which are
shell-hoos, intermixed with bits,
which have a very good ef-
fect on the eye in the most agree-
able that can possibly be con-
through the front-gate; which
is range of fine houses, you
a spacious court; in the center
there is a fine circular parterre, and
the of the same form, behind
is the well-mentioned, with a very
structure, in which are several
apartments for the reception
according to the custom of

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1704

and other figures of note; some drest in
Persian habits, and others in such as are
worne in (*i*) Spain; each at a proper dis-
tance one from the other. On the roof,
which was flat, there was a fine terrace;
from whence there is the most delightful
prospect that eyes 'ere beheld; and king
Abbas the Great, when living, used fre-
quently to amuse himself on that terrace.
The next house I went to was that called
Hodshe-agamaet, which is almost as lofty,
and as elegantly decorated as any of the
former: this has a very beautiful apartment
that looks into the street; it has likewise,
spacious windows, and a fine terrace over
it. The two next houses, distinguished by
the names of Hodshe-Ovannis, and Hod-
she-Murfa, were in no respect inferior to
the former. Some of these houses have an
elegant marble fountain, with a cascade
either in their best apartment or before the
door.

All these several houses are exceedingly
neat, and very carefully kept; the floors of
each room were covered with rich carpets,
and the chairs in them adorned with
cushions of gold and silver brocade. The
front-gate of most of these houses are pur-
posely very small, and so contrived partly
to prevent the Persians from riding into
them on horse-back; and partly to conceal
their grandeur and magnificence within.
The principal streets of this town are de-
corated with fine senna-trees, which are re-
gularly planted on each side.

The habits
of the Ar-
menian
men.

The Armenians, in regard to their dres
differ but very little from the Persians; it
must be acknowledged, however, that they
are not altogether so neat, neither are their
turbants so prettily plaited. Besides, they
are not indulged in wearing those after the
Persian mode, nor with appearing in green
slippers.

Their fe-
male dres.

As to such of the Armenian women as
are ladies of distinction; they generally
wear, like the Persian women, a half-band
upon their foreheads, embellished with
pearls and precious stones. Under this
band they were a golden chambara, richly
decorated, which is about two fingers in
breadth; and down the sides of their

325

1704

cheeks, they have a score at least of golden
ducats, and other decorations, or trinkets,
enriched with pearls. This chambara
comes underneath their chins; and the
lower part of their face from the nose, is
covered with a veil, which they fasten be-
hind their heads. They wear another
veil likewise, besides this, about their
necks; the ends whereof are embroidered
with gold and silver. This also is fastened
behind the head; and neither of these,
when they appear in public, are taken off.
They have still a third, which is em-
broidered, likewise, and covers their necks,
and is thrown over the two former. This
too is fastened to their heads, and falls
down to the bottom of their upper vest-
ments; which for the generality are of
gold brocades, and lined with fables.
Their under-garments are of flowered
stuffs; and they have a third short vest-
ment, that but just reaches to their knees.
Their shifts are made of embroidered
taffata, or some other rich stuffs; and are
somewhat shorter than their upper vest-
ments. Under these shifts, they wear
drawers, of a fine striped fatten, with
buskins, or boots, after the Persian fashion,
and slippers, either yellow or red; for they
are not indulged in wearing of green ones,
any more than the men. Their girdles
are made of thin plates of gold, or silver
embossed, and are for the most part about
four or five fingers in breadth; and under
this, they wear a silk one with a buckle:
for the rest, some of these ladies have
their girdles set with precious stones. They
wear generally two or three gold chains
about their necks; by one whereof hang
small boxes of perfumes, and by another,
a great number of ducats. To these chains,
they add a coral necklace; and to every
third bead, they hang either a single, or a
double ducat. They wear likewise golden
bracelets, and rings in plenty on all their
fingers. In summer time, instead of the
furred gown, they wear a shorter vest-
ment without sleeves, which scarcely falls
down to their knees. The reader may
see the representation of one of these gay
ladies, thus richly drest, in the Plate

40

(No. 101)

THE TRAVELS OF

1704

Diefs of
their maid-
ens.

(No. 101.) hereto annexed.

The maidens dress much after the same manner as the married women, their veils only excepted; the former wearing two; namely, one which covers the greatest part of their face, and a second that hides their necks and breasts; whereas the latter wear only the last. As to the rest they wear a kind of diadem upon their foreheads; embroidered with gold and silver, and enriched with pearls, or precious stones.

In a word, when the Armenian women make their appearance in public, they differ in nothing material from the Persian ladies, but this; namely, they are indispensably obliged to conceal their faces with some part of their cloaths, which they hold up with their right-hands for that very purpose.

It is high time, however, to drop this topic, and proceed to the particular ceremonies, observed here at births, marriages, and deaths.

**Ceremonies
observed at
births.**

Whenever one of these ladies is brought to bed, her first care is, to find it a proper godfather; and after the expiration of some few days, the midwife or nurse, carries the new-born babe to church, in order to have it baptized. Accordingly, she delivers it into the hands of a priest, who dips it perfectly naked, three times successively, into a large bucket full of water, which serves them instead of a font; the priest, during the whole ceremony, pronouncing a certain form of words, in much the same manner as ours do in Europe. After this, the babe is anointed with holy oil, first upon the head, then on the mouth; then again on the breast, the neck, the hands, and feet; after this thorough unction, the infant is wrapped up again in its swaddling cloaths, and conveyed to the altar, where the eucharist, or sacrament, is crammed into his mouth. When this ceremony is over, he delivers it to the godfather; who covers it with a fluff-mantle, provided by him for that purpose at his own expence. When they have gone thus far, the company return, preceded by several priests, each holding a cross in one hand, and a taper in the other;

1704

and singing some portion of the gospel to the sound of the instrumental music. In this manner, the godfather follows the procession to the house where the child's parents reside; holding likewise a lighted taper in each hand; and after he has delivered up his little godson into his mother's arms, the remainder of the day is devoted to mirth and gaiety amongst the friends and relations. The same godfather for the most part, stands for all the children, be they more or less; and if a child happens to be born within a few days either of Easter, or their grand festival of baptizing the cross, the parents are obliged to have the infant baptized on the same day.

There is one circumstance in this ceremony that is too remarkable to be omitted; and that is, that neither this godfather, nor any of his near relations, can marry with any of those belonging to the infant to the third or fourth degree of consanguinity. And when it happens that a girl and a boy of two different families have been represented by the same godfather, even they are prohibited from intermarrying with each other.

Their marriage ceremonies.

The ceremonies observed at their marriages have something in them very peculiar, and whimsical enough: the parties never run through a formal time of courtship, as is customary in most European countries; but the parents, on each side, are the match-makers, and the marriage articles, as by them settled and adjusted, are held good and valid, and never disputed by the bridegroom or his bride. The former on his wedding-day, hires a band of music, and invites some of his most intimate friends and acquaintance to his house; and each guest has a taper put into his hand by a proper domestic or attendant. In the midst of this, a whole groupe of young girls make their appearance in the street and dance to some cheerful tune, played by haut-boys, accompanied with drums, who are followed by women in years, laden with rich wearing apparel, pearls, and precious stones. As soon as these dancers are got to the bridegroom's place of abode, they fasten a cross made of green taffin upon his breast; and after that the

1704

men and women who solemnly withdraw from men; where they are very elegant manner, a provision of all fort the apparel belonging couple are delivered to ting baskets, together of our small value, in presents of to the young a part of their guests. bations, the priest blessing on the wedding when over, the intention on. The bride, equipped, takes a few two or three of his new with him to his bride he is received, or can father or brother, or tion, who, after a few tions, in regard to their warmest wishes, health and happiness, *ens before mentioned*, of red satin on the the women bring him corner *whence he* and the bride of the bride is covered with through which you see all her fine down covered with red down to her very feet, *quarantaine* diet (if an exception) she is adorned of *woman*, the fine manner, which is preceded by all the kind of procession, each with a ligature. When the whole relations, and the bride the bachelors; and repairs to the feet as music is begun, the feet, before whom covered in form; up to the altar, where himself sit to be brought to this or the next this woman, thus of

some portion of the gospel to the instrumental music. In the godfather follows the the house where the child's e; holding likewise a lighted hand; and after he has delivered the godson into his mother's hands for all the children, be at last; and if a child happens within a few days after of their grand festival of baptizing the parents are obliged to have baptized on the same day.

one circumstance in this ceremony is remarkable to be omitted; what neither this godfather, his near relations, can marry those belonging to the infant or fourth degree of consanguinity when it happens that a girl of two different families have been by the same godfather, excluded from intermarrying

manies observed at their marriages something in them very peculiar enough: the parties through a formal time of customary in most European at the parents, on each side, are makers, and the marriage are them settled and adjusted, and valid, and never disputed by on or his bride. The former day, hires a herd of swine, some of his most intimate acquaintance to his house: and as a taper put into his hand domestic or attendant. In the a whole groupe of young girls appearance in the street and some cheerful tunes, played us, accompanied with drums, flowered by women in veils, which wearing apparel, pearls, fringes. As soon as these get to the bridegroom's place a maiden a cross made of green his breast; and after that the

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

1704

men and women who are invited to the solemnity withdraw into separate apartments, where they are entertained in a very elegant manner, with conserves, and a profusion of all sorts of liquors. Then the apparel belonging to the married couple are delivered to them in two distinct baskets; together with some trinkets of but small value, in order to be made presents of to the young people who make a part of their guests. After these distributions, the priest pronounces a formal blessing on the wedding-cloaths, which, when over, the intended pair retire to put them on. The bridegroom, thus gayly equipped, takes a set of his friends, with two or three of his nearest relations, along with him to his spouse's apartment, where he is received, or congratulated by her father or brother, or some other near relation, who, after a few wholesome admonitions, in regard to the conjugal state, add their warmest wishes for their mutual health and happiness. The young maidens before-mentioned, then fasten another cross of red satin on the bridegroom, and the women bring him a handkerchief, one corner whereof he is to take hold of, and the bride of the other. Now the bride is covered with an embroidered veil through which you may notwithstanding see all her fine cloaths, and her face is covered with red taffaty, which hangs down to her very feet. And in this masquerading-dress (if I may be allowed the expression) she is accompanied by a great number of women, disguised after much the same manner, whilst the bridegroom is preceded by all the men; and thus in a kind of procession, they go to church; each with a lighted taper in his hand. When the whole company are got in, the relations take the handkerchief away from the bridegroom; and then each of them repairs to the seat assigned him. As soon as mass is begun, the father confessors appear, before whom the young couple are catechized in form; after which they go up to the altar, where the priest addresses himself first to the bridegroom, in words to this or the like effect; Will you have this woman, thus offered you to be your

326

1704

wife? Will you honour and cherish her, whatever casualties may attend her hereafter? Will you comfort and take care of her, in case, in time to come, she shall happen to be either blind, lame, or otherwise afflicted in mind, body, or estate? When the man has answered in the affirmative, he turns to the woman, and asks her the very same questions. As soon as she has answered yes likewise, the priest joins their hands, and after that their heads; which one of the bride-men bind close together with a handkerchief, and then he covers them with a cross. In the mean time they read over the office for the occasion, and say the customary prayers: when those are concluded, the priest takes off the cross again; and administers to them what they call the sacrament of the altar; and then every one retires to his own place. As soon as mass is over, they go in procession home from church; the priests walking before the new married couple, accompanied with their band of music, hired for the purpose, the bridegroom and bride still continuing to have the handkerchief above-mentioned round their necks, and being followed by their friends whom they invited. No sooner are they arrived at the bridegroom's door, but they are presented with a large bowl full of sherbet, with which they entertain, not only all the priests, but all their guests in general, each of whom is perfumed, or sprinkled with rose-water, which is taken out of a silver pot. After this, the men and the women are conducted to their separate apartments in expectation of their dinner; which, when ready, is served up at different tables, the men sitting at one, and the women at the other. This entertainment is placed upon a large carpet, spread upon the floor, on which they sit, according to the mode or custom of the orientals. They are all served with conserves, and a variety of the choicest liquors, in the first place, and afterwards with plenty of different viands.

There is one circumstance, however, that the reader ought to have been before acquainted with, and that is, when the bridegroom and the bride have received the

1704

the sacrament of the altar, they are kept from each others company for three or four days successively; but in case the sacrament has not been administered to them, then the company conduct them the very same night to the bridal bed-chamber, and after they have perfumed them with a little rose-water, withdraw, and leave them to their own private conversation.

The girls
portions.

Some few days after consummation of the nuptials, the parents produce whatever they had promised for her dower, which consists, for the most part, in apparel, gold, silver, pearls, and precious stones, in proportion to their substance and condition. To these valuable commodities they add likewise a great variety of sweet-meats and the choicest fruits, which are brought in fine wooden pails, accompanied with a proper band of music, as has been before hinted with respect to the Persians.

This ceremony, however, is sometimes postponed till the birth of the first child, and, in that case, a cradle and all other requisites for the accommodation of the infant are added to the sweet-meats, &c. Sometimes, indeed, the bridegroom and bride go to church on horse-back, and return from thence in the same manner. Moreover, on some particular occasions, these nuptials are solemnized in a very private manner, in the dead of night, and in the presence only of two or three of their nearest relations.

Of all the customs, however, that are observed amongst the Armenians, no one appears more uncommon, or fantastical to me, than that of giving away their children in marriage during their very infancy; insomuch that there are but few of them single after ten or twelve years of age at most. Nay, sometimes the parents betroth them, in form, before they are ten months old; and it is no uncommon thing for marriage-contracts to be made for children even in their mother's womb. And the reason they alledge for it is this; that in case a girl should be unmarried, she is in danger of being taken from her parents, and locked up in the *seraglio*; a

1704

misfortune, which they endeavour to prevent by such premature contracts. There are many instances, however, to be produced, where parents have proved disappointed, notwithstanding this extraordinary precaution.

As I have, in a former part of this work, taken notice of the ceremonies observed by them at the interment of their friends and relations, I have this one custom only farther to add; namely, that on these melancholy occasions, the women are always present as well as the men; and that their priests and deacons chant out their funeral dirges as they walk in procession. There are generally four bearers, who carry the deceased upon a bier; but they have sometimes eight, and sometimes twelve, when they have far to go, in order to relieve each other, as occasion shall require. These bearers are always persons in low circumstances, and attend for hire. The body is deposited in the grave without any coffin; with the head raised up, in some measure, and then the priest throws earth over it three several times in the form of a cross.

When the company return from the funeral, they go to the habitation of the deceased, and are there entertained both at dinner and supper.

Nay, two priests and two deacons, for forty days successively go every morning to the grave, and there not only read over it some portion of the sacred scripture, but sing some select hymn, extracted from the psalms of David, adapted to that melancholy occasion. These have their daily fees for this funeral service; which are higher or lower in proportion to the circumstances of the deceased; insomuch that, sometimes a pompous funeral amongst them proves very expensive.

Notwithstanding the Armenians are thus over-superstitious in their observance of external forms, they are still most shamefully remiss in other articles of much greater importance; but more particularly in what relates to the education of their children; who are sometimes arrived to the age of manhood, before they are able to re-

Customs
as
observed at
their burials.

Are shame-
fully remiss
in the edu-
cation of
their chil-
dren.

1704

hearts the Lord's people their belief. This, in itself, is a very much wonder how early they enter it. Here, for sometimes children, whilst they themselves; so that, being employed about the house, before they have any ceremony instruction, as for the poor for elph considerable improve what human probab that a mother, who of instruction herself, of cultivating the infants? And it now that in case a woman chance to have any or beauty, it is a c uncommon. This c quently made my fel at their funeral sol times, there are fre thousand of them assen look like such a m matrons, past all the before they have att twenty. And this is zing, because they have for their eyes as patte who are for the m exceedingly handsome affection in their air, their gait, their agreeable; there is grace in all their wor even the manner wha vells, which conce something in it extr gaging.

It must be allow Turkish and Grec inferior to the Pers various attractions; but very few of the any air, gait, or shap to allure you. And a little to this misfo with which they c For by that practice to be blamed; but the

1704

hear the Lord's prayer, or the articles of their belief. This, indeed, is not to be so very much wondered at, considering how early they enter into the matrimonial state: for sometimes they are fathers of children, whilst they are but children themselves; so that, their thoughts being employed about their family-concerns, before they have any opportunities of receiving instruction, 'tis morally impossible for the poorer sort especially to make any considerable improvements. In short, what human probability can there be, that a mother, who has had no manner of instruction herself, should be capable of cultivating the minds of her little infants? And it must be acknowledged, that in case a woman amongst them should chance to have any share of wit, genius, or beauty, it is a circumstance extremely uncommon. This observation I have frequently made my self; but more especially at their funeral solemnities; at which times, there are frequently two or three thousand of them assembled together, who look like such a number of thoughtful matrons, past all their beauty and bloom, before they have attained even the age of twenty. And this is still the more surprising; because they have the Persian ladies before their eyes as patterns for their imitation, who are for the most part finely shaped, exceedingly handsome, and free from all affectation in their deportment. Their air, their gait, their dress, are all perfectly agreeable; there is, in short, a peculiar grace in all their words and actions; and even the manner wherein they adjust their veils, which conceal their charms, has something in it extremely pretty and engaging.

It must be allowed likewise, that the Turkish and Grecian ladies are no ways inferior to the Persians, in regard to their various attractions; whilst, on the contrary, but very few of the Armenian ladies have any air, gait, or shape, or any other charm to allure you. And what contributes not a little to this misfortune is, the linnen with which they conceal their mouths. For by that practice, their cheeks appear to be bloated; but besides, they are women

for the generality, but of low stature, and their shapes are clumsy.

1704

If you meet an Armenian woman in the town of Julpha, she will most assuredly turn her back upon you, which is such a monstrous act of ill manners, that even a Mahomedan woman would blush to be guilty of it: in a word, they are not only rude to strangers, but equally unmannerly, when in company with their nearest relations. In case they are offered a glass of wine by a friend, whom they ever so much respect, they no sooner accept of it, but they turn their faces towards the wall, and drink up their liquor, let the glass be ever so large, or ever so full. From this reserved or affected deportment, this uncommon care to conceal themselves from the sight of a man, any one might be apt to imagine, that they are strictly virtuous, and as chaste and cold as so many Dianas; but he that shall make that conclusion, will find himself most grossly mistaken; for too many of them will turn prostitutes for filthy lucre, will dress themselves in men's apparel, and ride on horse-back with their mothers to Ispahan, where they carry on a small clandestine trade, whilst the poor ignorant tool of a husband imagines them proof against all temptation, and himself safe, as he knows they will not unveil their charms to no man living. This was not the case in the days of yore; for Judah, we are told, concluded that Tamar was a harlot, because she covered her face with a veil.

As to the Armenians (of the male sex) their thoughts are wholly taken up in avaricious views, and in making haste to be rich; and when they have hoarded up immense treasures, they are still ambitious of making all the advantages that can possibly arise therefrom. Their thirst after gain is insatiable; without the least regard to any of the social duties of life, or to what is transacting in any other part of the known world.

No country under the sun, in their idle opinions, can stand in competition with Persia; they look upon it as the sole source, or fountain, of all arts and sciences, though they know no more how to

4 P

form

The incivility and unmannerly deportment of the Armenian women,

The employments, and ignorance of the Armenians,

As there is

the Armenians are

in the eyes

of the Armenians

they are still most

forms, they are still most

in other articles of much

minis in other articles of much

ance, but more particularly

is to the education of their

are sometimes arrived to the

ed, before they are able to re-

hair

1704

form an adequate idea, either of the one or the other, than a blind man can distinguish one colour from another. For notwithstanding many of them are very substantial merchants, and travel half the world over in hopes of treasuring up one bag of gold upon another; yet their curiosity never carries them so far as to make any curious enquiries either into nature herself, or the nature and constitution of the very country wherein they reside; neither will they, indeed, take the least pains, or put themselves to the needless expence (as they call it) of prying into the beauties of Persia itself.

They have no knowledge, but what they gain by hear-say; and I observed, that not one of those Armenians, who were my fellow-travellers, ever attempted, or thought it worth his while, to survey those curiosities, which I sought after with so much assiduity and concern. For which reason, whenever I was inclined to gratify my taste that way, I always made my application to strangers, and exerted the strength of my purse with them. Whenever, in short, I consulted them, it was, when I found them in their bazars, or markets, the courtes of which, it must be allowed, they understand to the utmost perfection. Trade, in a word, is the only thing within the verge of their understanding; but all other articles are absolutely beyond the sphere of their weak comprehension; their minds (as I have hinted before) were never improved by any liberal education. As soon as ever they have attained the accomplishments of reading and writing, such of their masters as reside at Julpha, send them on errands; and whenever they either go to, or return from Isfahan, for the most part, they ride double, on a horse, a mule, or an ass, which is a custom peculiar to themselves.

When they have dealings with the Persians, on their market-days; in their little shops, in the city, where they retail cloth by the yard, or even a less quantity, they durst not drink wine, or any spirituous liquor whatsoever, for fear they should be

1704

discovered by the smell; inasmuch that they groan under a heavier weight than even the (*k*) Greeks do under the Grand Signior. And forasmuch as this worse than (*l*) Egyptian bondage daily encreases upon them, it is greatly to be feared, that every privilege, how small soever, will soon be taken from them, unless they shall think proper to turn apostates, and become proselytes to the Mahomedan religion.

And this their unhappy situation must be ascribed in a great measure to the bitter quarrels and debates which rage as it were amongst themselves, not only between some of their bishops, but even their patriarchs, who are at perpetual variance with each other, as well about the economy of the church, as about the articles of its creed. And when these religious dissensions run high, the Persians are ever ready to embrace such favourable opportunities for calling them to account, and loading them with fresh fines and intolerable impositions.

Two flagrant instances of this despotic power of the Persians happened whilst I was resident at Isfahan. If such unhappy discords and dissensions did not so frequently arise amongst them; if they were not such inveterate and implacable enemies one to another, they might accomplish many very valuable and important ends; for they are possessed of immense riches; and high bribes command great favours in this country; but it is impossible to express that enmity and hatred with which they pursue each other; some faint idea however, may be formed of it from an instance to which I myself was a witness.

Two brothers had happened to have some high words about some occurrence in trade, which is (as I have hinted before) the very soul of an Armenian, and the only thing that he understands. A vigorous law-suit you may be sure, was instantly commenced; and the eldest, who was in the actual possession of the matter in debate, and capable of making rich presents to the

Their religious dissensions.

judges did not fail to go his favour, and carry the day. The party cast (who time to be blind) upon against him, declared over-joyed that he had it would be the greatest could best him in this his eyes upon his brother should think it no sin as dead as he was him never hear him either of again.

Could inordinate hatred be ever carried further? The elder brother, who with a French lady at her side, and her maid brought two little dogs by her side, used to our director, to beg the favour against the interest of his blind retention of his blind his utmost interest and him secured under the Mahomedan judges, once before, and from could never possibly be most unmercifully bitten. Not a few of these ready renounced their embraced the errors of church, with no a gratify their domestic es, and become favour.

One of these people who had accompanied Mecca, in order to the tomb of Mahomet, thence, whilst I was Great numbers of out to meet him, and his safe arrival in Persia single Armenian think to welcome home, a pilgrim on his safe return.

So great is the power the Mahomedans in marks (such marks of were, compelled to embrace

An instance of implacable hatred between two brothers.

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

331

1704

judges, did not fail to gain their interest in his favour, and carry the cause.

The party cast (who happened at that time to be blind) upon sentence being past against him, declared openly, that he was over-joyed that he had lost his sight; since it would be the greatest mortification that could befall him in this world ever to cast his eyes upon his brother, and that he should think it no affliction to him to be as deaf as he was blind, that he might never hear him either speak, or be spoken of again.

Could inveterate malice and mortal hatred be ever carried to a higher pitch? The elder brother, who had intermarried with a French lady at (*m*) Paris, where he had left her, and from whence he had brought two little daughters which he had by her there, used to come daily almost to our director, to beg the favour of his protection against the irreconcilable rage and resentment of his blind brother, who used his utmost interest and endeavours to have him secured under the custody of the Mohammedan judges, as he had done once before, and from whose hands he could never possibly escape without being most unmercifully bastonaded.

Many Armenians renounce their faith in order to enrich themselves.

Not a few of these Armenians have already renounced their Christian faith, and embraced the errors of the Mahomedan church, with no other view than to gratify their boundless thirst after riches, and become favourites at the Persian court.

One of these apostates in particular, who had accompanied the pilgrims to (*n*) Mecca, in order to pay his devotions at the tomb of Mohammed, returned from thence, whilst I was resident at Ispahan. Great numbers of the Armenians went out to meet him, and congratulate him on his safe arrival in Persia; whereas not a single Armenian thinks it worth his while to welcome home, or care for a Christian pilgrim on his safe return from (*o*) Jerusalem.

So great is the power and authority of the Mohammedans in Persia, that two monks (both natives of (*p*) Portugal) were compelled to embrace the Mohammedan

The great authority of the Mohammedans in Persia.

faith: one in the year 1691; and the other in 1696. The first, whose Christian name was Emanuel, assumed that of Hussein-Celibek, that is to say, the slave of Hussein, and the other (Anthony by name) was distinguished by the title of Ali-Celibek, or in other terms, the vassal of Ali.

The convent of these two Portugeze fathers is a very fine, spacious structure, situate in the city; and full of very commodious apartments; there was only one of them, however, resident there, whilst I was at Ispahan, that is to say, father Antonio Destieto, of whom I have given the reader some account in the preceding part of this work.

There are, moreover, two French capuchins, whose convent is likewise situate in the city.

The Carmelites likewise have a very fine convent there; with a spacious garden thereto belonging; there was but one of them however, there, a native of Poland, in my remembrance.

There are, besides these, two others, whether natives of France or (*q*) Denmark, I cannot peremptorily determine, who came thither from Rome, and live in a little habitation together in Julpha; and there are four Jesuits also, who have erected a little chappel, after the (*r*) Italian mode, in that town, at their own expence, together with a very fine house and gardens at but a very small distance from it.

Besides these, there are three Dominicans, who have lately erected a new chapel at their own expence.

There are several other Europeans, moreover, resident at Julpha. Though most of them, indeed, are natives of France, yet there are three in the town, who were born at (*s*) Geneva; their names were Siorde, De Finot, and Bafar; the first was a goldsmith by profession, but, the other two dealt in watches and clocks. There are two physicians likewise in the town; one Hermet by name, a French-man. The other a native of (*t*) Smyrna. All the above-named Europeans, De Finot only excepted, are married to Armenians of mean extraction, and can scarcely get a lively-

The Portugeze convent.

French capuchins.

Carmelites.

Jesuits.

Dominicans.

1704
livelyhood by their labour; for there is little or no buſineſs in Perſia (as I have hinted before) for ſuch as are Arrangers,

The Persians, indeed, have several very able and experienced physicians ; as also adepts in the mathematics amongst themselves ; they are perfect strangers, however, to the art of surgery ; and give but very little encouragement to such strangers as are of that profession. Nay, even those who are employed at court, are but very little regarded ; for their salaries are paid them only in bills upon other cities, which they are obliged sometimes to discount at one third loss, and sometimes more.

'Tis observable, that a stranger has no manner of prospect of advancing his fortune by marriage in this country ; since there is scarce a single instance of an European that ever married into any Persian family of substance or distinction. It is observable, likewise, that whenever any Europeans intermarry with the Persians, they immediately conform to the customs of the country, and never introduce their wives into the company of strangers. This sudden alteration in their deportment is most conspicuous, indeed, amongst the French ; for such as are natives either of (*u*) England or (*w*) Holland, retain the customs of their forefathers.

This is not the case, however, with such strangers as reside at (x) Constantinople, Smyrna, and other places under the dominion of the Grand Signior, where the Greek women, with whom they inter-

marry, conform with all the readineſs imaginable, to the cuſtoms and manners of their huſbands, or, indeed, to the particular religion, which they reſpectively profeſs, and take care likewiſe to train up the children they have by them in the ſame tenets; whereas the Armenian women, whom we have been ſpeaking of, after marriage, ſbew no conformity at all, but profeſs the ſame religion as their mothers did before them, and inſtil the ſame principles into their children.

I am conscious to my self, indeed, that I might here be confronted with the instance of that celebrated traveller, by name Pietro della Valle, who, though a native of (y) Rome, intermarried with a lady born at (z) Bagdet; but love will sometimes triumph over discretion, and there is no general rule without an exception.

In all other respects, I have nothing farther to add, in regard to this remarkable adventure, and this single marriage, which was consummated in the very same convent where I resided at my return from the *(ad)* Indies; since I should be very loth to lay any thing that might tend to the disreputation of so celebrated a Roman, and one, who has left so many very valuable remains behind him.

The Armenians, however, are not the only persons who have renounced their religion, and embraced Mohammedism for gain. Several instances may be produced amongst the (*bb*) Georgians, both rich and poor, who have followed their mercenary and ungodly example; and these last, indeed, are as little regarded by the Europeans as the former.

The Armenians, however, are not the only persons who have renounced their religion, and embraced Mohammedism for gain. Several instances may be produced amongst the (*bb*) Georgians, both rich and poor, who have followed their mercenary and ungodly example; and these last, indeed, are as little regarded by the Europeans as the former.

I shall here take the liberty, before I bring this chapter to a conclusion, to introduce a remark or two in regard to such public ministers as attend at the Persian court, with credentials from some of the Christian powers; and amongst whom (it must be ingenuously confessed) there are some, who are altogether unworthy of that honourable title; and are, in reality, no better than envoys, or common couriers. And it must readily likewise be acknowledged, that they reflect but very little

22

honour on their march
 come: here the price
 of their journey is so
 rarely that they in
 paying the currency
 the federal mercantile
 which they bring in
 principle, which is a
 less institution, to all
 form with such inter-

They are furnished, then, with all need of occasion for, and have no interest or part in proceedings, be either antecedents, at court; but when so considerable, *may* any chance of a minister, plain to accept of, while, be any manner Americans should

Occas

()
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

Europe, see 127. T

16. 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th, 15th, 16th, 17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st, 22nd, 23rd, 24th, 25th, 26th, 27th, 28th, 29th, 30th, 31st, 32nd, 33rd, 34th, 35th, 36th, 37th, 38th, 39th, 40th, 41st, 42nd, 43rd, 44th, 45th, 46th, 47th, 48th, 49th, 50th, 51st, 52nd, 53rd, 54th, 55th, 56th, 57th, 58th, 59th, 60th, 61st, 62nd, 63rd, 64th, 65th, 66th, 67th, 68th, 69th, 70th, 71st, 72nd, 73rd, 74th, 75th, 76th, 77th, 78th, 79th, 80th, 81st, 82nd, 83rd, 84th, 85th, 86th, 87th, 88th, 89th, 90th, 91st, 92nd, 93rd, 94th, 95th, 96th, 97th, 98th, 99th, 100th, 101st, 102nd, 103rd, 104th, 105th, 106th, 107th, 108th, 109th, 110th, 111th, 112th, 113th, 114th, 115th, 116th, 117th, 118th, 119th, 120th, 121st, 122nd, 123rd, 124th, 125th, 126th, 127th, 128th, 129th, 130th, 131st, 132nd, 133rd, 134th, 135th, 136th, 137th, 138th, 139th, 140th, 141st, 142nd, 143rd, 144th, 145th, 146th, 147th, 148th, 149th, 150th, 151st, 152nd, 153rd, 154th, 155th, 156th, 157th, 158th, 159th, 160th, 161st, 162nd, 163rd, 164th, 165th, 166th, 167th, 168th, 169th, 170th, 171st, 172nd, 173rd, 174th, 175th, 176th, 177th, 178th, 179th, 180th, 181st, 182nd, 183rd, 184th, 185th, 186th, 187th, 188th, 189th, 190th, 191st, 192nd, 193rd, 194th, 195th, 196th, 197th, 198th, 199th, 200th, 201st, 202nd, 203rd, 204th, 205th, 206th, 207th, 208th, 209th, 210th, 211th, 212th, 213th, 214th, 215th, 216th, 217th, 218th, 219th, 220th, 221st, 222nd, 223rd, 224th, 225th, 226th, 227th, 228th, 229th, 230th, 231st, 232nd, 233rd, 234th, 235th, 236th, 237th, 238th, 239th, 240th, 241st, 242nd, 243rd, 244th, 245th, 246th, 247th, 248th, 249th, 250th, 251st, 252nd, 253rd, 254th, 255th, 256th, 257th, 258th, 259th, 260th, 261st, 262nd, 263rd, 264th, 265th, 266th, 267th, 268th, 269th, 270th, 271st, 272nd, 273rd, 274th, 275th, 276th, 277th, 278th, 279th, 280th, 281st, 282nd, 283rd, 284th, 285th, 286th, 287th, 288th, 289th, 290th, 291st, 292nd, 293rd, 294th, 295th, 296th, 297th, 298th, 299th, 300th, 301st, 302nd, 303rd, 304th, 305th, 306th, 307th, 308th, 309th, 310th, 311th, 312th, 313th, 314th, 315th, 316th, 317th, 318th, 319th, 320th, 321st, 322nd, 323rd, 324th, 325th, 326th, 327th, 328th, 329th, 330th, 331st, 332nd, 333rd, 334th, 335th, 336th, 337th, 338th, 339th, 340th, 341st, 342nd, 343rd, 344th, 345th, 346th, 347th, 348th, 349th, 350th, 351st, 352nd, 353rd, 354th, 355th, 356th, 357th, 358th, 359th, 360th, 361st, 362nd, 363rd, 364th, 365th, 366th, 367th, 368th, 369th, 370th, 371st, 372nd, 373rd, 374th, 375th, 376th, 377th, 378th, 379th, 380th, 381st, 382nd, 383rd, 384th, 385th, 386th, 387th, 388th, 389th, 390th, 391st, 392nd, 393rd, 394th, 395th, 396th, 397th, 398th, 399th, 400th, 401st, 402nd, 403rd, 404th, 405th, 406th, 407th, 408th, 409th, 410th, 411th, 412th, 413th, 414th, 415th, 416th, 417th, 418th, 419th, 420th, 421st, 422nd, 423rd, 424th, 425th, 426th, 427th, 428th, 429th, 430th, 431st, 432nd, 433rd, 434th, 435th, 436th, 437th, 438th, 439th, 440th, 441st, 442nd, 443rd, 444th, 445th, 446th, 447th, 448th, 449th, 450th, 451st, 452nd, 453rd, 454th, 455th, 456th, 457th, 458th, 459th, 460th, 461st, 462nd, 463rd, 464th, 465th, 466th, 467th, 468th, 469th, 470th, 471st, 472nd, 473rd, 474th, 475th, 476th, 477th, 478th, 479th, 480th, 481st, 482nd, 483rd, 484th, 485th, 486th, 487th, 488th, 489th, 490th, 491st, 492nd, 493rd, 494th, 495th, 496th, 497th, 498th, 499th, 500th, 501st, 502nd, 503rd, 504th, 505th, 506th, 507th, 508th, 509th, 510th, 511th, 512th, 513th, 514th, 515th, 516th, 517th, 518th, 519th, 520th, 521st, 522nd, 523rd, 524th, 525th, 526th, 527th, 528th, 529th, 530th, 531st, 532nd, 533rd, 534th, 535th, 536th, 537th, 538th, 539th, 540th, 541st, 542nd, 543rd, 544th, 545th, 546th, 547th, 548th, 549th, 550th, 551st, 552nd, 553rd, 554th, 555th, 556th, 557th, 558th, 559th, 560th, 561st, 562nd, 563rd, 564th, 565th, 566th, 567th, 568th, 569th, 570th, 571st, 572nd, 573rd, 574th, 575th, 576th, 577th, 578th, 579th, 580th, 581st, 582nd, 583rd, 584th, 585th, 586th, 587th, 588th, 589th, 590th, 591st, 592nd, 593rd, 594th, 595th, 596th, 597th, 598th, 599th, 600th, 601st, 602nd, 603rd, 604th, 605th, 606th, 607th, 608th, 609th, 610th, 611th, 612th, 613th, 614th, 615th, 616th, 617th, 618th, 619th, 620th, 621st, 622nd, 623rd, 624th, 625th, 626th, 627th, 628th, 629th, 630th, 631st, 632nd, 633rd, 634th, 635th, 636th, 637th, 638th, 639th, 640th, 641st, 642nd, 643rd, 644th, 645th, 646th, 647th, 648th, 649th, 650th, 651st, 652nd, 653rd, 654th, 655th, 656th, 657th, 658th, 659th, 660th, 661st, 662nd, 663rd, 664th, 665th, 666th, 667th, 668th, 669th, 670th, 671st, 672nd, 673rd, 674th, 675th, 676th, 677th, 678th, 679th, 680th, 681st, 682nd, 683rd, 684th, 685th, 686th, 687th, 688th, 689th, 690th, 691st, 692nd, 693rd, 694th, 695th, 696th, 697th, 698th, 699th, 700th, 70

(6. Find, see in

61

France, Dec. 21.

12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555, 556, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, 843, 844, 845, 846, 847, 84

(i) Spain, etc p. 21

[illegible]

with all the readiness of the customs and manners of, or, indeed, to the persons, which they respectively take care likewise to mix up they have by them in the whereas the Armenian as we have been speaking of, show no conformity at all, & same religion as their mothers them, and with the same to their children.

As to my self, indeed, they be contrasted with the celebrated traveller, by name, who, who, though a native intermarried with a lady of the East; but love will sometimes overcome discretion, and a general rule without an ex-

cept respects, I have nothing to say. In regard to this remarkable of this single marriage, which is in the very same context added at my return from the since I should be very loth to that might tend to the dis- to celebrate a Roman, and to many very valuable re-

marks, however, are not the persons who have renounced their religion in favour of Mohammedanism for all instances may be produced of persons, both rich and poor, who followed their mercenary example, and these last, in- deed, are regarded by the Europeans

as taking the liberty, before I have time to a conclusion, to intro- duce or two in regard to such persons as attend at the Persian courts as attendants from some of the credentialed from some of the Persian courts, and amongst whom (it is not to be denied) there are some altogether unworthy of the title, and are, in reality, as persons or common courtesans, really likewise be acknow- ledged by them, but very little it they reflect but very little

honour on their masters from whom they come; since the principal aim and design of their journey is no more than this; namely, that they may be freed from paying the customary dues or duties on the several merchandizes or commodities which they bring along with them; a privilege, which is granted without the least hesitation, to all in general who are sent with such letters to the Persian court.

They are furnished likewise, wherever they go, with all such carriages as they have occasion for, and have, moreover, a daily stipend, or pay, in proportion to the number of their attendants, during their residence at court; but then that allowance is so inconsiderable, that any one, who bears the character of a minister, might very well blush to accept of. It cannot upon the whole, be any matter of wonder, that the Armenians should be employed by the

Christian powers in the delivery of such credentials to the king of Persia; and that those people should be able to impose upon them so far, as to make themselves pass for men of importance, and favourites at court; for, in fact, they are neither men of honour or conscience, and make no scruple to defraud at least, if not utterly to ruin those who are sent with them to court.

As to their sentiments in regard to religion, it is evident, that they are but little acquainted with the grounds and principles of Christianity which they profess, from their readiness to renounce that faith, and embrace the erroneous tenets of the Mohammedans, upon the most trivial motives; and in our opinion, it is highly requisite that strangers should be acquainted with this their wavering faculty, and be forewarn'd against their hypocritical and deceit.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

(a) Julia, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. x.

(b) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.

(c) Europe, see 127. n. dd.

(d) Persia, see p. 64. n. a.

(e) Isfahan, see p. 109. n. m.

(f) Turkey, see p. 203. n. e.

(g) France, see p. 214. n. m.

(h) India, (proper) see p. 213. n. d.

(i) Spain, see p. 283. n. p.

(k) Greece, the present Rumelia, and the ancient Hellas, is situate between 20 and 26 deg. of east long. and 36 and 44. deg. of north lat. bounded by Romania, or Thrace, Bulgaria and Servia, towards the north; by the Archipelago on the east; by the Mediterranean on the south; and by the Adriatic, or gulph of Venice on the west; being about four hundred miles long from north to south, that is to say from the mountains of Argentum, or Scodras, to cape Matapan, or Caglia, in the Morea, and near as much in breadth, viz. from the Adriatic sea to the Archipelago; generally a temperate,

healthful country and fruitful soil; eminent antiently for the wit and learning of the inhabitants, and for their great actions, and the numerous heroes it has produced; now subject to the barbarous Turk, who has destroyed most of the fine cities it contained, and introduced a deluge of ignorance into those admired seats of learning and politeness.

(l) Egypt, see p. 33. n. a.

(m) Paris, see p. 261. n. o.

(n) Mecca, see p. 242. n. o.

(o) Jerusalem, see p. 85. n. d.

(p) Portugal, see p. 260. n. m.

(q) Denmark. This kingdom was formerly elective, until the year 1659; it was then made hereditary in the person of Frederick III. and his posterity. The capital city is Copenhagen, 160 miles from Hamburg; 80 miles from Amsterdam, and 580 from London.

(r) Italy, see p. 210. n. m.

(s) Geneva, an antient city in the duchy of Savoy.

(t) Smyrna, an antient city in the Lesser Asia.

(u) England see p. 91. n. f.

4 Q (w)

(w) Holland, see p. 76. n. c.

(*) Constantinople, see p. 196. n. g.

(y) Rome, see p. 108. n. g.

(z) Bagdat, east long. 43. lat. 33. 20. a strong town of Turkey, on the frontiers of Persia, situate on the river Tigris, in the province of Iraca Arabic, the ancient Chaldea, of which it is the capital, and stands 260 miles north west of Boffora, 340 miles west of Ispahan, and 350 miles south east of Aleppo. It was the capital of the Saracen empire, till the middle of the

thirteenth century, when the Turks made a conquest of it; since which it has been taken and retaken several times by the Persians and Turks; but the Turks made themselves masters of it in the year 1689, and have continued in possession of it ever since. Kouli Khan, or Shah Nadir, the present sovereign of Persia, has besieged it more than once, but been obliged to raise the siege by the Turks.

(aa) India (proper) see p. 213. n. d.

(bb) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.

C H A P. XLVII.

The Apotheosis of some Dutchmen from the Christian Faith. The proclamation of the Korog, and the penalty annexed thereto in Case of Non-Compliance. The Intrepidity and Resolution of an Armenian, his cruel Death, and inhuman Treatment afterwards by the Persians.

The Apotheosis of some Dutchmen from the Christian Faith.

ABout the latter end of May, I took a walk with one Mr. Bakker, who was our director's deputy, into the fields in pursuit of game, but more especially of a certain bird, called in (a) Persia the Morgh-Sacka, that is to say, the water-carrier, which had been observed to hover frequently over the river that runs by the meadow side. We got a sight of him, according to our wish; but he happened to be too high, and at too great a distance for our shot to reach him. I was not a little chagreened at this disappointment, having never seen the bird before, notwithstanding it is often to be met with on the banks of the (b) Wolga; as also at (c) Astracan, and near the shore of the (d) Caspian sea.

This bird is extremely large, and has a capacious pouch which he fills with water; and, if I am rightly informed, he very generously distributes his liquor amongst his brother birds, where he finds they stand in need of it. As we found, however, our expectations balked in that kind of sport,

we had immediate recourse to our nets, with which we dragged out of the river a large quantity of fine fish, which, at our return home in the evening, we made a present of to our director. On the day following there was such a violent hurricane, that it was dangerous to go out of doors.

On the first day of June, three natives of (e) Holland arrived at (f) Ispahan, who had deserted our East-India company's ship, which then rode at anchor in the harbour of (g) Gombroon, and had embraced the Mohammedan religion in hopes of raising their fortune. They found themselves, however, very grossly mistaken in their avaricious scheme; for they were soon reduced to the utmost distress, having met with no soul on the road that would give them the least assistance or relief: nor did they meet, indeed, with any better treatment on their arrival at Ispahan: Heaven, as one would be apt to imagine, being determined to punish them severely for the renunciation of their faith, for filthy lucre. In

In this their most deplorable condition, they presented our director's gate, in which his pity and compassion were to be gored; they had to implore their application, though they obeyed justice, yet they could come again, with their petitions that they might be taken into the company's service most sincerely repentant of their former infidelity and desertion; and to be admitted again, to the bosom of the Christian church, he told it that request, he told it power to grant them; would return to Gombroon upon the notwithstanding they their lives by their would indulge them in their condition, but on no other director there, and desired back again to the (h) that had condition completed, and unanimously they had much rather ing tired, and fervent death, rather than to in the sin, of which adventurously guilty, clazation, they were but comfortably indulgence, they are gratefully to acknowledge with all the testimony they returned to (i) thence were sent to (j) where, beyond their pardon, both desertion.

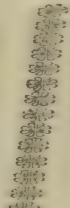
On the fifth instance, busy in drawing a fine sheet-bag, that is of Ispahan; I heard upon listening to it attention, I found it of the Korog.

This outcry is in to all people in general.

ury, when the Turks made a conquest, which it has been taken and times by the Persians and Turks; made themselves masters of it in and have continued in possession of it. Kouli Khan, or Shah Nadir, sovereign of Persia, has besieged it, but been obliged to raise the siege.

(see p. 213, n. d.)

in Asia, see p. 107, n. d.



tion Faith. The prodigious number of converts in Cash of the religion of an Armenian, and afterwards by the

mediate recourse to our nets, we dragged out of the river a quantity of fine fish, which, at our in the evening, we made a present to our director. On the morning there was such a violent storm, that it was dangerous to go

first day of June, three natives and arrived at (s) Ispahan, who our East-India company's ship, rode at anchor in the harbour of Gombroon, and had embraced the religion in hopes of raising themselves. They found themselves very grossly mistaken in their scheme; for they were too remote from the court to give notice of their arrival at Ispahan: Heaven, indeed, with any better treatment, might have been apt to imagine, being disappointed, that they were severely punished for their faith, for filthy lucre.

In

CORNELIUS

1704

In this their most deplorable state and condition, they presented themselves before our director's gate, in hopes of meeting with his pity and compassion; but he ordered them to be gone that moment, and make their application to those whose religion they had so impiously embraced. Though they obeyed his orders at that juncture, yet they ventured soon after to come again, with their earnest supplications that they might be once more entered into the company's service; since they most sincerely repented of their past apostasy and desertion; and humbly petitioned to be admitted again, tho' unworthy, into the bosom of the Christian church; but that request, he told them, was not in his power to grant them; however, if they would return to Gombroon; and throw themselves upon the company's mercy, notwithstanding they had so justly forfeited their lives by their misdemeanors; yet he would indulge them so far, on that condition, but on no other, as to write to the director there, and desire him to send them back again to the (b) East-Indies. With that hard condition they all very readily complied, and unanimously declared, that they had much rather run the risk of being tried, and sentenced to the severest death, rather than to be starved, and perish in the sin, of which they had been so inadvertently guilty. Upon this open declaration, they were not only refreshed, but comfortably clothed; which act of indulgence, they seemed, at least, very gratefully to acknowledge; and soon after, with all the testimonies of unfeigned joy, they returned to Gombroon, and from thence were sent to the Indies accordingly, where, beyond their deserts, they procured their pardon, both for their apostasy and desertion.

The Korog.

On the fifth instant, whilst I was very busy in drawing a survey on the river of Chiaer-baeg, that is to say, the fine alley of Ispahan; I heard a confused noise, and upon listening to it with some degree of attention, I found it was the proclamation of the Korog.

This out-cry is intended to give notice to all people in general, that his majesty is

LE BRUN.

335

1704

near at hand, accompanied by his concubines, and that they must withdraw without the least hesitation, on pain of the severest punishment. Whereupon I removed my quarters amongst the rest, with all the expedition I was capable of; but his majesty past by soon after. He was preceded by an officer on horse-back, who rode full speed, in order to disperse all such, as had no opportunity of getting out of the way in due time; and he instantly came up to me, and directed me to a proper place of retirement. I instantly obeyed his orders, and took a long tour, in order to get into the city again; where all the avenues of the streets, through which the king and his concubines were to pass, were lined with guards, to prevent all persons, without distinction, from passing that way; inasmuch that, it was with no small difficulty that I reached my lodgings.

The very next day I went to the same place, and met with the very same obstruction as before; and, moreover, I perceived, that some of the avenues to the Chiaer-baeg were spread with some certain cloths. When a man happens, on these extraordinary occasions, to be surprised, he must move directly; but it is customary, to give all people previous notice for keeping out of the way, or quitting even his habitation whether by night or by day, as long as the Korog, or proclamation, continues. And for my own part, I have been forced frequently to abandon the Caravanferai, or inn, where I lodged on that particular account.

Not long after this, there arrived two gunners from the Indies, whom Mr. Kaftelyn had sent for, in order to enter into his majesty's service; but when the king was informed of their arrival, he gave them to understand that one of them was sufficient to answer his purpose; and even that one was employed but a very short time, and the salary or wages allowed him for his attendance was so mean and trivial, that one would almost blush to mention the sum. This gunner, indeed, who was first clothed before he was introduced, had no great matters to do; all his business, it

1704

it seemed, was only to shoot at a mark, with some few pièces of cannon; a diversion to which his majesty at that time was a perfect stranger; but the reader is here to observe, the Persians were as long in preparing the requisites for this trivial exercise, as we should be in the erection of a fort. This gunner, indeed, was soon discharged; for he was not duely qualified to hit the taste of the Persians; for they are not to be pleased, unless the party employed be very assiduous, and makes his applications with abundance of humility and respect.

On the seventeenth instant, the moon was in a great eclipse; appeared reddish, and its light was almost totally darkened.

On the twenty-first there were some clouds in the sky, after a series of fine weather, during which, there was nothing like one to be seen; but then they were of a lively blue, without the least gloom or shade; which is no uncommon occurrence in this country.

About the beginning of July the wind began to blow hard, and bleak; but then they were soon succeeded by an excessive heat.

On the third instant, the inhabitants began to open their shops, which for five or six days successively had been close shut up, on account of a solemn mourning that is universally observed at this season. At this particular time, which, if I am not mistaken, is by the Persians called Wagme, all such as have any animosities subsisting between them, endeavour to bury them all, as much as possible, in oblivion, and to renew their former friendships, if it suits with their private interest; but otherwise, their consciences are not so tender but they can retain their resentments.

Much about this time, an unhappy quarrel arose between some of the English agents domestics, and some certain Persians; and from high words they proceeded to hard blows. The Persians, fired with resentment, and vowing to be revenged, indignantly asserted that one of their country-men had been killed by a native of (1)

1704

Armenia, who was retained in the service of that minister; whereupon all the shops in the district wherein he resided, were close shut up.

The populace, animated with the notion of this pretended murder, made their bitter complaint to the high bailiff, who was a native of (2) Georgi, and had been formerly a Christian. This high bailiff, without any orders, procured from his superiors, at once summoned the English agent's interpreter, who by birth was an Armenian, and obliged him to sign a paper, whereby he bound himself either to find out the person who had committed this flagrant crime, or in default thereof to pay a certain fine in money. To this paper the treacherous interpreter very readily set his hand, notwithstanding he was conscious to himself that there was no such outrage committed, and even fixed the murder on one of his own countrymen; which he did with the greater ease, because his master, who by his authority might possibly have appeased the storm, at that time lay sick in his bed. In the interim the Persians cried aloud for vengeance for the death of one of their poor, worthless natives, who had only been baited for his insolent deportment: and they treated the franks (which is the name by which they distinguish all the natives of (3) Europe in general) as murderers, and made their complaints of them accordingly at court. Not satisfied with these rigorous proceedings, they carried, with still greater rage and resentment than before, the effigies of a dead body to the Chiaer-baeg, in order to exasperate and inflame the minds of the common people; and even obliged their own prime ministers to make a formal demand of the pretended murderer, from the English agent, who had sheltered and concealed him.

At the same time, that agent received an order for the discharge of all his Mohammedan domestics in general; whereupon the English required eight days time to take this affair into their consideration; which demand was complied with accordingly.

In the mean time the poor innocent Armenian

1704

Armenian had concealed town of Isphah, where by the agent's perfidious mentioned, who brought officers of justice, and thence to prison: the implicated no ways appeared by it in fragments, instantly disprisoner should be instant into their hands, and compelled to submit. As soon as they had own clothes, they what step to take next him to consign punish who were cooler and than the rest, were charged, and made a king: the major part of being too hot, deliberate posed this motion to v drawing their sabres, in open defiance both But what interested more than all the rest, used their usual conduct over to the Mohammedan added thereto their fair liberty, and an advantage bargain, in case of co their attitudes proved sh for notwithstanding death before his eyes, interplay and resolu their insidious offers, his brother Armenians ced their faith before, sign a compliance or condemned their advice red, be the consequence would never (courage Saviour and his God incensed Persians flew many eyes, and no pinning him, in the m net, of his life, they a case to the great sign king's palace; where of them thinking it his remains enough, number of imprudent

who was retained in the service of the East India Company, and who was afterwards all the shops at which he resided, were

and, animated with the notion of a great murder, made their bid to the high bailiff, who was a Georgian, and had been for many years a high bailiff, and who had procured from his friends a great deal of money, and who had been the English interpreter, who by birth was an Armenian, and who had been obliged to sign a paper, and who had been obliged to bind himself either to find a man who had committed this murder, or in default thereof to pay a great sum of money. To this paper the interpreter very readily set his hand, and he was conscious that there was no such outrage, and even fixed the murder on two countrymen, which he did to save his own skin, because his master, the high bailiff, might possibly have been angry at that time for his death, at that time lay sick in bed, and he was the Persian interpreter for the death of a poor, worthless native, who was a high bailiff for his insolent and they treated the friends of the man by which they differed from the natives of Europe in the natives of Europe in the natives of Europe, and made their command accordingly at court. Not that these rigorous proceedings, with still greater rage and resolution, the officers of a dead man, in order to excite the minds of the command, and even obliged their own officers to make a formal demand for the murder, from the English who had sheltered and con-

at the same time, that agent received a discharge of all his Mohammedan officers in general, and upon which required eight days time to be given into their consideration; and was complied with accordingly.

mean time the poor innocent Armenian

C O R N E L I U S L E B R U N .

337

1704

Armenian had concealed himself in the town of Julpha, where he was betrayed by the agent's perfidious interpreter before-mentioned, who brought him before the officers of justice, and they committed him to prison: the implacable mob, however, no ways appeased by this his unjust confinement, insolently demanded that the prisoner should be instantaneously delivered into their hands, and the officers were compelled to submit.

As soon as they had got him into their own clutches, they consulted together what step to take next, in order to bring him to condign punishment. Some few, who were cooler and more compassionate than the rest, were for having him discharged, and made a present of to the king: the major part of them, however, being too hot, obstinate, and perverse, opposed this motion to the last degree, and drawing their sabres, hauled him away, in open defiance both of law and justice. But what incensed the unruly multitude more than all the rest, was, that they had used their utmost endeavours to bring him over to the Mohammedan persuasion, and added thereto their fair promises of life and liberty, and an advantageous match into the bargain, in case of compliance; but all their artifices proved altogether ineffectual; for notwithstanding he had immediate death before his eyes, yet with the utmost intrepidity and resolution, he rejected all their insidious offers. And when some of his brother Armenians, who had renounced their faith before, exhorted him to feign a compliance only, he heroically contemned their advice, and openly declared, be the consequence ever so fatal, he would never (coward-like) deny his Saviour and his God: upon which the incensed Persians flew upon him, like so many tygers, and not contented with depriving him, in the most unmerciful manner, of his life, they dragged his dead carcase to the great square belonging to the king's palace; where the most inveterate of them thinking it impossible to insult his remains enough, or vent a sufficient number of imprecations on his devoted

head; they tore out his bowels, and threw them away with all the marks of infamy and contempt; nay the very women added fuel to the fire, and could not forbear joining with pleasure in their savage treatment.

In this ignominious manner, died this Christian hero, this faithful servant, who had never abandoned his master during the whole course of his illness, but gave him constant attendance day and night. The name of this unhappy domestic, or martyr, was Gregory Affafoer; and notwithstanding his surprising intrepidity, as above related, and his steadfastness in the Christian religion, he was but a youth under twenty years of age.

The proper officers, however, at last, gave orders for carrying the poor mangled carcase to Julpha, where it was interred in the church of St. Saviour, which is the finest in all that district; and an Armenian merchant erected soon after a sepulchral monument over him, at his own expence, in order to transmit his memory down to latest posterity; and at the same time, to testify that unfeigned affection and friendship, which he bore him before he fell a sacrifice to the fury and resentment of a pack of barbarians.

It is no difficult matter to conceive what a terror this tragical, this barbarous and inhuman murder must infuse into all the strangers in general that resided at Isphahan; and it had such an effect, that but very few of them durst venture out of their habitations for some considerable time, for fear of exposing themselves to the rage and resentment of a merciless multitude, who were drunk, as it were, thro' the connivance which they met with in the commission of so flagitious a crime. It must be acknowledged, indeed, that before this unparalleled outrage, the Persians always paid a peculiar regard both to the English and the Dutch.

As a great part of the company's goods were expected to be brought to Isphahan from Gombron, proper persons were sent to meet them, according to custom, and to convey them into our warehouses.

4 R

And

1704

1704

And this method is taken in order to prevent the Persians from insulting those who bring them, and turning them out of their way; which, as it was nothing more than common, they took care to do it at this juncture.

Our people, perceiving they were not only insulted but attacked by a parcel of barbarians, and their bales thrown down upon the ground, were determined to do themselves justice, and oppose them to the utmost of their power.

In this fray, it unluckily happened, that the son of the king's first physician, was present, and received some few blows with a cudgel. As the Persians at this time were the weakest party, they had immediate recourse to complaints, and demanded satisfaction for the injuries that they pretended to have sustained; and our director, to whom they made their applications for redress, promised that justice should be done them, after a proper examination had been made in so important a matter: whereupon, they very readily withdrew; but the next day resumed their complaints: and one of his domestics being proved guilty of an assault, he caused him to be secured in their presence, and ordered that he should be bastonaded on the soles of his feet: however, no sooner was the punishment begun to be inflicted on the delinquent, but his accusers interceded for him, and kindly declared that they were perfectly satisfied. This gentle proceeding was widely distant from that which they had exerted but some few days before against the domestic of the English agent, who had been guilty of nothing more than applying the cudgel a little too warmly on the back of a worthless, insignificant rascal, which, however, very unhappily cost the poor, innocent domestic his life.

which they are sent thither by their respective powers, to maintain the dignity of their character with a high hand, and not to put up with the least affront, or suffer themselves to be any ways insulted without some condign punishment inflicted on the aggressors. Of all the ministers, with whom I have had the honour at times to be personally acquainted, there is no man that ever kept up his publick character better, than one Mr. Hooghkame, with whom I travelled to (n) Constantinople many years ago. He was some time after that, sent by the East-India company into Persia, and was there universally esteemed. He was once, however, embroiled in a very troublesome affair, with one of the principal grandees, and a favourite at court, whose domestics, it seems, had some quarrel with those of my friend. Upon their coming to blows, the Persian grandee laid his hand upon his sabre; upon that our minister, with a pistol in his hand, protested, that if he offered to draw his sword, he would shoot him that moment through the head: whereupon the grandee gave orders to his servants to be quiet, and immediately withdrew. And it must be owned, that he acted the prudent part in so doing; for his party was much the weakest; and the minister was attended by some European soldiers, against whom the Persians would scarcely have been able to maintain his charge. Besides those soldiers took care to support their master's dignity by making a pompous figure, and by a resolution that removed all obstacles in their way; and in so scornful and impetuous a nation, such a conduct is highly requisite.

And accordingly, the Persians shewed such a deference and esteem for him; that wherever he appeared, his passage was never after obstructed; nay the court and the king himself paid as great a regard for him as the Europeans themselves, and to this very day they mention his name with honour.

Occasional

1704

1470

Occa

- (a) Persia, see p. 64.
 (1) Wolga, or Volga
 (c) Astracan, see p.
 (d) Caspian Sea, see p.
 (e) Holland, see p. 7
 (f) Ispahan, or Spahan

The English Agent
 A Journal of
 an Account of
 Persia's little
 Majesty's Army
 Notice of (b)
 Serpentine of a
 Sugar-Russian.

About this time,
 but in the so to
 grand festival, called
 that is to say, the so
 father of the divine
 title conferred by it
 King, who was put to
 Some short time a
 another Xozog, in it
 the royal palace, with
 all who resided with
 court to go directly
 habitations, as well
 in any public caverns
 same orders were issued
 two days after that,
 aimed to divert himself
 of his place, in company
 lines.

The music on this
 ceed in the evening, and
 ed playing all that night

are sent thither by their re-
s, to maintain the dignity of
er with a high hand, and not
in the least affront, or suffer
o be any ways insulted with-
indign punishment inflicted on
s. Of all the ministers, with
e had the honour at times to
acquainted, there is no man
pt up his public character
one Mr. Hoghkame, with
velled to (n) Constantinople
ago. He was some time after
the East-India company into
was there universally esteemed.
ce, however, embroiled in a
ome affair, with one of the
nders, and a favourite at
domestics, it seems, had some
those of my friend. Upon
to blows, the Persian grande
ad upon his sabre; upon that
s, with a pistol in his hand,
that if he offered to draw his
would shoot him that moment
ead: whereupon the grande
to his servants to be quiet, and
withdrew. And it must
that he acted the prudent part
for his party was much the
nd the minister was attended
ropean soldiers, against whom
would scarcely have been able
his charge. Besides those fol-
care to support their master's
making a pompous figure, and
ion that removed all obstacles
and in so scornful and impo-
n, such a conduct is highly re-

1704

CORNELIUS LEBRUN.

339

1470

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

1704

- (a) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.
(b) Wolga, or Volga, see p. 28. n. f.
(c) Astracan, see p. 62. n. i.
(d) Caspian sea, see p. 66. n. q.
(e) Holland, see p. 76. n. c.
(f) Ispahan, or Spahawn, see p. 109. n. m.

- (g) Gomron, or Gombroon, see p. 262. n. w.
(b) India, (proper) see p. 213. n. d.
(i) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.
(k) Georgia, in Asia, see p. 107. n. d.
(l) Europe, see 127. n. dd.
(m) Julia, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. x.
(n) Constantinople, see p. 196. n. g.

C H A P. XLVIII.

The English Agent dies. The Ceremonies observed at his Interment. A succinct Account of the Preparations made for a public Rejoicing on Account of the remarkable Intermarriage of the King of (a) Persia's little Daughter of three Years of Age to the Grandson of his Majesty's Aunt, who was but five. The Manner observed by the Natives of (b) Armenia at a Time of Mourning. A short Description of an antient Fortrefs: As also, of the Mountain called Sagte-Ruftan.

ABout this time, the Persians were busy in the solemnization of their grand festival, called Babafœds-ja-adier, that is to say, the feast of the invincible father of the divine worship, a particular title conferred by them on one of their saints, who was put to death by Omar.

The Persians
grand festi-
val, called
Babafœds-
ja-adier.

Some short time after this, there was another Korog; in the parts adjacent to the royal palace, with express orders for all who resided within the verge of the court to go directly out of their private habitations, as well as those, who lodged in any public caravanseras, or inns. The same orders were issued out again about two days after that, his majesty being inclined to divert himself without the walls of his palace, in company with his concubines.

Another
Korog.

The music, on this occasion, commenced in the evening, and the band continued playing all that night and the next day,

3

without intermission, till the setting of the sun; because the grand festival, called Mohammed was to be solemnized on the twentieth.

On the twenty first of August Mr. Owen, the English company's agent, died in the fortieth year of his age. He was a gentleman of strict virtue and honour, and universally beloved. The very next day, we paid him the last testimonies of our sorrow and respect, and attended his remains to the place allotted for the interment of all Christians in the following manner.

The death
of the En-
glish agent.

Our director's deputy (as the director himself happened to be confined to his chamber through a severe fit of the gout) went by break of day to the habitation of the deceased, accompanied by all our director's family: there went fourteen horses likewise, two whereof were led, covered with black cloth, and preceded by

His funeral.

Occasional

1704

a trumpet with thirteen runners. The master of the horse to the deceased appeared, in the first place, accompanied by his interpreter, and several others; followed by three sumpter-horses, covered with black cloth, and with plumes of white feathers on their heads; then went fourteen persons on horse-back, attended by ten or a dozen servants, all on foot, with a trumpet before the sumpter-horses; after these, appeared those belonging to our director; after them, the body of the deceased, covered with white silk; and a black velvet pall thrown over it. It was deposited on a bier, which was carried by four bearers, who were at proper times relieved; as the place of his interment was at some considerable distance from his habitation. Next after the corpse went the deputy of the deceased, attended by ours, and by all the Dutch, amongst whom I was one; as also, by father Antonio Deltiero, the resident there for the king of (e) Portugal, and all the English Armenian merchants who were then resident at (d) Julpha. We proceeded in this order through the Chiaer-baeg. Each of us had a white silk scarf thrown over our shoulders, which was knotted at the bottom, and hung down to the ground. These were given us at the deceased's house. Each of us had likewise another scarf of white gauze given us, which were fastened on our hats. There were some of the company, indeed, who had no hats, and those wore their gauze scarves around their waist. The whole procession consisted of forty persons on horse-back, and about thirty servants on foot. The French were in waiting for us at the burial-ground, accompanied by a small number of Monks, and the body was interred about seven o'clock, at which time the English company's deputy read over the funeral service, according to the custom observed in (e) England. When that service was over, each of the company threw in a handful of earth into the grave which was filled up afterwards by the proper diggers. We returned in the same order as we came; and were entertained at the house of the deceased, where those who came back

with us were served with scarves, like those which had been given us before. One was sent likewise to our deputy, who (as we have observed) was indisposed. After a very genteel entertainment the company withdrew.

Some few days after the solemnization of this funeral, I saw all the Bazaris, or shops, embellished with little bands of parti-coloured paper, tinsel, several little figures, and other bagatelles. All the shops in the evening were illuminated with little lamps; and in divers places, the burghers, or citizens, were under arms.

These declarations of public joy were occasioned by the intermarriage of a little prince's, the king's daughter, who was but three years of age, with the grandson of his majesty's aunt, who was but five. And these illuminations, &c. were made on account of the young prince's being at that time conducted to the palace of that lady, where she was to receive her future education.

This, perhaps, is the only instance that can be produced of a marriage of this nature, between children who are Persians by extraction. Such matches, indeed, may be frequently met with amongst the Armenians. That lady, his majesty's aunt, and sister to the king his father, is called Zynab-Beggum. She intermarried with the son of Soltan-Galicha, who was a great favourite of Abbas the Second.

On the twenty second of August, I went to Julpha, where I tarried till the twenty sixth; a particular day, whereon the Armenians solemnize their grand festival called Soerp-gaets, that is to say, the feast of the cross, in commemoration of Christ's cross, which was discovered on Mount (f) Calvary, by St. Helen, who was the mother of Constantine the Great.

In order therefore to the solemnization thereof, their wives, about two or three hours before break of day, assemble themselves together at the burial-ground, appointed for the interment of Christians only, and take care to bring with them, a sufficient quantity of wood, coals, tapers, and incense. When they are thus got together, they kindle fires at but a small distance

1704

distance from the sepulchre of their deceased friend upon which they set and kept continually into their fires; making the most hideous scene of themselves to the living themselves on the day he down in grave with more or less fervour proportion to that which they owed their of the living. Some of these themselves on the day parted husbands, who anxiety to hold within out on the cold stone tears. Such amongst flourishing circumstance high birth and illustrious tomb-stone with five and such such heavy as, if sincere, would obdurate heart, and in their affliction.

As my natural curiosity to be a spectator of this holy solemnity, I set ground, accompanied interpreter, with whom hours before break of festivity assembled at his there, and at the measures that were taken that solemn occasion turned at some confusion them, the whole agitation, as the ruins of a reduced to ashes by fire and the burial-ground foot of ground to which who were so happy a had fled for religious night, with links at tressed friends or relatives their substance upon inevitable, in families. Notwithstanding at home, whilst employed in this pouring out their

1704
served with leaves, like those
en given us before. One
wife to our deputy, who
observed) was indisposed,
general entertainment the
drew.

days after the solemnization
I, I saw all the Bazar, or
filled with little bands of
paper, tinsel, several little fi-
at baguettes. All the shops
were illuminated with little
a divers places, the bachelors,
ere under arms.

ceremonies of public joy were
the intermarriage of a little
king's daughter, who was but
age, with the grandson of
aunt, who was but five.
immortals, &c. were made
if the young prince's being
conducted to the place of
here she was to receive her
son.

perhaps is the only instance that
nd of a marriage of this na-
a children who are Persians
Such matches, indeed, may
met with amongst the Al-
nat lady, his majesty's aunt,
the king his father, is called
mm. She intermarried with
Iran-Galefi, who was a great
blas the Second.

entry second of August, I went
where I tarried till the twenty
icular day, whereas the Al-
nize their grand festival cel-
as, that is to say, the feast of
commemoration of Christ's
was discovered on Mount
by St. Helen, who was the
Constantine the Great.

therefore to the solemnization
wives, about two or three
break of day, assemble them-
er at the burial-ground, ap-
the interment of Christians
se care to bring with them,
quantity of wood, coals, tapers,
When they are thus got
ey kindle fires at but a small
distance

CORNELIUS LE BRUN.

341

distance from the sepulchral monuments
of their deceased friends and relations;
upon which they set up lighted tapers,
and kept continually throwing incense
into their fires; making at the same time
the most hideous lamentations, and address-
ing themselves to the Manes of those who
lie down in peace within their graves,
with more or less fervency and zeal, in
proportion to that love and affection
which they owed them when in the land
of the living. Some of them even pro-
strate themselves on the tombs of their de-
parted husbands, which they seem with
ardency to fold within their arms, and pour
out on the cold stone a whole flood of
tears. Such amongst them as are in
flourishing circumstances, or persons of
high birth and distinction, will decorate a
tomb-stone with five or six several tapers,
and fetch such heavy sighs and groans,
as, if sincere, would melt the most
obdurate heart, and tempt one to partake
in their affliction.

As my natural curiosity inclined me
to be a spectator of this grand, tho' melan-
choly solemnity, I set out for the burial-
ground, accompanied by the son of our
interpreter, with whom I lodged, about two
hours before break of day. I was per-
fectly astonished at the sight of the tombs
there, and at the prodigious number of
mourners that were assembled together on
that solemn occasion: and whilst I con-
tinued at some considerable distance from
them, the whole appeared to my imagina-
tion, as the ruins of a town that had been
reduced to ashes by some destructive fire;
and the burial-ground in particular, as a
spot of ground to which those inhabitants
who were so happy as to escape the flames,
had fled for refuge, in the dead of the
night, with links and other proper lights,
in order to find out, if possible, their dis-
tressed friends or relations, or the remains of
their substance unconsumed; like persons
inconsolable, in short, and in the deepest
distress. Notwithstanding the husbands
keep at home, whilst their wives are thus
employed in this frightful service, and
pouring out their most pitious lamenta-

1704
tions; yet I observed, that there were some
men amongst them, though their number
was comparatively small, and some priests
likewise, who offered to assist such with
their supplications, and other acts of devo-
tion, as were willing to pay a pecuniary con-
sideration, which was more or less, as their
circumstances would admit. The poorer
sort will bestow sometimes six-pence upon
them: a substantial citizen's lady will deposit
perhaps twelve-pence, and a person of di-
stinction will advance in proportion to her
dignity and station.

And as these priests in particular are
drest all in black, they make an odd fan-
tastical group amongst a parcel of women
in their white veils. The number of
women, who resort to this Christian burial-
place, on this solemn occasion, amounts,
for the most part, to three thousand and
upwards; and the number of little fires
that are thus kindled, and thus incessantly
fed with incense, raises such a smoke as
spreads itself as far as Ispahan. Notwith-
standing this solemnity was a night-scene;
yet I took a draught of it, in the best man-
ner I was able; and the spot I pitched up-
on for my stand was that part by the tomb-
stone of our director's late deceased con-
sort, which fronted the city; a representa-
tion whereof the reader will find in Plate
(No. 102.) hereunto annexed.

Pl. 102.

The ceremony continued till about two
in the morning. Upon my return, I found
the way crowded with people of all ranks
and degrees; and met with several ladies
who were going to pay the tombs a second
visit.

No sooner was the sun up, but the popu-
lace thronged to the same place of ren-
dezvous, but with no other view than to
smoke a sober pipe or two, and spend
the remainder of the day in such different
amusements as they thought proper.

In the evening of the last day of August,
I went to our director's, in order to go
with his deputy, to the mountain called
Koesoffa, where lie the ruins of an antient
fortress. We set out on the first of Sep-
tember about four in the morning, and by
seven reached one part of that mountain,

where

4 S

1704

where we were obliged to dismount, because our horses could carry us no farther. My companion, who took but little delight in walking, left me there, and went to the Christian burial-ground, in order to wait for my return. At about eight o'clock, I went up the mountain, accompanied by a huntsman and a servant of our director's, who were provided with fire-arms; and by ten we arrived at an old gate-way, by one side whereof lay the ruins of a wall, which in times past extended to the northward quite to the foot of the mountain, in that place where it is steepest. This gate was more worn out by abundance on the left-hand than on the right. The reader will find a representation of it in Plate (No. 103) hereto annexed.

At the distance of about a quarter of a league from hence, we met with the ruins of another structure, which was totally demolished, though they assured me it had once been a stable. From thence I perceived several fragments of an antient wall which extended a considerable way southward upon the top, or summit of the hill from east to west, and to the northward towards the city, which stands but at a small distance from it. It might, indeed, have passed for a kind of fortrefs by nature, without the aid or assistance of any art whatever, being extremely steep from top to bottom; and to confess the truth, it never had any wall on that side.

About eleven o'clock we reached the very summit, but not without some toil and fatigue. There I discovered the ruins of a building, which had been no less than eight and twenty paces in length, though very little of it was at that time remaining. The wall was four feet thick at least, and continues still pretty lofty in some places; where are the remains of some arcades still to be seen within. The summit, or top of this mountain, likewise, is no more than twenty eight paces in breadth from north to south, and sixty four in length from east to west, and falls sloping away to the eastward.

1704

As to the rest, it extends in length to the southward, from whence the antient walls of the fortrefs, which were there formerly as they appear to the northward, are still to be seen; of which the reader will find a representation in Plate (No. 104.) hereto annexed.

Pl. 104.

I took the draught of all this with greater care and exactness than usual; because there are some travellers who insist, that Darius was resident in this fortrefs when Alexander attacked his army in the plain a second time. I went down thither about noon, and there to the southward I made a draught of the outward ruins that are still subsisting of this structure, where are still to be seen two semi-circles, in the form of towers.

Pl. 105.

In the Plate (No. 105.) hereto annexed, the reader, on turning his eye to the rock, may visibly discern the very spot of ground whereon this fortrefs was first erected.

The huntsman, whom I took with me for my guide, would fain have gone down the mountain on the north side, as it was by much the shortest way; and used all the motives he could think of, to induce me to follow him; but the rock appeared to me so steep, and so much like a precipice, that my courage failed me; and I durst not indulge my curiosity so far, as to venture the breaking my bones in the adventure. I could not, however, with all my persuasions, prevent my other attendant from following his example, which he severely repented in but a few minutes after; for I had scarce lost sight of my two fool-hardy companions, but I found the last was obliged to stop; and I could hear him bawl out to me at a distance, for Gods-sake, Sir, do not presume to follow us. Where he stopt, he was forced to continue for some considerable time, being incapable of stirring one foot either backwards or forwards. I advised him to be as cautious and careful as possible; but of two dangers, to attempt the climbing

ing up again, rather than follow a servant who delights in the irregularity of a fool, and for my own part according to the old Persian way about walled houses; and accordingly take a tour round about least to the eastward, betwixt the mountains that it is above-mentioned, as the between my friend and in whose case we had been When I had rested for some time after fatigue, we returned a resolution to visit the several other sanctuaries, as I intended to draw the traveller's attention; determined to take my lord and the city towards September.

Accordingly, we set for the mountain of Tegeran.

lies a league and an half city; and on the summit we met with the ruins of a building, first founded by a Persian warrior, of very large dimensions. At the foot of this mountain, wherein there remarkable springs, the keep continually trilled of the rock. A great (8) Indians, who are grieved by the title of annually, on April-day, to this mountain, in a grand festival, in con-

Occa.

- (a) Persia, see p. 6.
- (b) Armenia, see p.
- (c) Portugal, see p.
- (d) Julia, or Japhia

rest, it extends in length
thward, from whence the
of the fortress, which were
ly as they appear to the
are still to be seen; of
reader will find a represen-
te (No. 104.) hereto an-
1704

a draught of all this with
and exactness than usual;
are some travellers who
atus was resident in this for-
Alexander attacked his army
a second time. I went
s about noon, and there to
rd I made a draught of
us that are still subsisting
are, where are still to be
in-circles, in the form of

ate (No. 105.) hereto an-
reader, on turning his eye
may vividly discern the very
ad wherein this fortress was

man, whom I took with me
e, would fain have gone
ountain on the north side,
much the shortest way;
he motives he could think
e me to follow him; but
eared to me to sleep, and
a precipice, that my coun-
; and I durst not indulge
so far, as to venture the
bones in the adventure,
however, with all my per-
vent my other attendant
g his example, which he
ied in but a few minutes
oad scarce lost sight of my
y companions, but I found
bliged to stop; and I could
out to me at a distance,
Sir, do not presume to fol-
ere he stop, he was forced
r some considerable time,
of stirring me foot either
owards. I advised him to
s and careful as possible;
gers, to attempt the climb-
ing

ing up again, rather than to follow his
fellow-servant who descended with the
intrepidity of a fool, and the agility of a
cat. For my own part, I thought,
according to the old proverb, that the
farthest way about was the nearest way
home; and accordingly, I chose rather to
take a tour round about for two leagues at
least to the eastward, between the moun-
tains; inasmuch that it was past three
o'clock before I reached the burial-ground
above-mentioned, as the spot agreed on
between my friend and I for our meeting,
in whose care we had left our horses.

When I had rested and refreshed my-
self for some time after my danger and
fatigue, we returned to the city, with a
resolution, to visit the next day some such
other curiosities, as I imagined worthy of
a traveller's attention; especially as I was
determined to take my leave of my land-
lord and the city towards the latter end of
September.

Tagte-
Rustan.

Accordingly, we set out by day-break
for the mountain of Tagte-Rustan, which
lies a league and an half at least from the
city; and on the summit or top thereof
we met with the ruins of a particular
building, first founded by an able and ex-
perienced warrior, of whom there are
very large encomiums upon record.

At the foot of this mountain there is a
grotto, wherein there are three or four
remarkable springs, the waters whereof
keep continually trickling down the sides
of the rock. A great number of the
(g.) Indians, who are known and distin-
guished by the title of Banians, resort an-
nually, on April-day, or soon after at least,
to this mountain, in order to solemnize a
grand festival, in commemoration of a

certain holy hermit, who for many years
successfully resided in a cell not far distant
from the rock, if not a cavern of it; and,
indeed there is for the most part, some
one dervise, that is to say, some one St.
or another, that makes it his place of
abode. This grotto is filled with slips of
stuffs of all sorts of colours, which are
brought hither by persons labouring under
some severe affliction or other, for the re-
lief whereof they resort to these waters,
as is a custom generally observed (as I have
hinted already) by all the inhabitants of
the eastern nations. The reader, in Plate
(No. 106) will find an exact representa-
tion of this grotto.

About half a league from this place, on
that side which fronts the city, is a certain
mountain, from whence the Persians
extract those hard, blue stones, with
which they erect their sepulchral monu-
ments.

I saw several of them myself thrown
down from the top of the mountain di-
rectly on the plain, without the least visi-
ble damage; but such as are of the larger
size are rolled down those sides of it which
are steep, indeed, but then they have a
gradual descent.

From hence there is a very fine prospect
to the westward between the mountains
and the plain, not only of a number of
handsome villages, but of several spacious
gardens intermixed, which have a fine
effect.

The reader will find I have hereto an-
nexed a representation of it, together with
the mountain, on the top whereof stands
Rustan-house. Having thus gratified my
curiosity, I returned, well-pleased to the
city.

Occasional Remarks on the preceding Chapter.

- (a) Persia, see p. 64. n. o.
(b) Armenia, see p. 198. n. g.
(c) Portugal, see p. 260. n. m.
(d) Julfa, or Julpha, see p. 262. n. x.

(e) England, see p. 91. n. f.

(f) Calvary Mount, near Jerusalem, see
p. 85. n. d.

(g) India, (proper) see p. 213. n. d.

F I N I S.

18

THE

PROCEEDINGS OF THE

ANNUAL MEETING OF THE

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION

FOR THE ADVANCEMENT OF

SCIENCE

HELD AT THE UNIVERSITY OF

CHICAGO, ILL., IN 1893

EDITED BY

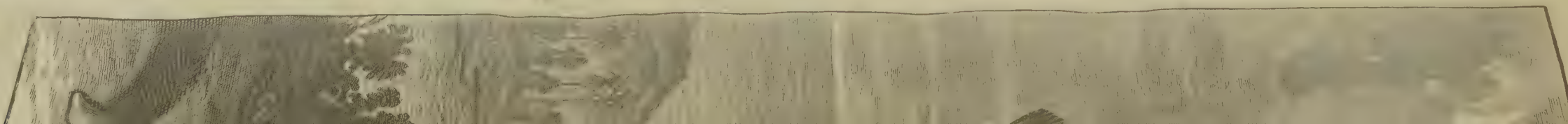
JOHN D. COVILLE

CHICAGO: PUBLISHED BY THE

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

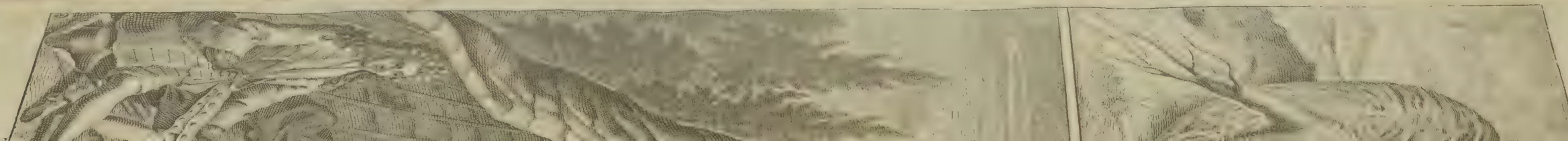
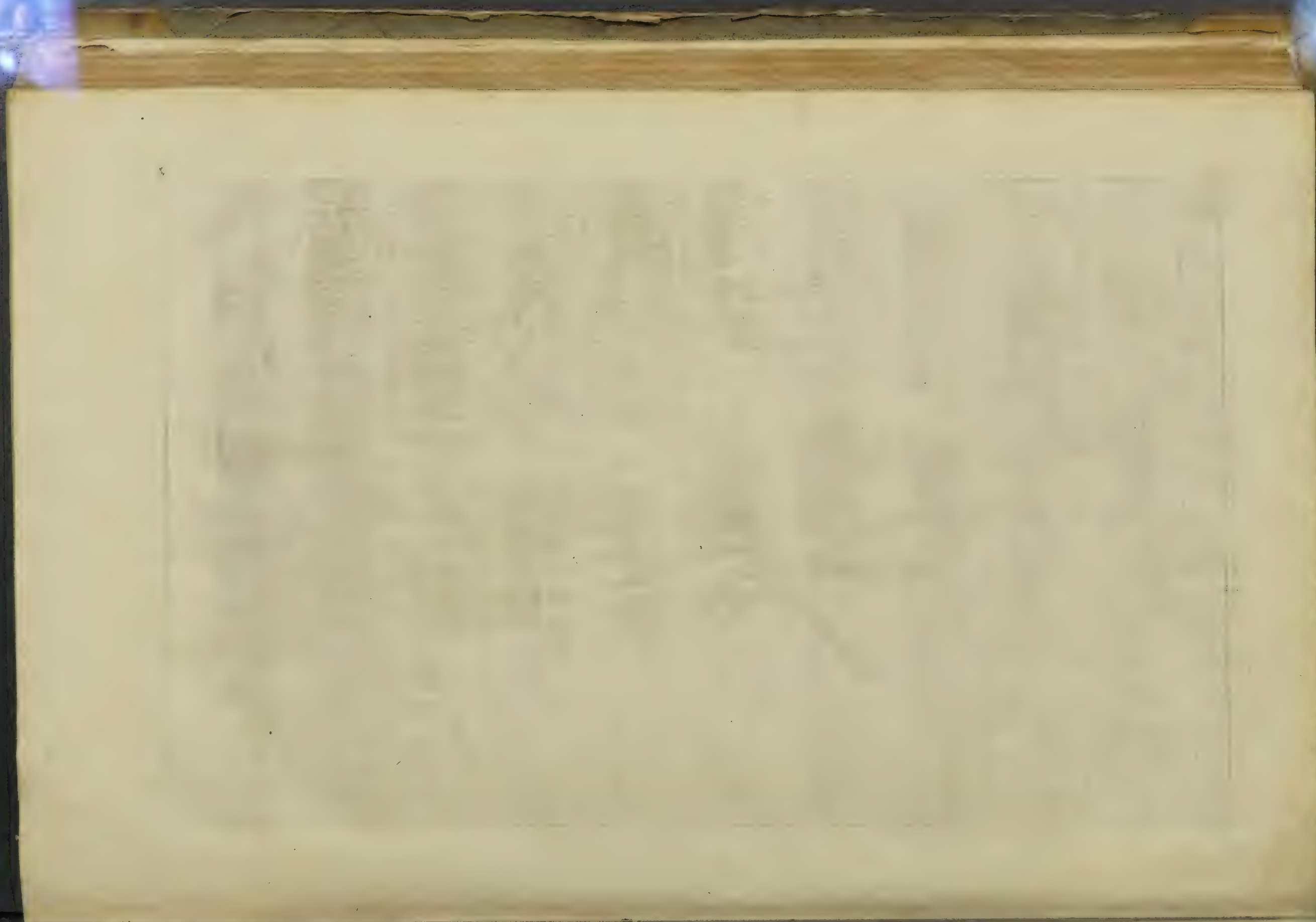
1894

1894



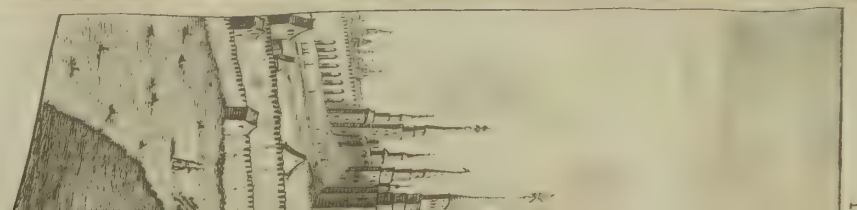
A WOMAN OF MEXICO.







TENTE DES SAMOJEDES EN DEDANS.

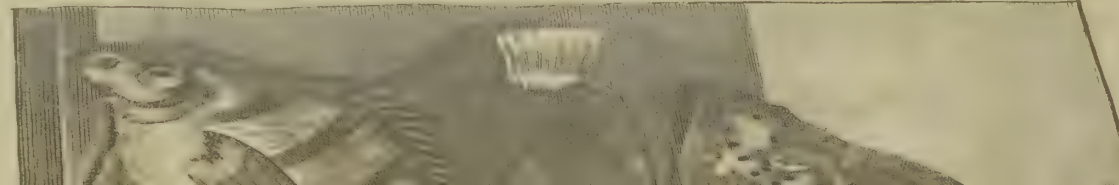
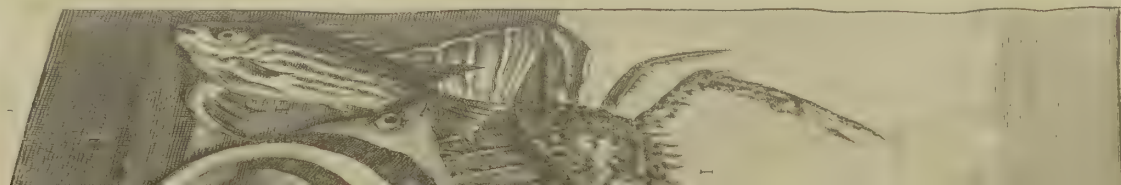


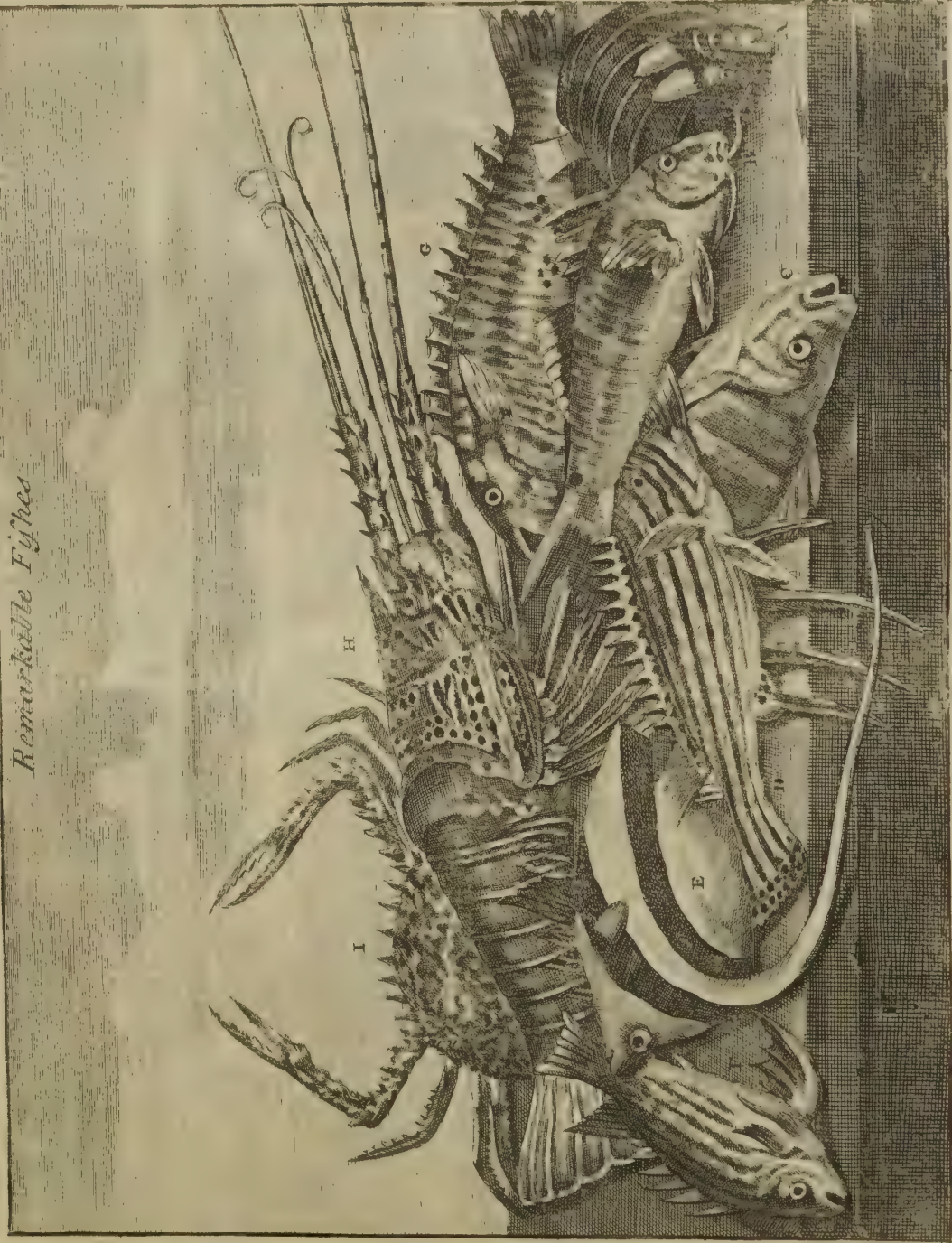


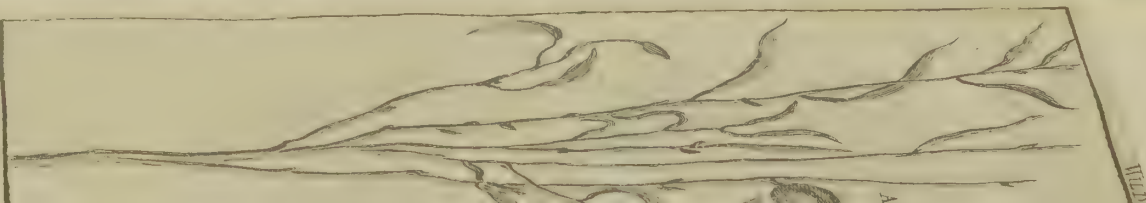
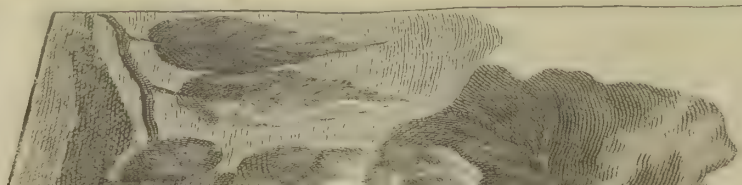
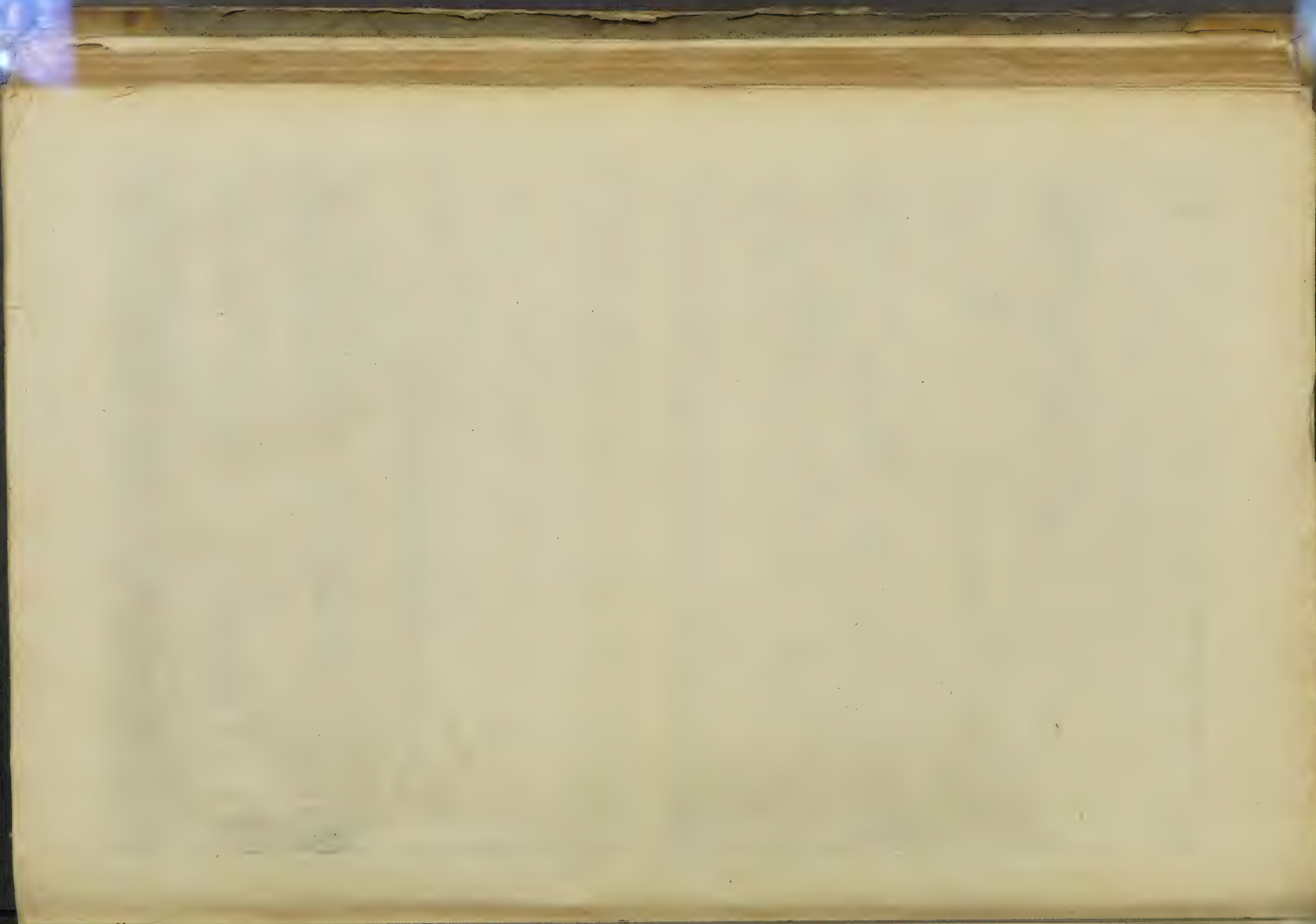
THE CASTLE OF MOSKOW.

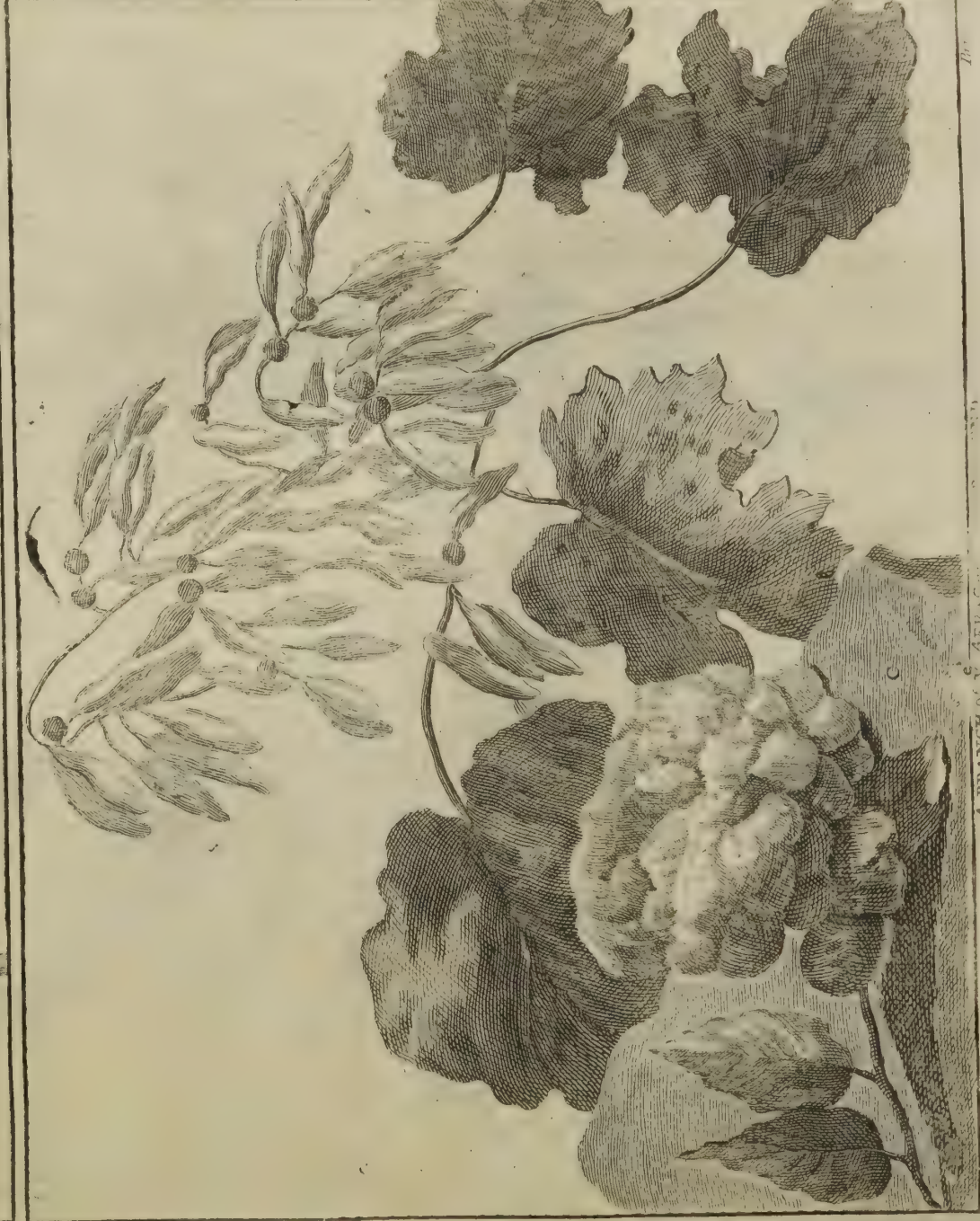
Page 53



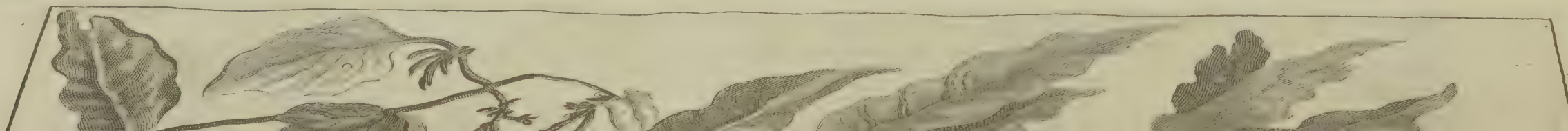
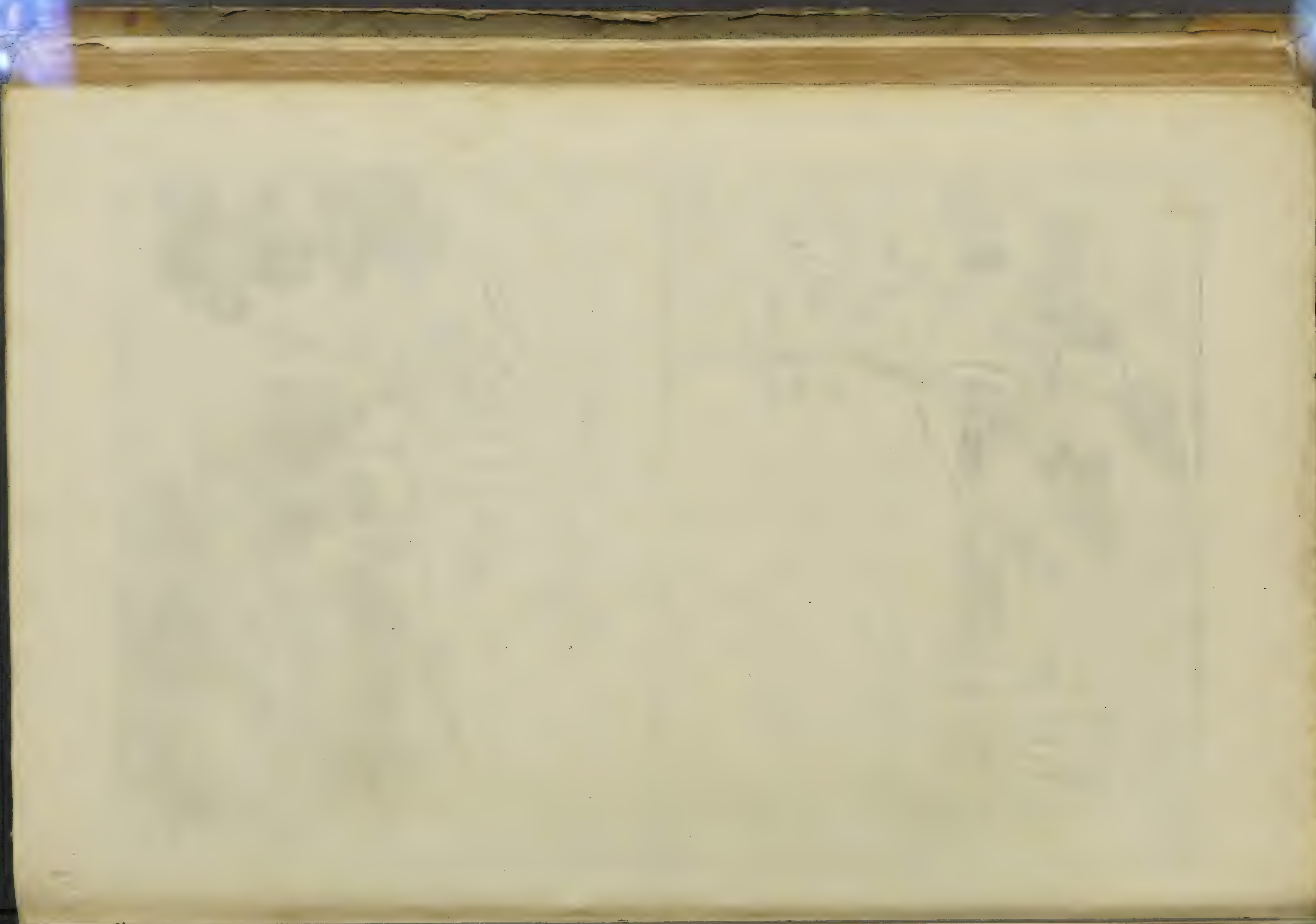






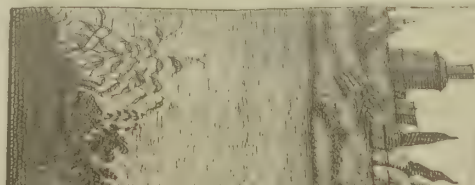


A BRANCH OF W. AMER.



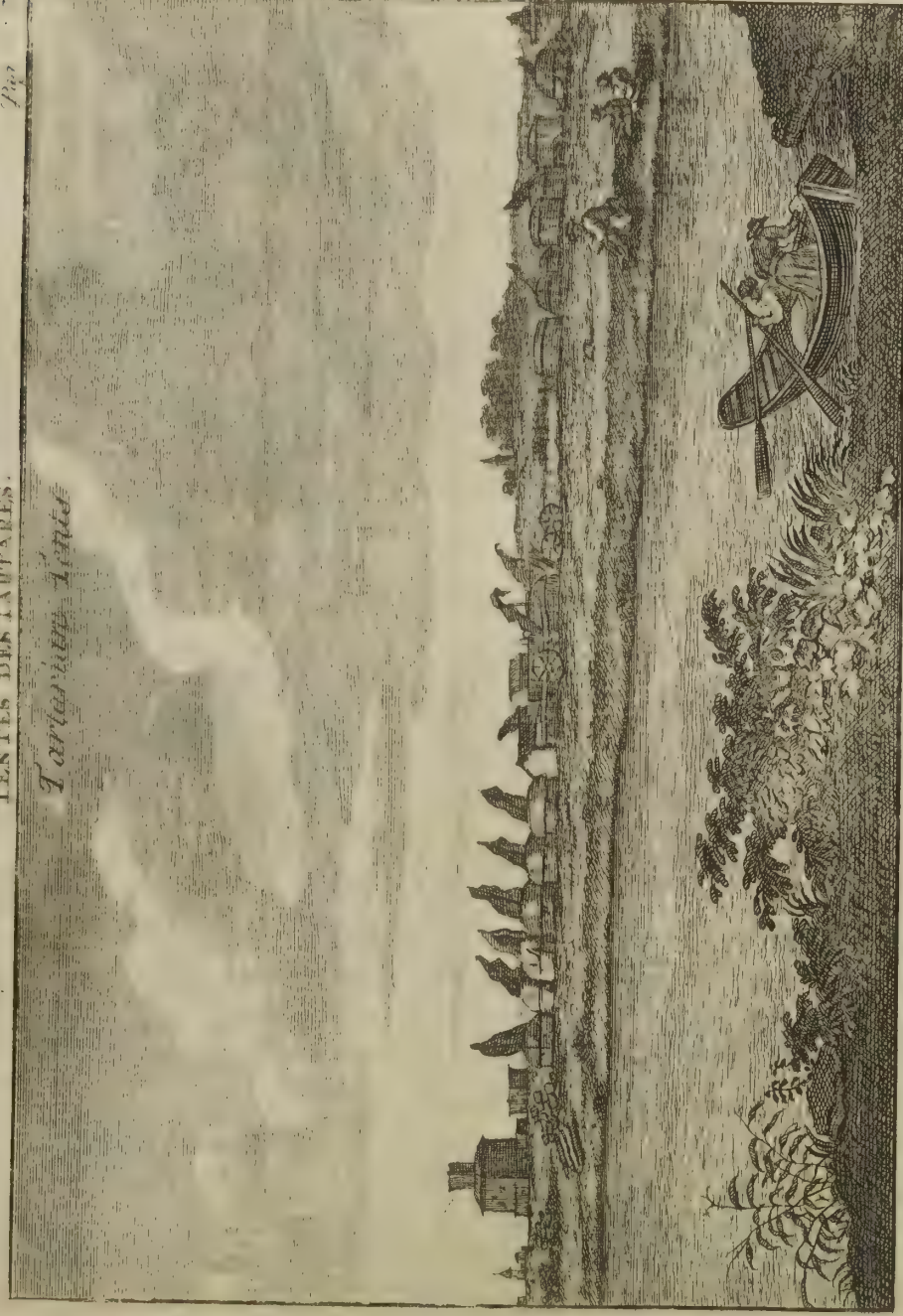
26.
The Indian Coffee & the leaves of a wild Tree



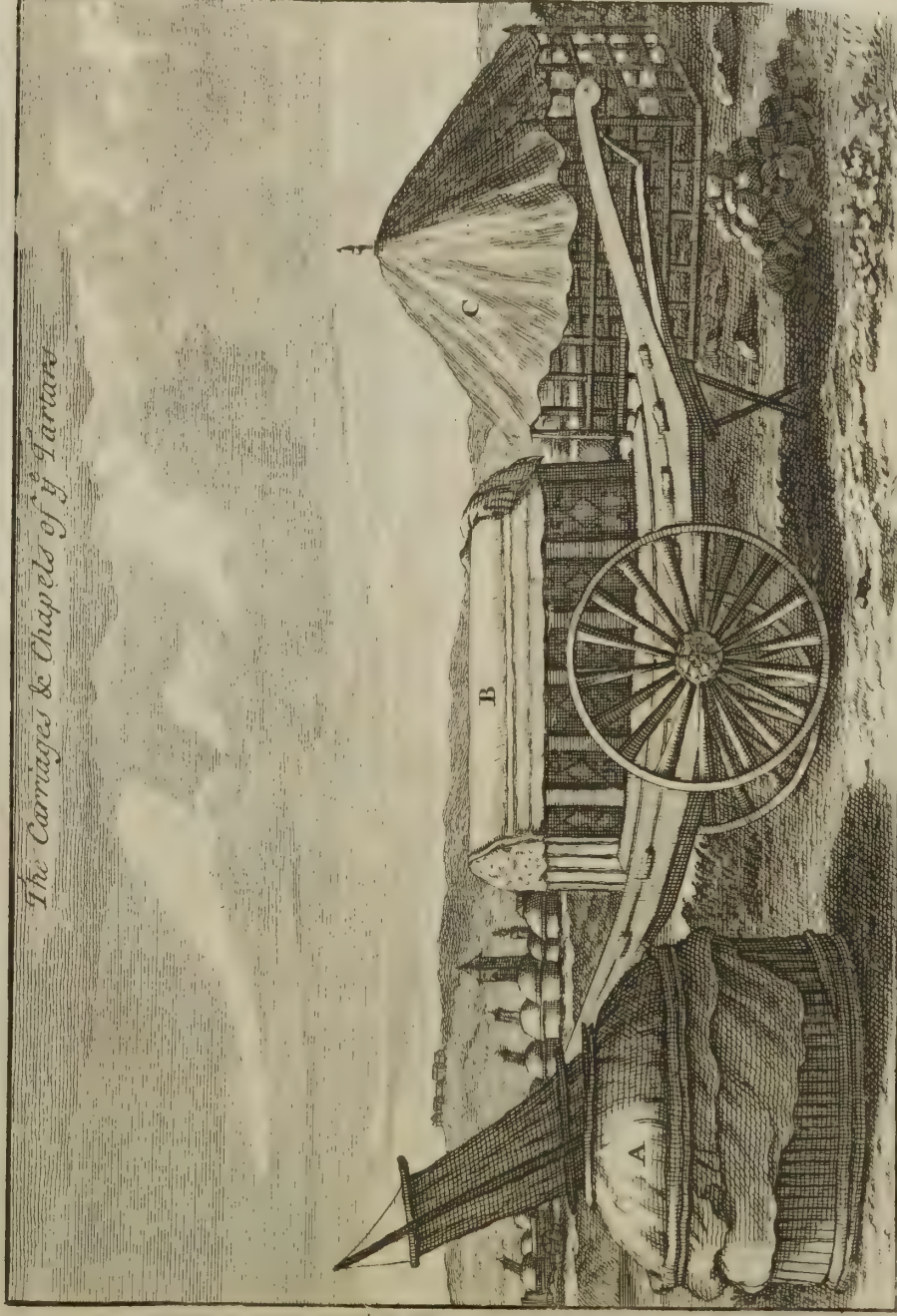


TENTES DES TARTARES.

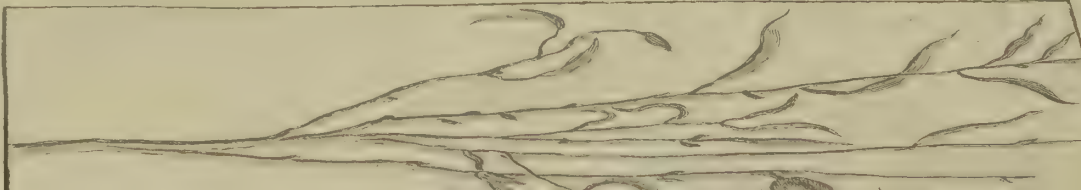
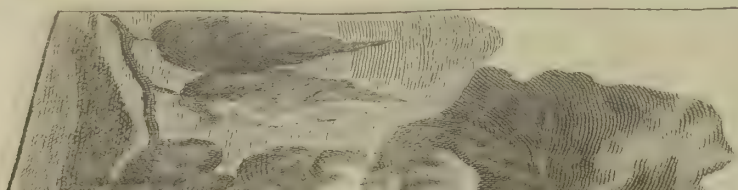
Tartar tents.

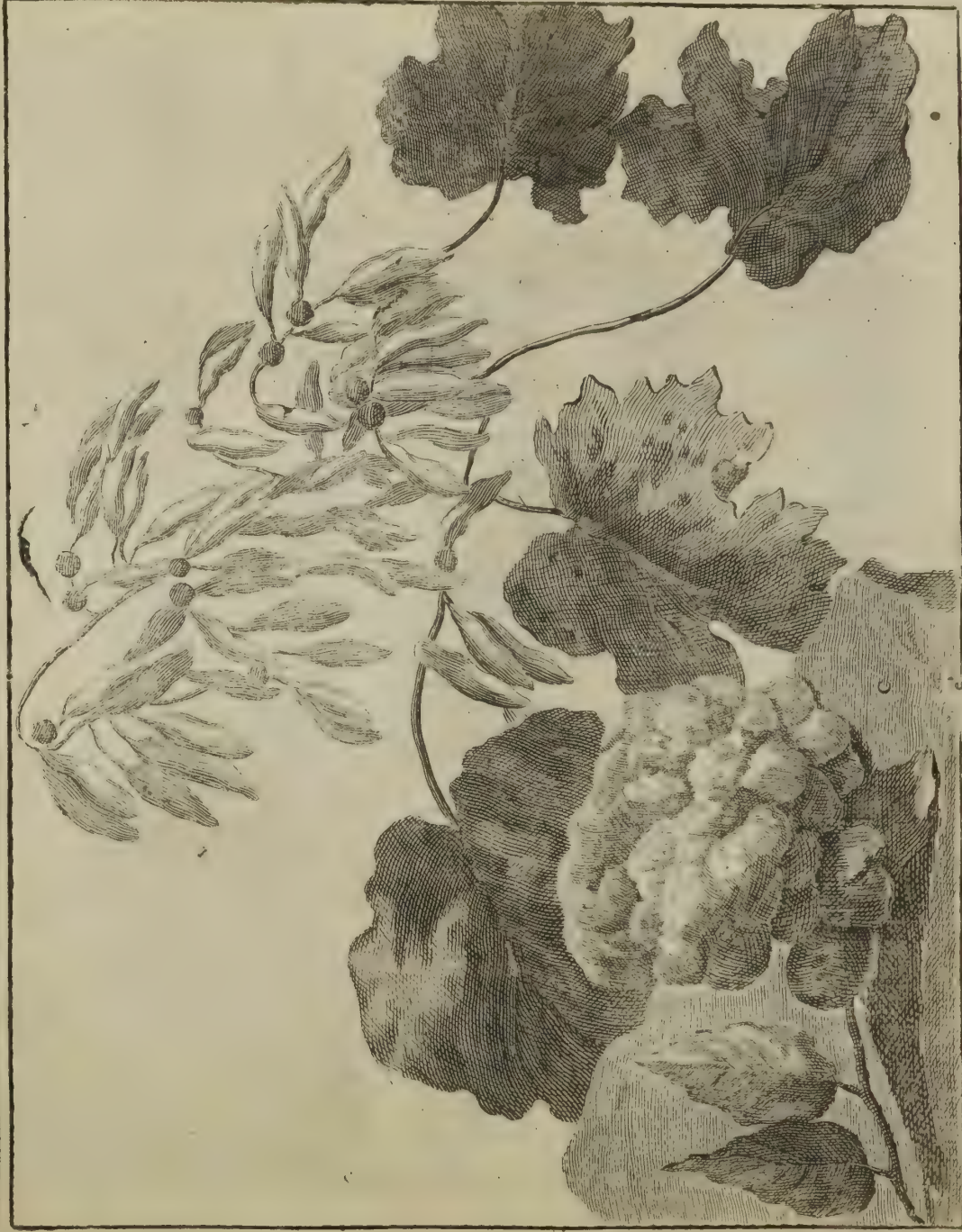


The Carriages & Chapels of the Tartars.

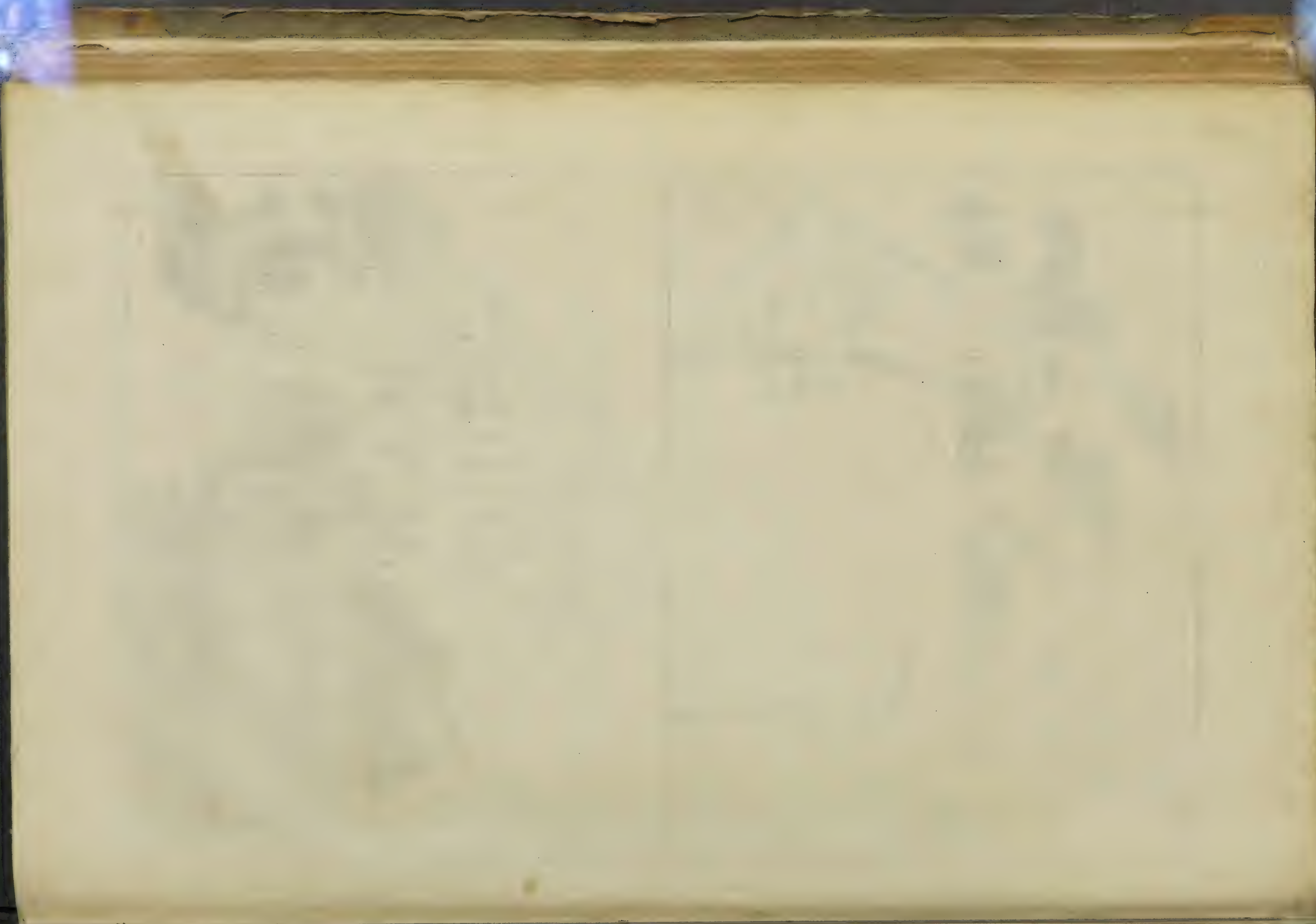


CHARIOTS & CHAPELLES DES TARTARES.





A BRANCH OF ABRAG.



BAPLE-KAMINIE, FRUIT.



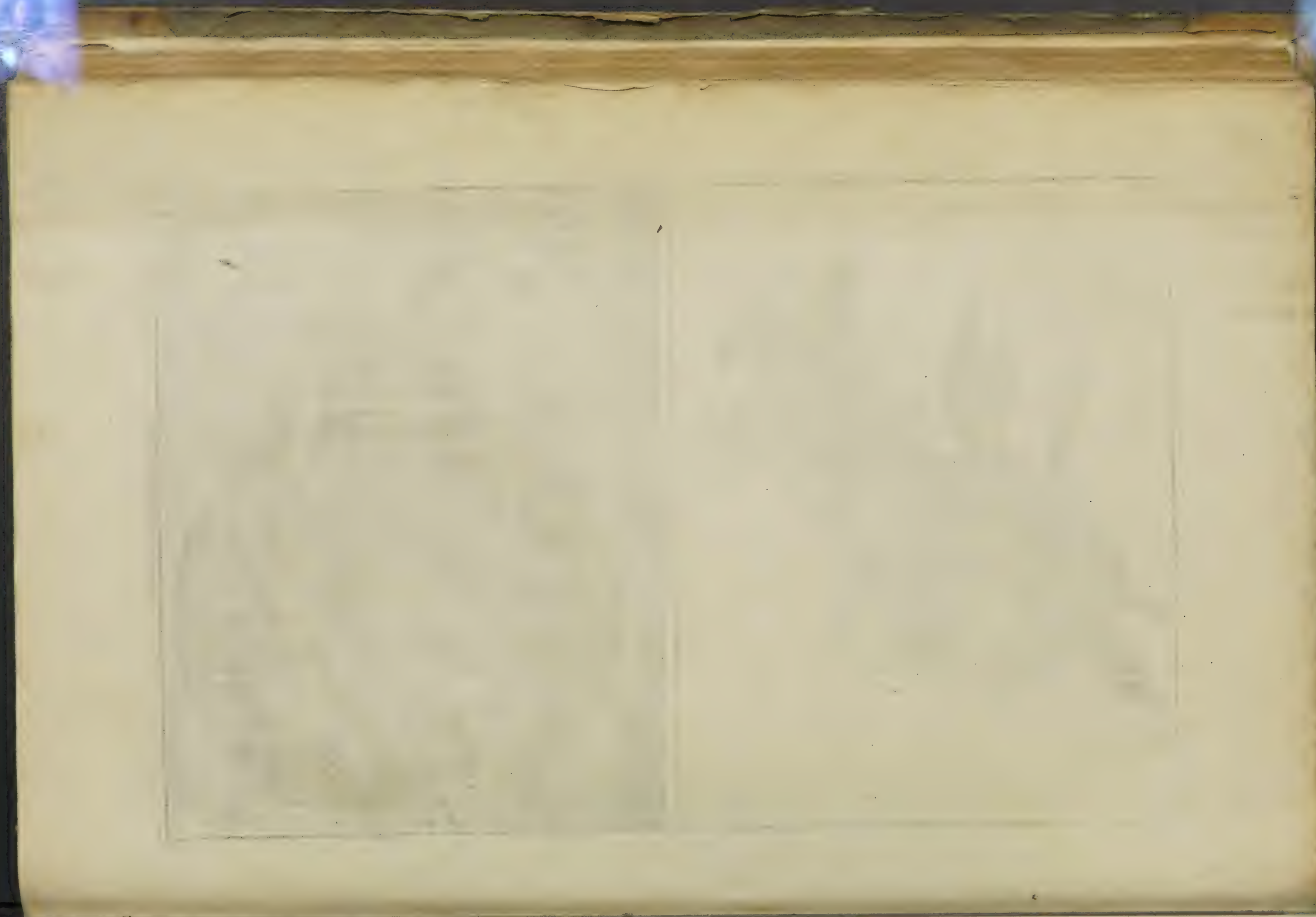
246.

FIJOUR ETRANGE.

A Foreign Flower



249.

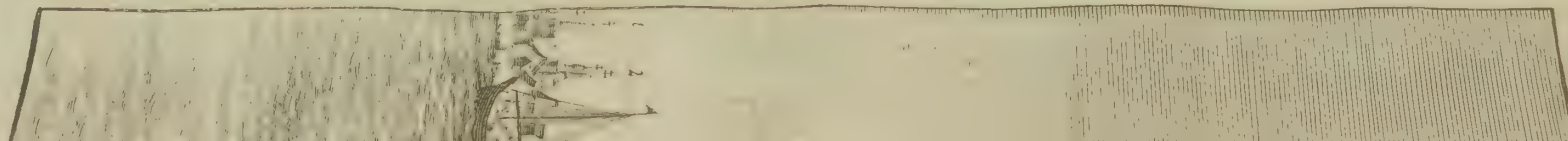
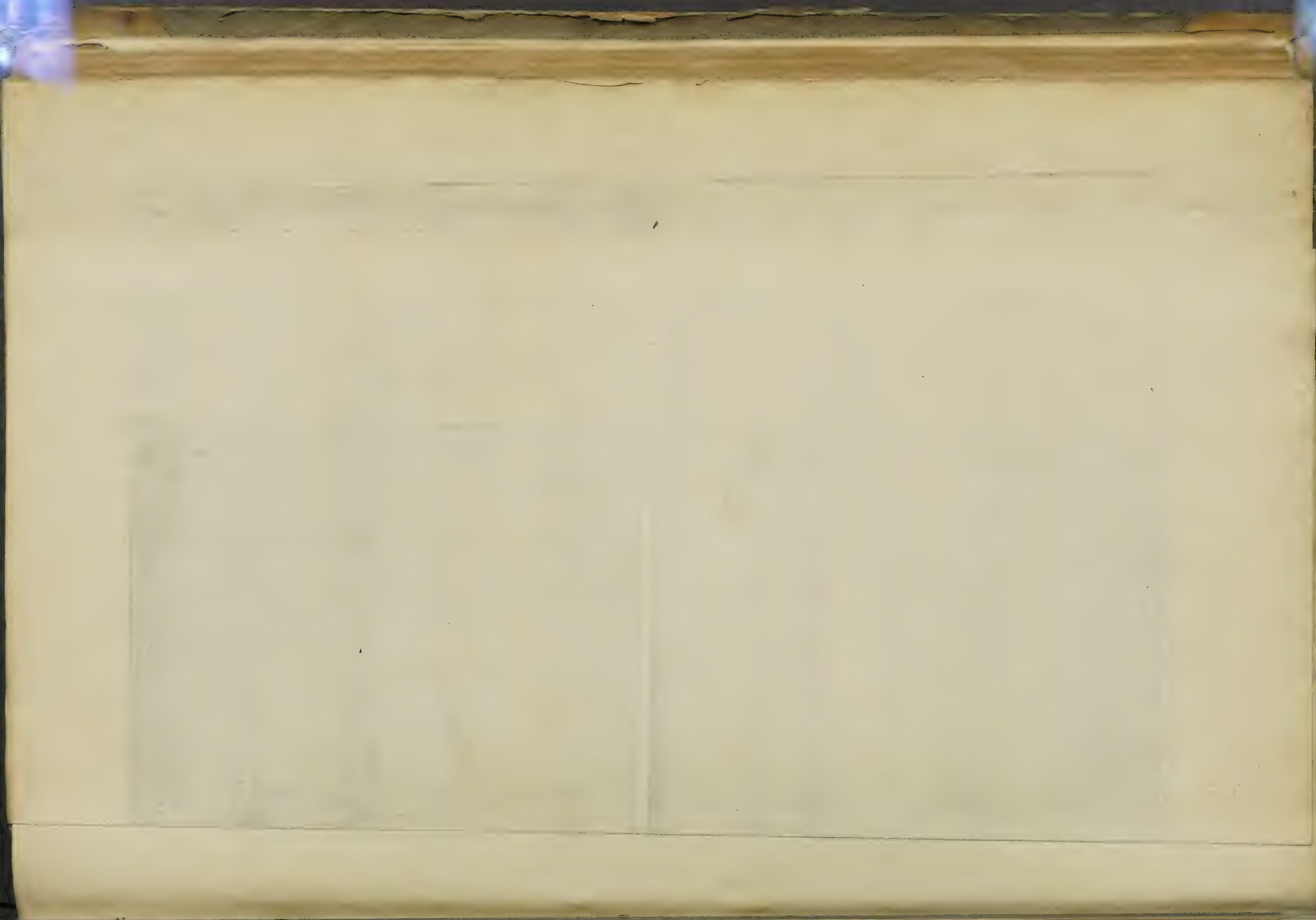


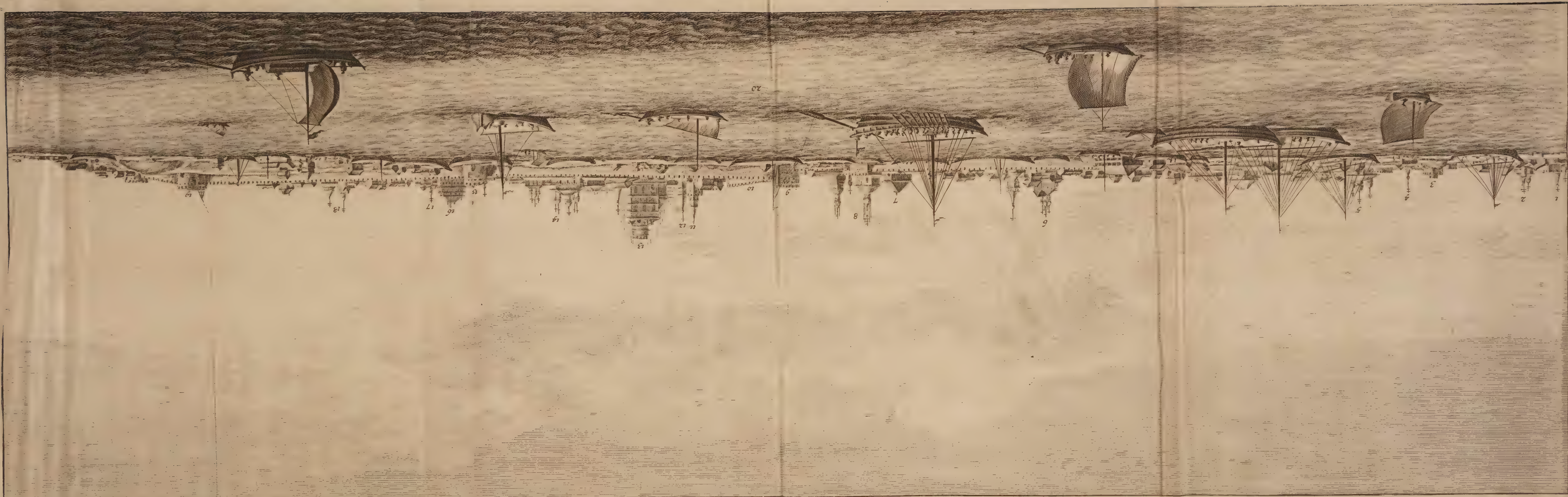


MONTAGNES NOMMES LOFFOERT.

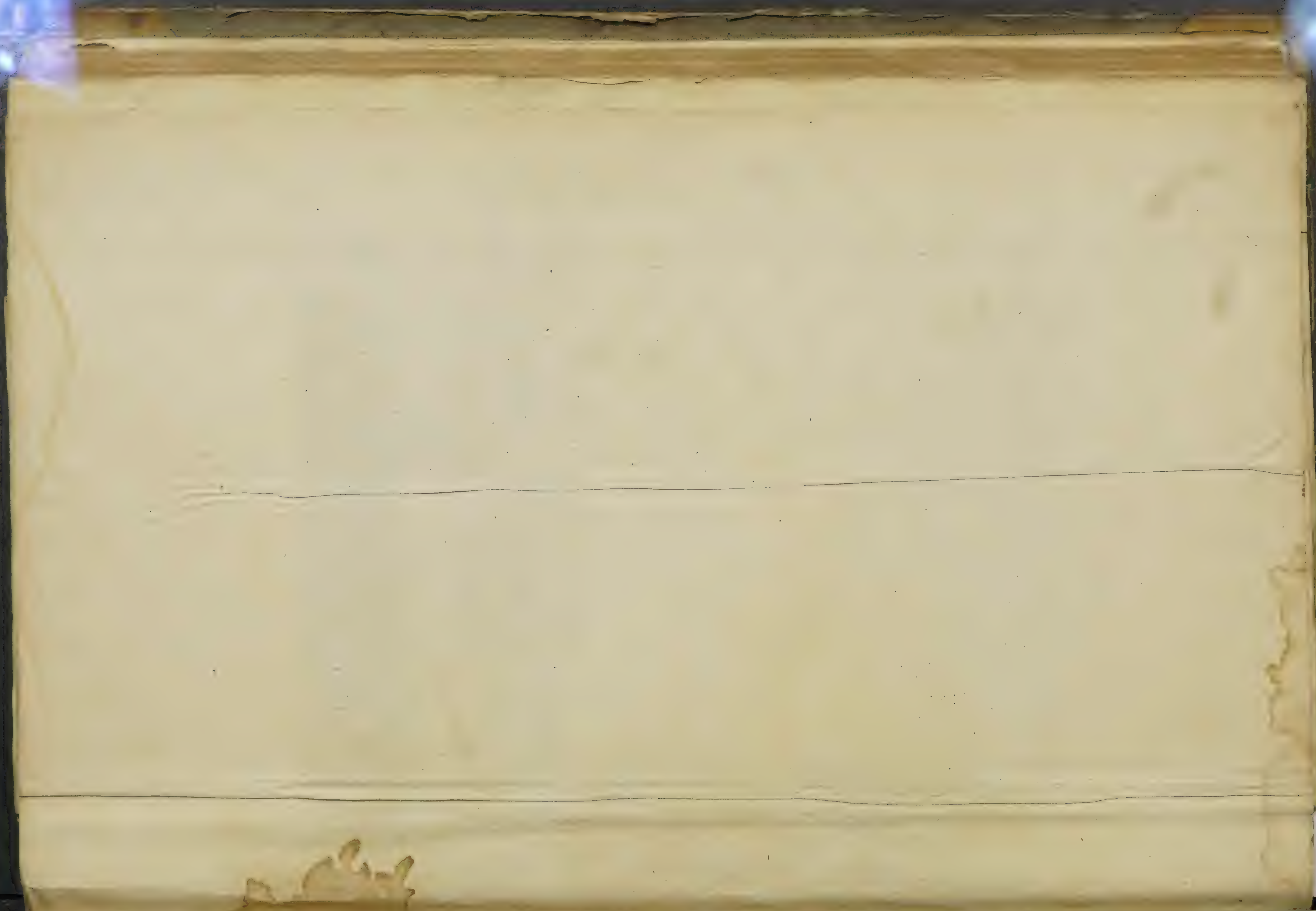


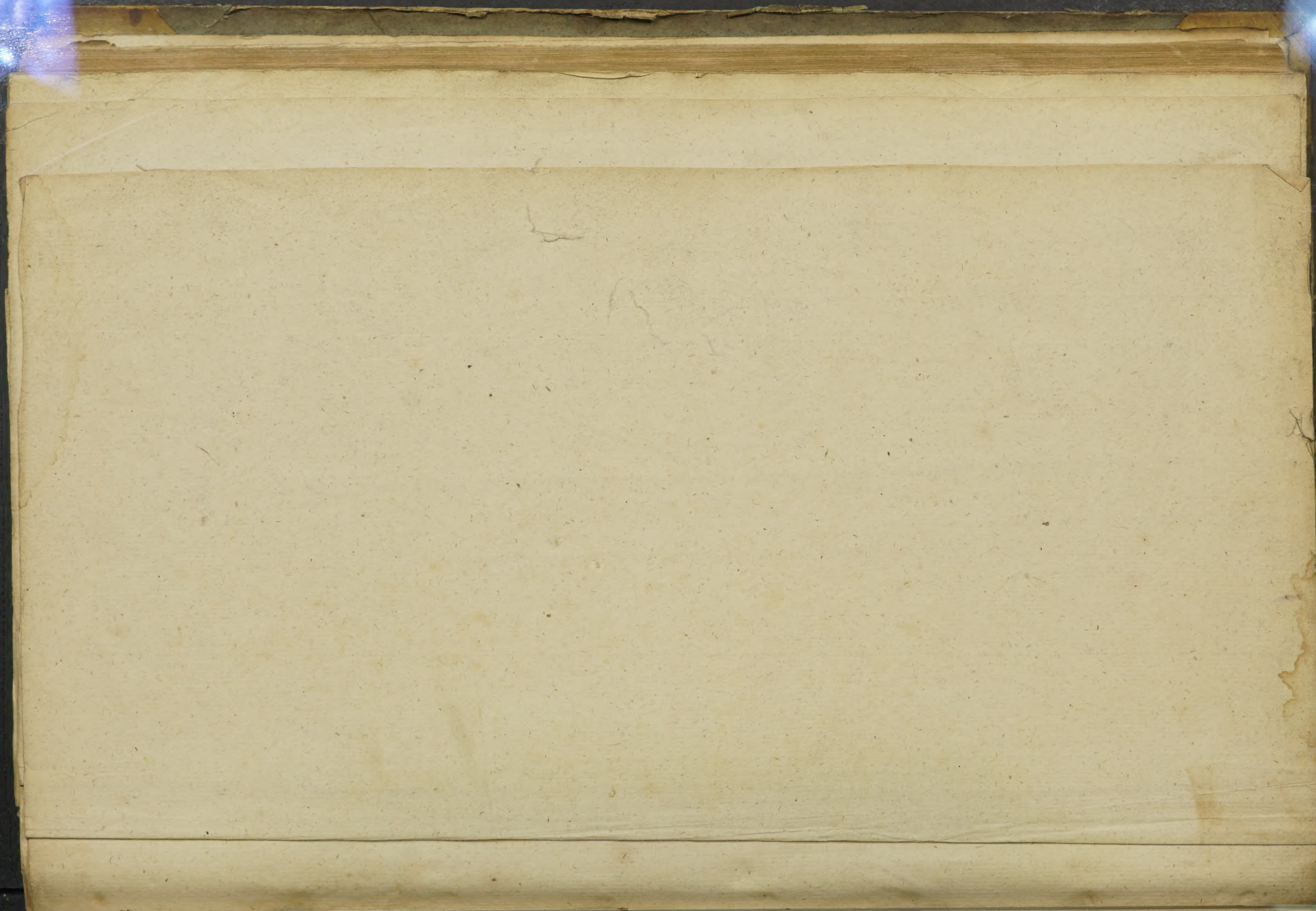
MONTAGNES NOMMES LOFFOERT.





ASTRAKAN.





10

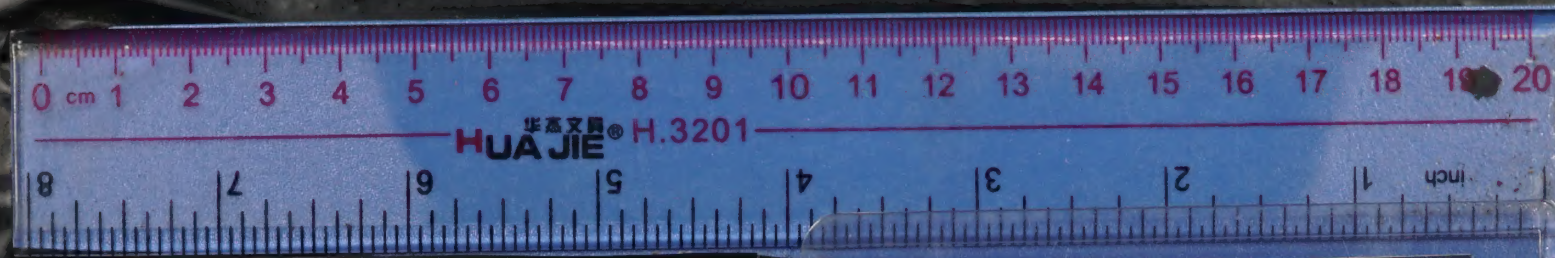
4

with 12 plates

11

12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100





RIGHT

